

no. 100







# The Life of St. Katharine.

---

Early English Text Society.

Original Series, No. 100.

1893.

BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 5, UNTER DEN LINDEN.

NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLDT.

PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.

74

The Life of  
St. Katharine of Alexandria.

BY

JOHN CAPGRAVE, D.D.,

PRIOR OF THE AUSTIN FRIARY AT LYNN, NORFOLK,  
AND PROVINCIAL OF HIS ORDER.

EDITED BY

CARL HORSTMANN,

WITH FOREWORDS BY

F. J. FURNIVALL,

AND NOTES ON THE SOUNDING OF *gh* IN CHAUCER'S DAY,  
AND OF LONG *i* IN SHAKSPERE'S.

LONDON :

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY  
BY KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO.,  
PATERNOSTER HOUSE, CHARING-CROSS ROAD.

1893.



820.6  
E 1  
no. 100

DEDICATED TO  
**Walter Rye**  
AND THE ANTIQUARIES OF NORFOLK.

F. J. F.

Original Series,  
100.

---

R. CLAY & SONS, LIMITED, LONDON & BUNGAY.

## FOREWORDS.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| § 1. <i>Capgrave's Life</i> , p. v.       | § 4. <i>St. Katharine</i> , p. xxii.        |
| § 2. <i>Capgrave's Works</i> , p. xiii.   | § 5. <i>Apology for the Text</i> , p. xxiv. |
| § 3. <i>Capgrave's Character</i> , p. xv. | § 6. <i>Miscellaneous</i> , p. xxxi.        |

§ 1. *Capgrave's Life*.—In his *Chronicle of England*, John Capgrave tells us under the 17th year of King Richard II (22 June 1393 to 21 June 1394), "In þis 3ere, in þe xxj day of aprile [in Easter week, 1394], was þat frere bore which mad þese anotaciones";<sup>1</sup> and in the present text he tells us, p. 16, l. 240, "Myn cuntre is Northfolke, of the town of Lynne." Of his parentage we know nothing, though if we construe his word "faderes," p. 17, l. 243 below, strictly, we shall have to hold him one priest's bastard son and another's grandson :

"God yene me grace neuere for to blynye  
To folwe the steppes of *my faderis* before,  
Wiche to the reule of Austyn were swore."

But he doubtless meant only by "faderis before" the spiritual fathers or Austin Friars who had gone before him. In 1400 the boy, with his playfellows and townsmen, must have felt proud of the Lynn fishermen :

"In that same 3ere, the schippis of Lennes, which fischid at Aberden, took certeyn schippis of Scotlond, with her amyrel, Sir Robert Logan, knyte, and broute hem to Lennes."—*Chronicle*, p. 266-7. (Note the absence of *gh* in *knyte* and *broute*.)

And in 1401 he must have wonderd at the comet :

"In this same 3ere . . . appered a sterre, which thei clepe cometa, betwix the west and the north, in the monthe of March, with a lie bem, which ben bowed into the North. It betokened, as men seid, the blod that schuld be spilt at Schrouisbury."—*Chronicle*, p. 278. [The battle of Shrewsbury was on July 22, 1403.]

<sup>1</sup> Facs:mile of leaf 175 of the Cambridge University MS Gg. 4. 12 in Hingeston's edition of the *Chronicle* in the Rolls Series ; also p. 259 of the print.

In 1406 he was still in his birth-town, for he tells us in his Latin *Book of the Illustrious Henries*, as enlight by Mr. Hingeston in the Rolls Series, 1858, p. 117 :

“I saw [Princess Philippa] the only daughter of this most excellent king [Henry IV] in the town of Lynn, where she went on board the ship in which she left England, and went to be married to [Eric XIII] the king of Norway . . . She indeed is the offspring of this king [Henry IV], and I saw her with my own eyes.”<sup>1</sup>

And it was no doubt in Lynn that he experienst the hard winter of 1407 :

“In the IX 3ere of this Kyng was a gret wyntir, that dured both Decembir, Januari, Februari, and March, that the most part of smale birdis were ded.”—*Chronicle*, p. 295 :

and the floods of 1413—*Henries*, p. 125 :

Now he [Hen. V] was crowned at Westminster on the ninth day of the month of April, in the year of our Lord 1413. In the winter of the same year there were great floods of snow and rain, and in the summer several fires,<sup>2</sup> from which signs some men foretold that he would be a warlike king, and would experience many dangers in war.—*Chronicle*, p. 303 :

as well as heard of the stealing of three Lynn children in 1416, and the later recovery of them :

“In the same 3ere [A.D. 1416] III. beggeres stole III. childyr at Lenne ; and of on, thei put oute his eyne ; the othir, thei broke his bak ; and the thirde, thei cut of his handis and his feet, that men schuld of pite gyve hem food. Long aftir, the fadir of on of hem, whech was a marchaund, cam to London, and the child knew him, and cryed loude, ‘This is my fadir.’ The fadir tok his child fro the

<sup>1</sup> No doubt Capgrave saw the rest of the Court too, for he says in his *Chronicle*, p. 292 (but under 1404), “In this 3ere were sent embassiatouris fro the Kyng of Denmark for to have the Kyngis doutir Philip to be joyned in wedlok to her Kyng. The Kyng broute hir to Lenne, for to take schip there. And in that towne he lay nyne daies, the too qvenes, thre sones of the Kyng—Herri, Thomas, and Umfrey—and many othir lordes and ladies.” Capgrave also notes on p. 291 before the visit of the King to Lynn, that after Henry IV’s forbiddal of pilgrimages to the place where the Archbp. of York and the Earl of Nottingham were beheaded, “The Kyng . . . lost the beute of his face. For, as the comoune opiuion went, fro that tyme onto his deth he was a lepir, and evyr fowlere and fowlere. For in his deth, as thei recorded that sey him, he was so contracte, that his body was searse a cubite of length.”

<sup>2</sup> As one of these, Mr. Hingeston (*Henries*, p. 125 *n.*) reckons the Norwich fire of 1414.

beggeris, and mad hem to be arested. The childirn told alle the processe, and the beggaris were hangen, ful wel worthy.”—*Chronicle*, p. 316.

In this year, 1416, Capgrave also notes the tremendous thunderstorms on June 14 :—*Chronicle*, p. 314 :

“In the XVIII. kalend of Julij were the moost horribil thunderses and litynyngis that evyr ony man herd.” (No *gh* again.)

When and where Capgrave went to school he does not tell us, but as the Augustine Friars settled at Lynn in the beginning of Edward I’s reign, A.D. 1293, and had their Monastery in the northern part of the town, in Hogman’s Lane, alias Hopman’s way,<sup>1</sup> and as they had a Professor of Sacred Theology, one John de Beston, in 1382 (p. xi, note 1), Capgrave may have gone to their school, assuming that they had one.<sup>2</sup> If not, there were in Lynn, a Benedictine Priory, a House of Black Friars or Preachers, and Convents of Franciscan or Grey Friars, and Carmelite or White Friars, at the school of such of which as had one, Capgrave could have got his education. Leland says that he went to Cambridge,<sup>3</sup> but Pamphilus, Bale, and others assign him to Oxford. He tells us himself that he knew William Millington, the first Provost of King’s College, Cambridge.<sup>4</sup> The probability is that he went first to Cambridge, the University nearest to him, and then took his degree of D.D.<sup>5</sup> at Oxford<sup>6</sup>; but nothing is known about this for certain.

<sup>1</sup> Dugdale’s *Monasticon*, vi. 1594, col. 2, quoting the Continuator of Blomefield’s *Hist. of Norfolk*.

<sup>2</sup> If they’d had a school in 1446, Capgrave ’ud surely have put the fact into his *Illustrious Henries*, p. xi below. I doubt whether his “youthful offshoots” mean a general school.

<sup>3</sup> “Granta, fecunda eruditorum parens, quæ illum, ut ego conjectura colligo, juvenem docuit, idem testabitur.”—*Com. de Script. Brit.* (1709), p. 453.

<sup>4</sup> “Over these colleges [Eton, and King’s Coll. Camb.] he set two influential men as provosts; one of them—Master William Millington [of Clare Hall]—I know personally. He presides over the college at Cambridge, and in the questionings of the schools, as well as in profound literature and in the perfection of his morals, surpasses many who had gone before him.”—*Book of the Illustrious Henries*, p. 154.

<sup>5</sup> In his Dedication of his “Book of the Illustrious Henries” to K. Henry VI, he calls himself “Brother John Capgrave, the laast of Doctors, and the meanest of the pore Brethren of Saint Augustin,” p. 1 and 226.

<sup>6</sup> Pamphilus (Works, 1581, Rome, fol. 139) says: “Joannes Capgrave,

In 1416 or 1417, when 23 or 24, that is, four or five years before the birth of Henry VI on Dec. 6, 1421, Capgrave tells us that he was ordained Priest, and that in Dec. 1421 he was studying in London :—*Book of the Illustrious Henries*, p. 146 :—

“I heard the voice of the churches, and the ringing of the bells, when the birth of our king [Henry VI] was made known in London, for I was then studying there, in the fourth or fifth year after I was raised to the priesthood; and the rejoicing of the people has not yet faded from my memory. For I deem that that praise and that rejoicing were omens of the peace which a great company of wise men expect to come in your days, my king . . . I deem that those voices and rejoicings will in time be fulfilled, that, as the people wishes and the devout pray, there may come to be one heart in the two kingdoms [England and France], as they have both of them already one God, one Faith, one Baptism [*Ephesians* iv. 5].”

In 1422 he preacht at least 7 Sermons at Cambridge, p. xiv below.

I suppose that after this, and before he settled down to write his Annals, his Legends of Saints, and his Commentaries on the books of the Bible, Capgrave went to Rome, was taken ill there, was helpt by Bp. Grey, and had to stay some time in that city. In the Dedicatory Letter to William Grey, Bishop of Ely, set before his Commentary on the Acts of the Apostles, Capgrave says :

“Reminiscor, sancte Antistes, quanta pia visitatione vestra in me, miserum peregrinum atque Romae infirmum, dilectionis exenia trihuistis; et nunc, a sollicitudine officii mei penitus absolutus, licet tarde veniens, munus possibilitatis meae vobis decrevi mittendum.”—*Liber de illustribus Henricis* (1858), p. 221.

On coming home, Capgrave may well have settled down at the Austin Friary at Lynn to write his Biblical Commentaries, &c. That on the Book of Genesis he tells us he began on 6 Sept. (or Oct.) 1437, and finisht on 21 Sept. 1438, while Humfrey, Duke of Gloster, says it was in the same year presented to him at Penshurst. The MS is now at Oriel, is in Capgrave's writing, and has the Duke's inscription on its fly-leaf :—

“Feliciter per Capgrave. Incipit Frater Johannes Capgrave hoc

---

Anglus, Oxonii publice Divinas Litteras docuit, et Vetus et Novum Testamentum interpretatus est;” and in his “Chronicon Ordinis Fratrum Eremitarum Sancti Augustini,” he includes Capgrave in his List of “Viri qui in publicis Scholis functi sunt docendi munere.”—*Chronicle*, p. x.

opus in Translatione Sancti Augustini Doctoris, quae occurrit mense Octobris [*really Sept. 6*], anno Domini M. CCCCXXXVII; et fecit finem ejusdem in festo Mathei, Apostoli et Evangelistae, anno Domini M. CCCCXXXVIII.”<sup>1</sup>

“Cest liure est a moy, Humfrey duc de Gloucestre, du don de Frere Johan Capgrave, quy le me fist presenter a mon manoyr de Pensherst, le jour de l’an M. CCCCXXXVIII.” [This must mean Jan. 1, 1439.]

Before this time, Capgrave had either written part of his *Chronicle or Annals of England*, or had got together some materials for it. In the Dedicatory Epistle to the Duke, Capgrave says, that while

“turning over *my Annals* . . . I found written in them that A.D. M. CCXLVIII the Order of Hermits of St. Augustine in England was founded by Richard of Clare, the son of Gilbert of Clare, and Earl of Gloster.”<sup>2</sup>

As Capgrave’s Commentaries on Exodus, and the first and third Books of his Commentaries on the Books of Kings (I *Samuel* and I *Kings*) were given to Oxford early in 1444—see last note—we may legitimately suppose that Capgrave had by that date worked consecutively through the books of the Bible, and finished his Commentaries on Leviticus, Numbers, Deuteronomy, Joshua, Judges, and Ruth. And as he would give the Duke only those MSS which he dedicated to him, Capgrave may well have written by Feb. 1444 several more Commentaries, as well as other books; but the dates of his other Biblical Commentaries and his Latin Lives of Saints—

<sup>1</sup> The vellum MS is a large folio of 181 leaves in double columns. In its first fine initial is a figure of the Duke seated and hatted, while Capgrave, in his friar’s dress, kneels before him and offers his MS. The first initial of the Prolog contains a figure of the author seated at a desk, with four books bound in red before him, and several in the cupboard beneath.—*Lib. de illustr. Henricis*, p. 225. The Duke gave the MS to the University of Oxford by Indenture dated 25 Feb. 1444, with three other of Capgrave’s Commentaries, no doubt also presents from him to the Duke, as witness this extract from the Schedule to the Deed—*Chronicle*, p. xv:

“Item, Capgrave super Regum Primum	...	2 <sup>o</sup> fo. sint viv.
Item, Capgrave super Regum 3	...	2 <sup>o</sup> fo. fulgorem.
Item, Capgrave super Genesin	...	2 <sup>o</sup> fo. arduum.
Item, Capgrave super Exodum	...	2 <sup>o</sup> fo. et beatitudinem.”

<sup>2</sup> “Sed et *Annualia mea* revolvens, aliud inveni quod me monet. Scriptum enim in iis reperi, quod anno Domini M. CCXXVIII. fundatus fuerat Ordo Heremitarum Sancti Augustini in Anglia per Ricardum de Clara, filium Gilberti de Clara, comitemque Gloverniae.”—*Lib. de illust. Henricis*, p. 230-1.

printed by Wynkyn de Worde in 1516 as *Nova Legenda Anglie*—are not yet known, and his English Life of St. Katharine in the present volume is undated. So is the fragment of his Guide to the Antiquities of Rome, while the MS of his English Life of St. Gilbert of Sempringham was burnt in the Cotton fire.

On August 1, 1446, Henry VI visited Lynn, and Capgrave gave him information about the first founding of the Austin Friars<sup>1</sup> there. Capgrave was no doubt then Prior of his monastery, if not also Provincial or Controller of all the Friaries in the Eastern province, or whatever the limits of his jurisdiction were. In his *Book of the Illustrious Henries*, as englished by Hingeston, p. 158—160, Capgrave says, under the year 1446 :

“In the twenty-fourth year of his reign,<sup>2</sup> this most devout king [Henry VI], in the course of the solemn pilgrimage which he made to the Holy Places, received into his favour the place of the Hermit Friars of S. Augustin in the town of Lynn, promising to his priests who dwelt there, by his (p. 159) own mouth, that from thenceforth that place should be regarded as closely connected with himself, and also with his successors lawfully begotten of his body. That he himself, also, and his successors, as before, should be regarded as its founder, or founders, not in name only, but in deed and in truth. These events occurred in the feast of S. Peter ad Vincula [Aug. 1], in the year of our Lord 1446, and in the twenty-fourth year of the reign of our illustrious lord king, as we said above.

“And forasmuch as many lying and double-tongued men have, as I have heard, taken occasion to say, after the departure of our king,<sup>3</sup> that the place had had a founder from its very earliest days,—whose name, however, they know not how to insinuate,—on that account *the writer of the present work, who also gave his lord information*

<sup>1</sup> It seems that when Henry VII visited Lynn with a large retinue on Aug. 25, 1498 (14 Hen. VII), he too stayed at the Austin Friary, for, says the entry in Hall Book 3, p. 17 : “which King was met at the Green At [this] half Witton [or Wootton] Gapp, with the foresaid Mayor and the Commons of Lynn, which King was presented *at the Friars Augustines* with ten great pikes, ten tenches, three couple of breans, twelve swans, two oxen, twenty sheep, a ton of wine, thirty dozen bread, two tons of ale, two tons of beer, two loads of wood ; and a pipe of wine was given to the Mayor for his guests.” The next Monday the King hunted with the Mayor, and went off on Tuesday.—Harrod’s *Report on King’s Lynn Records*, p. 112. I saw the folio entries at Lynn last August.

<sup>2</sup> In the autograph MS the words “Data compilatoris” are written in the margin opposite this passage.—Hingeston.

<sup>3</sup> The Privy Seals of the 24 Henry VI show that on the 6th of August the King was at Colchester.—Hingeston.

concerning this matter, seeing that his character has been partially injured by the imputation that *the information which he gave his lord the king* was false, here clearly sets forth the whole truth of this matter, as collected from ancient charters and sealed instruments:—

“Be it known then that the said Hermit Friars of S. Augustin<sup>1</sup> first entered the town of Lynn, with the intention of making their abode there, in the twenty-second year of the reign of the second [that is, first] king Edward [A.D. 1293], counting from the Conquest. This is found to be capable of proof from the licence of the king (who wrote that he was the son of king Henry, and marks this as the number of the years of his reign) in his charter to a certain widow of good conversation, whose name was Margaret Southmere. Now the land which was granted first by this lady to the Friars measured a hundred feet in length, and twenty-four in breadth. Our place thus begun in a narrow spot, increased by the presentation of many parcels of land, as is set forth in divers royal charters. For we have another charter granted to Humphrey de Wykyn [3 Edw. III, A.D. 1329], concerning his land; and another to Robert de Wykyn [12 Edw. III, A.D. 1338] for his messuage<sup>2</sup>; also yet another to Thomas de Lexham [? 33 Edw. I, A.D. 1304-5] for his messuage. Also another,<sup>3</sup> of a larger benefaction to certain inhabitants of Lynn [38 Edw. III, A.D. 1364], for five messuages.

“See, then, most dear lord, thy little plot, composed of many small parcels of ground, and united into one; and impress on thy heart that there are there *thirty priests*, besides deacons, subdeacons, and youthful offshoots<sup>4</sup> of the inferior order, to the number of sixteen; and consider that these hold thee in special remembrance.

<sup>1</sup> For a full account of this Friary, see Capgrave's *Chronicle*, ed. Hingeston, Appendix V, p. 368.

<sup>2</sup> In the Appendix to the 11th Report of the Historical MSS. Commission, 1887, Mr. J. C. Jeafferson notes (p. 231) that “On the eleventh of the kalends of May, 1352, Margaret Frenghe, widow, left vis. vii. to the Friars of the order of St. Augustine tarrying in Lenn,” and (p. 232) “all that tenement with its edifices and appurtenances in the town of Lenn, *opposite to the Friars of the order of St. Augustine of Lenn*,” to be sold for the payment of her debts and the fulfilment of her will. On p. 245 is the entry:—

“26 August 1382. Acknowledgment and Bond of the Prior and convent of the Friars of St. Augustine of Lenn, for fifty marks of gold received by them for the said convent's use, of John de Beston, Professor of sacred Theology of the same order and convent, under conditions set forth in the instrument.”

On p. 246 is this further entry:—

“20 October, 5 Henry VI and 1426 A.D. Bond of the Prior and Convent of the Friars of the Order of St. Augustine of Norwich for payment of twenty marks to the Convent of Augustine Friars of Lenne.”

<sup>3</sup> There were still more, see *Chronicle*, p. 368-9, notes.

<sup>4</sup> Namely, acolytes, and others of the inferior orders.—II.



“If, however, thou dost desire any more minute information, let thy Majesty command, and thy servants will obey.

“May thy royal Majesty live long to the honour of God, the support of the Church, and the settlement of the realm!”<sup>1</sup>

In this same year 1446, Capgrave no doubt finisht Part II of his *Liber de Illustribus Henricis*; and before Oct. 13, 1453, when Henry VI's only son Edward—kild at Tewkesbury, May 4, 1471—was born, Capgrave must have finisht his Third Part and ended his book. For, in his last paragraph he says, p. 218 of the englishing—

“So also may my lord ever preserve the Faith inviolate, may he nourish up *his children, when (my shall be born to him, faithfully for God*; that so his enemies may be frightened by his sword, and he may depart this life pure both in body and in soul,” &c.

In 1456 we find Capgrave with the titles of Prior, and Provincial of his order of Friars Hermit of St. Augustine, and with jurisdiction extending at least as far as the city of Oxford. Kennet's *Parochial Antiquities* (ed. Bandinel, ii. 399-401; reprinted in *Chronicle*, p. 328-333) contains two deeds dated 1456, of which the first witnesses that the Prior and Brethren of the Convent of Augustin Friars at Oxford, which stood near the present site of Wadham College, accept as their Founder and Patron, Edmund Rede of Borsall. And their venerable Master John Capgrave, Prior Provincial, approves this, and testifies it by his letters.<sup>2</sup> By the second Deed, on the same day, the said Oxford Austin Prior and Brethren grant to the said Edmund Rede, and William his eldest son, some chambers within their house, and some part of their garden, for lodging and other accommodation whenever they shall visit the said Convent, or reside in Oxford. And they do this “*licentiâ Fratris Magistri Johannis Capgrave, nostri Provincialis.*”

<sup>1</sup> Capgrave evidently intended to have added something more . . . and left a whole leaf of the vellum bare for the purpose in his autograph copy. He altered his mind, however, and wrote at the bottom of the page (for the direction of his scribe)—“*Make no space, but writh forth—INVOCATO,*” *i. e.* the first word of the Third Part.—H.

<sup>2</sup> *Et ad preces eorum [the Oxford Prior and Convent], venerabilis Magister Johannes Capgrave, Prior Provincialis, summo studio incitatus est, ut huic receptioni et recognitioni dicti Fundatoris nostri præsens esset, ut ad perpetuam rei memoriam suis literis testificaret, ne filii sine patris consensu aliquid novum conderent, nec labor filiorum sine patris consensu frustraretur.*

In an Indenture of June 12, 1461, between the Prior of the Austin Friars of Lynn and the Executors of Richard Cosyn, printed in Blomefield's *History of Norfolk*, iv. 616, and in Capgrave's *Chronicle*, p. 370, note, the seal of the Venerable Prior Provincial is appended; and we may fairly assume that he was Capgrave.


Bale tells us in his *Scriptores Illustres*, 1548, that Capgrave died at Lynn on the 12th of August, 1464, and was buried there among the Austins in the reign of Edward IV.

§ 2. *Capgrave's works*. The only English works of Capgrave which have survived are, 1. his *Life of St. Katherine* here printed, and which exists in three Arundel MSS, nos. 20, 168, 396 in the Brit. Mus., and in the Rawlinson MS. 116 in the Bodleian. The Prolog is printed in *Chronicle*, p. 335.

2. *Chronicle of England*, autograph MS in the University Library, Cambridge, Gg iv. 12; a copy, MS CLXVII in Corpus Christi Coll., Cambridge, edited by Hingeston for the Rolls Series, 1858. It runs from the Creation to A.D. 1417; contains at first, short notices from the Bible, Isidore, St. Jerome, Eusebius, and of events all over the world; gets its early history of England from the Brute, Higden, &c., and, as it nears the writer's own time, confines itself almost to England, and gives accounts of Wat Tyler's rebellion, Oldcastle, the resignation of Richard II and the accession of Henry IV, &c.

3. *Guide to the Antiquities of Rome*: fragments of this were found in the fly-leaves of the two MSS of Capgrave's Latin treatise on the Creeds—? autograph MS, All Souls' Coll. Oxford, no. 17 (wherein he latinises his name as "Johannes de Monumento Pileato"<sup>1</sup>), and Balliol Coll. Oxford, no. 190. Mr. Hingeston claims that these Fragments (which he prints *Chron.*, p. 357-66) are in Capgrave's own handwriting; but I do not believe they are,<sup>2</sup> because they have the gutturals which Capgrave avoided in his *Chronicle*: *hight* was *cald*, *Chron.* p. 359, 361, *promist* 362 (*lite*, *Chron.* p. 5, 264, 316); *might* p. 362, *myght* p. 365 (*myte*, *Chron.* p. 188, 190, 191, 222, 225, 226, &c.); *monslaught* p. 362 (*Chron. manslawth* p. 185, 218); *mydryght* p. 365 (*Chron. midnyte* 276); *knyghtes* p. 366

<sup>1</sup> *Monumentum*, a grave; *pileatum*, a pileo, a cap, i. e. Capgrave. Note in margin of All Souls' MS.—*Bk. Ill. Henrics*, p. 226 n. <sup>2</sup> See p. xxxiv below.

(*knyte*, Chron. p. 186, 187, 217, 227, 230, 232, 234, 235, 237, 239, 249, 258, &c.); *knyghode* p. 357; but Capgrave's form *knyt* is kept on p. 357, and *heyth* (height) on p. 359. Moreover, Capgrave's *T* monogram, , is not on these MS Rome-Guide leaves, and Mr. Hingeston was such a freshman at his work when he started, that I decline to accept his opinion on the fragments being written in Capgrave's hand.

4. *Life of St. Gilbert of Sempringham*: this existed in the Cotton MS Vitellius D xv, but was burnt in the fire of 1731, and only a few fragments remain. A note by Thomas Gybbons of the contents of the MS is in Harl. MS 980, p. 231 (*Chron.*, p. xviii). And the same MS gives an extract naming the twelve Orders of Augustinians, taken from "Joh. Capgrave in vii sermon at Cambridg. ann. 1422" (*Chron.*, p. 324 *n.*), when, or after, he was studying in London (p. viii above). Osbern Bokenham alludes to this 'Life' in his 'Lyvys of Seyntys,' Roxb. Club, 1835, p. 183, re-edited by Horstmann, "My fadrys book, Mastyr Joon Capgrave," Arundel MS, Brit. Mus., 327, ff. 118. (See p. xxxiii below.)

Capgrave's Latin works now known in MS are:—

1. His autograph MS. of his *Commentary on Genesis* (A.D. 1437-8), Oriel Coll. Oxford, no. 32: see p. viii above.

2. His autograph MS of his *Commentary on the Acts*, Balliol Coll. MS, 189, given to the College by Bp. Grey of Ely (1454-78), to whom it was dedicated. (See p. viii above, and *De Ill. Hen.* 219—224.)

3. His *Commentary on the Creeds*: autograph MS, All Souls' Coll. Oxford, no. 17 (*De Ill. Hen.* 211—17); a copy, Balliol Coll., Oxford, 190.

4. *Nova Legendula Angliæ* (Legendary Lives of Saints); MS in the York Minster Library; another in the Bodleian, Tanner MS 15; and a third, much damaged by fire, in the Cotton MS, Tiberius E 1. Printed by Wynkyn de Worde in 1516, when Pynson also printed a shortent englisying of it. It was compiled from the *Hist. Aurea* of John of Tinmouth (*De Ill. Hen.* xlix *n.*). The Prolog is printed in *De Illustr. Henricis*, p. 195—209. Dr. Horstmann is now re-editing the book, with very large additions, for the Clarendon Press. It is to be some 2000 pages long.

5. His autograph MS of *De Ill. Hen.*, ed. Hingeston in Rolls Series.

§ 2. *Capgrave's lost Latin Works.* § 3. *His Character.* xv

Capgrave's lost Latin works—or those not now known to exist—are 14 theological, and one historical :

1. His Commentaries on Exodus, Leviticus, Numbers, Deuteronomy, Joshua, Judges, Ruth, Samuel, Kings, Psalms, Ecclesiastes, Isaiah, Daniel, the twelve Minor Prophets (Hosea, Joel, Amos, Obadiah, Jonah, Micah, Nahum, Habakkuk, Zephaniah, Haggai, Zachariah, Malachi), the 21 Pauline and Canonical Epistles, and on the Apocalypse (dedicated to Wm. Grey, Bp. of Ely, 1454-78). 2. 'Manipulus Doctrinæ Christianæ.' 3. 'De Fidei Symbolis.' 4. 'Super Sententias Petri Lombardi.' 5. 'Determinaciones Theologicæ.' 6. 'Ad Positiones erroneas.' 7. 'Orationes ad Clerum.' 8. 'Sermones per Annum.' 9. 'Lecturæ Scholasticæ.' 10. 'Ordinariæ Disputationes.' 11. 'Epistolæ ad diversos.' 12. 'Vita S. Augustini.' 13. 'De sequacibus S. Augustini'; and (the same work or a continuation) 14. 'De illustribus viris Ordinis S. Augustini.' The lost historical work was 'Vita Humfredi Ducis Glocestriæ.'

§ 3. *Capgrave's character.* Capgrave, being an Englishman, was of course by race and nature a flunkey, and had an inordinate reverence for kings and rank. This vice or quality is ingrained in the nation. While Henry VI was alive, Capgrave was his profound admirer, and "wholly devoted to his service" (*Henries*, p. 144); and his grandfather Henry IV, "gained the crown *by the providence*, as we believe, *of God*, who is mighty to put down the mighty from their seat, and to exalt the humble" (*Henries*, p. 115, quoting Luke i. 52). But as soon as York has turnd-out Lancaster, and Edward IV is on the throne, Capgrave dedicates his *Chronicle* to him, and then—

"He that entered be intrusion was Herry the Fourte. He that entered *by Goddis provision* is Edward the Fourt . . . We trew lovers of this lond desire this of oure Lord God, that al the erreure wech was browte in be Herry the Fourte may be redressed be Edward the Fourte. This is the desire of many good men here in erde, and, as I suppose, it is the desire of the everlasting hillis that dwelle above."—p. 40. (No *gh* in *broule*.)

And this "erreure" must be deduced from the facts stated by Capgrave (*Henries*, p. 116), that

"the said king Henry [IV] observed the ways of justice, honoured with all his power the servants of God, and, drinking from the

fountains of the Scriptures went not thirsting away . . . he was mindful of that prayer of the most glorious Solomon, in which he asked, not for riches and honour, but for the assisting wisdom of God ;”

that his son Henry V, the hero of Agincourt (Capgrave's *Henries*, p. 143),

“was felicitous in all things ; felicitous in endowing the church, felicitous in ordering more clearly the divine offices, felicitous in the administration of justice, and in fine, felicitous in all his life. And as the blessed Felix laid low the statues by the breath of his most strong faith, so did this king shatter the statues of the heretics with the hammer of his justice, and burn them to ashes, lest the crop of the church should be spotted with their doctrines, and the company of the faithful be destroyed by the false-hearted.

“May the Lord grant unto him for the unbroken faith he kept with Him a ring of everlasting blessedness ; for his defence of the church militant, the glory of the church triumphant ; and in exchange for his earthly kingdom, whose laws he kept inviolate, an eternal kingdom with God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Ghost, for ever and ever. Amen ;”

and that his grandson, Henry VI, was Capgrave's “desirable lord, the king,” “to whose service I have wholly devoted myself” (*Henries*, p. 144). But as the Vicar of Bray had afterwards “still to be Vicar of Bray, Sir,” so Capgrave had still to be Prior of Lynn, and Provincial of his province. He felt but as almost all Englishmen felt in his day ; as almost all Englishmen would feel under like circumstances now. In the matter of kings, dukes &c., we are a poor lot.

And as Capgrave shared the social weakness of his nation, so he shared the hates and prejudices of his Papal Church and Order. This is how he spoke of the noble Reformer Wyclif, who lasht the abuses of the Romish hierarchy, and double-thongd the hypocrisy, the vice and corruptions of the Friars<sup>1</sup> :—

“In the IX. ȝere of this kyng [Richard II, A.D. 1384], John Wiclef—the organ of the devel, the enmy of the Cherch, the confu-sion of men, the ydol of heresie, the meroure of ypocrisie, the norischer of seisme—be the rithful dome of God, was smet with a horibil paralsie thorw-oute his body. And this veniauns fell upon

<sup>1</sup> See his English Works, ed. Matthew, E. E. Text Soc., and his Latin Works issued by the Wyclif Society.

him on Seynt Thomas [a Beket's] day in Cristmasse [Dec. 29]; but he deyed not til Seynt Silvestir day [Dec. 31]. And worthily was he smet on Seynt Thomas Day, ageyn whom he had gretely offendid, letting men of that pilgrimage [to his Shrine at Canterbury]; and conveniently deied he in Silvestir fest, ageyn whom he had venemously berkid for dotaacion of the Church."—*Chronicle*, p. 240-1.<sup>1</sup>

Here is Capgrave's wind-up of Oldcastle,—*Henries*, p. 141-2, A.D. 1417. (Compare Hoccleve's Poem on him: *Minor Poems*, p. 8—24.)

"It was in the fifth year of the glorious king Henry [V] that *Oldcastle, that satellite of the devil*, was taken by the servants of Lord Powis, and adjudged to death.

"For their sakes into whose hands these writings may come, I will declare some of his errors to posterity, that they may not think he was put to so shameful a death except for a just cause.

"First, he declared that none ought to worship the Mother of Christ, or the other Saints.

"Also, that confession ought to be made to God alone, and not to man.

"Also, that in the Sacrament of the Altar, after consecration, the bread remains unchanged.

"He condemned civil property; and hated [Papal] priests and churches as abominations.

"He also was for destroying marriage, as far as in him lay.

"He is said to have inflicted severe injuries on his captors when they took him, for he was very strong. But a certain woman struck him on the shin with a footstool, and he presently fell to the ground. He was brought to London, hung, and burnt. He had pretended that he was Elias, sent for the conversion of the whole world; and

<sup>1</sup> See also p. 231: "In this tyme [1376], on, Jon Wicief, Maystir of Oxenforth, held many straunge opinionos:—That the Cherch of Rome is not hed of alle Cherchis. That Petir had no more auctorite thanne the othir Aposteles; ne the Pope no more power than anothir prest. And that temporal lordes may take away the godes for the Cherch, whan the persones trespassin. And that no reules mad be Augustin, Benet, and Fraunceys, adde no more perfeccion over the Gospel than doth lym-whiting onto a wal. And that bishoppis schuld have no prisonos; and many othir thingis."—*Chronicle*, p. 231.

Again, at p. 236: "In the V. 3ere of Richard [1381], Jon Wicief resumed the eld dampned opinon of Berengari, that seide,—Aftir the consecracion of Cristis body, bred remainyd as it was before. Mani foul errouris multiplied Wicief more than Berengari:—That Crist was there, as he is in othir places, but sumwhat more specialy; That this bred was no bettir than othir bred, save only for the prestis blessing; and, if Cristis body was there, it was possible to a man for [to] breke Cristis nek. He said eke it was lasse synne to worchip a tode than the Sacrament; for the tode hath lyf, and the Sacrament non." (See also the referencos to 'Lollards' in the *Chronicle Index*.)

his prophecy was fulfilled, as some say, while he was being taken to the fire sitting in the cart, since the one was borne off in a chariot to Heaven, the other to hell. The duke of Bedford and those who were present at his death, urged him to make faithful and lowly confession of his sins, offering him time, and his choice from among many priests. But he said that though Peter and Paul were present he would not confess to them; and so, as a blasphemer, and abandoned abetter of heretics, he suffered the disgrace of death as he deserved. He was first dragged to the place of execution and hung; then he was dismembered and disemboweled, and lastly his body was burned to ashes in the flame.

“These are the acts of this illustrious, noble, and most Christian king, Henry the Fifth, in the first lustrum of his reign.”

Capgrave evidently approved of the burning of heretics: see *Chronicle*, p. 277, 297, 316, &c.

“In the third ȝere of this Herry [IV. A.D. 1401] was a Parlement at London, wher was mad a statute ageyn Lollardis,<sup>1</sup> that where evyr thei were founde preching her evel doctrine, thei schuld be take, and presentid to the bischop; and if they maynten here opinionones, thei schuld be committed to seculere hand, and thei schuld brenne hem and her bokes. This statute was practized in a prest [William Sautre], that sone aftir was brent at Smythfeld.”—p. 277.

A.D. 1409. “In this ȝere was a Parlement at London in tyme of Lenton, where a smyth was appechid for heresie.<sup>2</sup> He held this conclusion, that the Sacrament of the Auter is not Cristes Body, but a thing without soule, wers than a tode, or a creync, wech have lyf. And whan he wold not renouns his opinion, he was take to the seculere hand, for to be spered in a tunne in Smythfeld, and to be brent. The Prince Herry had pite on the man, and counseled him to forsake this fals opinion; but he wold not. Werfor he was put in the tunne; and when the fer brent, he cried horribly. The Prince comaunded to withdrawe the fire, came to him, and behite him grete;<sup>3</sup> but it wold not be. Werfor he suffered him to be brent into ashes.”—*Chron.* p. 297.

A.D. 1416. “In this tyme, on Benedict Wolleman, a citeceyn of London, a gret Lollard, which had set up billes of grete errouris, was takyn, hanged, and drawe, on Myhilnesse day.”—*Chron.* p. 316.

<sup>1</sup> A.D. 1400. Cicetir. “The erl of Salesbury was ded [beheaded?]; and worthi, for he was a gret favorere of the Lollardis, a despiser of sacramentis, for he wold not be confessid when he schuld deie.”

<sup>2</sup> “This was John Badby, who was burnt in Smithfield in March 1410. See Foxe's *Acts and Monuments*, iii. 235, ed. S. R. Cuttley, 8vo. 1844.”—T. Wright. Also see Hocceve's long verses about him in *De Regimine*, p. 11—12, Roxb. Club, 1860. <sup>3</sup> *him grete*] grete thyngs to him. Corpus MS.

But—subject always to the Pope—Capgrave loved England, and desired its weal. In the Prolog to his Lives of Saints—*Nova Legenda Angliæ*—reprinted in *Lib. de illust. Henricis*, p. 195—209, he praises his country,—in the bit englisht by Hingeston, *Henries*, p. 223-4 :—

“ For England (*Anglia*), according to the definition of some, is (so) called from *En*, which is ‘ In,’ and *Cleos*, which is ‘ glory,’ as though (she were) ‘ all-glorious within,’ nor indeed undeservedly. For although outwardly she rejoices in many and great prerogatives, as may be easily seen, for instance, in her fertile fields and abundant crops ; in the vast weight of her wood-produce ; in the loveliness of her meadows, streams and fountains ; in the endless variety and beauty of her cities and towns, her castles and public buildings ; and, finally, in the wonderful and angelic splendour and loveliness of the nation, both in countenance and in costume, in courage and vigour of mind, as well as in other countless worldly goods, in all of which, exclusive of that which lies concealed within, her beauty and her glory are resplendent.

“ But, still more nobly and gloriously does her excellence and majesty of spirit shine forth from the virtues and examples of the Saints who have flourished in her, who all, like glowing constellations, lighted up the darkening world with their rays, while all men, in their clear light, could see that ‘ God is no respecter of persons, but that in every nation he that feareth God and worketh righteousness is accepted of Him ’ (*Acts* x. 35).”

He hoped to see England happy. He writes thus of the wise foreseers of evils to come under the weak child, Henry VI, who succeeded the hero of Agincourt (*Henries*, p. 148, 149-50) :—

“ Many persons of a malignant disposition, interpreting amiss this coronation of our king [A.D. 1431], continue to sow among the people such murmuring words as these,—‘ Alas for thee, O land, whose king is a boy, and whose princes eat in the morning ’<sup>1</sup> (*Ecclesiastes* x. 16). . . . .

“ May the Lord take away from our realm these pestilent murmurers, who delight to prophesy evil things ; for I trust in the Lord that I shall see our borders in peace and prosperity, and our days happy, before the day of my death !”

And as a mean to this end, Capgrave, like Chaucer's Merchant,

<sup>1</sup> And fyrste I remembred an olde prouerbe worthy of memorye, that “ often ruithe the realme, where chyldren rule, and women gouerne.” Halle's *Chronicle*, 1809, p. 386 : the Duke of Buckingham is explaining to Morton Bishop of Ely, why he took Richard III's side.



wisht to see our then-scornd Navy strong, that England might keep the sea (*Henries*, p. 155-6):—

“it is the opinion of many that, if the sea were kept by our navy,<sup>1</sup> many good results would follow: it would give a safe conduct to merchants, secure access to fishers, the quiet of peace to the inhabitants of the kingdom, to our king himself a large measure of glory. Our enemies laugh at us, and say—

“Take the *ship* off from your precious money, and stamp a *sheep* upon it, showing thereby your own cowardice,”—since we who used to be the conquerors of all nations, are now being conquered by all nations. The men of old used to call the sea ‘the wall of England’; and what think you that our enemies, now that they are upon the wall, will do to the inhabitants who are unprepared to receive them? Forasmuch as this matter has already for the space of many years been neglected, on that account it has happened that already our ships are scanty, our sailors few in number, and those unskilled in seamanship, from want of practice. May the Lord take away this our reproach, and raise up the spirit of bravery in our nation! May He strip off the false and feigned friendships of nations, lest on a sudden, when we dread them not, they come upon us!”

Capgrave was not much moved by Agincourt (*Chron.* p. 312, *Ill. Hen.* p. 132—4), but he notes in his *Chronicle*, p. 313, the characteristic English answer of the Earl of Dorset in 1416 to the Comte d’Armagnac’s summons to surrender:—

“Then sent to the erl of Dorcet this message, the erl Armenak,— ‘Now art thou so streytid, that the se is on thin o side, and we on the othir. Therefor, be my councele, 3eld thee; for ellis schalt thou deye.’ The erl of Dorcet sent this answer ageyn,—‘It was nevyr the maner of Englischmen to 3elde hem, whan thei myte fite.’ And thou3 the Englisch host had no mo men but XV. hundred, yet had thei bettir of XV. thousand, God and good prayeris hem helpyng.” (No *gh* in *myte fite*.)

He evidently tried to be impartial where no church-doctrinal question was concernd. At p. 107 of his englisht *Henries* he says:

“Now forasmuch as different writers have given different accounts of the deposition of king Richard [II] and the elevation of king Henry [IV] to the throne,—and no wonder, since in so great a struggle one took one side, and one the other,—I, who stand as it were in the middle between the two parties, consider that I hold a

<sup>1</sup> A. D. 1522. Halle’s *Chronicle* (1809), p. 634: “and still the kynges great nauie kepte the narrow seas, for then was neither peace betwene Englonde and Fraunce, nor open warre, as you have hard.”

better and a safer path, since, having investigated both sides of the question, I set myself diligently to elucidate the truth alone, not indeed to the prejudice of any one who may write of these things after me, if he shall undertake to discuss this matter with more accuracy and clearness."

Capgrave's biographers, says Dr. Thompson, in *Dict. Nat. Biogr.*, "eulogise his character in the highest terms. The most learned of English Augustinians whom the soil of Britain ever produced, he was distinguished as a philosopher and theologian, practically rejecting in his writings the dreams of sophists, which lead only to strife and useless discussions. Fulfilling the mission of his order, 'it was his wont to thunder against the wanton and arbitrary acts of prelates, who enlarge the borders of their garments beyond measure, catching at the favour of the ignorant herd; not shepherds, but hirelings, who leave the sheep to the wolves, caring only for the milk and fleece; robbers of their country, and evil workers, to whom truth is a burden, justice a thing of scorn, and cruelty a delight.'—BALE."

If Bale saw Capgrave's MSS in which this "thunder" was contained, I regret that they have been lost. To me the thunder sounds like the volleys of abuse which Wyclif and his followers fired against the Papal officials in religious England, and specially against the Friars, among whom Capgrave was a chief. Can Bale have mistaken a Lollard treatise for one of Capgrave's? But however this may be, our Friar made a very (a too) favourable impression on his Rolls-editor, Mr. Hingeston, who says—*Chron.* p. xxiv :—

"it is impossible not to be struck with the singular honesty and straight-forwardness of character which must have belonged to the writer . . . The appeal of Robert Grosteste, Bishop of Lincoln . . . from the authority of the Pope 'to the High King of Heaven' is mentioned without a syllable of disapprobation<sup>1</sup> . . . He also men-

<sup>1</sup> *Chron.* p. 156, A.D. 1251 : "In the XXXVI 3ere of hir [his] regne deied Robert Grostede, born in Suffolk, and bischop of Lincolne. He beqwathe al his bokes to the Frere Menouris of Oxenforth. He had be at Rome, and pleted for the rite of the Cherch of Ynglond undir the Pope Innocent. For that same Pope reised many new thingis of this lond, and gaf the benefices without consent of the Kyng, or patrones, or any othir. And this same bischop Robert wrot and seid ageyn the Pope; and at Rome, in his presens, appeled fro him to the hy Kinge of Hevene. So came he hom, and deied. And in his deth he appered to the Pope, and smet him on the side with the pike of his crosse staf, and seid thus : 'Rise, wrech, and com to the dom.' This wordis herd the embiculeris, and the strok was seyn in his side, for he deyed anon aftir that." (*No gh in vite.*)

Capgrave's entry as to Thomas a Becket is on p. 140 : "Aftir that fel gret strif

tions the several instances of attempted aggression by the Pope on the prerogative of the King, and the liberties of English subjects, in the true spirit of an Englishman, and it is impossible to doubt that he heartily approved of the false claims of the See of Rome being disputed, although he does not venture to say so in as many words. The general impression left on the mind, after a careful review of the contents of the Chronicle, is favourable alike to the head and heart of the writer, and calculated to inspire us with the greatest confidence in his accuracy and credibility.”<sup>1</sup> [Not, I hope, when he tells the absurd religious stories of miracles, &c., that he sometimes does.]

§ 4. *St. Katharine.* Of the heroine of the present volume, “St. Catherine, Virgin and Martyr, whose day of commemoration recurs on the 25th of November, and who is the person intended when the Roman Church speaks of St. Catherine without any additional designation,” Mr. T. A. Trollope gives the following account in the 9th edition of the *Encyclopædia Britannica*, V. 229/2 (1876):—

“History has exceedingly little to tell of this saint; history, more properly so called, indeed has nothing at all. She is said to have been of royal parentage, and her life is referred to the early part of the 4th century. She was martyred at Alexandria. She was especially celebrated for her learning and philosophical culture, and has always been considered the especial patron of philosophical schools. But in proportion to the scantiness of authenticated fact, legendary fable has been abundant in furnishing forth lives of the saint. And it is to one of these legends that the well-known presentiment of the saint—which alone is likely to cause modern readers to feel any interest in her name—is due. It is said that in revenge for the discomfiture of a company of heathen philosophers, with whom she had been compelled to dispute, the holy and learned lady was bound to a wheel armed with spikes, in such sort that every turn of the machine would cause the spikes to pierce her body. But the cords were miraculously broken, and the malice of her enemies foiled. Hence St. Catherine, virgin and martyr, is always repre-

---

betwix him and the Kyng, for liberty of the Cherch; for wech first was the bischop exiled, and many wrongis do to him and to his kyn. Thanne cam he hom ageyn, and was killid.” Not much in this Becket bit, and the Saint’s holy-oil story at p. 273, to bear out Mr. Hingeston’s statement.

<sup>1</sup> A.D. 1402. In this tyme cam oute a bulle fro the Court, wech revokid alle the graces that had be graunted many 3eres before; of wech ros mech slaundir and obliqui ageyn the Cherch; for thei seide pleynly that it was no more trost to the Pope writing than to a dogge tail; for as ofte as he wold gader mony, so oftyn wold he anullen eld graces, and graunt newe.—*Chronicle*, p. 281.

sented with a wheel [see Raphael's picture in the National Gallery<sup>1</sup>], and the extreme popularity of this saint, and consequent commonness of the pictures of her, is indicated by the fact that a wheel of a certain construction and appearance is to the present day called a Catherine wheel.

"The lover of mediæval painting may be warned against mistaking the pictures which he so constantly meets with, of St. Catherine with her wheel, for representations of St. Catherine of Siena, or of any of the other saints Catherine, who all of them lived a thousand years or more later than the first and original saint of the name."<sup>2</sup>

Capgrave says that he englished the present *Life of St. Katharine* from a Latin translation of St. Athanasius's Greek 'Life' of her, made by Arrek, who died in Lynn many years before, and who had been "parson of Seynt Pancras in the Cyte of London a ful grete while," p. 14, 15. This St. Pancras must have been that in Soperslane, Cheapside, which was burnt in the Great Fire of London in 1666, and was never rebuilt, the parish being joined to that of St. Mary-le-Bow. The name Arrek does not occur in Newcourt's *Repertorium*;<sup>3</sup> and I don't know where else to look for him. The

<sup>1</sup> It is in Room VI, No. 168. Ruskin says that it was printed about 1507, in Raphael's second or Florentine period.—P. F.

<sup>2</sup> The other 5 Saint Catherines are given by Mr. Trollope, in col. 1, as—"2. *St. Catherine of Sweden*, who died abbess of Watzen, on the 24th March, 1381, and is commemorated on the 21st of that month; 3. *St. Catherine of Siena*, born in 1347, whose festal day is observed on the 30th of April; 4. *St. Catherine of Bologna*, whose family name was Vigri, and who died abbess of the Convent of St. Clairs in that city on the 9th of March, 1463; 5. *St. Catherine of Genoa*, who belonged to the noble family of Fieschi, was born about 1448, spent her life and her means in succouring and attending on the sick, especially in the time of the plague which ravaged Genoa in 1497 and 1501, died in that city in 1510, was canonized by Clement XII in 1737, and had her name placed in the calendar on the 22nd of July by Benedict XIV; and 6. *St. Catherine de' Ricci*, of Florence, born of that noble family in 1522, who became a nun in the convent of the Dominicans at Prato, died in 1589, and was canonized by Benedict XIV in 1746, who fixed her festal day on the 13th February."

<sup>3</sup> An Ecclesiastical Parochial History of the Diocese of London, A.D. 1708. *St. Pancras Soperlane*, Rectory:—This Church of S. Pancras Soperlane (so called, because near a Street formerly known by that name, but now, since the Fire [1666] call'd *Queen-street*) was a small Church, and stood in Needlers-lane, in Cheap-Ward. It is a Rectory, and one of the 13 Pecuniars in this City, subject to the Jurisdiction of the Archbishop of Canterbury. vol. i. p. 517. . . . vol. i. p. 518. But being burnt down in the late dreadful Fire, it is since annexed to the Church of S. Mary-le-Bow (as is also that of Alhallows, Honey-

story of St. Katharine's Life being told in the side-notes, I will not trouble the reader with a sketch of it here. The author's appeal to the Holy Ghost for help, in the Prolog to Bk. III, p. 171, should be noted.

§ 5. *Apology for the text.* The Author and his subject having been dealt with, I turn now to his text in the present volume, and must start with an apology to our Members for the waste of some of their money in it, money that would have printed 130 pages of another MS. The material before Dr. Horstmann to enable him to

lane), which Church of S. Mary-le-Bow is made the Parochial-Church for all these Three Parishes. And the Site of this remains only as a Burying-place for the Inhabitants of this Parish. . . .

<i>Reg. Cant.</i>	<i>Rectors.</i>	<i>Patroni.</i>	
Reynolds	25 Rob. de Sandwico, 2 Kal. Jul. 1319	} Prior & Capitulum Eccles. Christi Cant.	
	26 Joh. de Hertford, prid. Id. Oct. 1320 per res[ignationem] Roberti		
	263 Ric. fil. Basil de Sudbury, 4 Id. Sept. 1326. Adam de Branketre		
Islep.	287 Tho. Forster, cl. 6 Jul. 1361 per mort. Branketre		
	307 Will. de Drayton, 4 Kal. Mar. 1363 per res. Forster Will. Gysors.		
Sudbury.	133 Rob. Martin, pr. 5 Oct. 1380. per res. Gysors		
	135 David Michell, 19 Maii 1381. per res. Martin		
Courtney <	277 Joh. Parker, cap. 12 Junii 1390 Joh. Wykyngston		
Arundel 2. P. <	67 Joh. Prata, 26 Maii 1413, per res. Wykyngston		} Archiep. Can.
	69 Joh. Hody, 20 Dec. 1415. per res. Prata		
	77 Ric. Lofthouse, cl. 18 Oct. 1416, per res. Hody.		
	82 Ric. Grange, 31 Dec. 1416, per res. Lofthouse.		
Stafford. <	106 Joh. Kirkby, A.M. 12 Nov. 1450. per mort. Grange		
Bourehier <	74 Will. King, al. Holben, cap. 1 Maii 1459. per res. Bromh. Tho. Marks		

(A Robert Pratta was Vicar of East Winch in Norfolk in 1349.—Blomefield ix. 154, ed. 1808. I don't think *Prata* above can be a latinizing of *Akker*, acre, field. In the list of Prebendaries of St. Pancras, Kentish Town, Middx. in Newcourt i. 193-5, there is no name like Arreck.)

pick the best MS for his text was, the autograph *Chronicle* printed in 1858, and its Appendix III, p. 335-354, containing the Prolog of the *St. Katharine* from the Arundel MS 396, collated with the Rawlinson MS Poet. 116, and Arundel 168; and the Editor's business was to see which of these MSS had spellings and forms most like those of the autograph *Chronicle*. Now even an eye so careless of peculiarities as mine was caught at once by one most prominent characteristic of Capgrave's spelling, his avoidance of the guttural *gh*. It is shown in the first page of his *Chronicle* (after the Dedication), "the man *hite* Cayn"; it is in the last page but one (316), "he *hite* the emperoure that he schuld withdrawe his obediens fro that same Petir"; and it occurs all through the work. See the *myte jite*, might fight, on p. xx, and other instances above. Take a few more samples :

aute (aughte, owed) 167, 171	knythod 287
boute (bought) 186, 257, 314, 315	litymingis (lightnings) 314
broute (brought), 126, 127, 130, 131, 134, 135, 186, 219, 226, 271, 280	midnyte 276
caute (caught) 189	myte (might), 126, 188, 190, 191, 222, 225, 226, 236, 248
dowtir (laughter) 126, 133, 134, 219, 221, 314	myty (mighty) 223, 238, 283
faut (fought) 136, 221, 260	not (naught) 268
fite (fight) 136, 184, 185, 189, 216, 230, 239, 256, 281, 313	nowt (naught) 104
fytyng (fighting) men 270	nyte 132, 284
hey (high) 44; heyer (higher) 220	ny (nigh) 159, 229
hite (1. was cald, 2. promist) 5, 133, 158, 264, 265, 316; be- hite 297	rite, ryte (right) 128, 129, 131, 153, 156, 225, 226, 228, 276
knites-mete (providing for knights) 293	say (saw) 191
knyte, knite (knight) 133, 134, 135, 186, 187, 217, 227, 230, 233, 234, 235, 237, 239, 249, 258, 276, 307, 313 &c	sey (saw), 89, 191, 363
	sowte (sought) 147
	streite, streith (straightway) 202
	thorow, thorw (through) 78
	thorow oute (throughout) 186, 271
	thoute (thought) 245, 266

The only exception I have notist in turning over some of the pages is *wright*, p. 240, and the footnote to it says that it is "written in a later hand" upon an erasure.<sup>1</sup> The other way of avoiding the

<sup>1</sup> Cherborgh, p. 257, for Cherbourg in France, has justifiably the final *gh*, though the Corpus MS reads 'Cherborow.'

guttural *gh*, which Capgrave occasionally has recourse to, is by using *th*: *brithnesse* 58, *manslaught* manslaughter, 185, 218; *rith* right 81, 131, *rithful* 132, 312, *rithfully* 40, *onrithfully* 209.

Having thus Capgrave's autograph forms, Dr. Horstmann would turn to Mr. Hingeston's print of the Prolog to *St. Katherine* from Arundel 396; and what would he find in it? For Capgrave's *rite* (once *rith*), 'ryght' 337, 339 (twice), 340 (twice), 345, 351; for Capgrave's *knite* or *knyte*, 'knyght, knyghtes,' 345; for Capgrave's *hey* high, 'heygh' 338 (though 'hey' 349/1); for Capgrave's *brith*, 'bryght' 341; for Capgrave's *say* or *sey* saw, 'saugh' 343, 347, 348; for Capgrave's *thorow*, 'thurgh' 347, 354; for Capgrave's *not*, 'nought' 350; for Capgrave's *broute* and *soute* p. t., 'isought' and 'brought' pp. 351. And that, to emphasize his love of *gh*, the Arundel man spelt *how* 'hough' 347.

On turning to Mr. Hingeston's foot-note collations, Dr. Horstmann would find, for the non-Capgrave forms *ryght*<sup>1</sup> 337, 339, 'rith Ar. 168, ryth Rawl.:' 340, 'ryth' Rawl. (righte Ar.); for the non-Capgrave *bryght* 341, 'brith' Ar. bryght Rawl. (bad); for the non-C. *saugh* 343, 348, the Capgrave 'sey' or 'saw' (347, 348) Ar. Rawl.; for the non-C. *knyghtes* 345, 'knythis' Ar., 'knyte' Rawl.; for the non-C. *thurgh* 347, 354, the Capgrave 'thorow' (through 354), Ar. 'thorw' (thorow 354) Rawl.; for the non-C. *hough* the Capgrave 'how' Rawl. ('who' Ar., both 'who' in 349); for the non-C. *nought* (350), the Capgrave 'not' Rawl. (noght Ar.); for the non-C. *Isought* 351, the Capgrave 'soute' Rawl. (sought Ar.). And the conclusion, before turning to the MSS themselves, would be, that of the three dealt with by Hingeston, the Rawlinson MS had most of Capgrave's forms, Arundel 168 rather fewer, and Arundel 396 least of all. This conclusion would be strongly confirmed by the rest of Arundel 396, for tho in 53/597-600 its *hyght*, *ryght*, *nyght* are the same in Rawl.<sup>2</sup>, yet in 61/737-40 its *whyght*, *nyght*, *dyght*

<sup>1</sup> Ar. 168 and Rawl. have the bad 'ryght' or 'righte' in 351; and in 345 Rawl. has the bad 'rygth.'

<sup>2</sup> In 65/814-17 Ar. has *spyrtyt*, *nyght*, *lyght*, and Rawl. badly *spryght*, *nyght*, *lyght*; in 185/225-7 Ar. has *fyghte*, *lyghte*, and Rawl. *fyght*, *lyght*; in 211/664-5 both have wrongly *plyght*, *nyght*, as they have *syght*, *bryght* in 225/888-9, and 229/953-5, and *bryght*, *lyght* in 251/1345-7.

are *wyte*, *nyth*, *dyth* in Rawl. ; in 73/939-41, its *fyte*, *hyghte* are *fyte*, *hyte* in Rawl. ; in 79/1-3 its *bryght*, *ryght* are *bryth*, *ryth* in Rawl. ; in 91/191 its *vorgh* is *vow* in Rawl. ; in 93/237-8 its *thought*, *aborgh* are *pouth*, *aboutth* in Rawl. ; in 117/615-16 its *nought*, *Ibought* are *nouth*, *Iboute* in Rawl. ; in 123/722-4, 205/568-70 its *nought*, *thought* are *noute*, *thowte* in Rawl. ; in 127/783-4 its *whygt*, *disspyght* are *wyght*, *dispyte* in Rawl. ; in 141/1024-7, and 227/919-22 its *thought*, *nought*, *brought* are *thowte*, *noute*, *broute* in Rawl. ; in 163/1373-5 its *whyt*, *endyght* are *wyght*, *endyth* in Rawl. ; in 177/106-8 its *myght*, *sight* are *nyght*, *syte* in Rawl. ; in 179/149-52 its *whight*, *ryght*, *bryght* are *whyte*, *ryght*, *bryte* in Rawl. ; in 217/751-4 its *nought*, *thought*, *bought* are *nouth*, *thowth*, *bouth* in Rawl. ; in 247/1266-7 its *nought*, *bought* are *noght*, *bowte* in Rawl. Moreover, these non-Capgrave forms continue in Arundel 396, as *hight* 264/81 ; *right*, *fight*, *might* 264/93-6 ; *myght*, *nyght*, *right* 266/135-8, &c. &c. *rightes* (= rites), *knyghtes*, *ryghtes* 271/324-7 ; *nought*, *bought*, *sought* 286/786-9, though in 267/163-5 the correct *wryte*, *knyte* occur, as doubtless elsewhere. And besides the wrong form in the rymes, Arundel 396 has them in the body of the lines : *sorgh*, *novght* 13/193-5 (*soute*, *not*, Rawl.), *thorgh-oute*, *purgh-oute* 47/495, 508 (*thorow-oute*, *porw-out*, Rawl.), *movght* 53/588 (*mouth*, Rawl.), *thought* 195/400 (*pouth*, Rawl.), &c. &c.

In the face of this large number of gutturals in the Arundel MS 396, it is clear that any moderately careful editor would not have adopted it as the basis of his text before he had examined the Rawlinson MS, of which Hingeston's collation had—or ought to have—warned him that it was nearer Capgrave's forms.<sup>1</sup> Nevertheless, Dr. Horstmann copied the Arundel 396, sent it to press, authorised the setting of the whole of it—tho' he knew of the existence of the Rawlinson MS;—and not until the whole of the Arundel MS had been in type for several months did Dr. H. go to Oxford and collate the Rawlinson MS (of which he had not told me), and then found of course that it was a better MS than the Arundel one, independently

<sup>1</sup> Of course other forms in the Arundel MS differ from Capgrave's in the *Chronicle*; for *dreyn*t drownd, *Kath.* 206/592, the *Chron.* has *dronch* 133, *dronchin* 74, and so on.



of the *gh*, which I knew nothing of till I took up the *Chronicle* some three weeks ago. I was savage about it,—as a testing collation could have been made at any time by Miss Parker at slight expense—but would not authorise the cost of setting the whole of the Rawlinson MS, as the text is poor, both in language and subject, and of little worth beside Capgrave's autograph *Chronicle*. I could not help telling Dr. Horstmann that his edition was a 'mess;' and I think his feeling that it is so, must have been one of the reasons that made him throw it up. I don't pretend to set myself over him as a person who hasn't made as bad or worse messes; no doubt I've made plenty more. The only thing is to confess the blunder, and beg our members to excuse it. All our workers can't be of the first class; we must often put up with some of the third and fifth; they show their good will, and we take the will for the deed. No very great harm has been done. (Some day we ought to have an edition of the *Chronicle* and this *St. Katharine* by a real language Editor.)

As to the gutturals, I feel sure that they had gone or were going in many parts of England much earlier than is generally supposed,<sup>1</sup> and I think that an occasional miswritten ryme like *white* (for *wight* active), *lizte*, *myzte*, in my *Parliament of Devils* volume, E. E. T. S. 1867, no. 24, p. 72/450-4—besides the like ones in the Text below—shows how the gutturals were pronounst even when they were written *ȝ* or *gh*. And as, according to my friend Mr. Walter Rye, all the good things and men in England come from Norfolk—or if they don't, ought to—I conclude that our standard English owes to Norfolk its exemption from harsh gutturals.

Thus far had I written (and printed) when a comment from our good friend Prof. Skeat came in, which makes me hope that fonetic folk will some day allow that Chaucer didn't guggle his *gh* as most, if not all, of the teachers of pronunciation have hitherto made him do. If any one in his England was subject to French influence, and was 'educated,' he was that man.

"I entirely deny your point about the loss of guttural coming from Norfolk! For it certainly came from France. It was the

<sup>1</sup> Compare the later 'slitingly,' 1654, *Nicholas Papers*, ii. 51 (1892); 'slitly,' *ibid.* 136; 'slited,' *ibid.* 212 (A.D. 1655).

natural result of Frenchmen learning English; and of Englishmen (peasants) copying their superiors. The guttural *gh* became 'vulgar,' and was purposely got rid of. More's the pity. *ghit* becomes *st* in *Domesday Book*! Such a change began first in the South, in Sussex and Kent,<sup>1</sup> &c., where French words most abounded. Then it attacked Mercian, and lastly Northumbrian; and to this day the guttural lingers in Scotland. That's the geography, and the facts. For all you know, Capgrave may have had a French-speaking father or grandfather. Or even being in the church would have helped. The educated classes sided, in *this* respect, with the nobles.

As for *th*, as *rith* for *right*, it would occur anywhere where the scribe was well up in Anglo-French. Why, it occurs in Havelok (and in *Domesday Book*, I believe) over and over again: all it proves is that the scribe was better up in writing out Anglo-French than in writing English: a *very* common thing. So much so that our modern spelling is wholly Anglo-French. See my *Principles of Etymology*, Series I, p. 304.

The Arundel MS 396 is a vellum one of about 1440, with red initials. At the end of its last treatise, one on the Mass, leaf 130 back, is:—

"Iste liber est ex dono domine Kateryne Babyngton, quondam subpriorisse de Campseyo<sup>2</sup>; & si quis illum alienauerit sine licencia

<sup>1</sup> I don't recollect any MS that avoids *gh* like Capgrave's *Chronicle* does.—F.

<sup>2</sup> The nunnery of "Campes, Campess, or Campsey Priory, in Suffolk,"—Dugdale's *Monasticon*, ed. Caley, Ellis and Bandinel, 1830, vol. vi, Part I, p. 583—7. "An Austin nunnery for the Nuns of the Order of Fontevrault" (Taylor, *Index Monasticus*, p. 99). "The Nunnery was six miles from Woodbridge, lying on the right of the high road." Its "ruins are now inconsiderable." "Previous to the dissolution there were nineteen Nuns of this house, besides the Prioress." "Before Ric. I, Theobald de Valoines gave all his estate in this place to his two sisters, Joan and Agnes, with design that they should build a Monastery to the honour of the blessed Virgin Mary, wherein they and other religious women might live to the service of God. Accordingly they founded here a Nunnery of the Order of St. Austin, of which the foresaid Joan was the first Prioress." K. John confirmed the founder's design by Charter; John de Framlingham, clerk, gave the nuns the manor and advowson of the Church of Karleton, and their third charter "relates to the foundation of a chantry at" Campsey Ashe "by Maud de Lancaster, Countess of Ulster, which in 1354 was removed to Rokchall in Brusyard." As to this, see also Dugdale, vol. vi, Part III, p. 1468.

"*Campsey-Ash*, a parish in the hundred of Loes in the county of Suffolk, 2½ miles to the E. of Wickham Market, its post town, which is a station on the Framlingham Junction of the East Suffolk railway. The par. lies on the E. side of the river Deben, and was the site of a nunnery of the order of St. Clare, founded in the latter part of the 12th century by Theobald de Valoines, and to

vna cum consensu dictarum [sanctimonialium ?] conuentus, maledictionem dei omnipotentis incurrat, & anathema sit!"

The Arundel MS 168 is of paper, with a vellum wrapper to each sheet, and is a thin folio written in double columns, about 1440—50 A.D. Forty-six pages of collations of it are on p. 405—450 below.

The Arundel MS 20 is a paper MS in double columns, ab. 1450—60, and has the *gh*. It has also the *xal*, *xulde* of the Lynn Gilds in the Society's *Gilds*, ed. Toulmin Smith, and other East-Midland texts. I copy, as a sample of Arundel 20, four stanzas that have *gh* rymes:—

lf. 23, bk., col. 1. (Bk. IV, Prol., p. 264 below.)

¶ But *theis* same ij For very werynes 92  
left *their* honour & resynd *their* ryzt.  
Fuþ grete excusse had *thei* in sykkernes ;  
*Thei* seyð *theyr* grete labur & *their* syzt  
A-vaylle *them* ryzt nouzt nor yt myzt ; 96  
for y<sup>e</sup> more *thei* dyd, y<sup>e</sup> more *thei* had to do :  
wherfor in sykkernes *thus* *thei* twoo 98  
¶ Resynd *theyr* ryzt vnto *this* same man . . .

lf. 23, bk., col. 2. (Bk. IV, Ch. 2, p. 267 below.)

**T**han) y<sup>e</sup> romayns with a cummyn assent 162  
letters *prevyly* off grete sentence wryzt,  
And in-to brytand to constanyne *them* sent,  
In whyche *thei* preyd hym, os he was knyzt,  
That he cum helpe *them* ageyns *this* tyrant to fyzt ;<sup>1</sup> 166  
*Thei* wolde be-tray hym, *thei* seyð, he xulde not spede ;  
Thys was *theyr* ende : "cum helpe vs at oure nede." 168

lf. 26, bk., col. 1. (Bk. IV, Ch. 12, p. 286 below.)

Ryzt *thus* yt semys by oure creatore, 785  
god off hevyn, *that* aft made off nouzt,—  
3e take a-wey From) hym *that* dew honore  
*That* he xulde hathe, *that* he Fuþ dere bouzt,  
when *that* in erthe byselye oure helthe he souzte : 789  
*This* same honor gyue 3e to dewls ymagys  
Whyche 3e haue set here solely off stagys. 791

---

which a chantry was attached by Maud de Lancaster. The nunnery, of which there are some remains, had a revenue at the Dissolution of £182 9s., and was given to Sir William Willoughby." Hamilton's *National Gazetteer*, 1868, vol. i, p. 470, col. 1. *Campsie* in Stirlingshire is out of the question.

<sup>1</sup> Note that Dr. Horstmann prints in brackets the wrongly-spelt '*fyght*,' when he supplies the rhyme-word to Capgrave's '*wryte . . knyte*,' which the Arundel scribe has, in this instance, rightly kept.

Arundel MS 20, lf. 28, bk., col. 1, at foot. (Bk. IV, Ch. 18, p. 301 below.)

¶ Thus was she confortyd, & lefte aȝ that nyght	1247
In presone styȝt, in suche oryson alone ;	
The savowre abode, & sum-what of y <sup>e</sup> lyght,	
After y <sup>e</sup> tyme the Aungeȝt was gone :	
He hathe made hyr hardy & stable as y <sup>e</sup> stone :	1251
<i>Ther</i> haȝt no peyn) hyr now remene	
Fro y <sup>e</sup> Feythe nor From) hyr be-leue.	1253

*Gh* rymes occur again, like *nouȝt*, *wrouȝt*, lf. 26, col. 1 ; *nouȝte*, *thouȝt*, lf. 27, col. 1 ; *nouȝt*, *brought*, lf. 27, bk., col. 2 ; *thouȝt*, *nouȝt*, col. 1, &c. &c.

§ 6. *Miscellaneous.* Mr. Thomas Austin has made the Index of Names and Glossary to the Text ; I put the side-notes and headlines ; and as our subscribers expect forewords of some kind to their volumes, I have knocked the present ones together, almost wholly from Mr. Hingeston's editions<sup>1</sup> of the *Chronicle* and *Illustrious Henries* in the Rolls Series. It has been a bore to do this, as other pressing work had to be set aside for it ; but no one else could be got. I cannot give time to hunt out the sources of the fictionary Life or write notes on the text. Dr. Schick's faithful work on his equally worthless *Temple of Glas* by Lydgate, shames me and makes me admire his thoroughness and zeal. He could not have worked more diligently and ably, had his author been Cynewulf, Chaucer, or Shakspeare. I salute and honour him, and those of his nation and of mine<sup>2</sup> who edit in his spirit. At 67, and with five years' work in arrear, I am content to shirk ; and now I am off to bed.—F. J. F.

3, *St. George's Square, London, N. W.*, Feb. 9, 1892, 1 a.m.

P. S.—Capgrave's *De Illustribus Henricis*, says its author, "prides itself on its brevity in its humble panegyrics on the men

<sup>1</sup> There is much research and good honest work in the volumes, for which I feel grateful to their Editor, whom I have so plundered.—He is now the Rev. F. C. Hingeston-Randolph of Ringmore Rectory, near Kingsbridge, Devon, and has, since his *Capgrave*, edited several old texts, Exeter Bishops' Registers.

<sup>2</sup> In 'mine' I include Dr. Mary N. Colvin and her fellow-countrymen. Many of the Old French Text Society's men are of the right sort too ; above all, its Founders, Prof. Paul Meyer and Prof. Gaston Paris, who are an honour to their country.

who bear this name" (p. 100-1: Hen. IV of England). It is divided into three Parts. Part I contains the Lives of the 6 Emperors, Henry I—Henry VI,<sup>1</sup> A.D. 918—1198; Part II, the Lives of the 6 Kings, Henry I—VI of England,<sup>2</sup> A.D. 1100—1446; Part III, shorter Lives of twelve other Henries, A.D. 1031—1406: 1. Henry, King of the Dacians, that is, Eric VI of Denmark (A.D. 1241—1250); 2. Henry I, King of France (1031—59); 3. Henry, son of Richard, King of the Romans (1216—71); 4. Henry, Count of Champagne, made King of Jerusalem in 1192; 5. Henry, Archbishop of Sens (1122); 6. Henry, Duke of Lancaster, grandfather of Hen. IV, died March 13, 1361; 7. Henry Bohun, Earl of Hereford in 1199, died 1220; 8. Henry de Beaumont, died 1340; 9. Henry le Despenser, Bishop of Norwich, the suppressor of Litster's Norfolk rebellion 1381, died Aug. 23, 1406; 10. Henry of Huntingdon, the Chronicler, 1108—1135; 11. Henry, Archdeacon of Ghent, A.D. 1279; 12. Henry de Urimaria, of the Order of the Hermits of St. Augustine, A.D. 1340, D.D. of Paris, a writer of several theological works.

On Henry de Beaumont (1309—33), of the family who had large estates in Norfolk (Dugdale, *Baronage*, ii. 54), Capgrave says, *Ill. Henries*, p. 196:

"I have undertaken to commemorate the memory of the Illustrious Henries; and chief among these it delights me to leave a

<sup>1</sup> A compilation chiefly from the Chronicles of Martinus Polonus and Godfrey of Viterbo, less from Vincent of Beauvais, Matthew of Westminster and Henry of Huntingdon, with an anecdote of St. Jerome.—Hingeston, *De Ill. Hen.*, xx.

<sup>2</sup> From Henry of Huntingdon, Walsingham, Higden's *Polychronicon*, and Giraldus Cambrensis.

As to the dates of Part II, Mr. Hingeston says, *De Ill. Hen.* xxv:—"The fourth and two following Chapters were certainly composed not later than the year 1446, in which Humphrey, Duke of Gloucester, died, as the Author speaks of him in the first of them as still surviving. The 4th and 5th Chapters were probably written not long after the accession of Henry VI in 1421, as there are evident marks in the autograph MS. at the end of the latter of them, that the work was broken off there abruptly, and afterwards resumed with the sixth Chapter; and it is likely that this Chapter was finished between the date last mentioned in it, August 1, 1446, and February 1447, when the Duke of Gloucester died, or Capgrave would certainly have alluded to the death of his great friend and patron."

(On the household of Duke Humphrey, see his major-domo John Russell's *Boke of Nourture* in my edition of *The Babees, Book, or Early English Manners and Meals*, E. E. T. Soc.)

record of those of the name of Beaumont, since I am their servant, and bound to this race by special affection."

Capgrave's Chronicle, tho begun before 1438, p. ix. above, was, I suppose, wound up and sent off, with its Dedication, to Edward IV, directly after his accession to the throne on 4 March, 1461. Like Chaucer's humorous appeal for money to Henry IV—his "*Purse*,"—the work would go to the new King at once; for fresh Sovereigns who bundle old ones out, are soothd by writers' assurances that God and the Right are on the winner's side. They generally do work with the big battalions.

With regard to the silence of *gh*, Mr. Gollancz instances the fact that in stanza 26 of the 13th-century *Pearl*—edited by him in his Series of early Texts, 1891, and by Dr. R. Morris in E. E. T. Soc., 1864—the scribe writes the disyllabic *-ie* as *yghē*: *yghē* eye, *lyghē* lie, to *dyghē* die, *syghē* saw, to *tryghē* try. In stanza 38 he rymes the adverb *hyghē* (meaning *hȳe*) high, with *cortaysȳe*; in 85 the past participle *tyght* with *crysolyt*, *quyt*, and *plyt* (n. plight, which rymes with *tyght*, *nyght*, *myghte* n., in st. 90, and, spelt *plyt*, with *delyt* in st. 93). Prof. Napier also reminds me that Chaucer rymes *plit* plight, with *appetit* in the Merchant's Tale, 473/2335-6 Six-Text;<sup>1</sup> but this is the O. Fr. *plite* condition, not the A. Sax. *plih*t peril. The author of the *Pearl* uses the two indifferently:—Gollancz, *Pearl*, 128. I wait for more MS evidence as to Prof. Skeat's theory.

In 1547, Salesbury says that *gh* is not guttural, and that Englishmen do not like the sound:

"*Gh* has the same sound as our [Welsh] *ch*, except that they sound *gh* softly, not in the neck, and we sound *ch* from the depth of our throats, and more harshly (p. 210); and as it is disagreeable to the English to hear the grating sound of this letter, so Welshmen in the South of Wales avoid it as much as possible."—Ellis, *E. E. Pron.* 779.

<sup>1</sup> Though the Minor-Poems Ryme-Index by Miss Marshall and Miss Porter shows other like rymes, they arise only from scribes' bad spelling. Robert of Brunne, Lincolnshire, in 1338 rymes a *lite* little, with to *fyghte*, Chron. 113/3180, and *sight*, with *desconfit*, ib. 36/1018.

If then, both West and East, the neglect of the guttural had spread far north in the Midlands before Chaucer's time, and was not used by Capgrave in Lynn some thirty years after Chaucer's death, we may fairly assume that "the Father of English Poetry" either didn't sound his *gh* at all,—or if he did, yet so slightly as to avoid all tone of harshness.

In 1569 John Hart writes 'higher' *heiër*, tho' he has *riht, rihtli, lilt*. In 1599, Minsheu evidently hears no guttural in *gh* :

"Gue, Gui, <sup>like</sup> "But if, after *u*, follow *e* or *i*, pronounce as the French Ghe, Ghi." *Guerre, Guide* : as in English Guest, guide : so in Spanish *Guerra* war, *Guía* a guide : sound *Gherra, Ghia*,—except these wordes following" . . .—*Spanish Grammar*, p. 6.

"The Compendious Schoolmaster," 1687, says, p. 14 :

"*Gh* in the middle of a Syllable are but softly pronounced, as in *light, bright, might, night, right*, as also in *thought, straight, strength, slaughter* ; and in *high, thigh, nigh, gh* are not sounded at all."

(As Capgrave was a Norfolk man,<sup>1</sup> we may note this book's "Essex stiles, Kentish miles, Norfolk wiles, many Men beguiles," p. 80. Misyn of Lincoln, in his *Fire of Love*, 1435, has *hily* for 'highly.')

The entry on p. xiv from Gibbons's MS, Harl. 980, p. 231, ff. 120, gives "Houeden fo 649" as its authority for its account of St. Gilbert, and says also "Vid Joh Capgraue in Vit S<sup>ti</sup> Gilberti manu-  
sc[r]ipt ex Museo Rob Kemp milit d Gissing" ; and then, after a list of 11 of the 12 orders of Augustines, adds—

"The 12 An order onely in Norff which had 4 house[s], one of them is falm into the Kings hand, and he gaue it to Walsingham, hite Peterston [in Norfolk, see Dugdale. N. B. the *gh* is left out of *light* cald].

"per Joh Capgraue in vii sermon at Cambridg Ann. 1422, et ex museo supradicto."

The doubt exprest on p. xiii as to the MS "Guide to the Antiquities of Rome" being in Capgrave's hand, is settled by the following letter from Prof. Napier :

"Southfield, Cowley, Oxford.


"Wednesday, March 16, 1892.

"MY DEAR FURNIVALL,

"I was in All Souls' Library this afternoon, and looked carefully at MS 17. The result of my examination confirms your supposition. The handwriting of the flyleaves is *entirely different* from that of the body of the MS, and *cannot* be by the same scribe.

"Then I looked at the facsimile of the Cambridge MS of the Chronicle (given in *Hingeston's* ed. of the Chronicle), and I found

<sup>1</sup> The book contains, says the Author to the Reader (A 6 back), "some Raptures of Poetry on the Commandments, and on the Dolorous Ruins, and Glorious Resurrection [May 29, 1683] of the most Renowned City of London, from the devouring Flames [Sept. 4, 1666]," p. 104-6.

that that is again in a different hand, *i. e.* that neither the flyleaves in MS 17 (All Souls'), nor the body of the MS No. 17, are in the same handwriting as the Camb. Univ. MS of the Chronicle. All three are different. Thence follows, that if the Camb. Univ. Lib. MS of the Chronicle is really Capgrave's Autograph, that MS 17 (All Souls' = the Latin treatise on the Creeds) was not written by him. It is true that the sign  occurs twice in MS 17 (on p. 44, and on the last page), but that might have been copied from the MS from which MS 17 was copied.

"After examining the MS myself, I got Macray to come over with me to the All Souls' Library, and he looked at it, and came to precisely the same conclusion that I had formed.

"Yours ever, A. S. NAPIER."

18 March, 1892. Prebendary Hingeston-Randolph kindly sends me

"A word about Friend Arrek and Newcourt's List of the Rectors of St. Pancras', City (p. xxiii-iv). Some of the Canterbury Registers having been lost, the record of his Institution is no doubt lost with one of them. I suspect he came in between Rich. de Sudbury, instituted in 1326, and Adam de Branketre (who survived till Islip's time, but was instituted by a Bishop whose Register has perished). The Registers of Simon de Mepham, John de Stratford, John de Ufford, and Thomas de Bradewardin (1328—1349) have perished. As Islip became Archbishop late in 1349, and Branketre was, therefore, instituted before the end of that year, I think it very likely that Arrek was instituted, and either died or resigned, between the years 1327 and 1350. He died, it seems, at Lynn, probably of the 'Black Death,' which desolated England in 1349, and was especially destructive in Norfolk."

### CORRIGENDA.

p. 14, v. 224,	read rewardē	instead of rewar
p. 40, v. 388,	„ y <sup>t</sup>	„ „ <i>pat</i>
p. 40, v. 394,	„ knew	„ „ know
p. 78, v. 1043,	„ a rest	„ „ a-rest
p. 81, v. 28,	„ wedded nedys,	„ „ wedded, nedys
p. 148, v. 1156,	„ neybour	„ „ neybour[s]
p. 172, v. 54,	„ bapty <sup>m</sup>	„ „ baytym
p. 230, v. 1003,	„ to	„ „ te
p. 263, note v. 68,	„ trost	„ „ trust
p. 276, v. 467,	„ an ful	„ „ anful
p. 287, note, add 804	Wherfor	
p. 316, add note :	1685 Rawl. hym instead of hem	
p. 354, v. 507, read No[n]	instead of N[o]n	
p. 372, v. 1036, add to brent :	<sup>1</sup>	<sup>1</sup> <i>ul.</i> rent ; and so in the notes : - Rawl. rent



As there's an empty page, and I've long been exercised about the pronunciation of *i* in Shakspeare's time, I note that when some fonetic friends told me that Shakspeare pronounst *i* like our *ee* in *meet*, I quoted his Quartos in which *ay*, *aye*, yes, is, as a rule printed *I*,<sup>1</sup> and I took this as proof that Shakspeare's long *i* was the same, or nearly the same, as ours. But seeing that Shakspeare didn't correct his Quartos himself, my fonetic folk at first poohpoohd this *I* as a compo's vulgarism. Now, however, one repeats the late A. J. Ellis, and says that both *aye* and *I* were sounded as our *ai*, *ei*, *a*, in *rain*, *vein*, *vane*. I cannot away with this, further than to admit that the flat and dull long *a* may have existed alongside of our strong and sharp *i*. Scotchmen, I believe, still call *my* 'ma' (*a* in *father*), but then a Scotchman is capable of anything. As Andrew Borde says, "Trust yow no Skot" 59, 326 (E. E. T. Soc.).

In 1586, Baret's *Alvearie* clearly gives the diphthongal sound to *Ride*, *Hide* :—

"**I** Which standeth in the place of the third vowell, and hath bene taken for a single sound, is now so much doubted upon, that it is called in question both of his place and also of his name. It should be sounded (they say) like *ee*, as *Rid*, *Legere*, *Hide*, *Cauere*, to be pronounced as we corruptlie spell, *Reel*, *Heed*. And *Ride*, *Equitare*, *Hide*, *Abdere* (which commonly is written with *I*), as they say, should be written *Reid*, *Heid*, sounding *I* like the Greekes *ei diphthongus impropria*. But of this matter I said before, I would not here determine, leauing it to higher iudges . . . . Wherein you may be better resolued, if ye will consult with Maister H. Chesters booke, which he hath diligentlie written of Orthographie, after long and painfull trauell (as it well appeareth) in sundrie languages."

As Mr. Ellis has not (so far as I can see) quoted Minshew's *Spanish Grammar*, 1599, on the point, I extract the passage here, for I think it makes for my side :

*Definition of Orthopæia.* "Orthographie . . Heereto belongeth *Orthopæia*, which is a right rule of true speaking, of *ὀρθός* right, and *ἔπος* word, that in speaking men pronounce not more grosse or smal, then the nature of language will allow, or otherwise then the accustomed

<sup>1</sup> As the derivation of *ay*, *aye* is unknown, Mr. Hy. Bradley, the President of our Philological Society, suggests that it is *I* itself. In Plato's Dialogs *ἔγωγε* is often used for Yes ; and in some English dialects *Nich* ('Not I,' as we say) is used for No.

maner of pronunciation vsually permitted therein, as *Vino*, wine, not to pronounce it as Englishmen doe, *Veino*, but smaller, as they pronounce the double *ee*, *Veeno*; *Dios*, God, not *Deios*, but *Dheeos*. But of this hereafter in the letters more at large."—p. 5.

I three kinds. "I There be three kindes of I in the Spanish, that is, small *i*, Greeke *y*, and *j Jota*, or consonant. These two, *i*, *y* with a very small slender sounde, as the French and Italians doe, which is as the double *ee* in English, 'wee, shee, fee, decree': so in Spanish, *Tiráno*, a tirant, *Teerano*: *Vida*, life, *Veeda*, and not A note for Englishmen. as Englishmen pronounce *Teyrano*, *veida*, which all other nations mislike in hearing them speaking Latine; saying *Propino tibi*, they pronounce *Propeino tibi*,<sup>1</sup> which I would wish they woulde but marke, and take notice thereof: for the French, Italian, and Spaniard, do learne and are taught by their Schoolemaisters to pronounce the Latine different from their owne toong, otherwise one nation shoulde not vnderstand another speaking the Latine. But in this toong as in the Italian and French, they must obserue except they will fal into the vice of *Iotacismus* and be laughed at, and not be vnderstood by strangers when they speake or reade."

I think Minsheu meant that the Elizabethans pronounst long *i* as we do, as Mulcaster did in 1582, and not as long *a* in *wane*, tho' I admit that his words are consistent with his *ey* being our *ei*, *a*, in *vein*, *vane*. And he gives the Spanish diphthong "*ei* and *ey*, where *e* is more sounded than *i*, as *Réy* a king, *Léy* a law."

But Baret's acceptance of "Maister H. Chester" as the leading authority of his time, set me to find out who "H. Chester" was. His name, as given by Baret, was not in any Catalog in the British Museum; but a reference to the Bodleian Librarian, Mr. E. B. Nicholson, brought from one of his Assistants, Mr. W. H. Allnutt (an oarsman, and a fellow-member of mine in the National Amateur Rowing Association), the explanation that "Maister H. Chester" was no other than the well-known John Hart, the author of the English *Orthographie*, in MS 17 Reg. C. 7, Brit. Mus., A.D. 1551; in print, revised and with a fonetic appendix, 1569. The mistake as to his

<sup>1</sup> This confirms what the Dutchman, Justus Lipsius, said in 1586: "Pronunciant etiam nunc (ita accepi) recte soli pœne omnium Europeorum Britanni: quorum est *Regeina*, *Ameicus*, *Veita*. Recte, dico, quia non aliud insonuit hæc longa quam EI diphthongum."—*De recte Pron. Lat. Ling.*, p. 23. (Weymouth, *E. E. Pron.*, 1874, p. 18.) So too, Salesbury in 1550—67 blames those who "with their Iotacisme corrupting the pronunciation, make a diphthong of it (I), saying: *veidei*, *teibeï*, for *vidi*, *tibi*."

name arose from his title-page saying his book was by "*I. H. Chester Heralt*," and was made by more folk than John Baret; at least by Bullokar in 1580, and Gill in 1619.—*Ellis*, i. 35.

Well, I lookt thro' Hart's MS, and workt thro' his book, and I do not hesitate to say that every honest man not blinded by a theory *must* admit that Hart and his followers sounded his long *i* (or *ei*) much as we do, or at any rate made a markt difference between the sounds of our 'vein, vane,' and 'vine.' The evidence from his lists below is incontestable. I quote first from his autograph MS.<sup>1</sup>

MS Reg. 17 C 7, p. 101 or lf. 53, foot, by Jn. Hart, 1551.

"the same *e* lengthned (p. 102 or leaf 53 bk.) will serve for the commune abused diphthongs *ea*, *ai* or *ay*, & *ei* or *ey*, the powers of which voels we now myx together confuzibly, making the sound of the same long *e*, and not of any parfaict *ea*. diphthong; as in theis examples of the *ea* in *feare*, which we pronounce, sounding no part of the *a*.

*ai*, or *ay*. And for the *ai* or *ay*, as in this word *faire*, pronunge nether the *a*, or *i*, or *y*: also in *saieth*, where we abuse a thriphthong.

*ei*, or *ey*. Also *ei* or *ey* we pronounce not in theis wordes *cheine* and *theym*, and such lyke; where we sound the *e* long, as in all the others.

*ee*. Now for the *ee* we abuse in the sound of (p. 103, lf. 54), the *i* long; as in this sentence, "Take heed the birdes doo not feed on our seed"; also

*ie*. for the *ie* in *chief* and *priest*; in likewise for the *eo*, as in *people*, we onli sound the *i* long. We also abuse the *eo* in the sound of the *u* voel, as in *icoperdi*, which we pronounce *inperdi*.

*oo*. The *oo* we have abused as afore is said.

Thus now knowing the power of the voels, and considering the nature and office of diphthongs, we see how theis foresaid doo us not onli no pleasure, but great displeasure. Now lett us understand how part of theis foresaid, and others, shall serve us, and doo (p. 104) us great pleasure: even as colours necessari for us lyvely to contrefait the image of our pronounciation.

*au*. First the *au*, is rightly used as in *paul* and *law*, but not *law*.

*ua*. Then the *ua*, is wel used in *uarre*, for *warre*, and in *hvat*, for *what*.

*ei*. Further the *ei*, is wel and properli used in *bei*, for *by*; in *weif*, for *wife*; and in *seid*, for *side*.

*eu*. Also *eu*, we use properli in *feu*, for *few*; in *deu*, for *deu*, and such lyke.

*ue*. The *ue* as in *question*; in *huen*, for *when*; in *wel* for *well*.

*iu*. Also the *iu* as in *triuth*, for *trueth*; in *rebiuk*, for *rebuke*; and in *riule* for *rule*.

---

<sup>1</sup> Both the MS and book are in course of copying, and will be edited for the Early English Text Society. Will any open-minded fonetic man volunteer for the work?

*ui.* And the *ui* alone for our (p. 105, lf. 55) false sounding of *we*; and as in *huich*, for *which*; *witnes*, for *witnesse*, and such like . . .”

That Hart in 1551 pronounced *by*, *life*, *side*, much as we do, is clear. Let us take next his revised and printed book of 1569:—

Hart's *Orthographie*, 1569, fol. 43, p. 2.

“Now wil I shew you examples of the Diphthongs made of two short vowels, and of others of one short and of another long. And then of *ua*, *ue*, *ui*, triphthongs. With short vowels, as thus (*ui uil reid bei ionder ei, ie, iu, ou. uel, huęr de uat was uelner takn bei de iung hound*) which is written for (we wyll ride by yonder well where the Wat [hare] was wel neare taken by the yong hound) which doe come very often in our speach.

Of diphthongs whereof one vowell is short, and the other long as (*iu ua, ue, uęr waking in de fourt<sup>t</sup> tour, huęr az de bue<sup>1</sup> did pouęr uatęr upon de huęt iu, ou. flour.*) which I write for (you were waking in the fowerth tower, when as the boye did poure water vppon the wheate flower) which also doe come verie often.

And for triphthongs as (*bi ueiz ov de huęiz buęi*) for *ieu.* ‘be wise of the hoyes bowy.’ And (*hark de kat dęt<sup>t</sup> nięu huętz ię milk de ięu*), for ‘hark the Cat doth mewe, whiles you milke the yowe.’ And a Basin and *eaur*, for ‘cawer,’ and certaine others as will be scene hereafter. And for three vowels comming together, and making (lf. 44, pa. 1)

*iü.* two sillables, as in example (*de viuęr sęt, siuęr it is puęr*) for (the vewer sayth, sure it is pure) & as in these wordes (*dis beięr iz heięr ov pouęr den de deięr bei hiz frięr*), For (this bier [buyer] is higher of power, than the dier by his fire).”

Hart's book, then, is consistent with his MS. He pronounced *ride*, *by*, *wise*, *whiles*, *buyer*, *higher*, *dyer*, *fire*, much as we do.

Now look thro' the lists of words that I have taken from the italic fonetic part of Hart's book. Let us start with the flat *ā* sound of “*vane*, *vein*, *vain*, *wain*, *wane*, *may*,” &c., which one of my fonetic friends says that all the English, American and German authorities agree in holding to have been the pronunciation of long *i* in Shakspeare's time, when John Hart livd and wrote.

Hart's *e* = *aj* or *ā*, in *may*, *wane*.

akuętantas (acquaintance)	bręđing
aluęz (always)	bręđs (breaths)
a-uę (away)	<sup>2</sup> chęr (chair)
bęr (bear vb.)	dęl (deal)
bręk	dęz (days)
bręđd (breath'd)	ech <sup>2</sup> (each)

<sup>1</sup> Hart's *e* has a curl or tail under it.

<sup>2</sup> As the printers havnt Hart's symbol for *ch*, they print *ch*.

er (ear), Fr. *est le regne, et le renah*  
 eđer (either)  
 ekstrēm  
 ezili (easily)  
 fer (fear) fēr (fair)  
 grēt (great)  
 hebriu (Hebrew)  
 huēr (where)  
 konstreñ (constrain)  
 lęing (laying)  
 lęrn (learn)  
 lęv (leave) lęving (leaving)  
 maintęner (maintainer)  
 mę (may)  
 męning (meaning)  
 nęr (near)  
 obę (obey)  
 pęr (pair)  
 persęv (perceive)  
 pęrz (pairs)

pented (painted)  
 plęnli (plainly)  
 Fr. *pain* (bread) pęn  
 L. *quę*, Fr. kę  
 rędi (ready)  
 reseving (receiving)  
 rezonable (reasonable)  
 sę (say) sęd (said)  
 seing (saying)  
 serten (certain)  
 sęt' (saith)  
 seven (seven)  
 sez (says)  
 spēk (speak) spēking (speaking)  
 stęd and stęid (stayed)  
<sup>1</sup>tęching (teaching)  
 đę (they)  
 đę wer (they were)  
 đęr (their)  
 đęrin (therein) đęz (these)

Hart's *ei*, our long *i* in *life, thine, &c.*

bei (by)  
 boldlei  
 defęind (defined)  
 deivers (divers *adj.*), *deiverslei*  
 deuided  
 deuidz  
 dezeir, dezeiring  
 diskreidb *ei* (I)  
 enterpreiz  
 especialei (especialęi, 56 bk.)  
 feind (find) feindet' (findeth)  
 feiv (five, 5)  
 fitlei (and by error? fitli)  
 Florenteins  
 hierbei (hereby)  
 hui (why)  
 huolei (wholly)  
 indifrentlei  
 komodiuzlei  
 komonlei  
 krusefęing (crucifying)  
 leif (life) leik (like)  
 leivli vois (living voice)  
 mei (my) mein (mine)

meind  
 partlei pastein  
 peip (pipe)  
 perfetlei  
 perseited (? meaning, 57 bk.)  
 prezentlei (now)  
 satisfęi satisfęid  
 seifring (cyphering)  
 sertenlei  
 signifeing  
 signifeiet' (signifieth)  
 singularlei  
 sufisientlei  
 teul (tied)  
 teim (time)  
 đerbei (thereby)  
 treiflz (trifles)  
 triulei  
 uniformlei  
 ureit (write)  
 ureiter ureiting  
 verclei  
 weiz or uaiiz (-wise :) kontrari-, such-,  
 đis-, uđer-

<sup>1</sup> *ch* is printed because we havn't Hart's single letter for it.

Hart's *i*, our *ee* in *teeth*, &c.

apir (appear)	mīter (metre)
aspīr (aspirate)	nīdful
aspīrd (aspirated)	nīds (needs)
bī (be)	prosideth (proceedeth)
bīing (being)	L. <i>qui</i> , Fr. <i>kī</i>
bīlīv (believe)	rīd (read)
bīis (bless)	rīding (reading)
briḡli (briefly)	sī (see)
<sup>1</sup> chīfest (chiefest)	sīk (seek)
<sup>1</sup> chīz (cheese)	sīmd (seemd)
derīvd (derived)	spīch <sup>1</sup> (speech)
exercīz	spīdi (speedy)
exercīsing	striḡ (the French have) 'litl striḡs under der konsonants.'
gīv (give)	tīth (teeth) <sup>2</sup>
griḡ (Greek)	tītl (title)
griḡks (Greeks)	t'ri (three)
hī (he) 'ui mā sī, hī' (we may see, he)	to wīt (to wit)
in stīd (instead)	undiskriḡ
īvn (even)	( <i>hīh, līht, resītet</i> (reciteth) <i>riht, rihli</i> , Hart sounded with short <i>i</i> .)
kīp (keep)	
līkt of (liked of)	
mīt (meet)	

Hart's *a* was our *α* in *father*. He has *ages*, *blām*, *d-klar*, *frām*, *frāing*, *gāv* (*gave*), *gras* (*grace*), *hāv*, *hāvīng*, *īmītat*, *lāburs*, *lādi*, *mād* (*made*), *māket*, *nāms* (*names*), *plāsed*, *plāces*, *sām* (*same*), *tu separāt*, <sup>3</sup>*shāmfast* (*shamefast*), <sup>3</sup>*shāps* (*shapes*), *spāk*, *ṭabl*, *ṭāk* (*take*), *thāms* (*Thames*), *wrāt az dē spāk*. Hart gives fonetic transcriptions of French, &c. On leaf 57, he says—

“iu me sī bei dīz litl treatīz, ei hāv bin a traveler bi-īond dē seas, emong vulgār tungz, ov huīch, dāt smaul knōlēz ei hāv, hat bin dē kauz of dīs mein enterpreiz.”

From the above lists and extracts it is abundantly clear that Hart and his followers did *not* sound the *i* in *mine*, &c., like the *ei*, *a* in our *vein*, *vane*. What other folk didn't? At least Mulcaster, I think; also Bullokar<sup>4</sup> (next page).

In his *Elementaire*, 1582, Mulcaster says (Ellis, *E. E. Pron.*, 912)—

“I . . . soundeth now sharp, as *giue* [gyve], *thriue*, *aliue*, *vīue*, *tītle*, *bīble*; now quik, as *giue*, *īue*, *siue*, *tītle*, *bīble*, which sounds ar to be distinguished by accent, if acquaintance will not serue in much reading.”

Ben Jonson in 1640 (*Ellis* 116), and when our long *i* was well establisht, shows us how to interpret Mulcaster's 'sharp' above. He says—

<sup>1</sup> *ch* is printed because we havn't Hart's single letter for it.

<sup>2</sup> *ē* *ī* in *tīth*, huīch dē kómon man, and mani lernd, dū sound in *ē* dīphthongs *ei* and *īu*. leaf 47, p. 2.

<sup>3</sup> *sh* is printed because we haven't Hart's single symbol for it.

<sup>4</sup> See his fonetic writing in *Ellis* 838—45, and make your own lists from it.

"I . . . is a Letter of a double power. As a Vowell in the former or single Syllables, it hath sometimes the sharpe accent ; as in *binding. minding. pining. whining. wiving. thriving. nine. thine.* Or, all words of one Syllable qualified by *e.* But, the flat in more, as in these—*bill. bitter. gully, little.* incident. and the like . . . In Syllables, and words compos'd of the same Elements, it varieth the sound, now sharpe, now flat ; as in *give, give. alive, live. drive, driven. till.*"

And Gil in 1621 says of our long *i* :

"retinebimus antiquum illum et masculium sonum, atque unâ etiam laudem quam Justissimus Lips[i]us nobis detulit in Reginâ, in amicâ, vitâ," &c.—Weymouth, p. 18.

How ancient this long *i* (as we sound it) is, I must leave others to find out. That it existed in Shakspeare's time is certain ; and we need not believe that he said 'ā want mā wān' when he needed a cup of sack, or cald a girl 'mā lāf' when he meant 'my life.' Our late and lamented friend, A. J. Ellis, tho' he inclined far too much to the *i = a* theory, thus sumd up his views (*E. E. Pron.* i. 116) :—

"If the hypothesis here adopted for the pronunciation of long *i* by Palsgrave and Bullokar ; Salesbury, Smith and Hart ; and Gill, namely (*ii, ei, øi*) be correct, we have the phenomenon of the co-existence of two extreme sounds (*ii, øi*) with their link (*ei*), during the greater part of the xvth century, bringing the pronunciation of the xvth and xvith centuries almost together upon one point."

Bullokar, in "Bullokar's Booke at large, for the Amendment of Orthographie for English speech," 1580, tho' he gives only one vowel and one consonant sound to *i* and to *y* (p. 5), yet practically distinguishes between the short and long sounds of the vowel, and writes with his accented *ÿ* for long *i*.<sup>1</sup> His short sound is *i* or *y*: *thing, lyk = lick* ; he contrasts 'too *win*, or *get*,' with *wÿn*, *wÿnd*, and 'too *pÿn, thÿn*' and *wÿnd* with *thin*. Here are some of his long *i* words :

besÿd	lÿf	rÿnd	wrÿt
bÿt (bite)	lÿk	rÿp	wrÿten (long)
declÿnatiuz	lÿuz	rÿping	wrÿting
declÿning	merchandÿz	strÿf	wrÿtor
derÿuatiuz	mislÿk	strÿk	wÿld
despÿzed <sup>1</sup>	mÿnd	suffÿciently <sup>2</sup>	wÿli
deuÿd	paradÿc' (-ise)	sÿn (sign)	wÿn
exereÿz <sup>2</sup>	prouÿded	thÿn	wÿnd
fÿl (file)	prÿc' (price)	tÿm	wÿndi
fÿnd	pÿl (pile)	vÿl	wÿuz (wives)
gÿd	pÿn (pine)	whÿt	wÿz
kÿnd			

<sup>1</sup> Compare "a manz nām (name) ; a he'l of the foot, an elun-tre', a heern (Heron) ; onesti, stōnen, stōni, stōn-lÿk,"—p. 26.

<sup>2</sup> These are short *i* in B's *Æsopz Fablez*, 1585.

To the list above, Bullokar's *Æsopz Fabl'z* of 1585 adds, among other words :

abydden	deserybeth	mýceez	strýuingz
abydeth	despýzed	mýn	strykn
aduýzedly	despýzory	outsýdz	sýdz
alyu' (alive)	dezýr	prýc' (price)	sýnz (signs)
a-sýd	dezýred	prýd	týfz
behýnd	dezýring	prýn-tre'	výceez
bird-lym	dezýrouz	reconc'yl	whýl
blýnd	drýfueth	reqýreth	whýlst
brýdl	empýr	reqýt	whýten
brýn	enqýreth	rýndz	wýld
býld (build)	fýnnes	rýp	wýldnes
býlde	grýnd	rýzn	wýzdom
býlding	hýdd	shýning	wýzly
býttn	hýding	smýfling	ydl'
chýding	hýrd	strýf	ydl'nes
chýld	knýf	strýpz	ydl'-land
chýlddern	lýknes	strýu' (strive)	yrn (iron)
chýn (chine)	lým-twizg	strýuorz	

Bullokar's *ei* or *ay* sound was flat, as shown by his 'leizur, their, rein (reign), eight, plain, paier (pair), they, disdain, vain,' &c. 'Fire, desire,' he spells 'fyer, desyer' in 1580, but in *Æsopz Fabl'z*, 1585, they are 'fier, dezýr.'

Every one acknowledges that in 1621 Alexander Gil, Headmaster of St. Paul's School, sounded our long *i*; see his table in his *Logonomia Anglica*, p. 12, contrasting "*kin*, kinne; *kin*, keene; *kjn*, kyne," &c. &c.

Pynson's enlight abridgment (1516) of Capgrave's *Nova Legenda Angliæ* starts with "Here begynneth the Kalendre of the newe Legende of Englande," above a woodblock of the Crucifixion, and then begins

#### ¶ The Prologe.



The firste treatyce of this present boke is taken out of the newe Legende of the sayntys of Englande / Irelande / Scotlande / and Wales, for theym that vnderstande not the Laten tonge / that they atte therby pleasure may be occupied therwith / and be therby y<sup>e</sup> more apte to lerne the resydue when they shall here the whole Legende / And it is to vnderstande, *that* not onoly those sayntes wer borne in these Countreys be in the sayde Legende and *in* this lytell treatyse / But also dyuerse other blessyd sayntes that were borne beyonde the see / and that came into any of these countreys, Englande / Irelande /



Scotlande / and Wales, doying there ony notable thyng to the honour of god / and to the profyte of the people—as to preche to theym the Faythe of oure Lorde / and to sette the people in good ordre / Or that haue lyued a blessyd lyfe in any of theyse Countreys, to gyue the people example of good luyng /— Be also in the sayde Legende and in this present treatyse, & be accounted to be of that countrey that they so came into / As seynt Augustyne, the appostell of Englande, whom blessyd seynt Gregorye, then beyng pope, sent fro Rome with seynt Paulyn / seynt Laurence the confessoure, and dyuerse other in his company, to preche the faythe of our Lorde to the people of this Realme, then beyng Idolatroures and clerely alyenatyd fro trueth” . . . . .

(The Life of St. Katharine of Alexandria is naturally not in Capgrave's or Pynson's book.)

---

*Capgrave's metrical Life of St. Norbert, A.D. 1440.*

Owing to my not having lookt before to my notes in the copy of Ritson's Bibliography which Henry Bradshaw gave me, I mist till now (28 April, 1892) an autograph (!) English poem of Capgrave's in 7-line stanzas (*ababb, cc*). At Sotheby's Sale of the Savile and other MSS on Feb. 6, 1861, was sold for £150 to "Powis":

‘80. CAPGRAVE (John). The Life, Miracles, and Visions of Saint Norbert, w. th the Rules of Saint Austin, written in English Verse.

‘The original Autograph Manuscript of an hitherto unmentioned English Poem, on 59 Leaves of vellum, in the old oak covers, folio.

‘That this is the original Manuscript there can be little doubt, as its writer, on the reverse of the last leaf informs us of it, stating also the very interesting facts of the date of its composition and for whom composed, viz :


“Go, litil book, to hem þat wil þe rede ;  
 Say you were made to þe Abbot of Derham ;<sup>1</sup>  
 Fas: be Stoke it stant witz-outen drede.

---

<sup>1</sup> West Dereham in Norfolk, 1 mile S.E. of Downham, and 3½ miles N.W. of Stoke Ferry. It was the birthplace of Hubert, Dean of York, afterwards Archbishop of Canterbury, who founded an abbey here about 1188 for Premonstratensian canons from Welbeck. The site was granted to the Dereham family, and the ruins of the abbey were removed in the beginning of the (19th) century.—Hamilton, *Gaz. teer*.

It is to Lords and Gentyls alle in sam,  
 And eke to pore men a very piliance (? pittance) ham.  
 The Abbotes name was called at þatt tyde,  
 The good Jon Wygnale,<sup>1</sup> þat never wold him hide

For no gestis, but rather he wold them seke.  
 The Freris namè þat translate þis story  
 Thei called Jon Capgrave,<sup>2</sup> which, in assumpcion weke,  
 Made a[n] ende of alle his rymyng cry,  
 The 3er of Crist our lord, witz-outen ly,  
 A thousand four hundred & fourty evene.  
 Aftyr þis lyfe, I pray god send us hevене."

 feliciter.]<sup>3</sup>

'The first leaf of the volume has an Illuminated Capital Letter, in which the author is representel as delivering his work to his patron, whom in the proheme he addresses as follows:—

"Joye, grace & pees, love, faith & charite,  
 Evyr rest up-on 3our goodly religious breest,  
 To whom þæt I, with moost humylite,  
 Evyr recomende<sup>4</sup> lowly as 3our preest;  
 And þou3 I be of rymeris now þe leest,  
 Yet wil I now, obeying 3our comandment,  
 Put me in danger in þis Werk present."—Catalog, p. 22.

Now "Powis" who bought the Norbert MS spells "Sir Thos. Phillipps," says Mr. F. S. Ellis; and Sir F. Madden signs "T. P." to "Powis" too. The MS proves to be in the Phillipps Collection at Cheltenham, tho I can't see it in Sir Thomas's Catalog of his MSS, in or near his "Sotheby MSS 1861," p. 301. I have askt Mr. Fenwick's leave to have the MS copied and edited for the E. E. Text Society; but he says it "is one of the MSS that we are not intending at present to allow being copied,"—more's the pity! Let us hope that it has no *gh*, and that its other forms match those of the Gg *Chronicle* (once Moore 40) at Cambridge.

In 1524 Thomas Messingham, in his *Florilegium*, or Lives and Deeds of the Saints of Ireland, reprinted from Capgrave's *Legenda*

<sup>1</sup> John Sadresson, *alias* Wygenhale, occurs 1429.—Dugdale vi. 899.

<sup>2</sup> ? 'Was J. C.' The line has now six feet instead of five.

<sup>3</sup> 'Feliciter per Capgrave' reads the Corpus MS of his *Liber de Illustr. Henricis*, ed. Hingeston, p. 186 n.

<sup>4</sup> ? comende me. I've put, above, þ for y, and 3 for z, and have expanded the contractions.

*Angliæ* the Lives of St. Brigit (Brigida), virgin (p. 202-6), St. Fiacre (p. 390-2), and St. Fursey (p. 393-6). In 1625 at St. Omer was published "The Life of St. Patricke [abridgd from the Latin of Jocelinus, Monk of Furness] . . . Together with the lives of . . . St. Bridgit (translated . . . partly out of Cogitosus . . . and partly out of Capgrave) and of Saint Columba." The translator's dedication is signed "Fr. B. B., one of the Irish Franciscan Friars at Louvain."—Brit. Mus. Catalog.

In 1874 Bp. Stubbs reprinted Capgrave's Life and Miracles of St. Dunstan, from the Bodley Tanner MS 15, collated with the Rawlinson MS A. 294, & Wynkyn de Worle's edition of 1516: *Memorials of St. Dunstan*, Rolls Series, p. 325-353. In 1886 Canon Raine printed Capgrave's Life of St. Oswald, attributed to John of Tynmouth, from the Tanner MS 15, collated with MS A 16 C 1 of the Dean and Chapter of York, in *The Historians of the Church of York and its Archbishops*, Rolls Series, vol. ii. p. 502-512.

# The Life of St. Katharine.

By JOHN CAPGRAVE.

## THE LIFE OF ST. KATHARINE.

BY JOHN CAPGRAVE.

[MS. Rawlinson Poetry 118.]

[fol. 1]  
[1st hand]

## PROLOGUS.

**I**esu cryst,<sup>1</sup> crowne of<sup>t</sup> maydenys alle, <sup>1</sup> MS. *cr̄pst* 1  
 A mayde bar<sup>t</sup> þe, a mayde ʒaue þe soke ;  
 A-mong<sup>t</sup> þe lilies that may not fade ne falle  
 Thou ledyst þese<sup>1</sup> folk, ryth so seyth our<sup>t</sup> boke, <sup>1</sup> MS. *yese*  
 Wyt<sup>h</sup> all her<sup>t</sup> hert euer on þe thei loke ; 5  
 here loue, her plesau<sup>ns</sup> so sore is on þe sette,  
 To sewe þe, lord, & folow þei can nott lette. 7  
  
 Ryth þus be ordyr we wene þou ledyst þe daunce : 8  
 Thi moder folowyth þe next, as reson is,  
 And after othir, þei goo rith as her chaunce  
 Is schap to hem of<sup>t</sup> ioye that may not mys ;  
 But next that lady a-boue alle othir *in* blys 12  
 ffolowyth þis mayde weche we clepe kateryne.  
 Thus wene we, lord, be-cause þat þou and thyne 14  
  
 haue ʒoue to hir<sup>t</sup> of<sup>t</sup> grace so grete plente, 15  
 þat alle þe priuileges weche be in othir found  
 Ar sett *in* hyr as *in* souereyne hye degre,  
 ffor *in* alle þese rychely doth she habound—  
 loke alle þese seyntis þat on þis world<sup>1</sup> so roun<sup>d</sup> 19  
 leuyd her<sup>t</sup> sumtyme, & *in* sum spyce or kynde <sup>1</sup> MS. *werd world,*  
 here uertues shal we *in* þis same mayde fynde. <sup>werd crossed out.</sup> 21

## THE LIFE OF ST. KATHARINE.

BY JOHN CAPGRAVE.

[MS. Arundel 396.]

## PROLOGUS.

<b>A</b> ihesu criste, crowne of maydenes alle,	1	Christ, the Crown of Maidens,
A mayde bare the, a mayde 3ave þe sook ;		
A-mong's the lylyes that may not fade ne falle		
Thov ledest these folk, ryght so seythe the book,		
With al her hert euere on the thei look ;	5	
her love, her plesavns so sore is on the sette,		
To sewe the, lord, and folwe thei can not lette.	7	
Right thus be ordre we wene thov ledest the davnce :	8	comes first;
Thy moder folweth the nexte, as resound is,		next, His Mother;
And after other, thei go ryght as her chavnce		
Is shape to hem of ioye that may not mys ;		
But next that lady a-bove alle other in blys	12	
ffolweth this mayde whiche we clepe kataryne.		third, St. Katharine,
Thus wene we, lord, be-cavse that thov and thyne	14	
have 3ove to hir of <i>grace</i> so greet plente,	15	
That alle thy pryvileges whiche been in other fownde		
Arn sette in hir as in <i>souereyn</i> of (!) heygh de-gree		
ffor in alle these rychely dooth she abounde—		
Looke alle these seyntis that in this world so rounde	19	who had the virtues of all the Saints.
Leved here sumtyme, and in som) spyce or kynde		
here vertues shal we in this same mayde fynde.	21	

<u>Prolog.</u>	Thou 3aue to ion, lord, þe grete euangelyste,	22
	Thin owne presens whan he hens shuld wende :	
	That same presens rithe euene, as þou lyste,	
	Thou 3aue þis mayde at hyr lyuys ende.	
	A welle of oyle eke þou wold hyr sende	26
	Out of hyr graue, as had seynt nicholas ;	<sup>1</sup> orig. her'
	And for her clenness þou graunted hyr <sup>1</sup> þat grace	28
	Wheche seynt Paule had : mylke ryth at his throte	29
	Ran owt wyth bloode, men sey in tokenyng <sup>1</sup>	<sup>1</sup> MS. tokenyngis
	þat martyrdom & maydenhode ryth in o cote	
	Wer medelede to-gydyr. þou douter on-to þe kyng <sup>1</sup>	32
	So had þou fully as these holy þingis. <sup>2</sup>	<sup>1</sup> corr. to kingis <sup>2</sup> r. þing
[fol. 1, b.] [2nd hand]	To a-rye þi graue hese aungellys eke godd sent	
	Ryth as he dyd sumtyme for seynt clement.	35
	And as seynt margarete had her petycyon	36
	At her last ende graunted of godd allmyth :	
	What-maner man or woman þat wyth deuocyon	
	Askyth a bone of here, he hath it ryth	
	As he wyl haue, if he ask but ryth—	40
	ffor ellys fayleth he, it is not to hys be-houe ;	
	The same grace hast þow of godd, þi loue,	42
	Purchasyd, lady, on-to þi loueris alle.	43
	Therfor wyl I þe serue so as I can,	
	And make þi lyffe, þat mor' openly it schalle	
	Be know a-bowte of woman & of man.	
	Ther was a preste, of flesch he was ful wan	47
	ffor grete labour he had in hys lyue	
	To seke þi liffe 3erys thyrtene & fyue.	49
	3et at þe last he fond it to hys gret ioie	50
	ffer up in grece I-beryed in þe grownde ;	
	Was neuyr no knyth in rome ne eke in troye	
	Mor glad of swerde or basnett bryght & rownde	
	Than was þis preeste whan he had it fownde !	54
	he blyssed þe ofte, & seyde all hys laboure	
	Was turned to solace, to ioie & socowr.	56

Thov yave to Iohn, lord, the greet evangelist,	22	<i>Prolog.</i>
þin owyn) presens whan) he hens shuld weende :		
That same presens ryght evene, as þov lyst,		
þov yave this mayde at hir lyves cende.		Christ was with St. Katharine at her death ;
A welle of oyle eke þov wulde hir sende	26	
Ovte of hir grave, as had seynt Nicholas ;		
And for hir clenness þou gravnted hir þat graas	28	
Whiche seynt pavle had : mylk ryght at his throte	29	
Ran) ovte <i>wyth</i> blood, men seyne in tookenyng		
That martirdam and maydenhod ryght in on cote		
Were medeled to-gedyr. þou dovter on-to the kyng,		
So had þou fully alle these hooly thyng.	33	
To araye thi <i>grave</i> his aungell's <sup>1</sup> eke god sent	<sup>1</sup> MS. aungeht	and His Angels made her grave.
Ryght as he dede for seynt Clement.	35	
And as seynt Margarete had hir petycyon)	36	
At hir laste cende gravnted of god almyght :		
What-manner man) or woman) that wyth devocyon)		
Asketh a bone of hir, he hath it ryght		
As he wyl have, if he aske but ryght—	40	
ffor ellys fayleth he, it is not to his be-hove ;		
The same <i>grace</i> hast þou of god, thi love,	42	
Purchased, lady, on-to thi lovers alle.	43	
Therefore wil I the serve so as I kan),		
And make thi lyef, that more openly it shalle		
Be knowe a-bovte of woman and of man).		I will make known her life.
Ther was a preest, of flessch he was ful wan),	47	A Priest
ffor grete labovr he had in his lyve		
To seke thi lyef yeerys threttene and fyve.	49	
Yet at þe laste he foonde it to his grete ioye	50	found that Life in the ground, in Greece.
ffer vp in grece beryed in the grovnd ;		
Was neuer knyght in rome ne eke in Troye		
More glad of swerd or basenet bryght and rovnd		
Than was this preest whan he had it fovnd ;	54	
he blysshed it ofte, and seyde al hys labour		
Was turned to solace, ioye and sokour.	56	



<u>Prolog.</u>	he mad þi lyff in englysch tunge ful well.	57
	But 3et he deyed or he had fully doo :	
	Thy passyon, lady, & all þat scharp whele	
	he left be-hynd, it is 3et for to doo ;	
	And þat he mad it is ful hard þer-too,	61
	Ryth for straungenesse of hys derk langage.	
	he is now ded, þou hast 3oue hym hys wage.	63
	Now wyl I, lady, mor' openly mak þi lyffe	64
	Owt of hys werk, if þou wylt help þer-too ;	
	It schall be know of man, mayde & of wyffe	
	What þou hast suffrede & eke qwat þou hast doo.	
	Pray godd, our' lorde, he wyll þe dor' on-doo,	68
	Enspire our' wyttys wylth hys priuy grace,	
	To preyse hyme & þe þat we may haue space !	70
	Thys preeste of qwome I spake not longe ere,	71
	In hys prologe telleth all hys desyre,	
	Who <sup>1</sup> þat he traunayled many a londe, to lere <sup>1 = how</sup>	
[fol. 2]	The byrth, þe cuntre, þe langage of þis martere, <sup>1</sup> <sup>1 MS. martire?</sup>	
	Who was her' moder & eke who was hyr' syre ;	75
	A-boute þis mater he laboured 3erys cytene,	
	Wylth prayer', fastyng, cold & mekyll tene.	77
	So at þe last had he a reuelacyoun),	78
	All mysty & derk, hyd all undyr clowde :	
	he thowte he sey þoo in hys avysyon)	
	A persone honest, clothed in precyous schrowde,	
	Whech euer cryed vp-on þe preest ful lowde :	82
	“Be-holde,” he seyth, “þou man qwat þat I am,	
	What thyng I schew & eke qwhy I cam”—	84
	ffor in hys hand he held a boke ful elde	85
	Wylth bredys rotyn, leuys dusty & rent ;	
	And cuyr he cryed vp-on þe preest, “be-helde,	
	here is þi labour', her' is all þin entente !	
	I wote ful welle what þou hast sowte & ment ;	89
	Ope þi mouth, þis book muste þou ete ;	
	But if þou doo, þi wyl schall þou not' gete.”	91

**MS. Arundel.]** *from the English of its Finder and Translator.* 7

he made this <sup>1</sup> lyf en englyssh tunge ful weel.	<sup>1</sup> r. thi	57	<i>Prolog.</i>
But yet he deyed er he had fully doo :			This Priest who found St. Katharine's Life, english it.
Thi passyon, lady, and al that sharpe wheel			
he lefte be-hynde, it is yet not doo too (!) ;			
and that he made it is ful hard alsoo,		61	fol. 2.
Right for straungenesse of his dyrke langage.			
he is now ded, þou hast youe hym his wage. <sup>1</sup>	<sup>1</sup> last words on erasure.	63	
Now wil I, lady, more opynly make thi lyf		64	I will re-tell it from his work.
Oute of his werke, if þou wilt help ther-too ;			
It shal be knowe of man, of mayde, of wyf			
What þou hast suffred and eke what þou hast doo.			
Prey god, ovre lord, he wyl it may be soo, <sup>2</sup>	<sup>2</sup> it m. b. soo on erasure.	68	
Enspyre ovre wyttis wyth his prevy grace,			
To preyse hym and the that we may have space !		70	
This preest of whom I spak not longe ere,		71	This Priest
In his prolog telleth al his desyre,			
hov that he travayled many lond, to lere			
The berthe, the contre, the langage of þis martire,			
ho was hir moder and eke hoo was hir syre ;		75	works for 18 years to find out the facts of St. Katha- rine's life,
A-bovte this mater he labovred yerys eightene,			
Wyth preyerys, fastyng, coold and mekel teene.		77	
So at þe laste hadde he a revelacyon),		78	and then he has a revela- tion.
Al mysti and doerk, hyd vnder clovde :			
he thovte he saugh tho in a vysyon)			
A persone honest, clothed in a precyovs shrovde,			
Wiche euere cryed on þe preest ful lovde :		82	
“Be-hold,” he seyth, “þov man, what þat I am,			In a Vision
What þing I shewe and eke why I cam”—		84	
ffor in his hand he held a book ful eelde		85	
With bredys rotyn, leues dusty and rent ;			
And euere he cryed vp-on þe preest, “be-helde,			
here is thin labour, here is <sup>1</sup> al thin entent !	<sup>1</sup> overlined.		
I wot ful weel what þou hast sovght and ment ;		89	
Ope thi movth, this book muste þou ete ;			
but if þou doo, thi wil shalt þou not gete.”		91	he is bidden to eat an old book.

<u>Prolog.</u>	“ A, mercy, lorde,” seyð þis preeste to hyme,	92
	“ Spare me now! who schulde I þis booke ete? The roten bredys, þese leuys derk & dyme I may in noo wyse in to my mouth hem gete. My mouth is small, & eke þei be so grete,	96
	Thei wyll brek my chaules & my throte; þis mete to me is lykly to do noo note.”	98
	“ 3ys,” seyð he, “ þou mote nede ete þis booke, þou schalt ellys repente. ope þi mowth wyde, Receyue it boldly, it hath no clospe ne hook, let it goo down & in þi wombe it hyde, It schal not greue þe neyther in bake ne syde;	103
	In þi mowth bytter, in þi wombe it wyll be swete— So was it sume-tyme to ezechyell þe prophete.”	105
	The preeste þo toke it in to hys mowth a-non, It semed swete, ryth as it hony wer. þe other man is passed & I-gon, þe preest is stoynd as thow he turned wer. New ioie, new thowte had he than þere!	110
	he a-woke & was ful glad & blythe, Off þis dreame he blyssyd god ofte-sythe.	112
[fol. 2, b.] [3rd hand]	Aftyr þis not long depe in a felde I-clad wyth flowris & herbys grete & smale, He dalf, & fond þis booke whych he be-helde Be-fore in slepe, rygth as I told my tale. þere had he salue to aH his byttyr bale!	117
	It was leyð þere be a knyte þat men calle Amylion fytz amarak, of cristen knytis alle	119
	Most deuoute as on-to þis mayde. He fond it a-mong old tresour in cipre-londe. In kyng petris tyme, as þe cronycle sayde Of þat same cypre where he þis booke fond,	120
	And in pope <sup>1</sup> vrban tyme, as I vndyrstond <sup>1</sup> crossed out.	124
	þe fyfte of rome, felh aH þis matere <sup>2</sup> MS. hane	
	wheche 3e haue <sup>2</sup> herd and 3et 3e schaH more clere.	126

“A, mercy, lord,” seyde this preest to hym,	92	<i>Prolog.</i>
“Spare me <sup>1</sup> nov! hov shuld I this book etc?	<sup>1</sup> overlined.	
The rotyn bredes, the leves derke and dym I may in no wyse in to my movth hem gete.		He protests that he can't.
My movth is smal, and eke thei be so grete,	96	
Thei wil breke my chaucles and my throte; This mete to me is lykly to doo no note.”	98	
“Yes,” seyde he, “þou muste nedes etc this book,	99	But, being ordered to,
Thou shalt ellis repente. ope thi movth wyde, Receyve it boldely, it hath no clospe ne hook, Lete it go dovn) and in thi woombe it hyde, It shal not greve the neyther in bak ne syde;	103	
In thi movthe bytter, in thi woombe it wil be sweet— So was it somtyme to Ezechiel the prophet.”	105	
The preest tho took it in his movth a-noon, It semed sweet, ryght as it hony were.	106	he eats the book,
The other man is passed and I-goon, The preest is stoynd, as thou he turned were. Newe ioye, newe thought had he thanne there!	110	
he a-wook and was ful glad and blythe, Of his dreem he blyssed god ofte-sythe.	112	awakes rejoicing,
After this not longe depe in a feeld I-clad wyth flovres and heerbes grete and smale, he dalf, and fond þis book wiche he be-held	113	
Be-fore in slep, ryght as I tokþ my tale. There had he salve to aþ his bytter bale!	117	and finds the book (see l. 50—1)
It was leyd there be a knyght þat men calle Amylyon) fitz amarak, of crysten) knyghtis alle	119	
Most devoute as on-to this mayde. he fonde it a-mong old tresovr in Cypre lond.	120	
In kyng petrys tyme, as the cronycle sayde Of þat same Cypre where he his <sup>1</sup> book foondþ,	<sup>1</sup> r. þis	in Cyprus (far up in Grece, l. 51),
And in pope Vrban tyme, I vnderstondþ	124	in the time of Urban V (A.D. 1362-70).
The fyfte of rome, fel al this matere	<sup>1</sup> MS. haue	
Wiche ye haue <sup>1</sup> herd and yet ye shal more clere.	126	

<i>Prolog.</i>	þere was a clerk <sup>1</sup> <i>wylth</i> þis same kateryne,	127
	whos name we clepe in latyne athanas ;	
	He tawte here þe reules as he cowde dyuyne	
	Off god of hevyn, of Loye & of grace,	
	And sche hym also, for be here he was	131
	I-turnyd on-to crist & to oure feythe ;	
	He was here leder, as þe story seythe.	133
	He wrote þe lyfe eke of þis same mayde ;	134
	He was with here at here last ende,	
	He say here martyryd, as hym-selue sayde,	
	He mote node haue here lyfe in mynde !	
	He was a seruau <sup>nt</sup> on-to here, ryth kynde—	138
	What schuld I lenger <i>in</i> his preysyng tary ?	
	He was here chauncelere & here secretary.	140
	He gate here maisterys thorw-owt þe partes	141
	Off aH grete grece, her <sup>1</sup> fadyrs empyre,	
	To lerne here be rowe aH þe seuene artes ;	
	þis same man payd hem aH here hyre.	
	He was as in þat courte fully lord & syre,	145
	He knew here kynne & here counseH also,	
	Her <sup>1</sup> fadyr, here modyr, & aH þe line þerto ;	147
	Here holy life he knew, here conuersacioun,	148
	AH here holy customys qwyH sche levyd here,	
[fol. 3]	He stode be here in here <sup>1</sup> grete passioun, <sup>1</sup> overlined.	
	He say þe awngelis how þei here body bere	
	ffer vp in to synay and leyde it down þere,	152
	He saw þe weniaunce eke how it was take	
	On many a thousand eke for here deth <sup>1</sup> sake ; <sup>1</sup> MS. ded deth ; ded crossed out.	
[2nd hand]	he sey eke maxense who he was slayn),	155
	Dropped from a bregge downn <i>in</i> a reuer <sup>1</sup> ,	
	Deyd so ful sodeynly <i>in</i> ful byttyr payn),	
	fforthe was he draw <i>in</i> to hell-feer <sup>1</sup> ;	
	Aungellys bar <sup>1</sup> her <sup>1</sup> , þe deuelys bar <sup>1</sup> hys beer <sup>1</sup> —	159
	Be-hold þe sundry reward of vertu & of syne !	
	On is <i>in</i> heuene, þe other <sup>1</sup> is hell <i>wylth</i> -inne.	161

There was a clerke with pis same kataryne,	127	<i>Protog.</i>
Whos name we clepe in latyn Athanas ;		St. Athanasius (when a heathen) taught St. Katharine,
he taughte hir the revles, as he covde dyuynе,		
Of god of heuene, of ioye and of gras,		
And she hym also, for be hir he was	131	was then converted by her,
I-turned on-to cryst and on-to oure feyth ;		
he was hir ledere, as the story seyth.	133	
he wrote the lyf eke of this same mayde ;	134	wrote her Life,
he was with hir at hir last ende,		
he sav hir martird, as hym-self sayde,		
he must nede hir lyf haue in meende ! <sup>1</sup>		<sup>1</sup> h. i. m. on erasure.
he was a servant on-to hir, ryght keende—	138	
What shuld I lengere in this preysyng tary ?		
he was hir chavnceler and hir secretary.	140	and was her Secretary.
he gate hir maystrys thurgh-ovte the partes	141	
Of alle gret grece, hir faderys empyre,		
To leerne hir be rowe alle the .vij. artes ;		
This same man payed hem alle her hyre.		
he was as in <i>pat</i> covrt fully lord and syre,	145	
he knewe hir kyn and hir covnsel also,		
hir fadir, hir moder, and aft the lyne ther-to ;	147	
hir holy lyf he knew, hir conuersacyon,	148	
Alle hir holy customes whil she leved here,		
he stood by hir in hir grete passyon,		
he savgh the avngellis hovgh thei hir body bere	152	St. Athanasius saw St. Katharine's body borne to Sinal.
ffer vp on-to synay and leyde it dovn there,		
he savgh þe vengavnce eke hovgh it was take		
On many a thovsende for hir dethes sake ;	154	
he saugh eke maxcence hovgh he was slayn),	155	
Dropped fro a brygge dovn in a rever,		
Deyed so ful sodeynly in a bitter payn),		
fforth was he drawe in to helle-feer ;		
Avngellis bar hir, the deuellis bar his beer—	159	
Be-hold þe sondry reward of vertu and of synne !		
On is in heuene, þe tother is helle with-Inne.	161	

<u>Prolog.</u>	long aftyr þe deth of þis maxencyus	162
	Byschop <i>in</i> alysaunder <sup>þ</sup> , caterynes ecte,	
	Was þis sam mane, þis athanasius ;	
	In wech he suffred ful mech aduersyte.	
	I wot not veryly 3ef it wer <sup>þ</sup> he	166
	þat made þe psalme qwech we clepe þe crede,	
	Wech we at pryme oft-tyme syng & rede.	168
	he deyð eyn ther <sup>þ</sup> & <sup>1</sup> holy confessour <sup>þ</sup> . <sup>1 r. an</sup>	169
	And aftyr hys deth myth vnneth be knowe	
	þe lyuyng, þe lernyng of þis swete flour <sup>þ</sup>	
	And martyr kateryne, of hy ne of lowe ;	
	Tyl on Arrek dyd it new I-sowe :	173
	ffor owt of grew he hath it fyrst runge,	
	þis holy lyff, in to latyne tunge.	175
	Thys clerk herd spoke oft-tyme of þis mayde,	176
	Bothe of her <sup>þ</sup> lyffe & also of her <sup>þ</sup> heende,	
	Who sche for lofe her <sup>þ</sup> lyffe hath þus layde	
	Off our <sup>þ</sup> lorde cryste, our <sup>þ</sup> gostly spouse kende :	
	þis made hym seker <sup>þ</sup> <i>in</i> to þat londe to wende,	180
	To know of þis bothe þe spryng & þe welle,	
	If any man <sup>þ</sup> coude it any pleyner <sup>þ</sup> telle.	182
	Twelue 3er <sup>þ</sup> <i>in</i> þat londe he dwelt & mor <sup>þ</sup> ,	183
	To know her <sup>þ</sup> langage qwat it myght mene,	
	Tyl he of her <sup>þ</sup> vsages had fully þe lore,	
	W <sup>y</sup> th ful mech stody, tary & tene.	
[fol. 3, b.]	fful longe it was or he myght it sene,	187
	þe lyff þat Athanas made of þis mayde ;	
	But at þe last he cam, as it is sayde,	189
	Ther as he fonde it from mynde all I-ded.	190
	ffor heretykys þat wer <sup>þ</sup> thoo <i>in</i> þat londe	
	had brent þe bokys, boþe þe leffe & þe brede,	
	As many as þei soute & þat tyme ffonde ;	
	But, blyssyd be godd of hys hye sonde,	194
	þis boke founde þei not <i>in</i> no-maner <sup>þ</sup> wyse—	
	Godd wolde not þat þe nobyll <i>seruyse</i>	196

Longe after the deth of this Maxcencius	162	<i>Prolog.</i>
Bysshop in alysavndre, katarynes Cyte,		St. Athana-
Was þis same man, þis Athanasius ;		situs was
In whiche he suffred ful meche aduersyte.		afterwards
I wot not verely yet if it were he	166	Bishop in
þat made þe salme wiche we clepe þe crede,		Alexandria.
Wiche we at prime often-tyme synge and rede.	168	
he deyed euene there an holy confessovr.	169	
And after his deth myght vnnethe be knowe		
The lyf, the lernyng of this swete flovr		His Greek
And martyr katarync, of hey ne of lowe ;		Life of
Til oon arrek dede it newe I-sowe :	173	St. Katharine
ffor ovte of grev he hath it first runge,		was turnd
This holy lyf, in to latyn tunge.	175	into Latin by
		Arrek,
This clerk herd spekynd ofte-tymes of þis mayde,	176	
Bothe of hir lyf and of hir eende,		
hovgh she for love hir lyf had thus layde		
Of oure lord cryst, hir goostily spovse keende :		
This made hym seker in to þat lond to weende,	180	
To knowe of þis bothe þe sprynge and þe welle,		
If ony man kovde it ony pleynere telle.	182	
Twelue yeer in þat lond he dwelled and more,	183	who dwelt
To knowe her langage what it myght mene,		in Alexandria
Til he of her vsage had fully þe lore,		12 years to
Wyth ful moche stodye, tary and tene.		learn Greek.
fful longe it was er he myghte it sene,	187	
The lyf þat athanas made of þis mayde ;		
But at the laste he cam, as it is sayde,	189	
There as he fonde it from mynde al I-deed.	190	(See l. 121 &
ffor heretykes þat were tho in þat londe		50.)
hadden brent the bookys, bothe þe leef and þe breed,		
As many as þei sovght and þat tyme fonde ;		
But, blyssed be god of that hey sonde,	194	
This book fovnde thei novght in no-maner wyse—		
God wolde not þat the noble scruyse	196	



14 *The first Englisher of St. Katharine's Life died at* [Rawl.

<u>Prolog.</u>	Off hys own) mayde schulde be þus for-ȝete.	197
	A hundred ȝer' aftyr' it was & mor', þat þis arrek þis new werk had gete, ffro þe tyme of Athanas—for so mech̄ be-for' Was he hens pased, I-ded & for-lore	201
	As from euery tunge, bothe hys boke & he, Off euery man & woman in þat cuntre.	203
	And be þis preste was it on-to englischmen I-soute & founde, & broute vn-to londe. hyd in aH counseyH a-mong nyne or ten, It cam but seldom on-to any mannes honde ; Eke qwan it cam, it was noght vndyrstonde,	208
	Be-cause, as i seyde, ryght for þe derk langage. þus was þi lyffe, lady, kept all in cage.	210
	Neuyrthelasse he dyd mych̄ thyng þer-too, þis noble preste, þis very good man : he hath led vs þe wey & þe door' on-doo, þat mech̄ þe bettyr we may & we can ffolow hys steppes. for thowte he sor' rane,	215
	We may hym ouyr-take, wylh help & wylh grace Qwech þat þis lady schaH vs purchasse.	217
	he is now ded, þis goodeman, þis preste ; he deyid at lynne many ȝer' a-goo ; he is ny from mynde wylh mor' & wylh leeste. ȝet in hys deying & in hys grett woo þis lady, as þei sey, appered hym vn-to,	222
	Sche bad hym be gladde in most goodely wyse, Sche wold rewar hyme, sche sayde, hys seruyce.	224
[fol. 4]	Of þe west cuntre it semeth þat he was, Be hys maner spech̄ & be hys style ; he was sumtyme parson of sent pancras In þe cete of london a full grete qwyle. he is now a-boue vs ful many a myle ;	229
	he be a mene to kateryne for vs, And sche for vs alle on-to our' lorde ihesus.	231

Of his ovne mayde shuld be thus for-yete.	197	<i>Prolog.</i>
An hundyr yeer after it was and more,		Arrek
þat this arrek this newe werk had gete,		found St.
ffro þe tyme of athanas—for so moche be-fore		Athanasius's
Was he hens passed, I-ded and for-lore	201	Life of St.
As fro <i>euery</i> tunge, bothe his book and he,		Katharine
Of <i>euery</i> man and woman in þat cuntre.	203	(A.D.1362-70),
And be þis preest was it on-to english men	204	brought it to
I-sovght and fovnde, and brovght on-to londre.		England, and
hid al in covnseyth a-mong nyne or ten,		translated it
It can but seeldom on-to ony mannes honde ;		(see l. 50, 57),
Eke whan it kam, it was not vndirstonde,	208	
Be-cavse, as I seyde, ryght for þe derk lang[ag]e.		tho' in hard
Thus was thy lyf, lady, kepte in cage.	210	words,
Neuerethelasse he did moche þing ther-too,	211	
This noble preest, this very good man :		
he hath led vs the weye and the dore on-doo,		
That meche the beter we may and we can		
ffolwe the steppys, for thov he sore ran,	215	
We may hym ouer-take, wyth help and <i>grace</i>		
Whiche þat þis lady shal vs purchace.	217	
he is novgh ded, þis good man, this preest ;	218	
he deyed at lynne many yeer a-goo ;		and died at
he is ny fro meende wyth more and wyth leest.		Lynn, long
Yet in his deyng and in his grete woo		ago.
This lady, as þei seye, appered hym on-too,	222	
She bad hym be glad in most goodly wyse,		
She wolde reward hym, she seyde, his seruyse.	224	
Of the west cuntre it semeth þat he was,	225	He was a
Be his <i>maner</i> of <sup>1</sup> speche and be his style ;	1 overlined.	west-country
he was somtyme <i>parson</i> of seynt pancras		man,
In the Cyte of london a ful grete while.		and also
he is nov a-bove vs ful many myle ;	229	Rector of
he be a mene to kataryne for vs,		St. Pancras,
And she for vs on-to ovre lord <i>ihesus</i> .	231	in London.

16 *Capgrave was of Lynn, and of the Austin Rule.* [MS. Rawl.]

<u>Prolog.</u>	Afyr hyme nexte I take vp-on me	232
	To translate þis story & set it mor' pleynd,	
	Trostyng on other' men þat her' charyte	
	Schall help me in þis caas to wryght & to seyn	
	Godd send me part of þat heuynly reyne	236
	þat apollo bar' a-bowte, & eke sent poule ;	
	It maketh vertu to growe in mannes soule.	238
	If 3e wyll wete qwat þat I am :	239
	My cuntre is northfolke, of þe town of lynne ;	
	Owt of þe world to my profyte I cam	
	On-to þe brotherhode qwech I am Inne—	
	Godd 3eue me grace neuyr for to blynne	243
	To folow þe steppes of my faders be-for',	
	Whech to þe rewle of Austen wer' swore.	245
	þus endyth þe prologe of þis holy mayde,	246
	3e þat rede it, pray for hem alle	
	þat to þis werk eyther' trauayled or payde,	
	þat from her' synnes wyth grace þei may falle,	
	To be redy to godd whan he wyll calle,	250
	Wyth hym in heuyn to drynke & to dyne,	
	Thorow þe prayer' of þis mayde kateryne.	252

Bk. I. Ch. 1.

Cam. 1m.

<b>S</b>	Vmetyme þer was a grete kyng in grees	1
	Of surre & cypre boþe lord & syre,	
	As clerkes tel vs in elde storyes ;	
	All thyng was rewlyd at hys desyr',	
	he gouerned full sadly þat ilk empire,	5
	Costus men called þis kyng þoo be name ;	
	A losyd lorde was he & of ful grete fame,	7
	A lombe to þe meke, a leoun to þe prowde,	8
	þus was he noted, if 3e lyst to lere.	
	he was so wel I-know boþe stylly & lowde,	
	All dede hym homage bothe fer & ner' ;	
	kyng, duke, erle, baron, & bachilere	12

After hym next I take vp-on me	232	<i>Bk. I. Ch. 1.</i>
To translate this story and set it more pleynd,		English his
Trostyng on other men þat her charyte		Life of St.
Shal helpe me in this cas to wryte and to seyn.		Katharine.
God sende me part of þat Heuently reyn	236	
That apollo bar a-bovte, and eke seynt poule ;		
It maket vertu to growe in mannys sovlē.	238	
If ye wil wete what þat I am :	239	I, Capgrave,
Myn cuntre is Northfolk, of þe tovn of lynne ;		am of Lynn
Ovte of the world to my profite I cam		in Noriok,
On-to þe brotherhod wiche I am Inne—		
God yeve me grace neuere for to blynne	243	
To folwe þe steppes of my fader's be-fore,		
Wiche to the revle of Austyn were swore.	245	an Austin
Thus endeth þe prolog of þis holy mayde.	246	triat.
Ye that reed it, pray for hem alle		
That to this werk either travayled or payde,		Pray for me
þat from her synnes wyth grace thei may falle,		and all con-
To be redy to god whan þat he wil calle,	250	cern in this
With hem <sup>1</sup> in heuene to drynke and to dyne,	<sup>1</sup> r. him	Life!
Thurgh þe preyer of þis mayde kataryne.	252	

**Liber primus. Ca<sup>m</sup>. primum.**

<b>S</b> Omtyme ther was a grete kyng in Grece,	1	<i>Bk. I. Ch. 1.</i>
Of surre and Cypre bothe lord and syre,		King Costus
As clerkys telle vs in olde storyce ;		of Grece
Alle þing was revled at his desyre,		
he gouerned ful sadly þat ilke empyre,	5	
Costus men called þat kyng tho be name ;		
A losed lord was he, and of ful grete fame,	7	
A lomb to þe meke, a leon to þe provde,	8	
þus was he noted, if ye liste to lere.		
he was so weel I-knowe bothe stille and lovde,		
Alle dede hym hoimage bothe fer and nere ;		bore wide
Kyng, Duke, Erl, Baron, and Bachelere	12	rule.

18 *K. Costus of Grece, St. Katharine's father.* [MS. Rawlinson.

[fol. 4, b.] [1st hand]	ffor her be-houe to his presens soute, And to his help eke whan hem nedyd oute.	14
	Many yldes longed þoo on-to his grete lande, And aHe wer' þai <sup>1</sup> buxum at his request';	15
	þe grete see holy had he in his hande, And aH þe hauenes both est & west', He welded hem alle ryth as hym lest';	19
	Wer' þei marchaunt's, wer' þei marineris, Alle wer' þei than to hym as omageris.	21
	þis kyng' in pees regned many ȝeres. And be-cause he was fayr' & strong' of' bones, he was wele be-loued of' aH his omageres ; A noble man, þei sayde, he was for þe nones, Gracious in feld, peisible in wones,	22 26
	ffre of' his speche, large of' his expens, fful gladly wyth peynes wold he dispens.	28
	Was no lorde be-syde þat hym wold do wrake, ffor w <sup>h</sup> ath man þat dede he shuld it sone wayle, Whan þat he gan veniaunce to take— Preyer as þan wold not a-vayle ; To many a kyngdom made he a-sayle,	29 33
	And many a casteH beet he ryth down Whan þai to his lawes wold not be bown.	35
	A goode man was he, þis is þe grounde : Meke as a mayde, manful at nede, Stable & stedfast eyr-mor' I-fownde, strong' man of' hand, douty man of' dede, helper of' hem þat to hym hade nede ;	36 40
	Wrong' þinges þo wroute he neuer', Petous of' spiryt & mercyful was he euer'. Pees wold he put debate euer a-boue— þat uertew cleymyd he only to hym-selue ; Alle hys noble werkys on-to pees & loue	42 43
[fol. 5] [2nd hand]	Wer' mad as mete as ex on-to helue. A-mong all þe lordes þat men dyd þoo delue	47

ffor her be-hove to his presens lovte, <sup>1</sup>	<sup>1</sup> r. sovte	<u>Bk. I. Ch. 1.</u>
And to helpe eke whan hem neded ovte.		14
Many lides <sup>1</sup> longed tho on-to his <sup>2</sup> grete londe,	<sup>1</sup> orig. yldes	Many isles belonged to King Costus.
And alle were thei buxum at his request ;	<sup>2</sup> overlined.	
The grete see hadde he holy in his honde,		
And alle the haucnes bothe est and west,		
he welded hem alle ryght as hym lest ;		19
Were thei marchavntis, were thei maryneres,		
Alle were thei thanne to hym as homageres.		21
This kyng in pees regned many yeers.		22
And be-cavse he was fayr and strong of boones,		
he was weel belouyd of al his homageers ;		He was belovd,
A noble man, þei seyde, he was for the nones,		
Gracyovs in feeld, peesible <sup>1</sup> in wones,	<sup>1</sup> orig. peisible?	26
ffree of his speche, large of his expans,		
fful gladly with peynes wolde he dispens.		28
Was no lord be-syde þat wold do hym wrake,		29
ffor what man that dede, he shulde it sone wayle ;		
Whan he gan veng <sup>a</sup> vns to take,		
Prayer as þan wolde non a-vayle ;		
To many a kyngdam made he asayle,		33
And many a casteff beet he ryght dovnd		
Whan thei to his lawes wolde not be bound.		35
A good man was he, this is the grovnd :		36 was good,
Meke as a mayde, manful at nede,		
Stable and ste[d]fast euer-more I-fovnd,		
Strong man of hand, dovty man of dede,		doughty,
helper of hem þat to hym had hede <sup>1</sup> ;	<sup>1</sup> orig. nede	40
Wronge þingys tho wrovght he neuere,		
Pytous of spyryt and mercyful was he euere.		42 and merciful.
Pees wolde he putte debate euere a-bove—		43
That vertu cleymed he oonly to hym-selve ;		
Al his noble werkys on-to pees and love		
Were made as mete as ex on-to helve.	<sup>1</sup> were—twelve on erasure.	
A-mongis alle the lordys, were there ten or twelve, <sup>1</sup>		47

Bk. I. Ch. 1. he was most worthy & eke most wys ;  
 Synne hated he hertly, harlatrye & vyis. 49  
 fful grete pyte on-to our' thowt it is 50  
 þat swech̄ a trew man schuld hethen be.  
 But ryght þus, wrote þei þat wer' full wys,  
 Oute of þe harde thorn[y] brymbyl-tree  
 Growyth þe ffresch̄ rose, as men may see ; 54  
 So sprong our' lady oute of þe Iewys,  
 And kateryne of hethen, þis tale ful trew is. 56

Bk. I. Ch. 2.

Cam. 2m.

**T**Oo cytes had þis kyng a-mong all other', 57  
 largest & grettest a-boue hem alle ;  
 þe on cost of gold ful many a fother'  
 Or he had made it wyth tour' & wyth walle ;  
 þe other' was made, as bokes sey alle, 61  
 A full longe tyme er he was bore,  
 In wech̄ all kynges þoo crowned wore. 63  
 The fyrst hytz Amalech—in cypre it stant, 64  
 þe other' hytz Alysaunder—in egypt it is.  
 þe same lond of cypre no-thing dotfi waunt,  
 But is ful of plente & full of blys,  
 Off gold, syluyr, frute & men, I-wys, 68  
 A grete lond closyd wyth þe see a-bowte,  
 On þe northwest syde of surre, it is no doute. 70  
 Therfor' þis kyng ryght as for a keye 71  
 Of all hys kyngdame set hys town þer' ;  
 [1st hand] Who come to surre, mote come þat weye,  
 þer may no shyp<sup>1</sup> þis cours forbere, <sup>1</sup> MS. shypp  
 Wer' it in<sup>1</sup> pees or ellis in wer'. <sup>1</sup> overlined. 75  
 It had a hauene ful huge & ful grete,  
 And castelle strong' wyth turrettis fecte, 77  
 Open on<sup>1</sup>-to marchautis, to alle þat wille come, <sup>1</sup> overlined.  
 Bo-cause her' fredomys wer' large & fayr', 79  
 Both oute of hethnes & of cristyndome ;

he was most worthi and most wys ;		<u>Bk. I. Ch. 1.</u>
Synne hated he hertely, harlotry and vys.	49	
ful gret pyte on-to ovre thought it is	50	King Costus
That swiche a man trewe shuld hethen be.		
but ryght thus, wrot thei þat were ful wys,		
Ovte of the hard, thorny brymbyl-tre		
Groveth the fresli rose, as men may see ;	54	
So sprongoure lady ovte of þe iowys,		
And kataryne of hethen, this ful trewe is.	56	was St. Katharine's father.

Ca<sup>m</sup>. *Secundam.*Bk. I. Ch. 2.

<b>T</b> oo cytes had þis kyng a-mong <sup>is</sup> alle other,	57	His 2 chief cities were
laargest and grettest a-boven <sup>d</sup> hem alle ;		
The oon cost of gold many a fother		
Eer he hadde made it wyth tovr and wyth walle ;		
The other was maad, as book <sup>is</sup> sey <sup>d</sup> alle,	61	
A ful longe tyme eer he was bore,		
In wiche alle kyng <sup>is</sup> tho crowned wore.	63	
The firste hight Amalek—in Cypre it stant,	64	Amalek and Alexandria.
The other hight Alysavndre—in egypt it is.		
The same lond of Cypre no-þing dooth it want,		
But is ful of <sup>1</sup> plente and ful of blys,	<sup>1</sup> overlined.	
Of gold, of siluer, frute and men, I-wys,	68	
A grete lond closed wyth þe see a-bovte,		
On the North-west syde of surre it is, no dovte.	70	
Therefore this kyng ryght as for a keye	71	
Of aH his kyngdam set his tovr there ;		
ho com <sup>d</sup> to surre, mot come þat weye,		Amalek was the port of Syria.
There may no shyp this cours for-bere,		
Were it in pees or ell <sup>is</sup> in werre.	75	
It had an havene ful huge and ful gret,		
And castel strong wyth turrett <sup>is</sup> feet,	77	
Open on-to marchavntys, to alle þat wil come,	78	Amalek was a free port.
Be-cause her fredames were large and fayre,		
Bothe oute of hethenesse and of cristendome ;		



<u>Bk. I. Ch. 2.</u>	It was a place of ful grete repayr <sup>r</sup> .	
	Vnder hym þer þe kyng <sup>r</sup> made a mayer <sup>r</sup> ,	82
	To kepe his lawes þei shuld not fayle,	
	Too stuf it wyth men & eke wyth vytayle.	84
[fol. 5, b.] [2nd hand]	þus myght þis lord from Alisaunder <sup>r</sup> ryde,	85
	In schyppes I mene, to þis grete cotee	
	And euyr on hys owe lordchippe a-byde—	
	ffor on <sup>1</sup> alle cuntres principale lorde was hee, <sup>1 r. of</sup>	
	Wer <sup>r</sup> it of felde, of town <sup>d</sup> or of see	89
	Whech stode be-twyx þe grete cytees too,	
	All was it do þer <sup>r</sup> as he bad it doo.	91
	The other <sup>r</sup> cytee, Alysaunder <sup>r</sup> be name,	92
	On þe bordyr <sup>r</sup> of egypt it stant ful fayr <sup>r</sup> ,	
	A gret place, a large & of hye fame.	
	þei of egypt mote nedys repayr <sup>r</sup>	
	On-to þis cyte, thorow wey & thorow wayr <sup>r</sup> ,	96
	If þei to affryk or to cartage goo ;	
	And þei of affryk þe same mote alsoo,	98
	If þei in egypte wyll bye or selle.	99
	þedyr was seynt mark þe euangelyste	
	Sent be seynt petyr þer for to dwelle,	
	To prech hem þe gospell of our <sup>r</sup> lord cryste ;	
	he prechyd so ther <sup>r</sup> þat hem <sup>1</sup> alle twyst <sup>1 r. he hem</sup>	103
	ffro all her <sup>r</sup> maumentrye & fals be-leue,	
	he mad hem in cryst for to be-leue.	105
	he þat wyll know þis mor <sup>r</sup> plat & pleynd,	106
	Rede Philo in hys book whech he dyd calle	
	‘ De uita theor[et]ica ’ : þer schall he seynd	
	þat thorow-oute þe cyte in towr <sup>r</sup> & in walle	
	It was þoo fullyllyd wyth hermytes alle,	110
	Monkys & prestys & swech holy men,	
	her <sup>r</sup> xxx <sup>ti</sup> , her <sup>r</sup> xx <sup>ti</sup> , her <sup>r</sup> ix., her <sup>r</sup> ten.	112
	The cuntre all-abowte was full of þese men,	113
	And ful of martires, ful of confessoures,	
	Of maydenes, wydowys & chast women—	

It was a place of ful gret rapayre.		<i>Bk. I. Ch. 2.</i>
Vndir hym there the kyng made a mayre,	82	Amalek was ruled by a Mayor, under K. Costus.
To kepe his lawes thei shuld not fayle,		
To stuffe it wyth men) and eke wyth batayle (!).	84	
Thus myght this kyng from alysavndre ryde	85	
In shippes <i>wyt</i> h mene to this grete Cytee		
And eucere on his owe lordship a-byde—		
ffor ouer alle contres pryncypal lord was hee,		
Were it of feelde, of tovr) or of see	89	
Whiche stood be-twyxe þe grete Cytees too,		
Al was it wrought there as he bad it doo. <sup>1</sup>	91	<sup>1</sup> wrought—doo on erasure.
The other Cyte, Alysavndre be name,	92	Alexandria
On the bordour of Egypt it stant ful fayre,		
A grete place, a large and of hey fame.		
Thei of Egipte it <sup>1</sup> mote nedes repayre		<sup>1</sup> overlined.
On-to þis Cytee, purgh weyes & thurgh wayre,	96	was the port
If þei to affryke or to Cartage goo ;		
And thei of affrike the same mote alsoo,	98	
If thei in Egipte wil bye or selle.	99	and mart of Egypt.
Theder was seynt Mark the Evangelyste		
Sent be seynt petir there for to dwelle,		
To preche hem þe gospell of oure lord cryste ;		St. Mark preacheth there.
he preched so there þat hem alle twyste	103	
fpro alle here mavnmentrie and her fals lawe,		
he made hem in crist her <sup>1</sup> hertys for to drawe.		<sup>1</sup> on erasure.
he that wil knowe this more plat and pleynd,	106	
Rede philo in his book whiche he ded calle		See Philo, <i>De vita theoretica.</i>
'De vita theoretica : ' there shal he seynd		
That þorgh-oute the Cyte in tovr) and in walle		
It was tho fulfilled wyth hermytes alle,	110	
Monkes and preestys and swiche hooly men),		
here thretty, here twenty, here nyne, here ten).	112	
The contre al above was ful of these men),	113	
Al ful of martirs and ful of Confessoovrs,		Alexandria was full of Martyrs.
Of maydenes, wedewys and chaast women)—		

24 *The Martyrs and Divinity-School of Alexandria.* [MS. Rawl.

<u>Bk. I. Ch. 2.</u>	Who coude noumbyr all þe fayr' floures þat growe in þe mede aftyr swete schowres,	117
	þan myght he noumbyr hem—I trow not he may! þer wer' þei putte in full scharp asay,	119
	These vessells of gold, martires I mene, Wyth fyr' & wyth yryn I-slayn & I-brent, In furnes of sorowe wer' þei mad elene;	120
	Was non þat scaped, but or þat he went [fol. 6] he schuld be dede or turn hys entent.	124
	þer was þe fyrst exercyse of dyuyn' scole, Whech is a scyens þat longeth to noo foole.	126
	ffor on pathenus, as seyth our' book, ffull many a 3er' red ther' wyth besy entent, And aftyr hym clement þe scole vp toke, Orygene was þe þirde aftyr þat clement— Not clement of rome, but a-nother' þat us lent	131
	Many a good coment & many a holy exhortacyon), Most specyali in þat book whech is called stromatum.	133
	Thys same Alysaunder whech I spak of now, Was large, ryche, ful of puple eke;	134
	ffor þat fame euery man þedyr drow, Euery knyght & marchaunt gune it than seke. þei thowt it was enow, qwan þei schuld speke,	138
	A kyng to be lorde ouyr thys a-lone, Thow he had not ellys longyng to hys trone;	140
	Eke for þe grete welth þat was in þat wonis, þei called her' kyng none other' name;	141
	“Kyng of alysaundy’,” þei seyde, “a-lone he is, he is a lord, he is worthy swech fame. Mote euery tunge be doum & euery kne lame	145
	þat our' noble lord neyther' loue ne drede; And þei þat do it, well mote þei spede!”	147
	Too hundred & fourty 3er' aftyr crystys byrthe Was euen & no mo' to þese gynges <sup>1</sup> dayes.	148
	he leuyth þus in ioye & in mekyll myrthe,	

<sup>1</sup> r. þis kynges

- hoo covde novnbre alle the fayre flovrs  
 That growe in medewe after swete shovrs, 117 *Bk. I. Ch. 2.*  
 Than myght he nombre hem—I trowe not he may!  
 There where<sup>1</sup> thei put in ful sharp assay, <sup>1</sup> read were 119  
 These vessellis of gold, martyrs I mene, 120 *The Martyrs  
in Alexandria  
were slain  
and burnt.*  
 Wyth feer and wyth yern I-slaynd and I-brent,  
 In furneys of sorwe were þei made clene;  
 Was non þat skaped, but er than he went  
 he shuld be ded or turne his entent. 124  
 There was the fyrste excersyse of dyuyne scole,  
 Whiche is a seyens that longeth to no foole. 126 *It had a  
School of  
Divinity,*  
 ffor on phatenus, as seythoure book, 127 *under Pan-  
taenus,*  
 fful many a yeer red there wyth besy entent,  
 And after hym Clement þe scole vp took,  
 Orygene was the thredde after þat Clement—  
 Not Clement of Rome, but an other þat vs lent 131 *Clement,  
and Origen.*  
 Many a good coment an many an holy exortacyon), <sup>1</sup> om. in MS.  
 Most speecyaly in that book [whicch is called stromatum].<sup>1</sup>  
 This same alysavndre wiehe I spak of nov, 134  
 Was large, ryche, ful of peple eke;  
 ffor that fame every man theder drov,  
 Every knyght and marchavnt gvnne it thanne seke.  
 They thought it was I-novgh, whan þei shuld speke, 138  
 A kyng to be lord ouere this allone,  
 Though he had not ellis longynge to his trone; 140 *It had also  
a King, calld*  
 Eke for the grete welthe þat was<sup>1</sup> in þat wonys, 141  
 Thei called her kyng non other name; <sup>1</sup> MS. he was  
 “Kyng of Alysavndre,” þei seyde, “allone he is,  
 he is a lord, he is worthi suyche fame. *The King of  
Alexandria.*  
 Mote every tovng be down and every kne lame 145  
 That ovre noble lord neyther love ne drede;  
 And thei þat doo it, weel mote þei spede.” 147  
 Too hundryrth and fovyrt yeer after crystis berthe 148 *A.D. 240.*  
 Was evene and [no] more to this kyngys dayes.  
 he lyueth thus in ioie and mekel merthe,

26 *God's power. He sends children to old folk.* [MS. Rawlinson.]

*Bk. I. Ch. 2.* And honourde swech goddes as longed to hys layes ;  
 [1st hand] Or he wan his land he had sharpe a-sayes. 152  
 But to othir þing<sup>t</sup> we wyl go now playn,  
 To telle forth our<sup>t</sup> tale as þe cronyeles seyn. 154

*Bk. I. Ch. 3.*

Ca<sup>m</sup>. 3<sup>m</sup>.

**A**myty god þat althing<sup>t</sup> makyth growe, 155  
 Doth many mor<sup>t</sup> mervayles þan we can cast ;  
 ffor who-so-euer men heryn<sup>1</sup> or ellis sowe, <sup>1 MS. herþ</sup>  
 It is sumtyme fyrst we wene shuld be last.  
 Our<sup>t</sup> witte on-to his witte is but a gnast<sup>t</sup>, 159  
 It mote nede be þus whan he wil haue it so ;  
 [fol. 6, b.] All hys wyll only mote nede be do. 161  
 [2nd hand]

Whan thyng is ferthest from our<sup>t</sup> opynyon, 162  
 þane werkyth he hys wondres ryth at hys wyll :  
 Be-holde now þe spede & þe sauacyoun  
 Of þe chyldryn of israel ; god wold hem not spylle,  
 But to kepe hem in daunger<sup>t</sup> & miserye stille, 166  
 In whech þei wer<sup>t</sup> falle only for synne ;  
 he halpe hem owte qwan þat þei cowde blyne. 168

If he had soner<sup>t</sup> holp hem, þei myth a went 169  
 It had not be goddys myght but her<sup>t</sup> owne dede.  
 þer-for chaunged he all her<sup>t</sup> entent,  
 he wold not help hem tyl þat þei had nede ;  
 Whan þei wer<sup>t</sup> in dyspeyr<sup>t</sup> & myght nocht spede, 173  
 þan sent he hys help & hys socour<sup>t</sup>—  
 þus doth our<sup>t</sup> lord, þus doth our<sup>t</sup> sauour<sup>t</sup>. 175

Ryght in þis wyse wrowt our<sup>t</sup> lorde her<sup>t</sup> : 176  
 he wold send a chyld ful on-lych to other<sup>t</sup>  
 To þese elde folk, whech lyued all in dwer<sup>t</sup>  
 To hafe any chyld, most specyaly þe modyr ;  
 þe kyng had leuer<sup>t</sup> þan of gold a fothyr<sup>t</sup> 180  
 he myght be sekyr of [s]wyche a new chaunce.  
 Zacharye & Elyzabeth stode in þis traunce ; 182

And honovred suyche goddys as longed to his layes ;		<i>Bk. I. Ch. 2.</i>
Er he wanð his lond he hadde sharp assayes.	152	K. Costus was a Heathen.
But to other þing we wil go nov playnð,		
To telle fourth ovre tale as the cronycles saynð.	154	

Ca<sup>m</sup>. tercium.

*Bk. I. Ch. 3.*

<b>A</b> lmyghty god þat alle þing maketh growe,	155	Almighty God
Dooth many mo mervayles than we can cast ;		
ffor what-so-cuere men creeth or ellys sove,		
It is somtyme first þat we wende shuld be last.		
Ovre wyt on-to his wyt is but a knast,	159	
It mote nede be thus whanð he wil haue it soo ;		does what He will.
Al his wil oonly mote nede be doo.	161	

Whanð þing is ferthest fro ovre oppynyonð,	162	
Thanð werketh he his wondrys ryght at his wille :		
Be-hold nov the speed and the saluacyonð		He saved the Children of Israel.
Of the childrenð of israel ; god wolde hem not spyllø,		
But to kepe hem in davnger and myserye stille,	166	
In whiche thei were falle oonly for synne ;		
he halp hem ovte whanð þei covde blynne.	168	

If he had sonnere holpynð hem, thei myght a went	169	
It had not be goddys myght, but her owen dede.		
Therefore chavnged he al here entent,		
he wolde not helpe them tyl thei had nede ;		
Whan thei wer' in dispeyre and myght not spede,	173	
Thanne sent he his helpe and his sokovr—		
Thus dooth ovre lord, thus dooth ovre sauour.	175	

Ryght in þis wise wrought oure lord here :	176	
he wolde sende a chyeld ful on-liche to other		
To þese olde folk, wiche leveden alle in dwere		He resolvd to send a child to old folk, like K. Costus and his wife.
To haue ony chyeld, most speecyally þe moder ;		
The kyng had levere thanð of gold a fother	180	
he myght be sekyr of suche a newe chavns.	.	
þakarye and Elyzabeth stoodyn in the same travns ;	182	

<u>Bk. I. Ch. 3.</u>	So dede abraham <i>wyth</i> sarra, hys wyff—	183
	sche conceyuyd not tyll sche was in age ;	
	Ioachym & Anne had þe same lyff,	
	Maryes forth-bryngers, & þe same wage.	
	God can ful well make of swech a rage	187
	A ful fayr floode, blessed mote he be.	
	So kateryne is not a-lone in þis degre.	189
	ffor god to hym-selfe þis mayden had I-chose	190
	As for hys owyn spouse & for hys wyffe der ;	
	Of swech <sup>1</sup> spek all crysten, as I suppose : <sup>1 r. wech</sup>	
	“God send vs part of her good prayer ;	
	Of all saue on sche is hym most nere ;	194
	Sche may & sche can, & sche wyll alsoo	
	Pray to our lord þat we may cume hym too.”	196

Bk. I. Ch. 4.Ca<sup>m</sup>. 4<sup>m</sup>.

	<b>Q</b> wan godd, our lord, wold þe seson schuld be	197
	þat þis fayr lady to lyth schuld be born), <sup>1</sup> <sup>1 MS. form</sup>	
[fol. 7]	he ordeynd & sett it in swech a degre	
	þat of too folkes whech lustes had lorn,	
	Schuld þis mayde spryng as rose oute of thorn.	201
	þis world wondred þat þis þing myght be soo,	
	who so elde a lady <i>wyth</i> chyld schuld now goo.	203
	Many a man & woman at þis thyng low,	204
	Sume of hem sayd, “ it is but a lye,	
	þe kyng is ful febyll, þe qwen ful eld now :	
	Schall sche now grone, schal sche now crye ?	
	schal sche in þis age in chyldebede lye ?	208
	þis thyng is not lykly,” þus seyð þei alle,	
	ladyes in þe chaumbyr & lordys in þe halle.	210
	But þe tyme is come, sche be-gynnyth to grone,	211
	Cryeth & wayleth as do alle women—	
	ffor of þat penaunce was mary a-lone	
	Excused, & no moo, þus our bokes ken	
	Whech þat wer wretyn of ful holy men.	215

So dede abraham wyth sara, his wyf—	183	<i>Bk. I. Ch. 3.</i>
She conceyved not tyl she was in age ;		God sent a
Ioachym and Anna hadden þe same lyef,		child to aged
Maryes foorth-bryngeris, and the same wage.		Sara, and to
God can ful weel make of swiche a rage	187	Joachim and
A ful fayre flood, blissed mote he be.		Anna.
So kataryne is not alone in this degre.	189	
ffor god to hym-self this mayde hath <sup>1</sup> I-chose	<sup>1</sup> r. had	He chose
As for his owe spovse and for his wyf dere ;	191	St. Katharine
Of wiche spekynd alle crysten), as I suppose,		for His wife.
“ God sende vs part of her good prayere ;		
Of alle saue of on) she is most hym nere ;	194	
She may and she can, and she wil also		
Pray to our' lord that we may come hym to.”	196	

Ca<sup>m</sup>. *quartum*.

*Bk. I. Ch. 4.*

<b>W</b> hanne god, oure lord, wolde þe seson) shuld be	197	
That this fayre lady to lyght shuld be boorn),		
he ordeyned it, and sette it in swiche a degre		
That of tho <sup>1</sup> folkes wiche lustys had lorn),	<sup>1</sup> corrected; r. too	When her
Shulde this mayde sprynge as Rose ovte of thorn).	201	parents are
The world) wondred that þis thyng myght be soo,		old,
hov so old) a lady wyth chyeld shuld) now goo.	203	
Many man and woman) at this þing lough,	204	
Som of hem sayde, “ it is but a lyze,		
The kyng is ful febel, the qveen ful olde nov ;		
Shal she nov grone, shal she nov crye ?		
Shal she in þis age in chyeldbed nov lye ?	208	
This þinge is not likly,” thus seyde þei alle,		
ladyes in the chavnbre and lordys in þe halle.	210	
But the tyme is come, she be-gynneth to grone,	211	St. Katharine
Cryeth and waileth as doo alle women—		is born.
ffor of þat penavnce was Mary allone		
Excused, and no mo, thus ovre bookis ken		
Whiche þat were wretyn) of ful hcoly men).	215	



<u>Bk. I. Ch. 4.</u>	Kateryne þei named þat fayr' mayd ʒinge.	
	her' fader' men called costus þe kyng,	217
	her' moder' þei seye sche hyght meliades—	218
	þe kynges dowter' sche was of crmenye,	
	Off bewte <sup>1</sup> sche had prys in euery prees <sup>1 MS. brewte</sup>	
	Thorow-owte þe londe of alle sareynrye.	
	Me lyst not in her' preysyng lenger' to tarye,	222
	Sche was full fayr' & full goode eke—	
	It is schewyd in hyr' dowter', þat men now seke	224
	To be her' help in myschefe & in nede.	225
	But whan thre dayes wer' pased & I-gon,	
	þis chyld for to hylle, to lulle & to lede	
	Too worthy ladyes wer' ordeynd a-non,	
	And not only þei to trauayle þer' a-lone,	229
	But of other' women a ful grete rowte,	
	Ryght for þis cause : to ber' it a-bowte,	231
	To kepe it, to wasch it & for to clothe,	232
	To lyft it, to lull it & to fede it eke,	
	To bathe it, to wyp it & to rokke it bothe ;	
	þei had her' labur' newly be þe weke.	
	þus is it kept, it schuld not be seke.	236
[fol. 7. b.]	þe kyng had of it a comfort ful hyc,	
	þe qwen coude not þer-fro kepe now her' hyc.	238
	þus was it norched, þis nobyl goodly chylde,	239
	þis gracyous lady, tyll sche cowde goo.	
	Sche was fro hyr' byrth boþe mek & mylde,	
	Mercy fro þe tetys grew wyth hyr al-soo,	
	And lested wyth her' all her' lyffe þer-too.	243
	Sche was fulsone plesyd whan sche made mone,	
	No wondyr it is—þei hafe but hyr' a-lone.	245

**T**hus prouyd þis princesse euyr' mor' & mor'. 246  
 Sche was set to book, & be-gan to ler'  
 All þe letters þat wer' leyd hyr be-foi'.

Kataryne þei named that fayre mayde yinge.		<i>Bk. I. Ch. 4.</i>
hir fadir men) calle Costus the kyng,	217	Katharine's father is King Costus; her mother, Queen Meliades.
hir modir þei seyde she hyghte meliades—	218	
The kyngys dovter she was of <sup>1</sup> Ermenye,	<sup>1</sup> overlined.	
Of bevte she had preys in euery pres		
Thurgh-oute þe lond of al sarsynrye.		
Me leste not in hir preysynge lengere to tarye,	222	
She was ful fayr and ful good eke—		
It shewed in hir dovghter, þat men nov seke	224	
To be her helpe in myschef and in nede.	225	
but whan thre dayes were passed and I-gon),		
The chyeld for to hille, to lulle and to leede		
Too worthy ladyes were ordeyned a-non),		The babe has 2 Nurses, &c.
And not oonly thei to <sup>1</sup> travayle there allon),	<sup>1</sup> orig. too 229	
But of othere women) a ful gret rovte,		
Right for this cause: to bere it a-bovte,	231	
To kepe it, to wash it and for to clothe,	232	to wash, feed,
To lyfte it, to lulle it and to fede it eke,		
To bathe it, to wpe it and to rokke it bothe;		and rokke her, each for a week,
Thei had her labour newly be the weke.		
Thus is it kepte, it shuld not be seeke.	236	
The kyng hadde of it a confort ful heye,		
The qveen coude not ther-fro kepe nov hir eyze.	238	
Thus was it norysshed, this noble goodly chield,	239	
This gracyous lady, til she covde goo.		till she can walk.
She was fro hir byrthe bothe meke and myeld,		
Mercy fro the tetys grewe wyth hir also,		
And lefte <sup>1</sup> w <sup>y</sup> th hir al hir lyef ther-too. <sup>1</sup> orig. lested?	243	
She was ful sone plesed whan she made mone,		
No wonder it is—thei have but hir allone.	245	

Cam. qvintum.

Thus proved this pryncesse euere more and more.	246	<i>Bk. I. Ch. 5.</i>
She was set to book, and be-gan to lere		Katharine is set to her books,
Alle the letteris þat were leyde hir be-fore.		

<u>Bk. I. Ch. 5.</u>	ffor of all þe scoleris þat ar now or wer', Sche is hem a-boue ; for neyther' loue ne feer'	250
	Mad hyr to stynt whan sche be-gan to kenð þe lettyr's & þe wordys þat sche spelled then).	252
	Sche had maystyres fro ferre þat wer' full wyse, To techi her' of rethoryk & gramer' þe scole ; þe cases, þe noumbres & swychi-maner' gyse :	253
	þe modes, þe uerbes, wechi long to no fole,— Sche lerned hem swetly wyth-owte any dole,	257
	Bothe þe fygyres & þe consequence, þe declynacyons, þe persones, þe modes, þe tens.	259
	Among all oþer a wyse man þer' was, And ful sad þer-to, he was her' chaunsler', Men called hym be name Mayster' Athanas ; he was suruyour' to all þat þer wer',	260
	And as I seyð ere, <sup>1</sup> he payed her' hyer'. he was an hye clerk & a souereyn), <sup>1</sup> MS. her ere; her crosst d out.	264
	All þe vij artes coude he ful pleyñ).	266
	And ouyr' þis lady was hys most cure, þat sche schuld be occupyed all þe long day In doctrine & stodye, saue in mesure Sume-tyme a-mong had sche hyr play.	267
	Sume-tyme to hyr mayster' wold sche sey nay : Whan he bad hyr pley, sche wold sit styлле ; To stody & goodenes inclined was her' wyлле.	271
	Sche lerned þe greke, sche lernyd þe latyn tunge, sche lerned of natur' þe preuy weys alle	274
[fol. 8]	þat ony philosophyr' be hys doctrine had runge, sche knew þe effectis as þei schuld falle Of all þe bodyes whechi we þe planetes calle ; þis was thorow besynes of Athanas þe clerk, Wechi tended on-to hyr' & set hyr thus on werk.	278
	God of hys grace, as scyth þe story, Aʒens alle heretykys þat reyned þoo ther' Wold all hys conquest & hys victory	280
		281

ffor of <sup>1</sup> alle the scoleris þat arn) nov or were,	<sup>1</sup> overlined.	<u>Bk. I. Ch. 5.</u>
She is hem a-bove ; for neyther love ne fere	250	
Made hir to stynt whan she gan to ken		
The letteris and wordes þat she spelled then.	252	
She hadde maystres fro fer þat were ful wise,	253	and has masters in Grammar, &c.
To teeche hir of retoryk and gramer the scole ;		
The cases, the novmbres and suche-maner gyse,		
The modes, the verbez, wiche longe to no foole,		
She lerned hem sweetly wyth-ovte ony doole,	257	
Bothe the figures and the conseqvens,		
The declynaciõs, þe personys, the modys, þe tens.	259	
Among alle other a wysman) ther was,	260	
And ful sad ther-to, he was hir chavncelere,		Her Chan- cellor is Athanas,
Men called hym a name Mayster athanas ;		
he was surveour to alle þat there were,		who oversees all her teach- ers.
And as I seyde er, he payed hem her heere.	264	
he was an hygh clerk and a sovereyn),		
Alle the .vij. artes covde he ful pleyn).	266	
And on this lady was his most cure,	267	
That she shulde be occupyed al the long day		
In doctryne and studie, save in mesure		
Somtyme a-monge had she hir play.		
Somtyme to hir mayster wolde she sey nay	271	
Whan he bad hir pleye, she wolde sytte stille,		
To stody and goo[d]nes inclyned was hir wille.	273	
She lerned the greek, she lerned the latyn tunge,	274	She learns Greek and Latin,
She lerned of nature the prevy weyes alle		
That ony phylsophre be his doctryne had rvnge,		
She knewe the effectes as þei shul falle		
Of alle þe bodyes wiche we planetes calle ;	278	
This was thurgh besynes of athanas þe cleerk,	<sup>1</sup> on overlined.	
Wiche tended on <sup>1</sup> -to hir and set hir thus on weerk.	280	
God of his grace, as seyth þe story,	281	that she may get the vic- tory over heretics.
A-yens alle the heretykes þat regned tho there		
Wold aH his conqvest and his victory		

<u>Bk. I. Ch. 5.</u>	Schuld be a-rered only be hyr'.	
	þerfor lern sor', þou zong goddys scoler'!	285
	þou schall ouercome heresy & blasphem	
	Thorow-owte all grek, thorow-owte all þi reme.	287
	Ryght as [be] <sup>1</sup> .xij. ydyotis, seynt Austyn seyth— <sup>1 om.</sup>	
	he meneth þe Aposteles, for þei not lerned wer'—	289
	Thorow-owte þe werd was sowyn' our' feyth,	
	þat euery man may know & euery man ler'	
	Godd wold not wynn vs wyth wysdam ne fecr',	292
	But wyth holy boystynesse, if I schuld sey soo :	
	Ryght þus, as me thynkyth, in þis caas hath he doo ;	294
	ffor whan þat hys chyrch was at gret neede,	295
	he ordeynd þis lady for to zeue batayle	
	Ageyn all þe werd ; þei schall hyr not ouyr' lede,	
	Ne alle her' argumentis schall not a-vayle ;	
	Sche schal so be lerned þat all her' asayle	299
	Schall fayl, & falle boþe cunningg & bost,	
	Sche schall be myty wyth strenght of goost.	301

Bk. I. Ch. 6.

Cam. 6m.

	<b>H</b> Er' fader', þat sche schuld lern þese artes alle,	302
	þis nobyll lady, hys owyn' douter' der',	
	Ded mak a paleyse large & ryalle,	
	In whech he wold þat sche schuld ler'.	
	Boþe knytes & clerkes, all dwelt þei þer'	306
	Whech wer' ordeynd to her' owyn' seruyse,	
	Now to make hyr' rest, now for to make hyr' ryse,	308
	And eke new norture to tell hyr' & to tech.	309
	Many maysters þer-for' þethyr wer' fett ;	
	'As fer' as her' cunningg myght strech & rech,	
	þei lerned þis lady wyth-owte any lett ;	
	Alle her' wyttys wer' only on hyr sett.	313
[fol. 8, b.]	ze may well suppose in zour' owne dome	
	Euer as sche grew, þe gretter' mayster' come.	315

Shuld been arrered only be here.		<i>Bk. I. Ch. 5.</i>
Therefore lerne sore, þou yov[n]ge goddys scolere !	285	
þou shalt ouercome heresy and blaspheme		
Thurgh-ovte aH grece, þurgh-ovte al þi reme.	287	
Ryght as be twelue ydiotes, sent Austyn seyth—	288	As 12 Idiots, the Apostles, founded the Faith,
he meneth the apostellis, for thei <sup>1</sup> not lerned were—		
Thurgh-ovte þe world was sowen ov <sup>r</sup> feyth,	<sup>1</sup> overlined.	
That every man may knowe, and every man may lere		
God wulde not wyne vs wyth wysdam ne fere,	292	
But wyth holy boistonesse, if I shulde sey soo :		
Ryght thus, as me thynketh, in this cas hath he doo ;	294	
ffor whan þat his cherche was at gret nede,	295	
he ordeyned þis lady for to yeve batayle		so God or- dained Katha- rine to do battle for the Church.
A-geyn al the world ; þei shal hir not ouere lede,		
Ne alle her argumentys shal not a-vayle ;		
She shal so be lerned þat alle her assayle	299	
Shal fayle, and falle bothe conyng and bost,		
She shal be myghty wyth the strengthe of þe gost.	301	

**Ca<sup>m</sup>. sextum.***Bk. I. Ch. 6.*

<b>H</b> Ir fadir, that she shuld lerne these Artes alle,	302	Katharine's Father builds her a Palace,
This noble lady, his ovne doughter dere,		
Dede make a paleys large and royaH,		
In wiche he wolde þat she shuld lere.		
Bothe knyghtes and clerkys, alle dwelt þei there	306	where her Teachers dwell.
Wiche were ordeyned to hir owne seruyse,		
Nov to make hir reste, now for to make hir to ryse,	308	
And eke newe norture to telle here and to teche.	309	
Many maystris therefore theder were fette ;		
As fer as her conyng myght stretche and reche,		
Thei lerned this lady wyth-ovten ony lette ;		
Alle here wittes were oonly on her sette.	313	
Ye may weel suppose in yovre owen dome,		
Euere as she grev the grettere mayster come.	315	

<u>Mk. I. Ch. 6.</u>	<p>her' stodyes <i>þer</i> full craftily wer' I-pyght, 316  <i>Wyth</i> deskys &amp; chayeres &amp; meeç <i>oþer</i> ger'  Arayed on <i>þe</i> best wyse, &amp; glased full bryght,  Euery faculte be hym-selue : for <i>þei</i> of <i>gramer'</i> wer'  Sett on <i>þe</i> west syde, &amp; eke <i>þei</i> <i>þat</i> ler' 320  Astronomye on <i>þe</i> est, ryght for <i>þei</i> schuld loke  Sumtyme on <i>þe</i> heuyn), sumtyme on) her' boke ; 322  All <i>þe</i> other' artes be-twyx hem stode a-rowe, 323  Ryght aftyr her' age &amp; aftyr' her' dygnyte—  Euery man <i>þat</i> cam <i>þer'</i> myght well I-knowe  Whech was worthyer' &amp; hye[r] of degre.  her' fadyr <i>þe</i> kyng seldom wold her' se, 327  On-to <i>þese</i> clerkes he hath hyr' thus take  As thow he had hyr only now newly forsake— 329  ffor lettynge of hyr lernynge dyd he <i>þan</i> soo. 330  Sche wex fast in body, &amp; lerned eke sore ;  Whan o mayster' was goo, a-nopir cam hyr too.  Thus chaungynge of may-stirys &amp; eke of lore  had <i>þis</i> noble mayde, sche lerned mych <i>þe</i> mor'— 334  <i>þe</i> may wete natur' louyth variaunce,  Sumetyme men stody, sumtyme <i>þei</i> daunce. 336  <i>þe</i> kyng dyd make <i>þer</i> for' her' a-lone 337  A paleyse wallyd, ryght on <i>þe</i> sowth-syde  Open to <i>þe</i> sune : <i>þer</i> was her' trone—  <i>þer</i> is no swych now in <i>þis</i> werde wyde.  It was made for kateryne <i>þer</i> to a-byde 341  Whan sche wold stody be hyr-selue sole.  In <i>þe</i> grete garden was most hyr' scole : 343  It was fer a-wey fro euery-maner' wyght, 344  It was made &amp; ordeynd at hyr' owyn deuyse.  <i>þer</i> wold sche ly sumtyme, stody &amp; wryght ;  It was sett full of trees, &amp; <i>þat</i> in <i>straunge</i> wyse ;  <i>þer'</i> wold sche sytte, &amp; <i>þer</i> wold sche ryse, 348  <i>þer</i> was hyr walkynge &amp; all hyr dysporte—  Solitary lyff to stodyers is comfort. 350</p>
----------------------	---

hir stodyes there ful craftely were I-pyght,	316	<i>Bk. I. Ch. 6.</i>
Wyth deskes and chayeris and moche other gere		The Studies of Katharine and her Teachers are well fitted up.
A-rayed on the best wyse, and glased ful bryght,		
Euery faculte be the selue : for þei of gramer were		
Sette on the west syde, and eke þei that lere	320	
Astronomye on the Est, ryght for þei shuld loke		
Somtyme on heuene, somtyme on her booke ;	322	
Alle the other artes be-twyxe hem stood on rowe,	323	
Ryght after her age and after her dignyte—		
Euery man that cam ther myght weel I-knowe		
Wiche was wurthier and heyere of degre.		
hir fadyr the kyng seeldom wolde hir see,	327	
On-to these clerkys he hath hir thus I-take,		
As þough he had hir oonly now newly for-sake—	329	
ffor lettyng of hir lernyng dede he than soo.	330	
She wex faste in body, and lerned eke soore ;		Katharine grows and learns, often changing her Masters and studies.
Whan on) maystir was goo, a-nother cam) hir too.		
Thus chavngyng of maystres and eke of loore		
had this noble mayden), she learned moche þe moore—	334	
Ye may wete weel nature lovyth varyaunce,		
Somtyme men) stodye, sumtyme thei davnce.	336	
The kyng ded make there for hir allone	337	A Palace is built for her alone
A paleys ryght weel walled, on the south syde		
Open to the sonne : there was hir trone—		
There is non) suche now in this world wyde.		
It was made for kataryne there to a-byde	341	
Whan) she wolde stodyen be hir-self soole.		to work in.
The grete gardeyn) was þe most hir scoole :	343	
It was fer a-wey from euery-maner wyght,	344	
It was made and ordeyned at hir owne devyse.		
There wolde she lye somtyme, stody and wryght ;		She studies in the Garden.
It was set ful of trees, and that in strong wyse ;		
There wolde she sitte, there wolde she ryse,	348	
There was hir walkyng and alle hir disport—		
Solitary lief to stodies is confort.	350	



38 *Katharine learns the seven Liberal Arts.* [MS. Rawlinson.

<u>Bk. I. Ch. 6.</u>	Sche bar' þe key of þis gardeyn)— <i>þer</i> had it no moo; 351
	Whan sche went in, sche schett it full fast;
	It was speryd ful treuly went sche to or froo,
	ffor of many thynges was sche sor' a-gast,
	But most of inquietude—stody may not last 355
	<i>Wyth</i> werdly besynesse ne <i>wyth</i> hys cure,
	þe olde wyse sey þus, I 3ow ensure. 357
	þe walles & þe toures wer' mad nye so hye, 358
	fful couertly <i>wyth</i> arches & sotelly I-cast :
	<i>þer</i> myght not come in but foul þat doth flye;
	þe 3atis, as I seyð, wer' schett full fast,
	And euer-mor' her'-selue wold be þe last; 362
	þe key eke sche bar', for sche wolde soo.
	þus leuyd þis lady in her' stody þoo. 364

Bk. I. Ch. 7.

Ca<sup>m</sup>. 7<sup>m</sup>.

<b>S</b> che lerned þan þe liberall artes seuen). 365
Gramer' is þe fyrst & þe most lyte;
he tellyth þe weye full fayr' & full euen
who men schall speke, & who þei schall wryte.
Retoryk þe secunde is sett in þis plyte: 369
he doth ny þe same, saue þat he arayeth
hys maters <i>wyth</i> colourys & <i>wyth</i> termes dysplayeth. 371
þe thyrde sciens call þei dialetyk; 372
he lerneth men <i>wyth-in</i> a lythyll throwe,
If he be stodied <i>þer</i> is non to hym lyke,
þe trewth fro þe falshed þat techeth for to know.
Aftyr hym þan folowyth ryght be rowe 376
Arsmetryk, in whech þe cunnyng so stant :
Nowmbres schall þou know, þou schall not whant. 378
Thei tawt <sup>1</sup> her' also þe scyens of musyk, <sup>1</sup> MS. tawter' 379
fful wel grownded was sche in þis melodye;
Sche had a mayster, þer' was none hym lyke,
he departyd þis scyens in thre <i>wyth-outen</i> lye :
In-to metyr, to ryme, & to armonye; 383

She baar the keye of þis gardeyn—þer had it no moo ; Bk. I. Ch. 6.  
 Whan she wente in she shet it ful fast ; 352  
 It was sperd ful truly went she too or froo,  
 ffor of many thyngis was she sore a-gast,  
 But most of inquietude—stody may not last 355  
 With wordly besynesse ne with his cure,  
 The olde wyse sey thus, I yov ensure. 357  
 The walles and þe tovrís were made vp so hyghe, 358 Katharine's  
Garden is  
walled round.  
 fful couertly wyth arches arn sotylly I-cast :  
 There myght not come in but foul that doth flighe ;  
 The 3ates, as I seyde, were shet ful fast,  
 And euere-more hir-selue wold be the last ; 362  
 The keye eke she baar, for she wold do soo.  
 Thus lerned this lady in hir stody thoo. 364

Ca<sup>m</sup>. septimum.

Bk. I. Ch. 7.

She lerned thanne the liberal artes seuene. 365 She learns  
1. Grammar,  
**S** Gramer is the firste and the most lyght ;  
 he telleth the weye ful fayer and ful euene  
 hov men shal speke, and hov thei shal wryght.  
 Rethorik the secunde is sette in this plyght : 369 2. Rhetoric,  
 he dooth ny the same, saue that he arayeth  
 his materís with colovrís and wyth termes displayeth. 371  
 The thredde scyens calle þei dialetike ; 372 3. Dialectic,  
 he lerneth men wyth-inne a lytil throwe—  
 If he be stodied, there is non to hym like—  
 Truthe<sup>1</sup> fro falshed that teecheþ he for to knowe. 1 on erasure.  
 After hym thanne folweth ryght be rowe 376  
 Arsmetryk, in wiche the connyng soo stant :  
 Nombres shalt þou knowe, thou shalt not want. 378 4. Arithme-  
tic,  
 Thei taught hir also the scyens of musyk, 379 5. Music,  
 fful weel grovnded was she in this melodie ;  
 She had a mayster, there was non hym lyke,  
 he departed this scyens in thre, wythowte lye :  
 In to metir, to ryme, and to armonye ; 383

<u>Bk. I. Ch. 7.</u>	Armonye is in voyse, in smytyng or wynde, Symphonie & euphonye am) of hys kynde.	385
[fol. 9, b.] [1st hand]	In geometrye was þis lady lernyd also, In euclidis bokys wytþe his portratyrys ; þat is a sciens—mech stody longoth þer-too— ffor to know þe letterys & þe figures ; Yf I speke þerof, I xah make forfetures Agayn þis sciens, I can not of þat arte But swech as he can þat makyth a carte.	386 390 392
	In astronomye þis lady eke so hye steye, Sche know þe strenght & þe stondyng' styH Of alle þe planetis þat regnen vp-on hey ; Whech ar' of goode wyH & whech ar' of iHe, Whech wyll help a mater & whech will it spille. And þeis she lernyd both mor' & lesse, Sche mowled not, I trow, in no ydylnes.	393 397 399
	þus for her' lernyng' had sche swech fame, þat her' fader dede gader þorow-oute þe lond aH þe grete clerkys þat wer' of any name, Ryth to þis entent, as I vnderstande, <sup>1</sup> <sup>1</sup> MS. stonde ? To wete yf his douter dar' take it vnhand <sup>1</sup> <sup>1</sup> r. on hand To be apposyd of so many wyse men. þei wer' gadred in þat place CCC. & ten.	400 404 406
[2nd hand]	Eche of hem schall now do aH hys myght To schew hys cumnyng—if any straung thyng hath he lernyd hys lyue, he wyll now ful ryght Vttyr hit, for hys name therby schaH spryng. But þer was ryght nowt but kateryn þe 3yng vndyrstod aH þyng & answerd þer-too ; her' problemes aH sche hath sone on-doo. “ O good godd,” seyð þeis <sup>1</sup> clerkes thane, <sup>1</sup> MS. þeis “ þis mayd hath lerned mor' thyng in her' lyue Than we supposyd, for mor' than we sche canne. We woundyr who sche may our' argumentis dryue, ffor hyr conclusyon now in 3erys fyue	407 411 413 414 418

Armonye is in voys, in smytynge or wynde, Symphonie and Euphonie and of his kynde.	385	<i>Bk. I. Ch. 7.</i>
In gemetrie was þis lady lerned also, In eclidys book <i>s</i> wyth his portratures ; It is a scyens—moche stody longeth ther-too— ffor to knowe the letter <i>s</i> and the fygures ; If I speke of it, I shal make forfeitures A-geyns þis sciens, I can not of that art but suche as he kan þat maket a cart.	386	6. Geometry, Euclid,
In astronomye þis lady eke so hey stey, She knewe the strengthe and the stondyng stille Of alle the planetes þat regnen vp-on hey ; Wiche are of good wil and wiche are of ille, Wiche wil helpe a mater and wiche wil it spille. And these she lerned bothe more and lesse, She mused not, I trowe, in non Idelnesse.	392	393
Thus for hir lernyng had she suche fame, That hir fadyr dede gaderyn þvrgh-ovte the lond Alle the grete clerkys that were of ony name, Ryght to this entent, as I vnderstonde, To wete if his doughter dar take it on honde To be apposed of so many wyse men. Thei were gadered in þat place thre hundred and ten.	400	7. Astrono- my.  The girl Katharine is so learned
Eche of hem shal now doo al his myght To shewe his connyng—if ony stravnge thing hath he lerned hys lyve, he wil nov ful ryght Vtter it, for his name thereby shal spryng. but there was ryght novght but kataryn þe ying <sup>1</sup> Vndirstood alle þing and answerde ther-too ; her problemes alle she hath soone on-doo.	404	that when 310 Examiners
“ O good god,” seyden these clerkys than, “ This mayde hath lerned more þing in hir lyue Than we supposed, for more þan we, she kan. we wunder <sup>1</sup> hov she may oure argumentis dryve ffor her conclusyon, for in yeer <i>s</i> fyve	407	question her,  <sup>1</sup> MS. þing.  she answers them all.
	411	413
	414	The 310 Wise Men
	418	<sup>1</sup> MS. wunder

<u>Bk. I. Ch. 7.</u>	Cune we not lerne þat sche doth in one"—	
	Thus seyð þeis wysmen be row euerychon.	420
	Thei tok þan her' leue at þe kyng alle,	421
[fol. 10]	home to her' cuntre, certeyn), will þei goo ;	
	“ þis mayd 3our' doghtyr, lord,” þei seyð, “ sche schaff	
	Be a woundyr woman, & sche may leue þer-too.	
	Of vs nedyth sche noght, we hafe not her' to doo,	425
	Sche can þat we can, & þer-to mech more”—	
	þus seyð þei, certeyn), þe wyse þat ther' wore.	427
	Thys noble kyng hath reward hem full weele,	428
	3oue hem grete 3yftys & grete liberte ;	
	Lordes dede so þanne, clerkes had euery deel,	
	All þat þei spent, of þe liberalyte	
	And of þe bountyfnesse of swech lordes fre.	432
	þus are þei rewardyd, & home euerych oone,	
	And kateryne in stody is left þus a-lone.	434

Bk. I. Ch. 8.Ca<sup>m</sup>. 8<sup>m</sup>.

<b>Q</b> wan all was welle & sekyr, as sche wende,	435
þan cam deth to hows & dyd hys dute,	
Of all her' ioye he made sone an ende :	
ffor he hath take a-way hyr owyn' fadyr fre	
And owte of þis world hath ledd hym wher' he	439
Is in swech place as longyth on-to hym,	
he is logged þer' wyth lordys of hys kyne	441
Whech deyð wyth-uten feyth, wyth-owt crystendome—	
Kateryn is swech on, 3et sche schall not be long.	443
Owte of all grece þe grete lordes come—	
But þei had do soo, þei had do grete wrong ;	
All her' grete worchep oonly dyd honge	446
Vp-on þe noble kyng—he lyght þer' now ded ;	
þei closyd hym in clothe & aftyr-ward in lede,	448
Thei led hym to þe temple wyth solennite,	449
If wepyng & waylyng schuld be called soo.	
þer' was noon oþer noyse thaz in þat cete	

kvn we not lerne þat [s]he hath<sup>1</sup> dooth (!) in oon"— 419 *Bk. I. Ch. 7.*  
 Thus seyde these wys'men be rowe euerychon. <sup>1</sup> overlined.

Thei took þanne her leue at the kyng alle, 421  
 hom to her contre, certeyn, wil þei goo; goback home,

“This mayde yovre doughter, lord,” þei seyde, “she shalle  
 Be a wunder<sup>1</sup> woman, and she may leue ther-too. <sup>1</sup> MS. wunder  
 Of vs nedeth she nought, we haue here nought to doo, 425 as they can  
teach Katha-  
rine nothing.  
 She can þat we can, and there-to moche more”—

Thus seyde thei, certeyn, þe wise þat there wore. 427

This noble kyng hath rewarded hem ful weel, 428 They are well  
paid.

yeve hem grete zeftes and grete liberte;  
 lordes dede also<sup>1</sup> þanne, the<sup>2</sup> clerk<sup>is</sup> had euery deel <sup>1</sup> corrected, <sup>2</sup> overlined.

Al þat þei spente, of there lyberalyte  
 And of there bovntyffnesse—of the wiche lordys free 432

Thus are þei rewarded, and hom euery-choon,  
 And kataryne in stody is lefte thus allow. 434

Ca<sup>m</sup>. octaumu.*Bk. I. Ch. 8.*

**W**hanne al was weel and sekyr, as she wende, 435  
 Thanne cam deth to hovse and dede his dute,

Of al hir ioye he maad soone an ende :

ffor he hath take a-wey hir owen fadir fre

And ovte of this world hath ledde hym where he 439 Katharine's  
Father, Cos-  
tus, dies.

Is in swiche place as longyn on-to hym,

he is lodged there wyth lordes of his kyn 441

Whiche deyden wyth-ovte feith, wyth<sup>li</sup>-ovten crysten-  
 Kataryne is swiche on, yet she shal not longe. [dom—

Ovte of al grece the gret lordys coom—

But thei had do soo, þei had doon grete wronge; The Lords of  
Greece come.

Al her grete wurshep oonly dede hongre 446

Vp-on þe noble kyng—he lith nov there deed;

Thei closyn hym in clooth and afterward in leed, 448

Thei led hym to þe temple wyth solennyte, 449 Katharine's  
Father is  
coffind,  
taken to the  
Temple,

If wepyng and waylyng shuld be called soo.

Ther was non other noyse thanne in þat Cite

- Bk. I. Ch. 8. But "welaway, alas! qwat schul we doo?  
 Our' lord is now gon), we gete hym no moo, 453  
 Who schall ber' þe crown), now he is deed?  
 he left vs non eyre for to be our' heed, 455  
 "But a 3ong mayde; what schal sche doo? 456  
 Sche is but a woman! 3et, had see weddyd be  
 Or tyme þat hyr fadyr went þus vs froo,  
 [fol. 10, b.] It had be mor' sekyrnesse & mor' felicyte.  
 þer is no mor' to sey, but sekyrly we 460  
 Are likely to be subiect on-to oper londys;  
 We bounde sumtyme, now mote we suffyr bondys." 462  
 The noble qween eke, qwat sorow þat sche made 463  
 It is pyte to her', to telle & to rede;  
 þe cowde no solace hyr hert þat tyme glade,  
 þe teeres fell down) euer as sche 3ede.  
 þe 3ung lady kateryne hath chaunged her' wede, 467  
 And hyr' colour' eke is now full pale.  
 What schuld I of her' sorow make lenger' tale? 469  
 The kyng was leyd in a tounge, made of golde & stones  
 ffyl ryaly, 3e may wete, for he was her' kyng, 471  
 A-noynted eke wyth baume, þat neyþer flesch ne bones  
 Schuld rote ne stynke—swech was þe beryng  
 In þat tyme to lordes; & mych other' thying 474  
 Was seyde & do, whech nedyth not to rehers,  
 ffor happily sume folk myght than be þe wers 476  
 To her' swech maumentrye & swych-maner rytes. 477  
 þe lordes a-bode þer styll in þat same place,  
 Both dukys & erlys, byschoppys & knytes,  
 Thrytty dayes cuyn)—for so vsage was.  
 þe dayes rone fast & be-gune to pace. 481  
 þe lordes þat þer wer', þei seyde þat her' kyng  
 Mote hafe a memoryall for any-maner thying, 483  
 And þat of swech lestyng whech schuld not fayle, 484  
 þus seyde þei aȝ ryght wyth oon entent;  
 Pey[n]tyng & wrytyng & grauyng in entayle

- but "weclaway, allas! what shal we doo?  
 Oure lord is now goo, we gete hym no moo. 453 Bk. I. Ch. 8.  
and bewaild.
- ho shal bere the crowne, now he is deed?  
 he lefte vs non other for to be oure heed, 455
- "But a yovnge mayde; what shal she doo?  
 She is but a woman! zet, had she wedded be 456  
 Or tyme þat hir fader went thus vs froo,  
 It had be more sekynnesse and more felicite.  
 There is no more to seye, but sekirly we 460  
 Arn) lykly to ben subiettys on-to other londes;  
 We bounde somtyme, nov mote we suffre bondes." 462
- The noble qveen) eke, what sorwe þat she made, 463 The Queen  
sorrows.  
 It is pete of hir to telle and to<sup>1</sup> reede; <sup>1</sup> orig. om.  
 There coude no solas þat tyme hir hert glade,  
 The teeres fel doun) euere as she yeede.  
 The yov[n]ge lady kataryn) hath chavnged hir wede 467 So does  
Katharine.  
 And hir colovr, and eke is nowe ful pale;  
 What shuld I of hir sorwe make a lengere tale? 469
- The kyng was leyd in a tounge, made of gold) and stoness  
 fful ryally, ye may wete, for he was her kyng, 471  
 A-noynted eke with bavme, þat neyther flesh ne bones  
 Shulde not rote ne stynke—swiche was the beryng The body of  
Katharine's  
Father is  
embalmd.  
 In þat tyme to lordys; and moche other thyng 474  
 Was þanne seyde and doo, wiche nedeth not to be (!) rehers,  
 ffor happely som) folk myght thanne be the wers 476
- To heere swiche maumentrye and suche-maner ryghtes.  
 The lordes a-bode there stille in þat same plaas, 478  
 Bothe dukys and erlys, bysshopys and knytes,  
 Thretty dayes euene—for soo vsage waas.  
 The dayes ronne faste and be-gonne to paas. 481  
 The lordes þat þer were, þei seyde þat her kyng  
 Mote haue a memorial for ony-maner thyng; 483 As a lasting  
Memorial to  
him,
- And þat of swiche lestynge the Cite (!) shuld not faile,  
 þus seyde þei alle ryght wyth on entent; 485  
 Peyntyng and wrytyng and gravyng in entayle



<u>Bk. I. Ch. 8.</u>	It wyll wanyse & wast, roten & be brent.	
	þer-for to þis ende are þei all consent :	488
	þe grete cyte, wech her' lord dyd make,	
	Schall chaunge now hys name for her' lordes sake ;	490
	It schall no lenger' hyght þus : þe gret amalek,	491
	hese name wyll þei turn' thorow-oute all þe cost ;	
	Who-so-euer þedyr come, wyth cart or wyth sek,	
	þei mote calle it now þe cctee famagost.	
	þus mad þei crye þan thorow-oute al þe hoost	495
	þat all men of grece mote hafe it in mowthe,	
[fol. 11]	Dwelle he est' or west, dwell he north' or sowthe.	497
	And þis is her' cause, for þat cyte he made,	498
	In þe same dwelt he most, þus seyð þei alle,	
	In þis cyte mych' myrth & mych' ioye he had,	
	In þis cyte to deth eke he down dede falle ;	
	ffor þeis same causes hys name ber' it schaff,	502
	Euer whyll it on grounde stant, it schall neuer be lost,	
	But euer be in knowlech' þe cyte of famagost.	504
	þus it is called now & euer-mor' schall be,	505
	Wyth a g. sett þer' þe c. schuld stande ;	
	þe grete noble famagost þat stant on þe see	
[1st hand]	þus it is named þorw-out euery lande ;	
	þer walkyth many a foote, & werkyth many hande.	509
	þus shal þe name of' wordy men sprede,	
	And shrewes shul sterue nameles, swech is her' mede.	511

<b>T</b> he qwen sett a parlement at her' owe coste	512
Att alisaunder þe grete, to wech she wolde	
Euery lorde þat held of' her' husbond <sup>d</sup> coste, <sup>1</sup> MS. husbondis	
To þis parlement nedis goo or ryde shold—	
But he come wyfully, he may be ful bold,	516
he schal be compelled. sche sent ferre & nye	
ffor alle þe lordis, & no man wylt why.	518

It wil whanse and waste, roten and be brent.		<i>Bk. I. Ch. 8.</i>
Therefore to this ende arn) they alle consent :	488	
The grete Cite, wiche her lord dede make,		the name of the city
Shal chavngc nov his name for her lordis sake ;	490	Amalek is
It shal no lengere hatte thus : the grete Amalek,	491	
Is name wil þei turne thorgh-ovte al þe coost ;		
ho-so-euer come thedyr, wyth carte or wyth sek,		
Thei mote nov calle the Cite ffamagoost.		changed to Famagost,
Thus made thei cry thanne þurgh-ovte alle the oost	495	
That alle men) of Grece mote haue [it] in movthe,		
Dwelle he Est or west, dwelle he north or sovthe.	497	
And this is her cavse, for that Cite he made,	498	
In þat same dwelled he most, thus seyde þei alle,		for he dwelt most there,
In this Cite meche merthe and meche ioye he hade,		
In this Cite to deth eke down) dede falle ;		and died there.
ffor these same cavses his name bere it shalle,	502	
Euer whil it on) grovnde stant, it shal neuer be lost,		
But euer be in knowleche the Cite famagost.	504	
Thus is it called now and euerc-more shal bee,	505	
Wyth a G. set there C. shuld stond ;		The C of Costus is changed to G, in Fama- gost.
The grete noble famagost þat ston)lyth on þe see		
þus is it named þurgh-ovte euery lond ;		
There walketh many a foot, and werketh many an hond).	509	
Thus shal þe name of wurthy men sprede,		
And shrewes shul sterve nameles, suche is her mede.	511	

**Ca<sup>m</sup>. nouu<sup>m</sup>.***Bk. I. Ch. 9.*

<b>T</b> he qveen sette a parlement at hir ovne cost	512	Katharine's Mother sum- mons a Par- liament at Alexandria,
At Alisavndre the grete, to wiche she wolde		
Euery lord þat held) of hir hovsbonde Cooste,		
To þis parlement nedes goo or ryde sholde—		
But he come wilfully, he may be ful bolde,	516	
he shal be compelled. she sente fer and ny		
ffor alle the lordes, and no man) wyste why.	518	

- Ek. I. Ch. 9. But why þat sche sette þe parlement in þat place?     519  
 O cause þer was, for in þat same cite  
 Alle kynges of þat lond, as vsage was,  
 hadd receyued þe crowne wyth solennte ;  
 And for a costum long<sup>t</sup> hold may nott brokyn be,     523  
 But yf<sup>t</sup> it turbel many men, þerfor<sup>t</sup> she held it þer.  
 Many lord & lady att þat parlement wer<sup>t</sup>.     525  
 Anoper cause þer was, for þe kynrode of her<sup>t</sup>  
 had founded þis cete & refounded eke—     526  
 Be whom & be whos dayes, 3e shal sone her<sup>t</sup>,  
 Yf ye wyl be styлле & no man now speke  
 But I my-schue. 3e shal not nede to seke     530  
 Mo cronycles or storyes ; 3e schal ler<sup>t</sup> of me  
 Alle þe lyne & þe lordes aftyr her<sup>t</sup> degre.     532
- [fol. 11, b.]  
 [2nd hand] Ther was a lord sumty[m]e þat þe soudon was     533  
 Of surre & of egipt, babel was hys name ;  
 he beldyd alysaunder in þat same place,  
 he called it babilon, in haunsyng of hys fame,  
 þat it schuld not falle ne neuyr be lame—     537  
 þis was hys wyll ; & aftyr many a day  
 It was called babilon, sothly for to say,     539  
 Not babilon a-lone, but babilon þe lasse,     540  
 ffor differens of þe other<sup>t</sup> þat stant in þe est.  
 Who wyll owte egypt in to affryk passe,  
 Goo or ryd wheyder he wyll, þis wey is þe best.  
 þis was an othyr cause why þis gret fest     544  
 Was hold in þat place : for her<sup>t</sup> ryall kyn  
 Owt of þis babel cam, boþe þe mor<sup>t</sup> & þe myn<sup>t</sup>.     546  
 The þird cause was þis, as seyth Athanas,  
 Grettest of hem alle, as semyth on-to me :  
 þis same cyte in þe londe of egipt was,  
 In whech þer<sup>t</sup> reygned an-other<sup>t</sup> kyng þan he :  
 So was he called þan for diuersyte     551  
 Kyng of alysaundyr a-lone, ryght for differens  
 Of þe kyng of egypt—þis is þe sentens.     553

But why that she sette the *parlement* in þat place? 519 *Bk. I. Ch. 9.*  
 Oo cawse there was, for in that same Cite  
 Alle kyngis of that loud, as vsage was,  
 had receyved the crowne with solennyte;  
 And, for a custom longe holde may not broken be, 523  
 But if it turbe many men, therefore she helde it þere.  
 Many lord and lady at that *parlement* were. 525

A-nother cawse ther was, for the kynhod of hir 526  
 had fovnded this Cite and refovnded it eke—  
 Be hom and in whos dayes, ye shal some here,  
 yf ye wil be styлле and no man now speke  
 But I my-self. 3e shal not nede to seke 530  
 Mo cronycles or storyes; ye shal lerne of me  
 Alle the lyne and þe lordes after her degre. 532

There was a lord somtyme þat þe sovdon was 533  
 Of surre and of Egypte, babel was his name;  
 he byelded alisavndre in that same plas,  
 he called it Babilon, in haunsynge of his fame,  
 That it shuld not falle ne neuer be lame— 537  
 This was his wil; and after many a day  
 It was called babylon, soothly to say, 539

Not babylon allone, but babylon the lasse, 540  
 ffor differens of other þat stant in the Est.  
 ho wil ovte of Egypte into affryke passe,  
 Goo or ryde wheder he wil, this w[e]ye is the best.  
 This was a-nother cawse why this grete fest 544  
 Was holde in that plaas: for hir ryal kynð  
 Ovte of þis babel cam, bothe the more and þe mynð. 546

The thredde cause was this, as seyth athanas, 547  
 Grottest of hem alle, as semyth on-to me:  
 This same Cite, in the loud of Egypte was,  
 In whiche there regned a-nother kyng þan he:  
 So was he called thanne for diuersite 551  
 kyng of Alysavndre allone, rygh[t] for differens  
 Of þe kyng of Egypte—this is þe sentens. 553

where the  
Kings of the  
Laud were  
crownd,

and which  
her kindred  
had founded.

Sultan Babel  
built Alex-  
andria,

and cald it  
'Babylon the

Less.'

It was in  
Egypt.

The king was  
cald 'King of  
Alexandria.'

50 *Former Kings of Babylon or Alexandria.* [MS. Rawlinson.

Bk. I. Ch. 9. Thys wote I well of Athanases reson, 554  
 Whech þat he makyth of þe fundacyon  
 Of þis same Alysandyr, whech oft wyth treson  
 Was nye disceyuyd of many straunge nacyon.  
 But now wyll we leue all þat declaracyon), 558  
 And tell forthe of babel & of oper men  
 Whech long to þe kynred, mo þan .ix. o[r] ten. 560

Bk. I. Ch. 10.

Ca<sup>m</sup>. x<sup>m</sup>.

**T**hys same babel had a sone aftyr hym, 561  
 Madagdalus he hyght, he was lord alsoo  
 Of þis babilon many 3er<sup>s</sup>. & forþ þe same kynð  
 Reygned in þat same place mo þan on or too :  
 ffor hys sone hyght antiochus, þe story seyth soo, 565  
 Not antiochus þe grete of whech spekyth machabe,  
 But an-other be-fore, as 3e schall sone se. 567  
 Thys antiochus had a sonð men cleped gorgalus, 568  
 A worpi man he was, of surre lord & syre.  
 [fol. 12] he be-gate a sone, men clepyd antiochus ;  
 And aftyr antiochus reygned in þat empyre  
 hys sone seleucus—he sett ryght in a myr<sup>s</sup> ; 572  
 þe cyte men clepe seleuce for hys owyð fame,  
 And antyoche he beldyd in hys faderes name. 574  
 þis is þe fyrst lyne of þis ych gorgalus— 575  
 ffor we mote turnð a-geyð, if we truly telle.  
 þis same gorgale<sup>1</sup> 3onger<sup>s</sup> sonð hyght mardemius, <sup>1</sup> r. gorgalis  
 a manly man he was & of hert felle ;  
 Gret alysaundyr sprong of hym as strem owt of welle : 579  
 ffor vn-to þis mardemy wedded was þis<sup>1</sup> fayr<sup>s</sup> <sup>1</sup> r. þe  
 Melior<sup>s</sup>, þe noble mayde, of macedonye þe ayr<sup>s</sup>, 581  
 And of þis mardemye & meliore þe mayde 582  
 kam kyng phylyppe, fadyr to alysaunder<sup>s</sup> þe grete.  
 þus went þe secund lyne, as our<sup>s</sup> auctour sayde,  
 Oute of gorgales yong<sup>1</sup> sonð—þe fyrst hat<sup>2</sup> we lete 585  
 But for a lytyll whyle ; for we wyll now trete <sup>1</sup> r. yonger<sup>s</sup>  
<sup>2</sup> r. hat

This wote I weel of athanas reson, 554 *Bk. I. Ch. 9.*  
 whiche that he maketh of fundacyon  
 Of this same Alysaunder, whiche ofte wyth treson  
 Was ny disseyued of many stravnge nacyon.  
 But nov wil we leue al that declaracyon, 558  
 And telle fourth of Babel and of other men  
 Wiche longe to the kynrede, mo than nyne or ten. 560

Ca<sup>m</sup>. decimum.

**T**his same babel had a sone after hym, 561  
 Madagdalaus he hyght, he was lord also  
 Of þis babilon many a yeer. and fourth þe same kyn  
 Regned in the same place mo thanne on or too :  
 ffor his sone hyght Antiochus, the story seyth soo, 565  
 Not antiochus the grete of whiche speketh Maclabe,  
 But a-nother be-fore, as ye shal sone see. 567

This antiochus had a sone men cleped gorgalus, 568  
 A worthi man he was, of surre lord and syre.  
 he be-gate a son men cleped antiochus ;  
 And after þat antiochus regned in þat empyre  
 his sone seleucus—he set ryght in a myre ; 572  
 The cyte men clepen seleuce for his owe fame,  
 And Antioche he byl[d]ed in his faderis name. 574

This is þe firste lyne of þis iche gorgalus— 575  
 ffor we mote turne a-geyn, if we trewly telle.  
 This same gorgale yovnger sone hight Mardemius,  
 A manly man<sup>1</sup> he was and of hert felle ; <sup>1</sup> overlined. 578  
 Grete alisavndre sprange of hym as strem ovte of welle :  
 ffor on-to this Mardemye wedded was þe fayre  
 Meliore, the noble mayde, of Macedony þe ayre ; 581

And of this Mardemye and Meliore the mayde 582  
 Kam kyng philip, fader to Alysavndre the grete.  
 Thus wente the secunde lyne, as oure avtour sayde,  
 Ovte of gorgalus yovnge sone—þe firste haue we lcte  
 but a lytil while ; for I wyl nov trete 586

Athanas  
writes of the  
founding of  
Alexandria.

*Bk. I. Ch. 10.*

Babel's son  
Madaglalus  
succeeded  
him.

Then followd  
Antiochus I,

Gorgalus,

Antiochus II,

and Seleucus.

Gorgalus's  
2nd son Mar-  
demius

begat Philip,  
and he Alex-  
ander the  
Great,

- Bk. I. Ch. 10. Off þe woundres þat þis Alysaundyr<sup>ʳ</sup> sowte in hys lyffe—  
 All hys labur<sup>ʳ</sup> ȝet in euery mouth is ryffe. 588  
 he conquered þe kyng of pers whych dary hyght, 589  
 he toke arabe & fenice, & eko hys owyn<sup>ʳ</sup> cosynd  
 Antiochus, gorgalys sone, he ouyr-came be myght, <sup>1 = wan</sup>  
 he whan<sup>1</sup> þis babylon from hym wyth gune & engyne.  
 þer cessed þe name of babylon & for euyr gan lyne: 593  
 ffor he chaungyd it to hys, & þus he called it þan  
 “Alysaundyr” aftyr hyme, be-cause he it wanne. 595  
 Ten cytes mad þis lord euen oute of þe grounde, 596  
 All .x. þei hafe is name, alysaundyr þei hyght;  
 Too cytes he chaunged & kept hem hole & sounde,  
 Alysaundyr<sup>ʳ</sup> he wolde þei schulde hyght be ryght.  
 In xij. ȝer<sup>ʳ</sup> he wan þis worlde wyth ful grete myght. 600  
 Whan he schuld dey, he partyd hys londe on twelue,  
 Whech he had gouernd a-lone sumtyme hym-self. 602  
 To hys lordes ȝaue he hys londes for to holde; 603  
 Surry & Alysaundir, ffenice & Palestyne  
 þat ȝafe he to seleucus, myghty man & bolde—  
 [fol. 12, b.] he was to þis alysaundyr of kyn ryght cosynd,  
 Of gorgalus bloode, as i seyde, of þe fyrst lyn, 607  
 At whech I þan left & now be-gynne a-geyn—  
 Alle þing may not be seyde at ones, as clerkys seyn. 609

Bk. I. Ch. 11.

## Cam. xjm.

- T**Oo & þirty ȝer<sup>ʳ</sup> reigned seleucus þer. 610  
 he had an eyr, aftyr hym kyng of þat place,  
 A noble man, þei called antiochus sother<sup>ʳ</sup>;  
 Twenty wynty<sup>ʳ</sup> euene a-mong hem he was.  
 And aftyr had þe crown, þe sceptyr, & þe mace 614  
 hys sone, whech þei calle antiochus theos;  
 he reygned .xv. ȝer<sup>ʳ</sup>. & aftyr hym þan roos 616  
 A man þei call be name seleucus galericus; 617  
 þer<sup>ʳ</sup> reygned he .xx. wynty<sup>ʳ</sup>. & þan seleucus garanne  
 Thre ȝer<sup>ʳ</sup> bar þe crown. & este antiochus

Of þe wondres þat this alysavndre soovght in his lyef— Bk. I. Ch. 10.  
 Al his labour 3et in euery movght is ryef. 588

he conqvered the kyng of perce whiche Dary hight, 589 who conqvered Persia, Arabia, Phenicia;  
 he took arabe and fenice, and eke his owne cosynd

Antyochus, gorgalus soone, he ouere-cam be myght, <sup>1 r. wan</sup>  
 he whan<sup>1</sup> this babilon from hym with gynne and engynð. took Babylon, and changed its name to Alexandria.

There ceeyd the name of babilon and for euer gan lynð : 593

ffor he chavnged it to his name, & þus he called it þanne  
 "Alysavndre" after hym, be-cause that he it wanne. 595

Ten citees made þis lord euene ovte of the grovnd, 596 Alexander had 12 cities calld Alexandria.  
 Alle ten þei haue his name, Alysauudre thei hyght;

Too Cytees he chaunged and kepte hem hool and sovnd,  
 Alisaudre he wold thei shulde hatte be ryght. <sup>1 MS. lord</sup>

In xij. yeer he wanð this word<sup>1</sup> wyth ful grete myght. 600

Whanne he shuld deye, he parted his lond on twelue, On his death

Whiche he had gouerned a-lone somtyme hym-selue. 602

To these lordes yaue he his londys for to holde; 603

Surry and alysaudre, fenyce and palestyn he gave Syria, Alexandria, &c., to his cousin Seleucus,  
 That 3ave [he] to seleucus, myghty manð and bolde—

he was to þis Alisavndre of kyn ryght cosynd,  
 Of gorgalus blood, as I seyde, of the first lynð, 607

At wiche I thanne left and nov be-gynne a-geyn—

Alle þing may not be seyde at ones, as clerkys seynd. 609

Ca<sup>m</sup>. vndecimum.

Bk. I. Ch. 11.

Too and thretty 3eer regned seleucus there. 610

He had an Eyr, after hym kyng of þat plas,  
 A noble manð, thei called Antiochus sothere; whose heir was Antiochus Sothere:

Twenty wynter euene a-mong hem he was.

And after had þe crowne, the sceptre, and the mas 614

his sone, wiche thei calle antiochus theos; and his son was Antiochus Theos.  
 he regned there fyftene 3eer. And after hym þan roos 616

A manð thei calle be name seleuchus galericus; 617

There regned he xx wynter. and þanne seleucus garanne Then came Seleucus Callinicus, Seleucus Ceraunus,  
 Thre 3eer bar the crown. and efte antiochus



<u>Br. I. Ch. 11.</u>	Wech is called þe grete ; he reigned þanne Sex & þirty wynter <sup>r</sup> —iewes 3et <sup>r</sup> hym banne	621
	ffor þe sorow þat he dede on-to her lond & hem Whan he robbed þe temple at iherusalem.	623
	The noble book of machabe wryghtyth hys dedys, hys cruclnesse, hys <sup>1</sup> ire & hys treson <sup>d</sup> eke, <sup>1 MS. hys</sup> hys feyned repentauns—þer-for hys mede is Sorow for synne : for qwan he was seke, he askyd mercy, but not worth a leke.	628
	he left a sone nye of þat same plyte, Seleucus philophator men soyn þat he hyght ;	630
	he synnyd be hys doghtyr ful on-kyndely, þer-for was he brent wyth þe bryght leuene ; In appollony of tyr <sup>r</sup> 3e may rede þe storye who many lordes wer <sup>d</sup> dede be vj. & be seuynd ffor þei coude not gesse hys problemes euyn.	635
	he reigned þer <sup>r</sup> xj. 3er <sup>r</sup> wyth-owten any lees. hys sone aftyr hym hyght antiochus epiphanes ;	637
	hys 3eres wer <sup>d</sup> xj. & hys son hyght þus Antiochus eupater <sup>r</sup> ; he leued 3er's too. And aftyr hym sekyrly reigned demetrius ; Thre 3er <sup>r</sup> he bar <sup>d</sup> þe crown, þe story seyth soo. Antiochus sedites kyng was þer <sup>r</sup> þoo	642
[fol. 13]	Nyne 3er <sup>r</sup> euyn <sup>d</sup> ; & aftyr hym reigned þer <sup>r</sup> A-nopir kyng þei calle demetrius sother <sup>r</sup> .	644

	<b>I</b> N hys tyme þe romaynes whon fro hym Mech of hys londe, & eke þat gret cyte Whech þat he helde, & so had all hys kyn, I mene alysaundy <sup>r</sup> ; þei set þer <sup>r</sup> her <sup>r</sup> see. þe romaynes dyd so, for he was faynd to flee fforth in-to egypt ; he held hym ryght þer <sup>r</sup> — þus led he hys lyffe in sorow & in feer <sup>r</sup> .	645
		649
		651

Whiche is called the grete ; he regned thanne  
 Sex and thretty wyntyr—iewes zet hym banne 621  
 ffor the sorwe þat he dede on-to her loud and hem  
 Whan he robbed the temple at Ierusalem. 623

*Bk. I. Ch. 11.*

and Antiochus the Great, who plundered Jerusalem.

The noble book of Machabe wrytheth his dedys, 624  
 his cruelnesse, his ire and his treson eke,  
 his feyned repentavns—þer-for his mede is  
 Sorwe for synne : for whanne he was seeke,  
 he asked *mercy*, but not wurthli a leeke. 628

he lefte a sone ny of the same plyght,  
 Seleucus philopator men seyð þat he hight ; 630

Followd, Seleucus Philopator,

he synned be his daughter ful onkeendely, 631  
 Therefore was he brent *wyth* the lyght of <sup>1</sup> leuene ;  
 In appolony of Tyre ze may rode the story <sup>1</sup> overlined.

hov many lordys were ded be sexe and be seuene  
 ffor thei covde not gesse his *problemes* euene. 635  
 he regned there xj yeer wyth-ovtyð ony lecs.  
 his sone after hym hight Antiochus epiphanes ; 637

Antiochus Epiphanes,

his *zeeris* were eluene. And his sone hight thus 638  
 Antiochus eupater ; he leued *zeeris* too.

Antiochus Eupator,

And after hym sekerly regned Demetrius ;  
 Thre yeer he bar the crowne, þe story seyth soo.  
 Antiochus sedites kyng was there thoo 642  
 Nyne yeer evene ; and after hym regned there  
 An other kyng þei called Demetrius sothere. 644

Demetrius,

Antiochus Sidetes,

Demetrius Sother.

Ca<sup>m</sup>. duodecim<sup>m</sup>.

*Bk. I. Ch. 12.*

**I**N his tyme þe Romaynys wonne fro hym 645  
 Meche of his lonnd, and eke the grete Citce  
 Wiche þat he held, and so had al his kynd,  
 I mene Alisavndre ; thei sette þere here see.  
 The romaynis dede soo, for he was fayne to flee 649  
 fforth in to Egypte ; he held hym ryght there—  
 Thus led he his lyef in sorwe and in fere. 651

The Romans then took Alexandria,

- Bk. I. Ch. 12. he lost all þe londes whych̄ hys faderes womne. 652  
ffour<sup>s</sup>-skore 3er<sup>s</sup> euend reygned þe romaynes þer<sup>s</sup>,  
And in þis seruage newly þus be-guone  
Reygned þe same kyng þe tyme of xij. 3er<sup>s</sup>.  
Alysaundy<sup>r</sup>, hys sone, þan dede þe crown ber<sup>r</sup> 656  
Nyne 3er<sup>s</sup> euy<sup>n</sup>. & þan demetrie, hys brother<sup>r</sup> ;  
he reygned iij. 3er<sup>s</sup>. & after hym an-opir, 658  
Men calle hym in bokes antiochus griphus ; 659  
he gouerned xij. 3er<sup>s</sup> all þis forsayd londe.  
In þ<sup>e</sup>is iij kynges tyme, myne auctour seyth þus,  
All þis ilke cuntre to þe romaynes was bonde,  
Tyll þat fortune turned so hyr honde, 663  
Whan helyus adrianus emperour<sup>r</sup> was of rome,  
Whych̄ weddyd hys doghtyr to on þei call phalone. 665  
þis phalon was sone on-to þe seyð demetrius : 666  
Be hym cam surry to ryght hold a-geyn),  
And all her<sup>r</sup> subieccyon to rome cessed þus.  
Solaber was þe name of þe mayd, þei sey<sup>n</sup>,  
Ryght soo hyght sche, þei þat hy<sup>r</sup> þer<sup>r</sup> sey<sup>n</sup> 670  
Seyn neuer swyche<sup>n</sup> an-opir, þus seyð þei alle.  
þis same phalon, summe men so hym calle, 672  
had a fulfay<sup>r</sup> sune be þis same solaber<sup>r</sup>, 673  
3ozimus he hyght, kyng after hys fady<sup>r</sup> he was.  
And archenon, & archibelon reygned also þer<sup>r</sup> ;  
þan after antigonus, & þan cam claudace —  
Sune after fady<sup>r</sup>, all reygned in þat place. 677  
þan after borus, ryght þus haf I founde.  
And þanne a-geyn claudace called þe secunde. 679  
[fol. 13, b.]  
[4th hand] þis same claudace, costus fady<sup>r</sup> was, 680  
And þis same costus fady<sup>r</sup> to katelyne.  
Here may 3e se of what men & of what place  
Cam þis woman, þis lady, þis virgyne ;  
Here is<sup>1</sup> it schewyd hooly a<sup>n</sup> þe lyne — <sup>1</sup> overlined. 684  
þus I be-hyte 3ou þat I schuld doo.  
In þis reknyng myne auctour & I are too : 686

- he loste alle þe londes wiche hys faderis wonne. 652 *Bk. I. Ch. 12.*  
 flovre-skore 3eer evene regned the romaynys there,  
 And [in] þis servage þus newely be-gonne  
 Regned þe same kyng the tyme of xij. 3eere.  
 Alysavndre, hys sone, thanne dede þe crowne bere 656  
 Nyne yeer euene. And thanne demetrie, his brother ;  
 he regned iiij. 3eer. And after hym a-nother, 658  
 Men calle hym in bookis Antiochus Griphus ; 659  
 he gouer[n]ed xij. 3eer al this forseyd lond.  
 In this .iiij. kyngis tyme, myn Auctour seyth thus,  
 Alle þis eke contre to þe romaynis was bond,  
 Til þat fortune turned soo her hond, 663  
 Whan helyus Adryanus emperour was of rome,  
 Wiche weddyd his doughter to oon þei calle phalone. 665  
 This phalon was sone on-to þe seyde demetrius : 666  
 Be hym cam surry to ryght hold a-geyn),  
 And alle her subicctyon to rome cesyd thus.  
 Solaber was þe name of the mayde, þei seyn),  
 Right soo hyght she, þei that her þer seen 670  
 Seen neuer swiche a-nother, thus seyde thei alle.  
 This same phalon, svm men) soo hym calle, 672  
 had a ful fayr sone be this same solaber, 673  
 Zozyms he hyght, kyng after his fader he was.  
 And Archenon, and Archibelon regned also ther ;  
 Thanne after Antygonus, and þanne<sup>1</sup> cam claudas—  
 Sone after fadyr, alle regned in that plas. <sup>1</sup> MS. þanned 677  
 Thanne after borus, ryght þus haue I founde.  
 And thanne a-geyn) claudas called the secunde. 679  
 This same claudas, Costus fadir was, 680  
 And this same Costus fadyr to Kataryne.  
 here may ye see of what men) and of what plas  
 Cam this woman, þis lady, this virgyne ;  
 heere is shewyd holy al the lyne— 684  
 Thus I be-hight 3ou þat I shuld doo.  
 In this reknyng, myn auctour and I arn) too : 686

and kept it  
80 years.

Its kings  
were Alex-  
ander,  
Demetrius,

Antiochus  
Grypus,

Phalon,

Zozyms,

Archenon,  
Archibelon,  
Antigonus,  
Claudas I,

Borus,

Claudas II,

and then  
Costus,  
Katharine's  
Father.

In this line  
of kings I  
often differ  
from my  
author.

<u>Bk. I. Ch. 12.</u>	ffor he acordeth not wytȝ cronicles þat þen olde, But diuersyth from hem, & þat in many thyngis. þere he acordyth, þer I hym hold ; And where he diuersyth in ordre of þeis kyngis, I leue hym, & to oder mennys rekenyngis	687 691
	I ȝeue more credens wech be-fore hym & me Sette alle þese men in ordre & degre.	693
	Butte men wyȝ sey now & happely repleye : “ what menyth þis lyne & þis rehersayle, To rekene so many men, & to multiplie Noumbres and ȝerys, wech may not a-vayle ? And eke us thynkyth, it doth sumwhat fayle, ffor, þow þei wer' men of grete lordschype, þe kynrod of schrewys to godd is no worchepe.”	694 698 700
	I answere here-to as do[th] seynt Ierome : “ Crist cam of schrewys,” he seyth, “ for þis skylle, þe principaȝ cause qwy to þis werld he come : To corect synneris, þat was his wylle—” ffor many men þat synfuȝ wer' & ille	701 705
	Are in his geneologie, ȝe may hem þer' fynde. My lady Kateryne stante in þis <sup>1</sup> same kynde.	707

Bk. I. Ch. 13.Ca<sup>m</sup>. 13<sup>m</sup>.

	<b>N</b> ow to telle forth euen) as I fyrst sayde, þe lordys are come wech clepyd were. Aȝens þe parlement þe cite is arayd With plente of vitayle and aȝ odyr gere ; Men lakked ryth nowt þat wer' logged þere, Gret chepe had þei, aȝ-maner vitayle— It is stuffyd so be reson) it may not fayle.	708 712 714
	þe riaȝ lordys wytȝ baron) & bachelor Are com now þedyr to do here servyse, [fol. 14] Byschopis & clerkys to-gedyr in-ferre, þei wyȝ now schew here wyttyȝ wyse— þei schaȝ haue nede or þat þei ryse ;	715 719

- ffor he a-cordeth not wyth cronyclys tho ben olde, 687 *Bk. I. Ch. 12.*  
 But diuerseth fro hem, and þat in many thyngis.  
 There he a-cordeth, ther I hym holde ;  
 And where he diuerseth in ordre of these kyngis,  
 I leve hem,<sup>1</sup> and to other mennes rekenyngis <sup>1 r. him</sup> 691  
 I ȝeve more credens whiche be-fore hym and me  
 Sette alle these men in ordre and degre. 693
- But men wil sey nowe, and haply replye : 694  
 “ What meneth this lyne in this rehersayle,  
 To rekne so many men, and to multiplie  
 Nombres and ȝeerys, whiche may not a-vayle ?  
 And eke thenketh vs, it dooth sumwhat fayle, 698  
 ffor, thou thei where men of grete lordshep,  
 The kynred of shrewys to god is no wurshep.” 700
- I answe're her-to as dooth seynt Ierom) : 701  
 “ Crist cam of shrewes,” he seyth, “ for this skyl,  
 The pryncypal cawse whi to this world he com) :  
 To correcte synneris, þat was his wyH—”  
 ffor many men that synful were and ih̄ 705  
 And in his genealogie, ye may hem þere<sup>1</sup> fynde. <sup>1 MS. þerre</sup>  
 My lady Kataryn) stant in þe same kynde. 707 *so did St. Katharine.*
- Ca<sup>m</sup>. 13<sup>m</sup>.**
- N**ow to telle fourth euene as I first sayde, 708  
 The lordes and) come wiche cleped where.  
 Azens the parlement the Cite is arayde  
 With plente of vitaiH and alle other gere ;  
 Men) lakked ryght nought þat were lodged there, 712  
 Grete chepe had þei, aH maner of vitaile—  
 It is stuffed so be reson) þat it may not fayle. 714
- The ryal lordes with Barouns and Bachelere 715  
 And) come nov thedir to don) hir seruyse,  
 Bysshoppys and clerkys to-gedere in-fere,  
 Thei wil nov shewe her wyttys wyse—  
 Thei shal haue nede or than) þei ryse ; 719
- Alexandria is well victuald for the Parliament.*

- Bk. I. Ch. 13. Summe lordys are come eke homage to make,  
 And ladys many ryth for þe qwenys sake. 721
- þis mayde is crownyd, *wyth* aH þe observawns 722  
 Whech servyd þat tyme *in stede* of þe masse ;  
 þei prayd to iupiter he schuld here avauuns,  
 And to aH þe goddys, both more an lasse—  
 þer was no god whech þei lete þoo passe ; 726  
 þe lordys swore aH who þat þei schuld  
 Here servyse eyr sewe & here sutes holde. 728
- þanne be-guzne þe festes, I trow, gret I-now, 729  
 As in þat cuntre custome was þanne.  
 To lord & to lady, & to pouert lowe,  
 ffuH foyson was þere, to eueri man, 732
- Many mo deyntys þan I rehers can ; <sup>1 om.; but so in MSS. Ar. 396</sup>  
 Euery man had plente in hale [*& in halle*] ;<sup>and 168. hale = tent.</sup>  
 þoo men þat seruyd it, nedyd not hem to calle. 735
- Swech rewle & ordinauns was þere I-had, 736  
 þere was no 3ate warnyd to no-manner wyte,  
 But, þat euery man schuld be ryth glad,  
 þei were kept opyn both 'day & nyth,  
 þe bordes euer cured & þe mete dyth ; 740  
 whan on had his mele, in cam an-odyr ;  
 Of syluyr wesseH þer was many a fothir. 742
- No place was voyd, neydyr *parlour* nor *chaumbyr*, 743  
 But aH wer' þei fuH of women or of<sup>1</sup> men ; <sup>1 overlined.</sup>  
 þe grete paleys þat stante at Alisaundry,  
 It was fuH of puple, no man seyde "go hen!"  
 Sauereuereuz was had ; lordes here ix her' ten 747  
 þus kept here astate ; þe cete eke aH-a-bowte  
 Was ffuH of gentylys *wyth-inne* & *wyth-owte*. 749
- Lordes & ladyes þat wer' þer of here kynne, 750  
 On-to þat feste come both on & odyr  
 And aH wer' þei loggyd *in fuH riaH* Ine—  
 Sume wer' of here fadyrs syde, summe wer' of her' modyr.  
 Of curtesye & gentylnesse, game & non othyr 754

- Some lordes and come eke homage to make, Bk. I. Ch. 13.  
 And ladyes many ryght for the qvenes sake. 721
- This mayde is corovned, wyth alle the observaunce 722 Katharine is  
 whic[h]e serued at þat tyme in stede of the masse; crowned.
- Thei preyden to Iubiter he shulde hir avaunce,  
 And to alle the goddes, bothe more and lasse—  
 Ther was non god wiche thei dolete passe; 726  
 The lordes sworn alle how þat thei shulde  
 hir seruyse euer sewe and hir sevtes holde. 728
- Thanne be-govne the festis, I trowe, grete I-nowe, 729 Feasts are  
 As in þat contre custom was thanne. held.
- To lord and to lady, and to povert lowe,<sup>1</sup> <sup>1</sup> MS. bowe  
 ful foyson was there, on-to euery manne,  
 Many mo deyntes þan I rehers canne; 733  
 Euery man had plente in hale and in halle;  
 Tho men þat sewed<sup>1</sup> it, neded not hen to calle. <sup>1</sup> r. served
- Swiche reule and ordynavnce was there I-hadde, 736  
 There was no yate warned to ony maner of whyght, All the gates  
are open.  
 But, that euery man shulde be ryght gladde,  
 Thei were kepte open bothe day and nyght,  
 The boordes euer cured and the mete dyght; 740  
 Whanne oon had his meel, in can an other;  
 Of siluer vessel ther was many a fother. 742
- No place was<sup>1</sup> voide, neyther parlovr ne chavnbre, 743  
 but alle were þei ful of men and women; <sup>1</sup> overlined.
- The grete paleys þat stant at Alysavndre, The Palace is  
full of folk.  
 It was ful of peple, no man seyde "go hen!"  
 Save reverens was had of lordes; here ix. here .x. 747  
 Thus kepte her astate; þe Cytee eke al a-bovte  
 Was ful of gentyllis wyth-inne and wyht-ovte. 749
- Lordes and ladyes þat were there of hir kyn 750 Katharine's  
 And to þat feste com bothe oon and other, kin are  
 Also were thei lodged in ful ryah In— royally lodgd.  
 Some were of hir faderis syde, some were of hir moder.  
 Of curtesye and gentilnesse, game and noon other 754



[fol. 14, b.] [2nd hand]	Was þan her' carpyng <sup>r</sup> , saue summe spoke of loue ;	
	Euery man spak of þing which was to hys be-houe.	756
	Iustys wer' þer', & þoo wyth þe best ;	757
	Sume had þe bettyr & sume had þe wer' ;	
	þe grete theatyr þer' had ful lytyll rest :	
	Euyr was þer' fytyng, but þer' was no werre ;	
	Many noble men whech wer' come fro ferre,	761
	In þat same place wer' asayd yeh' oon	
	As well in wrestlylyng as puttyng at þe ston.	763
	And aftyr all þis is endyd & eke I-don,	764
	Iustis, reuell[is] & festes gune to slake,	
	þei toke her' leue homward for to goon.	
	But 3et or þei fully had her leue I-take,	
	Ech lord whech had þer' any lady & make,	768
	Was 3oue to courser's, of whech þe on	
	Was blak as cole, þe other' wythe as bon,	770
	Wyth sadyH & brydyH of gold & of sylke ;	771
	Many moo rewardes eke þan I can now seye ;	
	Sume wer' 3oue mantell's wyght as þe mylk,	
	On whech wer' many a broche & many a beye.	
	þus ryd þei homwarde forþ in her' wey ;	775
	þer' is' nocht ellys now but "farweH & goo!" <sup>1 MS. B.</sup>	
	I pray god be wyth 3ow." þus is þe parlement doo.	777

Bk. I. Ch. 14.

Ca<sup>m</sup>. 14<sup>m</sup>.

<b>T</b> His lady, as þe story euen forþ telleth,	778
kepyth her' chambyr' & holdyth hyr' þus inne,	
Wyth hyr' modyr þe qwen as 3et sche dwellyth ;	
her' bokes for to loke on can sche nocht blyne—	
Who-so-euyr lett hyr, he dothe full gret synne !	782
To offende hys lady, what wene 3e it is ?	
þer' was no man þat tyme þat durst do thys.	784
It was oonly hyr' ioye [&] all hyr' entent,	785
ffor hyr' hert þat tyme was set to nowt elles—	
ful hye honour' þer'-by aftyrward sche hente !	

- Was þanne her carpynge, sauc some spoke of love ; *Bk. I. Ch. 13.*  
 Euery man) spak of thyng wiche was to his be-oue. 756
- Iustes were there, and tho with the beste ; 757 Jousts are held,  
 Some hadde the bether and some were of herre (!) ;<sup>1</sup>  
 The grete Theatre ther had ful lytel reste : <sup>1</sup> w. o. h. on erasure.  
 Euere was there fytynge, but there was no werre !  
 Many noble men) whyche were come fro ferre, 761  
 In that same place were a-sayde iche oon)  
 As weel in wrestlyng as puttyng at the stoon). 763 and wrestlings.
- And after<sup>1</sup> al thys is ended and eke I-doon), <sup>1</sup> overlined.  
 Iustes, reuelle and festes gonne to slake,  
 Thei take her leve homward for to goon).  
 But 3et er thei fully [had] her leve I-take,  
 Eche lord wiche had there ony lady or make, 768  
 Was yove too courser's, of wiche the oon)  
 Was blak as cole, the other whyt as boon), 770 Coursers are given to the guests,
- Wyth sadeH and brydeH of gold and of silk ; 771 with other presents.  
 Many mo rewardys eke þan I can now seye ;  
 Some were yove Mantyllis white as the mylk,  
 On whiche were many a broche and many a beye.  
 Thus ryde thei homward forthe in her wey ; 775  
 There is not ellis now but "fare wel and goo !  
 I prey god be with yov!" thus his the parlement doo. 777

## Ca. 14.

*Bk. I. Ch. 14.*

- T**his lady, as þe story euene foorth telleth, 778  
 Kept hir chavnbre and holdyth hir thus Inne,  
 Wyth hir moder the qveen as 3et she dwelleth ;  
 hir bookes for to looke on can<sup>1</sup> she not blynne— <sup>1</sup> MS. cause Katharine lives with her Mother,  
 ho-so-euere lette hir, he dooth grete synne ! 782  
 To offende his lady, what wene ye he is ?  
 Ther was no man) þat tyme that durste doo this. 784  
 It was oonly hir ioye and alle hir entent, 785  
 ffor hir herte þat tyme was sette to novght ellis—  
 fful high honour therby afterward she hent !

<u>Bk. I. Ch. 14.</u>	Bothe wyght & wysdome owte of hyr' hert welles, Euyz as þe streme rennyth fro þe welles.	789
	Swych fayr' frute <i>in</i> stodye dyd sche fynde, Wyth besy conceytes wher sche had of kynde.	791
	Ther' was noo wyght þat <i>in</i> hyr' presence	792
[fol. 15]	Durst onys touch of ony ille dede ; And if he dyd, he had hyr' offens, ffor euyr-mor he coude not aftyr spede ; As for to be hyr' seruaunde, þat is no drede,	796
	Sche hated not þe persone, but only þe synne ; Of uertuous spech coude sche not blynne.	798
	Ther' was neuer wrong founde <i>in</i> þat may, þe cors of hyr' couernauns <sup>1</sup> was euer so clene,	799
	Boþe pryuy & aperte, at euery a-say, Stedfast & stable was euer þis qwene ; Sche was a very seynt, truly, as I wene,	803
	þow sche wer' not baptized—so was cornelius ; hys prayer' was herde, scriptur' seyth þus,	805
	Of our' lorde godd, or he baptized wer', And þer-for was Petyr sent vnt-to hym þe articles of þe feyth hym for to ler' ; he had feyth be-for, but it was dyme,	810
	he was made to cryst a ful ryght lyme ; hys feyth was not cause of hys good werkes, But hys werkes causyd feyth, þus seye þese clerkes.	812
	Thys same lady eke, thow sche not baptized wer', Sche hauntyd holy werkys be steryng of þe spryght, Wher made hyr of synne for to haue fere And to loue vertu, boþe day & nyght.	813
	þe soule nedyth uertu as mech as yse lyght— þis wote þei well þat feel experyens.	817
	þis was þe cause þat her' noble presence	819
	Was noryscher' of vertu & qwencher' of vyce. ffor whan sche coud a-spye any mysdrawte Of man or of woman, þat þei wer' nyce,	820

Bothe wit and wysdam oute of hir hert swelles (!),		<i>Bk. I. Ch. 14.</i>
Euene as [þe] strem renneth fro the welles.	789	
Swiche fayr frute in stody dede she fynde,		and studies.
Wyth besy conseytis wiche she hadde of kynde.	791	
There was no wyght that in hir presens	792	No ill deed is spoken of to her.
Durste onces tovcche of ony ille dede ;		
And if he dede, he had hir offens,		
ffor euere-more he covde not after specede ;		
As for to be hir seruaunt, þat is no drede,	796	
She hated not the persone, but onoly the synne ;		
Of vertuous speche covde she not blynne.	798	
There was neuere wrong fovnde in þat may,	799	No wrong is ever found in her.
The cors of hir gouernavns was euere so clene,		
Bothe preuy and apert, at euery assay,		
Stedefast and stable was euere þis queene ;		
She was a very seynt, trewely, as I weene,	803	
Thov she were not baptysed—so was Cornelius ;		
his preyere was herd, scrypture seith thus,	805	
Of oure lord god, er he baptised were,	806	
And þerfore was petir sent on-to hym		
The Articules of the feyth hym for to lere ;		
he had feyth be-fore, but it was dym,		
he was made to cryst a ful ryght lym ;	810	
his feyth was not cause of his good werkys,		
but his werkys caused feith, thus seyn these clerkys.	812	
This same lady eke, þovgh she not baptised were,	813	Katharine does holy works, and fears sin.
She havnted hooly werkys be strengthe (!) of þe spyryt,		
Wiche made hir of synne for to haue fere		
And to love vertu, bothe daye and nyght.		
The sovlē nedeth vertu as moche as the hyȝe lyght—	817	
This wote þei weel that feele experiens.		
This was the cause that hir noble presens	819	
Was norysshere of vertu and quenchere of vice.	820	
ffor whanne she covde aspye ony mysdraught		
Of man or of woman, that thei were nyce,		

- Bk. I. Ch. 14. ffor fer' or for lofe wold sche leue nawte,  
 But soone schuld þei fulwysyly be tawte; 824  
 "It may not be þus," sche sayd, "it is not honest;  
 A man, but he be reulyde, he is but a beest. 826  
 "What wene 3e now whan 3e trespace? 827  
 þow I not a-spye 3ow, I sey 3ow trulye,  
 þer is oon a-boue þat loketh on our' face,  
 And on all þe membrys of our' bodye;  
 [fol. 15, b.] Iff he ony fowle dede may in vs aspye, 831  
 [4th hand] He deynyth<sup>1</sup> our' seruyse—þis is my preue; <sup>1</sup> = dedecynyth  
 Sey clerkys qwat þei wyH, þus I be-leue. 833  
 "ffor wele I wote, a-boue Iupiter and alle 834  
 Is a mayster-rewler, & eterne he is; <sup>1</sup> eyur on the margin.  
 Vp-on þis werld qwat-so-eyur<sup>1</sup> schaH be-falle,<sup>2</sup> <sup>2</sup> r. falle  
 ffalle qwan it schaHe, he is eyur in blysse.  
 And þei þat loue vertu, schall not want, I-wysse, 838  
 Neuyr his gode lordschep; he may, as it is skylle,  
 Make goddes of men, qwan þat eyur he wyllc." 840  
 þus wold sche sey, þat noble lady dere, 841  
 On-to her' servautes, and hem aH exhorte;  
 Sche was homly as þow sche wer' here fere.  
 þe dredfuH & sekely wold sche coumfort;  
 Mery & glad was sche at eueri disport, 845  
 Sad eke þer-to qwan sche schuld sad be,  
 Godely of her' spech, of here expens fre. 847

Bk. I. Ch. 15.Ca. 15<sup>m</sup>.

- W**hat is a lond qwan it hath non) hed? 848  
 þe lawes are not kept, þe lond desolate,  
 þe hertes hangyng and heuy as lede,  
 þe comonys grutchyng & euer at þe bate,<sup>1</sup> <sup>1</sup> r. debate  
 þere is kept non rewle, kept non) astate. 852  
 þus seyde þe puple of surry alle-aboutc,  
 "Our' kyng is now ded, oure lyth is nye owte. 854

ffor feer or for loue wulde she leue nawght,		<i>Bk. I. Ch. 11.</i>
But sone shuld þei ful wysly be taught ;	824	
“ It may not be þus,” she seyde, “ it is nought honeste ;		She corrects all misdoing,
A man, but he be reuled, he is but a beeste.	826	
“ What wene 3e now whan 3e trespace ?	827	
Though I not aspye 3ov, I sey yow trowelye,		
There is oon <sup>1</sup> a-bove þat looketh in oure face,	<sup>1</sup> overlined.	
And on alle the membris of oure bodye ;		
If he ony fovlhed may in vs aspye,	831	
he deyneth oure seruyse—this is my precue ;		
Sey clerkys what they woH, thus I be-leue.	833	
“ ffor weel I wot, a-bove Iubiter and alle	834	saying that above Jupiter is a Ruler in eternal bliss.
Is a mayster-revlere, and eterne he is ;		
Vp-on this world what-so-euere shal falle,		
ffalle whan it shal, he is euere in blys.		
And þei þat loue vertu shul not wante, I-wys,	838	
Sithe of <sup>1</sup> his good lordshiþe he may, as it is skyl,	<sup>1</sup> overl.	
Make goddys of men, whanne-so-euere he wyl.”	840	
Thus wolde she seyn, that noble lady deere,	841	
On-to hir servantes, and hem alle exorte ;		
She was homly as þough she were her feere.		
The dredful and seekly wolde she conforte,		Katharine comforts the humble and sick.
Mery and glad was she at euery disporte,	845	
Sad eke þer-to whan she shuld sad be,		
Goodly of hir speche, of hyr expens fre.	847	

Ca<sup>m</sup>. 15<sup>m</sup>.*Bk. I. Ch. 15.*

<b>W</b> hat is a lond whan it hath non hed ?	848	
The lawes arn not kepte, the lond is desolate,		
The hertys hangyng as heuy as leed,		
The commouns grutchyng and euere at debate,	851	
There is kepte no revle, <sup>1</sup> ne kepte noon astate.	<sup>1</sup> orig. rewle	
Thus seyde the peple of surry al a-bovte,		The Syrian folk
“ Oure kyng is now ded, oure lyght is ny ovte.	854	

- Bk. I. Ch. 15. "Opir londys spoyle vs, & þat wyth-oute mercy, 855  
 We mote nede suffyr, we may non odyr doo;  
 þow we speke & calle and for help cry,  
 þer is no man gladly wyth cum vs to.  
 We haue aHewey thoutz þat it schuld be so— 859  
 Wyth-owte a kyng how schuld a cuntre stand?  
 We haue lost for eyr oure name & oure land. 861  
 "We haue a qwen, sche comyth among no men, 862  
 Sche loneth not ellys but bokys & scole;  
 late aH our' enmys in lond ryde or ren,  
 Sche is euer in stody and euermore sole.  
 þis wille turne vs aH to wrake & to dole! 866  
 But had sche a lord, 3it aH mythe be wele.  
 O þou blynd fortune, how turnyst þow þi wheel! 868  
 [fol. 16] "Now hye, now lowe; now he þat was a-boue 869  
 [2nd hand] lyght low be-nethe, in car' & myschiel eke,  
 And he þat supposyd to conquer' now hys<sup>1</sup> loue, <sup>1 = ys</sup>  
 he schall nocht haf hyr' of all þis next weke;  
 Sumtyme be we heyle, sume-tyme be we seke. 873  
 O very onsekynesse, o chaungand & variable!  
 þou werdly lyffe, for eyr art þou vn-stable! 875  
 "Who schall þis londe wyth-oute kyng now stande? 876  
 It was neyr seyn zet þat þe sarsynrye  
 Was left a-lone vn-to a wommanes hande.  
 Sche must be weddyd, þis mayd, & þat in hye,  
 On-to sume kyng—our' lond may þus not lye. 880  
 ffy vp-on rychesse, but if þei worchep doo  
 To man þat weldyth hem—for þei ar mad þer-too. 882  
 "We schall far' ellys as þeise negardes doo, 883  
 ley vp her' gold & eyr wyll þei spare,  
 In all her' lyffe þei may not tend þer-too  
 To hafe any myrthe or ony welfare;  
 Ryght eyr þus now are we lyke to fare, 887  
 We schul haf rychesse & it schal do noo goode.  
 Godd forbede eke þat þis ryatt blode 889

- “ Other londis spoyle vs, and that *wyth*-ovte mercy, 855 *Bk. I. Ch. 15.*  
 We mote nedes suffer, we may non other doo ;  
 Though we speke, and calle, and for help cry,  
 Ther is no man gladly wil come vs too.  
 We haue alwy thought þat it shuld be soo— 859  
*Wythoute*<sup>1</sup> a kyng hov shulde a contre stonde ? <sup>1</sup> oute overl. grumble at  
 We haue lost for euere the name of oure londe. 861 King,  
 “ We haue a queen, she cometh a-mong no men, 862 but only a  
 She loveth not ellis but bookys and scole ; Queen, who  
 Lete alle oure enemys in londe ryde or ren, loves books.  
 She is euere in stody and euere-more soole.  
 This wil turne vs alle to wrake and to doole ! 866  
 But had she a lord, yet al myght be wel. She ought to  
 O þou blynde fortune, how turnest þou þi<sup>1</sup> whel ! <sup>1</sup> MS. þe marry.  
 “ Now hy, now lowe ; now he þat was a-bove 869  
 Lyeth low be-nethe, in care and myschef eke,  
 And he þat supposed to conquere now is loue,  
 he shal not haue here of al þis nexte weke ; The Syrian  
 Somtyme we be heyl, somtyme we be seeke. 873 folk say  
 O very onsekernesse, o chaunged (!) and variable !  
 Thou worldly lyf, for euere art þou onstable ! 875  
 “ how shal þis lond *wyth*-ovte kyng now stande ? 876  
 It was neuere seen zet þat þe sarsynrye  
 Was left allone on-to womans hande.  
 She must be wedded, þis mayde, and þat in hie, that Katha-  
 On-to som kyng—oure lond may þus not lye. 880 rine must  
 ffy vp-on) rychesse, but if þei wurshep doo wed some  
 To man) þat weldeth hem)—for þei arn) made þer-too. 882 King.  
 “ We shul fare elles as these nygardes doo, 883  
 ley vp here gold and [euyr] whil<sup>1</sup> thei spare, <sup>1</sup> r. wil  
 In al her lyue þei may not tende þer-too 885  
 To haue oo myrthe or ony weelfare ; <sup>1</sup> a word (nov ?) erased  
 Ryght euene thus arn<sup>1</sup> we lykly to be brought in care (!), before arn)  
 We shul haue rychesse and it shal do no good.  
 God forbede eke þat this ryal blood 889



- Bk. I. Ch. 15. "Of our' noble kyng schuld cesse þus in þis mayde! 890  
 We wyll require hyr on all-maner' wyse  
 flōr to be wedded"—þus þe puple sayd;  
 "þer' is noo reule in lorde ne in iustyse,  
 þei sett þe schyer', þe cessions & þe cyse 894  
 Ryght as hem lyst; will for reson' goth now—  
 þis gouernauns is no-thing vn-to our' prowe. 896  
 "And if we to batayle schuld vs embrace, 897  
 Who schuld lede vs, who schall be our' gyde?  
 A woman-kende neuyr 3et able was  
 To reule a puple þat is so grete & wyde,  
 To sette þe standard þe wengys on þe syde; 901  
 And if we chese to captayn any oþer<sup>1</sup> lorde, <sup>1 to be om.</sup>  
 Enuye & rancur' wyll cause sone dyseorde." 903  
 Thys was her' lay thorow-owte all þe londe, 904  
 "Why is our' qwen' þus long wyth-owte a kynge?"  
 Boþe hye & lowe all had þis on honde,  
 "Why is see vn-weddyd, þis 3ung, þis fayr' thyng?  
 Sche is full wyse, sche is full lykyng, 908  
 Sche is ful able a husbond for to haue:  
 [fol. 16, b.] [1st hand] Sche mote so nedys, yf' sche wylle us sauc." 910  
 Vp-on þis mater', euene wyth a comon asent, 911  
 Thei made a gaderyng' wyth-oute autorite.  
 ffor serteyn lordes ryth sone haue þei sent',  
 That þei shal come þe common<sup>1</sup> profyth to se. <sup>1 MS. comōn</sup>  
 Among' hem alle þis was þan her' decre: 915  
 Vp-on þis mater' a lettir wylle þei wryte,  
 In most goodly wyse þei wyH þat lettir endyte, 917  
 In which þei shal on-to her' lady þe qwen 918  
 And to her moder, which is her' lady eke,  
 Wryte & pray þat þei wyl to hem seen,  
 As þei be ladies both mercyful & meke,  
 Thei suffyr no mor' þe lordes þus of greke 922  
 Ouyr-ryde hem so, it was not þe old gyse.  
 The lettir, certeyn, was wrytyn in þis wyse: 924

- “Of oure noble kyng shuld cece<sup>1</sup> thus in þis mayde! 890 *Bk. I. Ch. 15.*
- We wyl requyre hir on aH-maner wyse <sup>1 orig. esse</sup> They want  
ffor to be wedded,”—thus þe peple sayde ; her father  
“Ther is no revle in lord ne in Iustyse, Costus's line  
They sette the shire, þe cassyons and the Cyse 894 continued,  
Ryght as hem) lest ; wiH for resound) gooth now—  
This governaunce is no-thing to oure prow. 896
- “And if we to batayle shulde vs enbraas, 897 and a Chief  
ho shal lede vs, ho shal be oure gyde ? to lead them  
A woman)keene neuere zet able waas in battle.  
To reule a peple that is [so] gret and wyde,  
To sette þe standard the wyngis on the syde ; 901  
And if we chese to oure captayn) ony lord,  
Envye and rancovr wil cause sone discord.” 903
- This was her lay thurgh-oute al the land, 904 The Syrians  
“Whi his oure qveen) thus longe wyth)ovten a kyng ?”  
Bothe hey and lowe al had þis on hand, <sup>1 MS. yovnge</sup>  
“Why is she on-wedded, þis yovnge,<sup>1</sup> this fayre thyng ? say that  
She is ful wys, she is ful lykyng, 908 Katharine  
She is ful able an housbond for to haue : must get a  
She mote so nedes, if she wil vs sauc.” 910 Husband.
- Vp-on this mater, euene wyth) a comon) assent, 911  
Thei made a gaderyng wyth)ovten autorite.  
ffor certeyn) lordes ryght soone haue þei sent,  
That þei shul come the comon) profyte to see.  
A-mong hem alle þis was thanne her decree : 915 They resolve  
Vp-on this mateer a lettere wil thei wryte, to write a  
In moost goodly wyse þei wil þat lettere endyte, 917 Letter about
- In whiche þei shal on-to her lady the qveen) 918 it to her and  
And to hir moder, whiche is her lady eke, her Mother.  
Wryte and pray þat þei wil to hem seen),  
As thei be ladyes mercyful and meke,  
Thei suffre no more the lordis thus of greke 922  
Ouere-ride hem soo, it was not the olde gyse.  
The lettere, certeyn), was wreten) in this wise : 924

- “ On-to our’ ladyes, þe elder & þe 3onge,      925  
     Be it now knowe þat þorow aH surry-lond  
 Yt is scyd & spoke ny of’ euery tonge,  
 þat þei wer’ neuer so lykly to be bonde  
 To oþer lordes wheche haue þe hyer hond,      929  
 As þei ar’ now. wherfor’ to-gyder’ þei crye  
 On-to yow, ladyes, þat 3e wyH haue mercye      931  
 “ Vp-on 3our’ men, vp-on 3our’ lordes eke :      932  
     þei maynot lyue but þei defended be.  
 3our’ hertys be so petouse & so meke,  
 3e wyl not lete þis mater’ slyde, parde.  
 What is a lord but yf’ he haue mene?      936  
 What is a puple but yf’ þei haue a lord?  
 loke euery kyngdam þorow-out aH þis world,<sup>1</sup> <sup>1</sup> r. word      938  
 “ But yf’ þei haue a man þat dar’ wele fyte,      939  
     Thei ar’ put vnder. it was not sene or<sup>1</sup> now      <sup>1</sup> orig. er  
 That surre & cypre, & þat ylde þat hyte  
 Cande þe ryeh, whech hath a see ful rowe,  
 Shuld be þus kyngles. to god we make a vowe,      943  
 [fol. 17] We may not lyue þus long in rest & pes.  
 [11th hand]  
 Of clamoure & cry wyH we neuer I-ses,      945  
 “ But euer be-seke 3ou, as oure ladyes dere,      946  
     3e wyl be gouernyd & werk be counsayle;  
 Thynk’ 3e be to vs both leef & dere,      <sup>1</sup> overlined.  
 And þink’ our’ seruyse may 3et<sup>1</sup> sumwhat a-vayle;  
 Lete sun pete owt of 3our’ hertys hayle,      950  
 Suffyr 3our’ puple haue sum of her’ desyre!  
 This was þe losse certayn of men of tyre,      952  
 “ Thei had no kyng, þerfor þei had no grace;      953  
     Whan appolony was ded, fro hem passed & goo,  
 Euery man as þer his owe mayster was.  
 God forbede for eyr þat it were so  
 In surre-lond! for þan were it vn-do.      957

Ca<sup>m</sup>. 16<sup>m</sup>.Bl. I. Ch. 16.

- “ On-to oure ladies, the oldere and the yov[n]ge, 925 *The Letter.*  
 be it now knowe þat thurgh al surry-lond  
 It is seyð and spoke ny of euery tovnge,  
 That thei were neuere so lykly to be bond  
 To other londes whiche han the heyere hond, 929  
 As thei arn now. wherefore to-gedir þei crye  
 On-to yov, ladyes, that ye wil haue mercye 931
- “ Vp-on *your* men, vp-on *your* lordes eke : 932 *We Syrians*  
 Thei may not lyve but þei defended be.  
 Yovre hertes ben so pytous and so meke,  
 Ye wil not lete þis mater slyd, hope we (!).  
 What is a lord but if he haue mene? 936 *want a Lord*  
 What is a peple but if he haue a lord?  
 Loke euery kyngdam thurgh-ovte al þe word, 938
- “ But if thei haue a man that dar weel fyte, 939 *to fight for us.*  
 Thei arn put vnder. it was not seen er now  
 That surry and Cypre, and þat ylde<sup>1</sup> þat hyghte <sup>1 orig. hylde</sup> *Syria, Cy-*  
 Cande the ryche, þat hath a see ful row, *prus, and*  
 Shulde be thus kynges. to god we make a vow, 943 *Candia are*  
 We may not lyve thus longe in reste and pees. *kingless.*  
 Off clamour and Cry wil not we sees, 945
- “ But euere be-seeke you, as oure ladyes, now heere (!),  
 3e wil be gouerned and werke be counsaile; 947  
 Thenketh ye be to vs bothe leef and dere,  
 And thenketh oure seruyse may yet somewhat avayle;  
 Lete som pyte ovte of *your* hertys hayle, 950  
 Suffre yovre peple to haue somewhat of her desyre!  
 This was the losse certeyn of men of Tyre, 952
- “ Thei had no kyng, therefore thei had no grace; 953 *When Tyre*  
 Whan appolony was ded, fro hem passed and goo, *lost Appo-*  
 Euery man as there his owne mayster wace. *lonius, the*  
 God forbeede that euere it were soo *land was in*  
 In surre-lond! for thanne were it vndoo. 957 *anarchy.*

- Bk. I. Ch. 16. It was neuer sene forsoth, ne neuyr schaff be ;  
 And if it wer<sup>1</sup>, far-wele þan<sup>1</sup> felicite! <sup>1</sup> overlined. 959  
 "This we desyre now, schortly for to telle, 960  
 And þus desyrith aH þe lond be-dene,  
 þis is conclusion of aH our<sup>1</sup> gret counselle :  
 That oure 3ong lady mote nede weddyd bene.  
 Late here haue choys, sche is wyse, we wene ; 964  
 Chois hath sche, for many on wold her<sup>1</sup> haue.  
 Deliuer þis mater, so god 3our<sup>1</sup> soulys saue. 966  
 "This thing is aH þat we wylle sey as now. 967  
 We aske a answere, and þat in hasty wyse.  
 We pray to god, to whom we alle mote bowe,  
 He sette 3ow soo and lede in swech a gyse,  
 That ryth to-morow, or 3e owt of bed ryse, 971  
 And er<sup>1</sup> 3e come owte in-to þe halle, <sup>1</sup> corr. to or ?  
 That 3e desyre as we desyre now alle." 973

Bk. I. Ch. 17.

## Cam. 17m.

- T**he qwene answeyrd & wrot ryght<sup>1</sup> þus ageyn, <sup>1</sup> overl.  
 Sche seyð, þis thyng aH-gatys moste be do ; 975  
 To lyue a-lone in stody, it was neuer seynd  
 That ony lady ony tyme dyd so.  
 Therfor her<sup>1</sup> wylle is fully sette þer-to 978  
 That her<sup>1</sup> dowter, qwen of þat empyre,  
 SchaH be weddyd hastyly to sum syre. 980  
 And vp-on þis her<sup>1</sup> letter hath she sent 981  
 Ryth in þis forme & in þis-maner style : <sup>1</sup> Ms. stylle  
 "The qween of<sup>1</sup> surry, of<sup>1</sup> cypre þat was brent<sup>1</sup>,  
 Of<sup>1</sup> candy eke lady & of<sup>1</sup> many a myle,  
 Wyffe on-to costus whech but a lytyle whyle 985  
 Is passyd & ded, on-to her<sup>1</sup> puple she seyth :  
 She a-lowetz ful wele her<sup>1</sup> manhode & her<sup>1</sup> feyth ; 987  
 "Sche wyl as þei wyH, & hath do many a day, 988  
 þat her<sup>1</sup> douter on-to sum kyng<sup>1</sup> shuld be  
 Maryed or wedded ; she seyð 3et neuer nay,

[fol. 17, b.]  
[1st hand]

It was neuere seen for sooth, ne neuere shal bee ; [fol. 18] Bk. I. Ch. 16.  
 And if it were, farwel felycyte ! 959

“This we desyre now, shortly for to telle, 960

And thus desyreth al the lond be-dene,

This is the conclusyon of oure grete counselle :

That oure 3ounge lady mote nede wedded bene.

lete her haue choys, she is wis, we wene ; 964

We want  
 our Queen  
 Katharine  
 to wed.

Chois hath she, for many on wolde hir haue.

Delyuere this mater, so god 3oure sovlys saue. 966

“This þyng is al<sup>1</sup> that we wil sey now. <sup>1 orig now al</sup> 967

We aske an answeze, and that in hasty wyse.

We pray to god, to whom we alle mote bow,

he sette 3ow soo and lede in swiche a gyse,

That right to-morwe, er 3e ovte of your bed ryse, 971

And er 3e come ovte in to þe halle,

That ye desyre as<sup>1</sup> we desire nov alle.” <sup>1 overlined.</sup> 973

Cam. 17m.

Bk. I. Ch. 17.

The queen answerde and wrot ryght þus ageyn), 974

Her Mother  
 agrees with  
 the Syrians,

She seyde, “this þyng algates mote be doo ;

To leue allone in stody, it was neuer seyn

That ony lady ony tyme dede soo.”

Therfore hir wil is fully seet þere-too 978

That hir dovghter, queen of that empyre,

Shal be wedded hastyly to som grete syre. 980

And vp-on this hir letter hath she sent 981

and writes to  
 tell them so.

Ryght in this foorme and in this-maner-stile :

“The queen of surry, of Cypre þat was brent,

Of Candy eke lady and of many a myle,

Wyf on-to Costus whiche but a lytyl while 985

Is passed and ded, on-to hir peple seyth :

She alloweth ful weel her manhod and her feyth ; 987

“She wil as thei wil, and hath doo many a day, 988

Katharine  
 ought to  
 marry some  
 King.

That hir dovghter on-to som kyng shuld bee

Maryed or wedded ; she seyde 3et neuere nay,

- Br. I. Ch. 17. But euer her' wylle hath be in to þis degre,  
 loke wher' 3e wyH & whanne, for so wyl sche. 992  
 Sche wold ful fayn þat þis þing' wer' I-doo ;  
 Yt had be fynsychd ful long' tyme a-goo, 994  
 " Yf it had ley in her' or in her' wylle. 995  
 Sche thynkyth certeyn reson þat þei sey :  
 To haue a kyng' it is ful goode skylle,  
 Be-cause a woman neithir can ne may  
 Do liche a man ne sey, it is no nay, 999  
 Go loke 3our'-selue, for 3e be wyse men alle.  
 My doutir, I trowe, on-to your' wyH shal falle. 1001  
 " She was neuer 3ete a-sayed in no degre 1002  
 Of 3ow ne me ne of' no-manner with ;  
 As in þis mater' sche seyde neuer nay ne 3ee,  
 We may not blame her' in no-manner plyth ;  
 She doth to vs as 3et no-þyng' but ryght, 1006  
 Ne non she cast, truly, as I suppose.  
 We wyll ful sone her' of' þis þing' appose. 1008  
 " Yf she consent, þan haue we al I-doo. 1009  
 But þis same þing', certayn, touchith vs aH,  
 It longyth nowt3 only to on or too,  
 But all our' reme herto must we calle,  
 ffor grete pereH ellys þerof' myth faH ; 1013  
 Yt longyth to þe ferthest' as wele as to hem  
 þat dwelle her' ny. 3e wote ful wele, her' em, 1015  
 [fol. 18] " The duke of tyre, mote nede know þis þing', 1016  
 The duke of' antioche eke, her' owne cosyne ;  
 If' we shul haue a lord or ellys a kyng',  
 þei mote consent, þei mote make þe fyn.  
 lete þis mater' no lenger slepe ne lyne ! 1020  
 We wyll send oute now in aH hastily wyse  
 þat euery man shal com in hese best gyse 1022  
 " On-to þis alisaundre, þer we dwelle as now ; 1023  
 þei shal sey & her' alle þat euer þei wylle,

- But euere hir wil hath be in this degree, Bk. I. Ch. 17.  
 Looke where thei wil and whanne, for soo wil shee. 992  
 She wuld ful fayn that this thyng were I-doo; Katharine's  
Mother  
agrees that  
 It hadde be fynshed ful longe tyme a-goo, 994  
 " If it had leyn in hir or in hir wille. 995  
 She thenkyth<sup>1</sup> certeyn resound that þei say : <sup>1 MS. thenkyteh</sup>  
 To haue a kyng it is ful good skylle, the Syrians  
ought to have  
a King,  
 be-cavse a woman neyther can ne may  
 Doo lyche a man ne seye, it is no nay, 999  
 Soo<sup>1</sup> loke youre-seluc, for ye be wise men alle. <sup>1 r. Go</sup>  
 My dovter, I trowe, on-to *your* wil shal falle. 1001  
 " She was neuere 3et assayed in no degree 1002  
 Of yow, ne me, ne of no-manner wyght;  
 As in this mater she seyde neuere nay ne 3e,  
 We may not blame hir in no-manner plyght;  
 She dooth to vs as 3et no thyng but ryght, 1006 and thinks  
her Daughter  
will marry, if  
askt;  
 Ne non she casteth, trewly, as I suppose.  
 We wiln ful sone hir of this þing appose. 1008  
 " If [s]he consente, than haue we alle I-doo. [fol. 19 b. The  
next passages  
are out of order  
in the MS.;  
II. 36—105 pre-  
cede v. 1009.]  
 But þis same þing, certeyn, toucheth vs alle,  
 It longeth not oonly to oon or too,  
 but alle oure recm herto must we calle,  
 ffor gret pereH [ellys] ther-of myght falle; 1013 but the whole  
Realm is con-  
cerned in the  
matter,  
 It longeth to the ferthest as [wel as] to hem  
 That dwellyn here ny. ye wote ful weel, here hend, 1015  
 " The duke of Tyre, muste nede knowe this thing, 1016  
 The duke of Antyoche eke, hir owyn cosynd;  
 If we shul haue a lord or ellis a kyng,  
 Thei mote consente, thei mote make þe fynd.  
 lete þis mater no lenger slepe ne lyn! 1020  
 She wil sende oute now in hasty wyse  
 That euery man shal come in his beste gyse 1022 so she will  
summon its  
chief men  
 " On-to þis Alysavndre, there we dwelle as now; 1023 to Alexandria  
 Thei shal sey and here aH þat [euer] thei wille,



<u>Bk. I. Ch. 17.</u>	Ther' shaH no man, to god I make a vowe, Be lettyd for vs, speke he loude or styllē."	
	This was þe sentense of þe qwenes bille.	1027
	The puple red it & was ful wele a-payde, "God saue our' lady," wyth o voys þus þei seyde.	1029
	Thus endeth þis boke of þis clene uirgine, In wech her' byrth, her' kynrod & her' countre Is declared, so as she wold enclyue hir' gracious help to send on-to me.	1030
	Now ferthermor' a newe boke be-gynne wyl we, In wech we shall on-to hyr' worchep wyte, So as we can <i>in</i> our' langage endyte,	1034 1036
	The grete conflicte be-twyx þe lordes & her' Ryth <i>in</i> þe parlement, wech was ful realy hold At grete alysaunder—many a ful stout syre On-to þat cite at þat tyme cam ful bold. It wyl be long <sup>r</sup> or þat þis tale be told ; þerfor I counseH þat we make her' a pause And eke a-rest ryth euene at þis clause.	1037 1041 1043

Bk. II. Prot.**liber secundus. Prologus.**

	<b>L</b> oke whanne 3e see þe sparkes fayr' & bryth Spryng <sup>r</sup> fro þe fyre & vpward fast to goo, 3e may suppose be reson & be ryth Summe fyre is nye, experiens telleth you soo ; þer go no sparkes neithir to ner' fro	1 5
	But þer as fyr' is, þis se we ryth at eye. In þis same maner of þis same lady I sey :	7
	þeis holy wordes, þeis holy dedes eke	8
[fol. 18, b.] [4th hand]	Wherf schē spake & vsed here lyuande, Alle þoo were tokenys þat her' hert gan seke Here gostly spouse, sche lefte not tyH sche fond That blyssyd lord. sche knowyth not 3it hys hand As sche schaH aftyr, but sche haue <sup>1</sup> tokenys gode ; <sup>1</sup> r. hath And aH <sup>2</sup> of god sche knowyth not 3it þe rode ; <sup>2</sup> r. als?	12 14

There shal no man, to oure god I make a vow, Be letted for vs, speke he loude or styлле."		<i>Bk. I. Ch. 17.</i>
This was þe sentens of the queenes bille.	1027	to discuss Katharine's marriage.
The peple redde it, and was ful weel a-payede, "God saue oure lady" with oo voys thus thei sayde.	1029	
Thus endeth þis book of this clene virgine,	1030	
In whiche hir byrthe, hir kynred and hyr contre Is declared, soo as she wolde enclyne hyr gracyovs helpe to sende on-to me.		
Now ferthere-more a newe book begynne wil we,	1034	
In whiche we shal on-to hir wurshyppe wryte, So as we kan in oure langage endyte,	1036	
The grete conflicte be-twyxe the lordes and hir Ryght in þe p̄rlemente, whiche was ful ryaly holde At grete Alysavndre—many a ful stoute sir On-to þat Cytee at þat tyme cam ful boolde.	1037	But as there's to be a dis- pute over it,
It wil be long er þat this tale be toolde ;	1041	
Therefore I counseyH þat we make here a pavse And eke a reste ryght euene at this clause.	1043	we'll end Book I. here.

<sup>1</sup> MS. Cam.  
1m.*Bk. II. Prol.***Liber secundus. Prologus.<sup>1</sup>**

<b>L</b> oke, whan ye see þe sparkes fayre and bryght Sprynge fro the fyre and vpward faste to goo, Ye may suppose be reson and be ryght Som fyre is ny, exp̄ryens telleth yow soo ; There go no sparkes neyther too ne froo But there as fyre is, þis sec we ryght at ey3e. In this same maner of this lady I seye :	1      5  7	As sparks      show that fire is nigh,
These hooly woordys, these hooly deedes eke Whiche she <sup>1</sup> spak <sup>2</sup> and vsed here lyuande, Alle tho were tookenes þat hir herte gan seke hir goostly spovse, she lefte not tyl she fande That blyssed lord <sup>1</sup> . she knoweth not yet his hande As shal she afterward, but she hath tookenes goode ; And alle-soo <sup>1</sup> of god she knoweth not yet the roode ;	8    12  14	so Katha- rine's holy words show    that she is seeking Christ,

<sup>1</sup> overlined.  
<sup>2</sup> MS. spark<sup>1</sup> overlined.<sup>1</sup> soo overlined.

<u>Bk. II. Prof.</u>	Sche knowyth not crist, sche hath not herd his lore,	15
	But <i>ȝit</i> þe fyre of charite & of loue	
	Brennyth in here, so þat euer more & more	
	Here hert is sette on oon þat sytte a-boue.	<sup>1</sup> MS. dowe <sup>2</sup> overline.1.
	I trowe þat dowe <sup>1</sup> þe qwech vp <sup>2</sup> -on crist dide houe	19
	Whanne he was baptized, had mad <i>in</i> hyr' hys nest.	
	This wote I welc, sche can not now haue rest,	21
	But <i>aH</i> hyr' spech is now to comend	22
	þe grete vertu qwech we virginitie	
	A-mongys [vs] <sup>1</sup> name. who coude þanne a wende	<sup>1</sup> omitted.
	That on þis vertu so dewly thynk' wold sche?	
	ffor swech exaumples want in þat cuntre;	26
	Ther is no man desyryth sche be a mayde,	
	Sche mote be weddyd nedys, þus þei sayde.	28
	And as we see, þe more is leyde to brenne	29
	þe gretter fyre þer is, it is no dowte;	
	ffor drawe away þe schydys fro it þen,	
	Sone wyH þe fyre be qwenchyd & be owte:—	
	þe more þis lady vertues is a-bowte	33
	þe more þei grow, þei haue a fuH gode grownde.	
	Here cours, þei sey, as sercle it is rownd,	35
	ffor eueri vertu folowyth ryth aftyr odyr:	36
	Whan on is come, he callyth ine his felaw;	
	þei loue to-geder as syster or as þe brothyre,	
	Ech of hem aH his besynesse doth to draw,	
	TyH aH be come—ryth swech, lo, <sup>1</sup> is her' lawe,	<sup>1</sup> orig. so 40
	Be-gynne ageyn whan þou hast vsed þe last;	
	here serculed cours ryth þus, lo, haue þei cast.	42
	Thys made here hate þese fleschly lustys alle,	43
	ffor in þis sercle sche is so farre I-paste	
	þat from þat whele sche cast here not to falle;	
	here hert & þei be teyd so wondyr fast,	
	Of hem it hath take so swetly þe tast,	47
	Thei are mette and mates, now & euer-more,	
	Thei are now bownd to-gedyr wondyr sore.	49

- She knoweth not cryst, she hath not herd his lore, 15 *Bk. II. Prol.*  
 But yet þe fyre of charyte and of love  
 Brenneth in hir, soo þat euere more and more  
 hir herte is sette on oon that sitteth a-bove.  
 I trowe þat dowe whiche vp-on cryst dede houe 19  
 Whan he was baptysed, had made in hir his nest.  
 This wote I weel, she can not now haue rest, 21  
 But al hir speche is now to comende 22 *She talks  
 much of Vir-  
 ginity.*  
 The grete vertu whiche is vyrgynyte,  
 A-mong vs namely—who cowde thanne a wende  
 That on þis vertu so dewly thanke wolde she?  
 ffor swwhyche exaunplys wante<sup>1</sup> in þat contre; <sup>1</sup> MS. wente 26  
 There is no man desyreth she be a mayde,  
 She mote be wedded, nedys thus, þei sayde. 28  
 And as we see, þe more is leyd to brenne 29  
 The grettere fyre þer is, it is no dowte;  
 ffor drawe a-wei þe shides fro it thenne,  
 Soone wil þe fyre be quenched and be ovte:  
 The more this lady vertues is aboute 33  
 The more thei growe, þei haue a ful good grounde.  
 her cours the seyde sercle (!) it is rounde, 35 *Her virtues  
 grow:*  
 ffor euery vertu folweth right after other: [fol. 18 b] 36  
 Whan on is come, he calleth in his felawe;  
 Thei loue to-gedir as sister or as the brother,  
 Eche of hem alle his besynesse dooth to drawe,  
 Til alle be come—right swiche lo is her lawe, 40  
 Be-gynne a-geyð whan thou hast vsed the last;  
 her sercled cours right thus loo haue þei cast. 42  
 This made hir hate these fleshly lustys alle, 43 *Katharine  
 hates fleshly  
 lusts.*  
 ffor in þis sercle she is soo ferre I-paste  
 That from that wil (!) she casteth hir not to falle;  
 hir herte and thei be teyed so wunder faste,  
 Of hem she hath soo sweetly take þe taste, 47  
 They arn mette and mates now and euere-more,  
 Thei arn<sup>1</sup> now bounde to-gedere wonder sore. <sup>1</sup> overlined. 49

<u>Bk. II. Prof.</u>	It acordeth fuH weel, me thynk, to here name	50
	That vicyous lyfe in here schuld haue no place ;	
	þeis latyn bokys, I suppose, sey þis same,	
	Here name, þei seyn, it is so fuH of grace	
	That synfuH lyfe it can distroy & race ;	54
	ffor þus it menyth, certeyn <sup>1</sup> , it is no may :	<sup>1</sup> orig. forsoth
	Cata in grew, in englysch is þus to say	56
	“Ouyr aH” or “aH,” & ryne in oure langage	57
	Sownd “fallyng,” as who schuld sey, in here	
	Of synne & schame aH þe sory rage	
	Destroyd was, it nehyd her not nere.	
	þeis holy vertues were to here so dere,	61
	þei putte a-wey of synne[s] aH þe flok <sup>t</sup> ;	
	þei are schyt owt & sche speryd þe lok <sup>t</sup> .	63
	O noble lady, þat art now us aboue,	64
	Suffyr oure tungys, þow þei vn-worthy be,	
	To telle þi lyfe, þi <sup>1</sup> langoure & þi <sup>1</sup> loue	<sup>1</sup> i. þe
	þat þou had here in þi deuoute secre,	
	To telle þe sorowe eke & þat aduersite	68
	Whicch wyth þi lordys þou suffyrd as a clerk <sup>t</sup> !	
	We wyH now streyte dresse vs to þat werk <sup>t</sup> .	70

Bk. II. Ch. 1.Cam. 1<sup>m</sup>.

	<b>N</b> ow is not ellys but ryde, go & ren,	71
	Messangerys are oute on hasty wyse	
	To calle to parlement alle-maner memme,	
	That þei come alle now in her best gyse ;	
	Clerkes must come, for þei be so wyse,	75
	And lordes eke, be-cawse þei be strong <sup>t</sup> .	
	This gaderyng hardely was not taryd long <sup>t</sup> .	77
	ffor, as I rede, wyth <sup>l</sup> -inne wekys three	78
	Thei be come thydir, & þat wyth <sup>l</sup> gret pryde :	
	The prince of capadoce wytz a gret mene,	
	The erl of ioppen cam ryth be his syde—	
	þer <sup>t</sup> myght men se who can best sytte & ryde ;	82

[fol. 19, b.]  
[2nd hand]

It accordeth ful weel, me thenketh, to hir name	50	<i>Bk. II. Prol.</i>
That' vyciouse lyf in hir shuld haue no place :		Her name implies this :
These latyn bookes, I suppose, seyñ the same,		
hir name, þei seye, it is soo ful of grace		
þat synful lyef it can distroye and race ;	54	
ffor thus it meneth, certayñ, it is no nay :		
Catha in greu, in englyssh is to say	56	<i>Catha means</i>
“ Ouere alle,” or “ alle,” And ryne in oure langage	57	‘over all,’ <i>Ryne</i> means ‘falling.’
Soundeth “ fallyng,” as we <sup>1</sup> shulde sey, in heer	1 r. who	
Of synne and shame al the sory rage	[fol. 19]	
Destroyed was, it neyhed hir not neer.		
These holy vertues were to hir soo deer,	61	
Thei put a-wey of synne[s] al the flook,		
Thei arñ shet oute and she spered the look.	63	
O noble lady, þat art now vs a-bove,	64	Sainted Lady, let me tell thy Life and Love,
Suffre oure tounge, þhough thei onworthi be,		
To telle thi lyef, the langure and the love		
That þou hadest in thi deuoute secree,		
To telle the sorwe eke and that aduersite	68	thy Sorrow and Distress !
Whiche <i>wyth</i> thi lordes þou suffered as a clerk !		
We wil now streit dresse vs to þat werk.	70	

Cap. 1.<sup>1</sup><sup>1</sup> MS. Cap. 15*Bk. II. Ch. 1.*

<b>N</b> ow is not ellis but ryde, goo and renne,	71	
Massagerys arñ oute on hasty wyse		
To calle to parlement alle maner men,		
That thei alle come now in her beste gyse ;		
Clerkys muste come, for þei ben so wyse,	75	The Parlia- ment
And lordes eke, be-cause thei be stronge.		
This gaderyng hardyly was not taryed longe.	77	
ffor, as I reede, <i>wyth</i> -inne wekes thre	78	
Thei be come theder, and that <i>wyth</i> grete pryde :		meets in Alexandria.
The prynce of Capadoce with a grete mene,		
The Erle of ioppen cam rydyng be his syde—		
There myght men see who can best sytte and ryde ;	82	To it come the Earl of Joppa,

- Bk. II. Ch. 1. þe prince of paphon is come þedyr allsoo, <sup>1 MS. &</sup>  
þe duke of damask, *wyth* many [an]<sup>1</sup> oþer<sup>1</sup> moo; 84
- The duke of salence, þe duke of garacen, 85  
þei wer<sup>1</sup> ther<sup>1</sup> recall, & eke so was he  
þe erle of lymason)—ful many strong men  
had þei *wyth* hem, þese recall lordes thre.  
þe amerell of Alysauudy<sup>r</sup>, *wyth* solennite 89  
he hath receyuyd hem), he was a full strong syr<sup>1</sup>.  
he is come also, þe noble duke of tyre. 91
- Last of all þedyr<sup>1</sup> gan aproche 92  
A worthy man, hyr owyn<sup>1</sup> ny cosyn),  
þei call hym þer<sup>1</sup> þe duke of Antioch<sup>1</sup>;  
All þis mater<sup>1</sup> he schall now determy<sup>n</sup>),  
þus wene þei alle, for owte of o lyne 96  
Ar<sup>1</sup> þei come bothe; he may ryght nowt wante,  
hys wyll *in* her<sup>1</sup> hert ful sone schall he plante. 98
- The day is come now whech assygned was; 99  
þe lordes are gadred to-gedyr all *in*-fer<sup>1</sup>.  
þe lenghe of þe halle fully too hundyrd pace  
So was it, certen), *in* wech þei gadered wer<sup>1</sup>,  
Sytyng *in* her<sup>1</sup> counsell—þoo men þat wer<sup>1</sup> þer<sup>1</sup> 103  
þei mett it hem-self, þei sey<sup>d</sup> it was soo—  
Swech howses *in* þis werld ar not many moo. 105
- A grete lorde was chose þer a-mongis hem alle 106  
To tell hyr<sup>1</sup> wylle—"speker<sup>1</sup>," he<sup>2</sup> sey, he was, <sup>1 r. her</sup>  
I wot not veryly what þat men hym calle. <sup>2 r. þei</sup>  
he went ful esyly forth a ful soft pas  
Tyll he was come ryght be-for þe face 110  
Of þis meke lady, & þan þus he sey<sup>d</sup> :  
" Myn souereyn lady, 3e schull not be dysmayde, 112  
" 3e schall for3ene, & þat I pray 3ow her<sup>1</sup>, 113  
Thow I to 3ow sey tr<sup>u</sup>th, as I must nede.  
I am a *seruaunt*, for I hafe take wage & hyr<sup>1</sup>

The prynce of paphon) is com) thedir also,		<i>Bk. II. Ch. 1.</i>
The duke of Damaske, wyth many other mo ;	84	the Duke of Damascus, &c.,
The duke of salence, the duke of Garacencen,	85	
Thei were there ryal, and eke so was he,		
The Erle of Iymason), with ful many strong men		
had thei with hem, [þese] ryal lordes thre.		
The amyraH of Alysaundre, with solennyte	89	
he hath receyued hem), he was a ful straunge syre.		
he is come also, the noble duke of Tyre.	91	
Laste of alle theder gan) approche	92	
A worthli man), hir owne ny Cosyn,		
Thei calle hym there the duke of Antioche ;		the Duke of Antioch, &c.
Al this mater he shal now determyn,		
Thus wene thei alle, for ovte of oo lyn)	96	
Are thei come bothe, he may ryght novght whant,		
his wyl in [her] herte ful sone shal he plant.	98	
The day is come now whiche assigned was ;	99	
The lordes arn) gadered to-gedyr alle in-feere.		
The lengthe of the halle fully too hundir paas		The Hall is 200 paces long.
So was it, certeyn), in whiche thei gadered were,		
Sittyng in her counseyl—the men) þat were there	103	
Thei mette it hem-seluc, þei seyde it was soo—		
Swhiche hoveses in þis world arn) not many moo.	105	
A grete lord was chose there a-mong hem alle		
To telle her wil—"spekere," þei seyn, he was,		[fol. 216. In the MS. vv. 176— 245 precede 106 --175.]
I wot not veryly what þat men) hym calle.		A Spoker is choson.
he went ful esyly foorth a ful soft paas		
Til he was come ryght be-foorn) þe faas	110	
Of þis meke lady, and þanne thus he sayde :		
"My souereyn) lady, ye shul not be dismayde,	112	He addresses Katharine.
"Ye shal foryue, and þat I prey yow here,	113	
Thow I to yow sey treuthe, as I muste nede.		
I am a seruant, and haue take wage in fere <sup>1</sup>		<sup>1</sup> MS. orig. for I h. t. w. and here



<u>nr. II. ch. 1.</u>	Of yow, my lady, & þat in many stede ;	
	I am chose eke þe nedys for to bede	117
	Of all your' reume, of lordys & of othyr—	
	I except ryght noon, for certenly 3our' modyr	119
	“ As in þis case is ryght on of heme.	120
	Sche wyll & þei, þat 3e, my lady der',—	
	So wyll my lord þe duk of tyr', 3our' hem,	
	I sey not fals, for he is present her'—	
	What schuld I lenger' hyde now my mater',	124
	3e must now leue your' stody & 3our' bokys	
	And tak your' solace be feldys & be brokys.	126
	“ T[h]ynk on your' kyn, thynk on your' hyc lyne ;	127
	If 3e lef þus, þe elde auncetrye	
	Schall fayle in 3ow. þer is no dyuyn	
	Ne phylysophre her' wyll sey þat I lye,	
	ffor I sey þus : on-to our' goddys hardylye	131
	It is not plesaunce þat 3e schuld þus doo ;	
	It pleseth hem bettyr, & 3e consent þer'-too—	133
	“ And eke 3our' puple—þat 3e a husbond haue,	134
	A real lorde, whech may us alle defende.	
	þe goddys ffrenchep if 3e wyll kepe & saue,	
	On-to þis purpose 3e mote nede condescende ;	
	3our' puple gretly þer'-by schuld 3e mende.	138
	Excuseth not þat wyll noght be excusode,	
	Ther' is swech choys, it may not be refusode.	140
	“ What lord is þat, if onys he myght yow see,	141
	But he wold hafe 3ow? mech mor', dar' I sey,	
	If he knew your' cunnynge, as now do we,	
	he wold desyr' 3ow in all-maner' weye ;	
	hys crown, hys kyngdam wold he rather' lye	145
	þan he schuld want your' noble wyse presence—	
	Who se yow onys, desyryth not 3our' absence.	147
	“ Ther'-for', lady, 3our' seruauuntis are now her'	148
	Be-sekyng [yow] <sup>1</sup> þat 3e wyll of 3our' grace	<sup>1</sup> om.

Of yow, my lady, and that in many stede ;		<i>Bk. II. Ch. 1.</i>
I am chose eke the nedes for to bede	117	
Of alle youre reem, of lordes and of othir—		All her lordes, and her
I excepte ryght non), for certeynly <i>your</i> modir	119	Mother
“As in þis caas is ryght oon) of hem.	120	
She wil and thei, þat ye, my lady deere,—		
Soo wil my lord the duke of Tیره, <i>your</i> eem),		and Uncle,
I sey not fals, for he is present heere—		
What shuld I lengere now hyde my matere,	124	
Ye must now leue <i>your</i> study and <i>your</i> bookes		want her to leave her books,
And take yowre solace be feeldes and be brookes.	126	
“Thenke on yovre kyn), thenke on) <i>your</i> hei lyne ;	127	
If ye leue thus, the old auncetrye		
Shal fayle in yow. ther is no dyuynce		
Ner philysophere here wil sey þat I now lyze,		
ffor I sey thus : on-to ovre goddys hardylye	131	
It is non) plesauns that ye shuld thus doo ;		
It pleseth hem better, and ye consente ther-too—	133	
“And [eke] <i>your</i> puple—that ye an husbond haue,	134	and take a Husband.
A ryal lord, whiche may us alle defende.		
The goddys frenshepe if ye wil kepe and saue,		
On-to this purpos ye mote nede condescende ;		
Youre puple gretly therby shul ye mende.	138	
Excuseth not that wil be not excused,		
There is swyche choys, it may not be refused.	140	
“What lord is that, if ones he myght yow see,	141	
But he wold haue yow ? moche more, dar I seye,		Any Lord will be too glad to have her.
If he knewe <i>your</i> connyng, as doo we,		
he wolde desyre yow in al-manner weye ;	[fol. 22]	
his crowne, his kyngdam) wolde he rather leye	145	
Than he shulde whante <i>your</i> noble wyis <i>presens</i> —		
Ho see yow ones, desyreth not <i>your</i> absens.	147	
“Therefore, lady, yovre seruauntys arm) now here	148	
Be-sekyngre that ye wil of yovre grace		

Bk. II. Ch. 1. Ope 3our' eres & lyst to our' prayere—  
 ffor þis cause only came we to þis place  
 Ryght all *in-feer'*. 3e may vs *graunte* solace, 152  
 Or peyne & sorow, ryght as 3e lyst to chese ;  
 3our' answer', lady, schall cause on of þese." 154

Bk. II. Ch. 2.

Ca<sup>m</sup>. 2<sup>m</sup>.

F<sup>vl</sup> a-stoynd & all a-basched sore 155  
 was þis lady, whan sche herd hym than.  
 "O noble godd," thowt sche, "þat I now wore  
 No qwen, ne lady ! for I ne wote ne can  
 Voyde þe sentens of þis ilke wyse man ; 159  
 My priuy counsell whech I hafe bor' long,  
 Now must it owte, & þat thynkyth me wrong. 161  
 " ffor if I schewe þat I so long hafe bor', 162  
 þe priuyest poynt of my perfeceyoun,  
 Me thynkyth swyrly þan þat I hafe lore  
 þe hie degre of my deuocoun).  
 Whan veynglorye comth, uertu is þan gon) ; 166  
 Vertu *serueth* to plese godd only,  
 And not þe puple—ryght þus redd hafe I. 168  
 " If I concelle my counsell, þan schall I falle 169  
 In *indignacyon*) of all my puple her' ;  
 If I denye her' askyng *in* þis halle  
 And tell no cause, I put hem mor' *in* dwer'.  
 Whech þing I do, I fall ouyr *in* dawngere. 173  
 3et wondyr I sore þat my hert is sett  
 On swech a poynte, þat I can not lett, 175  
 " And 3et it is ageyns myne owyn lawe, 176  
 Whech I am swor' to kepe & to defende !  
 My mynd it faryth ryght as on þe wawe  
 A grete schyppe doth : for [whan]<sup>1</sup> he best wende <sup>1 om.</sup>  
 To be escaped, þan comth þe wawys ende, 180  
 he fyllyth þe schyppe & forth a-non) is goo.  
 On-to þis poynt I drede I am browte too. 182

Open your eiris and leste to oure prayere—		<i>Bk. II. Ch. I.</i>
ffor þis cause oonly com) we to þis place		Will she not grant their wish?
Right alle in-fere. ye may graunte vs solace,	152	
Or peyne or <sup>1</sup> sorwe, ryght as ye leste to these ;	<sup>1</sup> r. &	
Youre answe're, lady, shal ben) oon) of these."	154	

Ca<sup>m</sup>. secundum.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> MS. tercium *Bk. II. Ch. 2.*

<b>F</b> vH astoynd and al abashed soore	155	Katharine is abashd.
was þis lady, whan) she herde him) <sup>1</sup> þan).	<sup>1</sup> MS. hem)	
"O noble god," thought she, "that I now whore		
No qveen) ne lady! for I ne wot ne can)		She wishes she was't a Queen.
Voyde the sentens of þis ilke wyse man) ;	159	
My preuy counseyH whiche I haue bore longe,		
Now muste it ovtē, and that thengeth me wronge.	161	
"ffor if I shewe þat I soo longe haue bore,	162	
The preuyest poynt of my perfectyon),		
Me thenketh suerly þanne þat I haue lore		
The hey degree of my deuocyon).		
Whan) veynglory cometh, vertu is þan) goon) ;	166	
Vertu seruyth to plese god oonly,		
And not the puple—oonly ryght thus red haue I.	168	
" If I consele my counseyH, than) shal I falle	169	Katharine thinks she must answer her people's request,
Into <sup>1</sup> the indignacyon) of alle my puple here ;	<sup>1</sup> to overlined.	
If I denye her askyngē in this halle		
And telle no cause, I putte hem more in dwere.		
Whiche þing I doo, I falle euere in daungere.	173	
Yet wondre I sore þat myn) hert is so <sup>1</sup> sette	<sup>1</sup> overlined.	
On swiche a poynt, that I can) not lette,	175	
" And yet it is ageyn) my owne lawe,	[fol. 20 b.] 176	
Whiche I am swore to kepe and to defende !		
Myn) mende it fareth ryght as on þe wawe		
A grete shyp dooth : for whan) he best wende		
To be skaped, than) cometh the wawes ende,	180	
he filleth the ship and forth anon) is goo.		
On-to this poynt I drede I am) brought too.	182	

<u>Bk. II. Ch. 2.</u>	“ I supposed ful well to leue now at myn ese :	183
	Now must I leue my stody & my desyre,	
	My modyr, my kyn, my puple if I wyll plesse ;	
	I most leue stody & wasch my boke in myre,	
	Ryde owte on huntyng, vse all new a-tyre !	187
	Godd, þou knowyst my preuy confessyon,	
	I hafe made aH a-nothyr professyon !	189
	“ If I myght kepe it, I schall zet, & I may,	190
	Contynue þe same, to godd I make a uowe.	
	Schuld I now chaunge my lyffe & myn aray,	
	And trace þe wodes a-bowte undyr þe how ?	
	I loued it neuyr, who schuld I loue it now ? ”	194
	þus thowt þis mayde be hyr-self a-lone,	
	And aftyr softly wyth syhyng gan sche grone.	196
	Sche spak þan lowde, þei myght her' at onys :	197
	“ Gramerey, lordes,” sche seyde, “ of your' good wyll !	
	þe sey, þour' feldys & your' wonys	
	Are in poynt for me to scatyr & spylle,	
	But if I take a lorde now me vn-tylle	201
	Whech may put all þis in gouernaunce ;	
	þan schuld þe hafe boþe rest & abundaunce.	203
	“ I suppose weele þat it schulde be soo.	204
	þet wyll þe graunte, parde, of curtesye	
	þat syth þis þing muste nedys goo þer-too,	
	þat I my-selfe, in whom all þis doth lye,	
	May hafe a-vyusement. I am not schape to flye,	208
	Ne to fle neyther' ! me þinkyth, þe euerychou	
	haue ful gret hast, & I haf ryght noon.	210
	“ I am but þunge, I may fuH weell a-byde,	211
	þus schuld þe sey to me if I had hast.	
	lete aH þis mater' as for a whyle now slyde,	
	Tyll mo þerys of myn age be past ;	
	þer-whyles wyll I boþe lok & tast <sup>1</sup>	1 r. cast? 215
	Wher' I wyll sett me, & telle yow myn a-vys.	
	I wold noght men seyde I wer' hasty or nyce.	217

- “ I supposed ful wel to leue now at myn cese : 183 *Bk. II. Ch. 2.*
- Now must<sup>1</sup> I leue my stody and myn desyre, <sup>1 MS. musty I</sup> the<sup>r</sup> she  
My modir, my kyn, my peple if I wil plese ; does'n't want  
I muste leue stody and wasli myn book in myre, to give up  
Ryde ovte on huntynge, vse al newe a-tyre ! 187 and take to  
God, þou knowest my preuy confession), hunting.
- I haue made al a-nother professyon ! 189
- “ If I myght kepe it, I shal yet, and I may, 190
- Contynue the same, to god I make a vovgh.
- Shulde I now chaunge my lyf and myn aray,
- And trace þe wodes abovte vndir the bow ?
- I loued it neuere, how shuld I loue it now ? ” 194 She never  
Thus thought this mayde be hir-selue allone, liked hunt-  
And after softly with syhyng gaud she grone. ing.
- She spak than loudre, þei myght here at oones : 197
- “ Gromercy, lordes,” she seyde, “ of *your* good wil !
- Ye seye, youre foeldes and *your* wones
- Arn in poynt for me to scatyr and spyl,
- But I take a lord now me on-tyl 201 Katharine
- Whiche may putte al þis in gouernaunce ;
- Thanne shuld ye haue bothe rest and abundaunce. 203
- “ I suppose wecl þat it shuld be soo. 204
- Yet wil ye gravnte me of *your* curtesye
- That, sith þis thyng muste nedes goo ther-too,
- That I my-self, in whom al þis dooth lye,
- May haue avisement. I am not shape to flye, 208
- Ne to flee neyther ! me thenketh, ye euerychon [fol. 21]
- haue ful grete hast, and I haue ryght noon. 210
- “ I am but yovng, I may ful wel a-byde, 211 She is quite  
Thus shuld ye seye to me if I had hast. young.
- let al this mater as for a whyle now slyde,
- Til mo zeerys of myn age been past ;
- There-whiles wil I bothe loken and tast 215
- Where I wil sette me, and telle yow myn avys.
- I wolde not men seyde I were hasty or nys. 217

<u>Bk. II. Ch. 2.</u>	“ ffor hasty schall I nocht be in þis mater’ ; I sewyr’ ʒow her’, I wyll noo husbond take But if I telle my frendys whecch be her’, lest þat I renne in daunger’ & in wrake. What schuld I lenger’ to ʒow tale now make ? Tyme goth fast, it is full lyght of lope, And in a-bydyng men seyð þer lyghte hope. “ Thus schall we boþe wyth a-vysement werk ; Best it is, me þinkyt, þat we do soo. late þe puple for a whylle iangyll & berk, Spek at her’ lust—so are þei won to doo ; þe choys is myne, I mote consent þer’-too. Tyme of’ a-vysement to haue I pray yow— Thys is aH & sum þat I wyH sey as nowe.”	218     222  224  225    229  231
-----------------------	--	--

[f.a. 21, b.]  
[1st hand]

Bk. II. Ch. 3.

Cam. 3m.

<p><b>T</b>han ros a lord, a man of’ gret statur’, A rych man eke þei sey þat he was ; hys wordes wer’ taut hym wyth ful besy cur’ Of a clerke þere, þe mor’ &amp; eke þe lasse— hys wytte was not sufficient as in þis cas To speke in þis mater’, ryth þus he pouth. “Myn owe lady,” he seyde, “it is ful der’ a-bowth “The absens of’ your’ fader now in þis land : I haue lost my-selue, &amp; so haue oþir’ moo, A þousand pounð þat was þoo in my hand, Whan þat he deyed &amp; went vs þus froo ; The same haue oþir men, I am sekyr it is soo. We ar’ come heder to her’ now your’ entent In þis mater’, &amp; ʒe haske a-vysement ! “ ʒe myth a be vysyd, lady, wele I-now long’ or þis tyme, if’ ʒe had lyste ; In long’ a-bydyng’ is ful lytyl prove— aH þat euer I mene I wold þat ʒe wyste. It is mor’ sykyr a bryd in ʒour’ fyste</p>	232     236  238  239  243  245  246   250
---	--

- “ffor hasty shal I not be in this matere ; 218 *Bk. II. Ch. 2.*  
 I sewer you heere, I wyl non housbond take  
 But if I telle my freendes whiche be here,  
 lest þat I renne in daunger and in wrake.  
 What shuld I to yow lengere tale now make ? 222  
 Tyme gooth faste, it is ful lyght of lope,  
 And in a-bydyng men) seyn) there lyeth hope. 224
- “Thus shal we bothe wyth avysement werke ; 225  
 Best it is, me thenketh, þat we doon soo.  
 late þe peple for a while iangle and beerke,  
 Speke at her lust—soo arn) thei wont to doo ;  
 The chois is myn), I mote consente ther-too. 229  
 Tyme of avysement to have I pray yow—  
 This is al and sum þat I wil sey as now.” 231

She won't  
marry with-  
out advice.

She begs for  
delay.

Ca<sup>m</sup>. *tercium.*

*Bk. II. Ch. 3.*

- T**hanne ros a lord, a man) of gret stature, 232 A rich lord  
 A ryche man) eke þei seyn) that he was ;  
 his wordes were taught hym) *wytl* ful besy cure  
 Of a clerk there, the more and eke the las—  
 his wyt was not sufficient as in þat cas 236  
 To speke in this mater, ryght thus he thought.  
 “Myn) owne lady,” he seyde, “it is ful deere abovght, 238
- “The absens of *your* fadir now in this land : 239  
 I haue lost my-self, and soo haue other moo,  
 A thousand povnd þat was tho in myn) hand,  
 Whan) þat he deyed &<sup>1</sup> wente vs thus froo ; <sup>1</sup> overlined.  
 The same haue other men), I am) seeker it is soo. 243  
 We arn) come now heder to here youre entent  
 In this mater, and ye aske avysement ! 245
- “Ye myght a be avysed, lady, weel I-now [fol. 22] 246  
 longe er þis tyme, if ye had lest ;  
 In longe a-bydyng is ful litel prow—  
 Al þat euere I meene I wolde þat ye west.  
 It is more sekryr a byrd in *your* fest 250

tells Katha-  
rine he's lost  
£1000 since  
her Father  
died.

So have  
others.

A bird in the  
hand is worth



- Bk. II. Ch. 3. Than to haue iij. in þe sky a-boue,  
And mor' profetabyl to your' be-houe. 252
- “The gray hors, whyl his gras growyth,  
May sterue for hunger, þus seyth þe *prouerbe*. 253  
Euery wyse man as weele as I now knowyth  
The sore may swelle long, or þe herbe  
Is growe or rype—a grete clerke of *viterbe* 257  
Seyd so sumtyme & wroot it in hys boke.  
We haue ful grete nede to spy<sup>e</sup> & to loke 259
- “That we may<sup>1</sup> haue a kyng<sup>t</sup> to rewle us & yow, 260  
To gouerne þe lawe þat it shuld not erre, <sup>1</sup> now expunged.  
To be to traytourys both cruel & row,  
To lede þe lordys whan þei go to werre.  
ffro 3our' kend þis gouernauns is fuH ferre, 264  
Your' blod is not so myty for to abyde  
To se man be slayn be 3our' owyn<sup>d</sup> syde, <sup>1</sup> overlined. 266
- [fol. 22.]  
[2<sup>nd</sup> hand] “To se þe boweles cut oute of hys wombe 267  
And brent be-for' hym, whyll he is on lyue,  
To se man<sup>1</sup> serued as þei serue a lombe, <sup>1</sup> MS. meuz corr.?  
Thorow-oute hys guttys boþe rende & ryue,  
To se hem draw oute be four' & be fyue. 271  
3our' pytous hert myght not se þis chaunce,  
ffor it wold mak yow to fall in a trauns. 273
- “Ther-for' it is best to 3ow, þus we þink, 274  
To take a lord þat may suffyr all thys,  
Whech may se men flete & also se hem synk,  
Suffyr hem to smert whan þei do a-mys,  
Whan þei do weell to hafe reward & blys. 278  
Ryght þus I mene, I mak no lenger' tale;  
But 3e do þus, gretter' growyth our' bale.” 280

- T**hys lady answerd on-to þis lord a-geyn: 281  
“My faderes absence is mor' greuous to me

Than to haue three in þe sky a-bove,		<u>Bk. II. Ch. 3.</u>
And more profytable to youre be-hove.	[fol. 22 b.] 252	three in the sky.
“The grey hors, whil his gres groweth,	253	
May sterue for hunger, thus seyth the prouerbe.		
Euery wysman as wel as I now knoweth		
The soor may swelle longe er the herbe		
Is growe or rype—a grete clerk of viterbe	257	
Seyde soo somtyme and wrote it in his booke.		
We haue ful grete nede to spye and to looke	259	
“That we may haue a kyng to revle vs and yow,	260	The Syrians want a King.
To gouerne the <sup>1</sup> lawe that it shuld not erre,	<sup>1</sup> overlined.	
To be to traytouris bothe cruel and row,		
To lede þe lordis whan thei goo to werre.		
ffro youre kende this gouernauns is ful ferre,	264	
Your blood is not so myghty for to a-byde		Katharine
To see men <sup>1</sup> slayd be youre owen syde,	<sup>1</sup> r. man 266	
“To see þe bowailes cutte oute of his wombe	267	cannot see men how-ld like a lamb.
And brent be-fore hym, whil he is on lyve,		
To see men be serued as thei serue a lombe,		
Thurgh-oute his guttes bothe rende and ryue,		
To see hem drawe oute be foure and be fyue.	271	
Your pytous herte myght not see þis chaunce,		
ffor it wolde make you to falle in a traunce.	273	
“Therefore it is best to yow, thus we thenke,	274	
To take a lord that may suffre al þis,		
Whiche may see men fleete and also hem synke,		She must have a Hus- band to punish offenders.
Suffre hem to smerte whan þei doo a-mys,		
Whan þei doo wel to haue reward and blys.	278	
Ryght thus I mene, I make no leugere tale;		
But ye doo thus, grettere groweth oure bale.”	280	

Ca<sup>m</sup>. *quartum*.Bk. II. Ch. 4.

**T**his lady answerde on-to þis [lord] ageyn: 281  
 “My faderis absens is more grevous to me

- Bl. II. Ch. 4. þan to 3ow alle, þis dar' I sauely seyn).  
 And thow he leuyd, he wer' no mor', parde,  
 But o man—*wyth*-oute men what myght he 285  
 Doo or sey but as o man a-lone?  
 What nedyth 3ow now for to make swech mone 287
- “ffor losse of o man? 3e coude, whyll he was here, 288  
 Defende 3our<sup>s</sup>-self, thow he *wyth* 3ow not 3ede:  
 3our' ennemyes alle 3e put in full grete dwere,  
 þan wer' þei kept full low, in full grete drede.  
 My lord my ffadyr whan dyd he 3ow lede? 292  
 Not many 3erys be-for þat he went hens.  
 As 3e<sup>1</sup> dyd þan, dothe now in hys absence! <sup>1 MS. 3ed</sup> 294
- “3e chose a capteyn þoo, so may 3e now, 295  
 To whom obeyd as in þat iornay  
 Euery lord, loked he neuyr so row,  
 þei durst not onys to hym þan sey nay.  
 Goode serys aH, of pacyens I 3ow pray; 299  
 Why may 3e not do now as 3e dyd þanne?  
 What nedyth 3ow þus to gruch & to banne? 301
- “3e sey it is lost, aH þat was sume-tyme 302  
 Wonne *wyth* swerde. I wote as weell as 3e,  
 þat many a theft & many a gret cryme  
 Was hyd fro hym be craft & sotelte,  
 And sume wer' punychyd—he wold it schuld so be— 306  
 And 3et of<sup>1</sup> þis punchyng oft he knew ryght nowt.  
 May it not now in þe same case be wrowte? <sup>1 MS. of of</sup> 308
- “I vouch-saue, 3e ryd & eke 3e renne 309  
 To seke 3our' enmyes whech do 3ow þis wrong,  
 Distroye her' cuntre, her' howses down 3e brenne,  
 þe traytours eke be þe nek 3e hem hong—  
 What word seyde I euyr, eyther' schort or long, 313  
 Schuld let 3our' corage? I pray 3ow tell me now.  
 Be good to me ryght as I am to 3ow.” 315

- Than to yow alle, this dar I saucly seyn! Bk. II. Ch. 4.
- And thow he leued he were no more, weel kenne ye, Katharine
- But oo man. *wyth*-oute men, what myght he 285 urges that
- Doo or seye, but as oo man allone? her Father
- What nedeth yow now for to make swiche mone 287 was only one
- “ ffor losse of oo man? ye covude, whil he was heere, 288 man.
- Defende *your*-selue, though he *wylh* yow not yode; His people
- Your enmys alle ye putte in ful grete dwere, fought with-
- Thanne were thei kepte ful lowe in ful grete drede. out him,
- My lord my fadir whanne dede he<sup>1</sup> yow leede? <sup>1</sup> overl. 292
- Not many yeres be-fore that he wente hens.
- As ye dede thanne, dooth now in his absens! 294
- “ Ye chose a captayn tho, so may ye doo now, 295 under a
- To whom obeyed as in that iornay chosen Cap-
- Euery lord, looked he neuere soo row, tain,
- Thei durst not oonys to hym panne sey nay.
- Good sirs alle, of pacyens I yow pray, 299
- Whi may 3e not doo now as 3e did panne?
- What nedeth yow thus to grotche and banne? 301
- “ Ye seye it is lost, al that was sumtyme 302
- Wonne with swerd. I wot as weel as ye,
- That many a theft and many a grete cryme
- Was hid fro hym be crafte and sotylte,
- And somme were punyshed—he wolde it shulde so bee— and punisht
- And yet of this punyshyng ofte he knew ryght nought. criminals,
- May it not now in this same wyse be wrought? 308 without him.
- “ I vowche-saf, ye ryde and eke ye renne 309
- To seeke youre enmys whiche doo yow þis wrong,
- Destroy her contres, her houses doo ye brenne,
- The traytours eke be nekke þat ye hem hong.
- What woord seyde I *euere*, eyther short or long, 313 Why cannot
- Shulde lette yowre corage? I pray yow telle me now. they do so
- Beeth good to me, ryght as I am to yow.” 315 now?

- T**han ros a reall, a ryeh lord *per-wyth*-alle, 316  
 þei called hym clarus, prince of capados ;  
 Vp-on hys knees a-noon he gan down) falle,  
 “Madame,” he seyð, “3our’ *conseytes* are full clos ;  
 3our’ name is spronge, 3our’ *cunnyng* & 3our’ los— 320  
 All þeis are know, þei may not now be hyd ;  
 And 3et 3e may neyther’ doo ne byd 322  
  
 “As may a man. 3our’ *fadyr*—godd hafe hys sawle<sup>1</sup>— 323  
 As seyð þis lord, is ded & go vs froo ; <sup>1</sup> orig. sowle  
 What-so-euyr men crye or elles gaule,<sup>2</sup> <sup>2</sup> calle expunged.  
 We are full lykly to falle *in* care & woo.  
 Come now who schall, he is I-pased & goo, 327  
 And 3e be left for to be our’ qween).  
 It lyklyght vs weel þat it schuld so been), 329  
  
 “But 3et þe chaunge is wondyr-full, me think : 330  
 ffor a man, a woman now we haue,  
 And þat a mayde ! it may *in* no wey synk  
 In our’ hertys þat 3e myght vs saue—  
 I schall sey truthe, thow 3e þink I raue. 334  
 3e wyll wepe, & 3e 3our’ fyngyr kytte :  
 Who schuld it þan setyll *in* our’ wytte 336  
  
 “3e myght redresse all þat was now spoke ? 337  
 A kyng is ordeynd ryght to þis entent :  
 To kepe hys castelys, þat þei be not broke,  
 To kepe hys puple, þat it be not schent.  
 Now is þis werk all othyr-wyse I-went ; 341  
 To kepe all þis, a woman is not strong enow,  
 We must enforce us *per*-for to kep 3ow. 343  
  
 “And thow 3e be þe fayest þat beryth lyffe— 344  
 ffor so wene I, & so wene many moo—  
 It wyll be-come 3ow full welle to be a wyffe,  
 Myn owne lady, & 3e wold enclyne *per*-too,  
 To bryng forthe frute, eyther’ on or too— 348

Ca<sup>m</sup>. quintum.

*Bk. II. Ch. 5.*

- T**hanne ros a rial, a ryche lorde eke *wyth*-alle, 316 Clarus,  
 Thei called hym Clarus, prynee of Capados ; Prince of  
 Vp-on his knees a-noon he gan doun falle, Cappadocia,  
 "Madame," he seyde, "*your* conseytes arn ful cloos ;  
 Youre name is spronge, youre connyng and *your* loos— 320  
 Alle these arn knowen), thei may not now be hid ;  
 Yet may ye neyther doo ne bid 322  
 " As may a man). *your* fadir—god haue his saule— 323 tells Katharine  
 As seyð þis lord, he is ded and goon) vs fro ;  
 What-so-euere men) crye or ellys gaule,  
 We arn) ful lykly to falle in care and woo.  
 Come now hoo shal, he is passed and goo, 327  
 And ye be left for to ben) oure queen).  
 It liketh us weel þat it shuld so ben), 329  
 " But yet the change is wundirful, we thenke : 330  
 ffor a man), a woman) now we haue, that she is  
 And þat a mayde ! it may in no weye senke only a  
 In oure hertis þat ye myght vs saue— Maiden,  
 I shal sey yow treuthe, thow ye thenke I raue. 334  
 Ye wil wepe, and ye *your* fynger kytte : and 'll cry  
 how shulde it thanne satel in oure witte 336 if she cuts  
 her finger.  
 " Ye myght redresse al that was now spoke ? 337  
 A kyng is ordeyned ryght to þis entent :  
 To kepe his Castellis, þat þei be not broke,  
 To kepe his puple, that þei be not shent.  
 Now is this werke al other-wyse I-went ; 341  
 To kepe all this, a woman) is not strong I-now,  
 We muste enforce vs therfore to kepe you. 343 She can't  
 guard her  
 people.  
 " And though ye be the fayrest þat bereth lyf— 344  
 ffor soo wene I, and soo wene many moo—  
 It wil be-come yow ful weel to be a wyf,  
 Myn) owen) lady, and ye wolde encluye þer-too,  
 To brynge forth frute eyther oon) or too— 348 Moreover,  
 they want  
 her to have  
 Children :  
 II 2

<u>Bk. II. Ch. 5.</u>	It schuld plese vs thow þat 3e had twelue !	
	It schuld plese 3our modyr & eke 3our <sup>s</sup> -selue.	350
	“ All 3our <sup>r</sup> rychesse, what schall it vs a-vayle	351
	hyd <i>in</i> 3our <sup>r</sup> cophyr & kept now þus clos ?	
	3e may <sup>1</sup> <i>per-wyth</i> make plate & mayle.	<sup>1</sup> r. myght
	I dar <sup>r</sup> well sey, þe lond of capadoos,	
	If 3e had on whech <sup>r</sup> myght ber <sup>r</sup> up 3our <sup>r</sup> loos,	355
	Wold pay a rauunson <sup>d</sup> <i>wyth</i> full good entent,	
	So þat 3e wold on-to þis þing consent.	357
	“ And thow 3e be þe wysest of þis worlde,	358
	3et haue 3e not o þink <sup>1</sup> þat 3e waunte—	<sup>1</sup> r. þing
	Ther <sup>r</sup> -of 3our <sup>r</sup> -self wyll ber <sup>r</sup> me recorde :	
	Natur <sup>r</sup> can not ne wyll not, parde, plante	
	Myght & strength <i>in</i> women, for þei it waunt ;	362
	In stede of strength, of natur <sup>r</sup> þei hafe beute.	
	Thow 3e be fayr <sup>r</sup> & wyse, 3et want 3e	364
	“ Bodyly strength wer- <i>wyth</i> 3e schuld oppresse	365
	Thoo wykkyd dedys whech <sup>r</sup> reygne now ful ryue ;	
	<i>Wyth</i> deth & vengeaunce schuld 3e þoo so <sup>1</sup> dresse,	<sup>1</sup> overl.
	Wer <sup>r</sup> it <i>in</i> man, <i>in</i> mayden or [in] wyffe.	
	I tell 3ow sekyr, þis is a kyngys lyffe ;	369
	he may not hafe hys worchepe all <i>wyth</i> ese,	
	Sume of hys puple oft he must dysplese.	371
	“ Theyse þingis fall not, vs pinkyth, to 3our <sup>r</sup> persone.	372
	Wherfor <sup>r</sup> we wyll, & 3e consent <i>per</i> -too,	
	Ordeyn a meen <sup>d</sup> : 3e schall not lyue a-lone,	
	Spowseles I mene, as 3e 3et euyr hafe doo.	
	þis is our <sup>r</sup> erand, my tale is fully doo.	376
	Sped þis mater <sup>r</sup> , hold vs not long suspens !	
	þan is it weele wared, boþe labur <sup>r</sup> & our <sup>r</sup> expans.”	378

Bk. II. Ch. 6.Ca<sup>m</sup>. 6<sup>m</sup>.

“ G Ramercy, syr,” to hym þan seyð þe queen<sup>d</sup> ; 379  
 “ Be þe tendyrnesse þat 3e to me haue

It shulde plese vs though þat ye had twelue ! *Bk. II. Ch. 5.*  
 It shulde plese *your moder* and eke *your owne selue.* 350 twelue, if she likes.

“ AH *your rychesse*, what shal it vs avayle, 351

hyd in *your Cofer* and kept now thus clos ?

Ye myght ther-wyth make plate and mayle.

I dar weel seyñ, the lond of Capados,

If ye had oon swiche myght bere vp *your loos*, 355

Wolde paye a raunsonñ with ful good entent,

So þat ye wolde on-to this thyng consent. 357

“ And thow ye be the wysest of this world, 358

Yet haue ye not oon thyng that ye wante—

There-of *your-selue* wil bere me record :

Nature canñ not ne wil not trewely plante

Myght and strengthe in women, for thei it wante ; 362 The<sup>r</sup> Katharine is wise,

In stede of strengthe, of nature þei haue bewte.

Thow ye be fayr and wys, yet wante ye [fol. 26] 364

“ Bodily strengthe wherwyth ye shulde oppresse 365

The wykked dedes whiche regne now ful ryff ;

With deth and vengauce shulde ye tho soo dresse,

Were it in man, [in] mayden or in wyf.

I telle yow sekyr, this is a kynges lyf ; 369 to punish ill deeds with death.

he may not haue his worshyp al with ese,

Some of his puple ofte he muste displese. 371 A King is wanted.

“ These thyng<sup>is</sup> falleth not, vs thenketh, to *your persone*.

Wherfore we wil and consente ther-too,

Orleyne a mene ye shal not leuc allone,

Spousele (!) I mene, as ye zet euere haue doo.

This is oure erande, my tale concludeth soo. 376 Her people desire her marriage.

Spedeth this mater, holdeth vs not longe suspens !

Thanne is it weel wared, bothe labour and expens.” 378

Ca<sup>m</sup>. sextum.

*Bk. II. Ch. 6.*

“ G Romericy, sere,” to hym than seyde the queene, 379  
 “ ffor the tendernesse þat ye to me haue.



- Bl. II. Ch. 6. 3e loue me weell, & þat is now I-sene,  
 3e loue my worchep, my londys wold 3e saue.  
 I thank 3ow, syr; I sey not þat 3e raue, 383  
 But wysely spek aH þat 3e haue told,  
 And for þis talkyng I am to 3ow behold. 385
- “ But euyr me thynkyth, whan I a-vyse me weell : 386  
 If it so streyt wer', as 3e sey, wyth 3ow—  
 Whech dyssese wold lek me neuyr a deell :  
 ffor if it wer' þus as 3e pretendyn now,  
 3e schuld not hafe neyther' feld ne plow 390  
 In no pes, if it wer' all as 3e sey.  
 þerfor me thynkyth 3e walk no trew wey. 392
- “ And as for conquest, seres, car' 3e ryght nowte ! 393  
 3our' lordchepys frely wune wer' to 3our handys  
 Or 3e coude goo & or þat 3e wer' wrowte ;  
 3e fawte neuyr 3et for toumes ne for no landys.  
 Wher' ar 3our prisoneres whech 3e led in bandys ? 397  
 þer was no wer' syth þat I was bore,  
 But on our' borderes, & 3e car' not þer-fore— 399
- “ ffor we fynde þe sowdyoures þat be ther' 400  
 3e pay ryght not, ne nowte I coueyte 3e doo.  
 Pluk vp 3our' hertes, & be no-þing in fere !  
 Arne 3ow not, but if we send 3ow too ;  
 3e dwelle in pees, & so do many moo. 404  
 Pleyñ 3ow nowte on-tyll 3e fynd greuaunce !  
 3e sey al-so þat I wold falle in traūns 406
- “ If domys wer' kepte euene as þei schuld be, 407  
 And peynes 3oue to hem þat schuld be ded ;  
 I am a woman, þerfor' it semyth not me  
 Ouyr swech bochery for to hold my hed,  
 Myn hert wold drupe heuy as any led 411  
 ffor very pyte—þus 3e gune replye,  
 Ryght for 3e wold I schuld be wedded in hye. 413

Ye loue me well, and that is now I-scene		<i>Bk. II. Ch. 6.</i>
My loue, my londes, my worshyp if ye wolde saue.		Katharine thanks Prince
I thanke yow, sir ; I sey not [þat] ye raue,	383	Clarus of Cappadocia.
But wysely speke al that ye haue toold,		
And for this talkyng I am to yow be-hoold.	385	
“ But euere me thenketh, whan I vise me weel :	386	Katharine says Prince
If it so streyt were, as ye seyn, <i>wyth</i> you—		Clarus has
Whiche disese wolde lyke me neuere a decl.		
ffor if it were thus, as ye pretende now,		
Ye shulde haue neyther feeld ne plow	390	
In no <sup>1</sup> pees, if it were al as ye say.	<sup>1</sup> no expunged	
Therefore me thenketh ye walke no trewe way.	392	exaggerated.
“ And as for conqvest, sercs, care ye ryght nought ;	393	
Your lordshipes freely wonne were to <i>your</i> haudes		
Eer that ye cowde goo, eer thanne ye were wrought ;		
Ye faute neuere zet for townes ne for landes.		
Where arn <i>your</i> presoneris whiche ye leyde in bandes ?	397	
There was no werre syth that I was bore,		No war has come in her life.
But on ovre bordouris, and ye care not þerfore—	399	
“ ffor we fynde the sowdyouris tho been there	400	She pays the Soldiers.
Ye paye ryght nought, ne nought I coveyte þat ye doo.		
Pluk vp <i>your</i> hertis, and be no-tyng in fere !		
Arme yow nought, but if we sende yow too ;		
Ye dwelle in pees, and so doo many moo.	404	Her people live in peace.
Pleyne yow nought vn-til ye fynde grevaunce !		
Ye sey also þat I wolde falle in travnce	406	
“ If domes were kepte euene as they shuld bee,	407	
And peynes youe to hem þat shulde ben deed ;		
I am a woman, therefore it semeth not mee		And as to her not being able to punish ill- doers,
Ouere swiche bocherye for to holde myn heed,		
Myn herte wolde droupe heuy as ony leed	411	
ffor very pyte—thus ye gunne reple,		
Ryght for ye wolde I shulde be wedded in hyc.	413	

- Bk. II. Ch. 6.* “her-to I answer’ as 3e mote nede sey alle : 414  
 A kyng, 3e wote weell, hath so gret power’  
 Ouyr hys puple, þat whom he wyll he schall  
 To mak hem fre or make hem prysoner’ ;  
 he may graunt lyffe to hem þat be *in dwer’* 418  
 And ek *in hope* for to be hang & drawe—  
 þus may he doo, he is a-boue þe lawe. 420
- “Than I my-selue, rather’ þan I schuld swoune, 421  
 Myght graunt hem lyffe, thow þei not worthy wer’ ;  
 þus dyd my fadyr full often *in þis town*—  
 loke wel a-bowte, for sume of hem be her’  
 Whech wer’ þus saued, I *am no-þing in dwer’*, 425  
 I a-lowe 3our’ motyues whan þat þei be owte.  
 I meruayle also þat 3e consydyr nowte 427
- “That for be-cause a kyngys gentyll hert 428  
 hath swech fredam growyng ryght *wyth-Inne*  
 Whan he may not se men blede or smert,  
 þerfor hys deputees, þe mor’ & ek þe mynne, 431  
 Schuld punysch þoo schrewys þat can not cese ne blynne  
 Of her’ euyl dedys—ilk day 3e may þis se ;  
 It nedyth not herfor’ to legge auctorite. 434
- “Swech deputees, ser’, hafe we many & fele 435  
 þat of swech materys nedys most hem melle ;  
 What man þat sle, fyght, robbe or stele,  
 Our’ offyceres full sekyrly schull hem qwelle,  
 Nay not þei, but þe lawe þat is so felle, 439  
 he sleth þis meny—þei ar *in þis cas*  
 Seruuantys to lawe, þe mor’ & ek þe las. 441
- “All her’ power’, 3e wote weell, of us þei haue, 442  
 As þei had euyr *in my fadyres lyffe*.  
 let hem deme, lette hem spyll & saue,  
 þis longyth to hem, I kepe not of þis stryffe ;  
 Be it to man, be it to mayde or wyffe 446  
 þat do a-mys, be hem þei dampned bene :  
 I schall be to iuges boþe kyng & qween.” 448

“her-to I answere as ye mote nedes sey alle :	414	<i>Bk. II. Ch. 6.</i>
A kyng, ye wote weel, hath so grete powere		
Ouere his puple, that whom he wil he shalle		which a King could do,
To make hem free or make hem presonere ;		
he may graunte lyf to hem þat be in dwere	418	
And eke in hope for to be hange and drawe—		
Thus may he doo, he is a-bove the lawe.	420	
“Than I my-self, rathere than I shulde swowne,	421	
Myght graunte hem lyf, though þei not worthi were ;		
Thus dede my fadir ful often in this towne—		
looke weel abowte, for somme of hem ben here		
Whiche were thus saued, I am no-thing in dwere,	425	
I allowe <i>your</i> motyues whan that thei ben ought.		
I merueyle also that ye conceyue nowt	427	
“That for be-cause a kyng’s gentil herte	428	why, his
hath suche fredam growyng ryght w <sup>yth</sup> Inne		
That he myght not see men blede or smerte,		
Therefore his deputes, the more and eke the mynne,		Deputies would do the punishing,
Shulde punyshe the shrewes þat can not cece ne blynne		
Of her euele dedys—ilke day ye may this see ;		
It nedeth not hyrfore to allege auctoryte.	434	
“Swiche deputes, syr, haue we many and feele	435	and so can hers.
That of suche mater’s nedes muste hem melle ;		
What man that slee, fyghte, robbe or steele,		
Oure offycer’s ful sekerly shul hem quelle,		Her Officers
Nay not thei, but the lawe that is soo felle,	439	
he sleth this meny that (!) are in this cas.		
Seruauntes to lawe, the more and eke þe las,	441	
“Al her power, 3e wote weel, of vs thei haue,	442	
As thei had euere in my fader’s lyf.		
lete hem deme, lete hem spylle and saue,		judge, and kill or spare.
This longeth to hem, I kepe not of þis stryf ;		
Be it to men, be it to mayde or wyf	446	
That doo a-mys, be hem þei damned bene :		
I shal ben to iuges bothe kyng and queene.”	448	

- T**he erle of Iaff, was called syr ananye, 449  
 he stode up þan & to þis lady sayde,  
 Azens hyr answer he gan ryght þus repleye :  
 “It is full perlyous,” he seyde, “to be a mayde  
 And eke a qween: ze may be full sone a-frayde 453  
 If any rysyng or ony seisme wer’ sterde.  
 ffor of a kyng men wold be more ferde 455  
 “Than þei of 3ow ar’, it is no dowte. 456  
 þe puple erryth—be-hold ze not who fele  
 Thorow-owte 3our’ londe in euery towne a-bowte  
 Renn as woodemen? ze may it not consele,  
 þei fyght, þei flyght, þei robbe & þei stele. 460  
 All þis aray, me thynkyth, ze sett at nowte,  
 It faryth as ze of all þis þink<sup>1</sup> ne rowte. <sup>1</sup> r. þing 462  
 “Ze sett mor’, be gold þat sytt a-boue, 463  
 Be on old boke, & eke mor’ deynte haue,  
 þan be werr’ or iustys, lust or elles loue.  
 Men sey, þei schall bryng 3ow to 3our graue!  
 What do 3our bokys? parde, þei wyll not saue 467  
 Neyther’ man ne best; þei dull a manny[s] mende,  
 Apeyr’ hys body, hys eyne þei make blynde. 469  
 “he þat taute [yow] fyrst þis scole, I pray 470  
 he mote be hangyd, I trow he is worthy!  
 he hath 3ow browte & put in swech aray  
 þat myrth & ioie ze late hym<sup>1</sup> slyde forby; <sup>1</sup> r. hem 474  
 Euyr at bokes ze sytte, knele & lye. 474  
 Alas, madame, who lese ze 3our’ tyme!  
 I wepe so sor’, I may no lenger’ ryme. 476  
 “ffor goddys lofe, & for 3our’ puples sake, 477  
 Change now 3our’ lyff & let 3our bok be styлле,  
 loke no lenger’ vp-on þoo letteres blake!  
 ffor, be my trowth, stody schall 3ow spylle.  
 Tend on-to myrth, tak a lord 3ow tyлле! 481

Ca<sup>m</sup>. septimum.Bk. II. Ch. 7.

- T**he Erl of Iaf, was called ananye,  
 He stood vp thanne and to this lady sayde,  
 A-yens hir answe're he gan ryght thus repleye :  
 "It is ful perillous," he seyde, "to be a mayde  
 And eke a qveen ; 3e may be ful sone afrayde 453  
 If ony rysynge or ony sisme be sterde.  
 ffor of a kyng men wolde be more a-ferde 455  
 "Than þei of yow are, it is no dowte. 456  
 The puple erreth—be hoold ye not how fele  
 Thurgh-ovte youre lond in euery<sup>1</sup> toun a-bowte 1 MS. eue'y  
 Renne as wode men? ye may it not consele,  
 Thei fyght, þei flyght, thei robbe and þei stele. 460  
 Al this aray, me thenketh, ye sette at nowt,  
 It fareth as ye of al this þing ne rowt. 462  
 "Ye sette more, be god þat sytteth a-boue,  
 Be an olde book, and eke more deyn'te haue,  
 Than be iustes or werre, lust or ellis loue.  
 Men seyn, thei shal brynge you to your graue !  
 What doo your bookys? sekirly thei wil not saue 467  
 Neither man ne beeste ; thei dulle a mannys mende,  
 A-peyre his body, his cyne thei make blynde. 469  
 "he þat taught yow first þis scole, I pray 470  
 he mote be hanged, I trowe he is worthy !  
 he hath you browght and put in suche aray  
 That myrthe and ioie ye late hen slyde forby ;  
 Euere at bookys ye sitte, knele and ly. 474  
 Allas, madame, how lese ye your tyme !  
 I wepe so sore, I may no lengere ryme. 476  
 "ffor goddys loue, and for youre puples sake, 477  
 Change now your lyf and lete youre book be stille,  
 Looke no lengere vp-on tho letterys blake !  
 ffor, be my wytte, stody shal yow spylle.  
 Tende on-to myrthe, take a lord yow till ! 481

Earl Ananias  
of Joppa tells  
Katharinethat her  
peoplefight, rob and  
steal, and she  
disregards it.She cares  
more for an  
old book  
than for war  
or love.She's always  
at her books.

Let 'em be!

Marry, and

Bk. II. Ch. 7. þan schal *your* body be full heyll & qwert,  
And meeñ mor' ese schull 3e haf at hert." 483

Bk. II. Ch. 8.

Cam. 8m.

“**3**E wold allgate þat I schuld wedded be, 484  
Ryght for þis skylle, 3e sey, men drede me nowte ;  
If any seysme wer' reysyd in þis cuntre,  
It wer' not likly be me for to be browt'  
[fol. 25] To ony good end, men sett at me ryth nowt ; 488  
[1st hand] 3e shuld drede mor' a man þan 3e do me.  
And I sey þus : I knowe as wele as 3e, 490  
“ A man a-lone, be he neuer so wyse 491  
Ne eke so strongt, he may no mor', I-wys,  
But euyñ as I may ; hys puple shal be nyse  
And eke eucle tetched ; þe power' is not his  
To amend a-lone aH þat is a-mys : 495  
his lordes must help to his gouernayle,  
And elles his labour' it wil lytyl a-vayle. 497  
“ help 3e on your' syde as I shal on myn ! 498  
loke 3e be trew on-to my crowne & me,  
lete no treson in 3our' hertys lyn :  
Than schal þis lond ful wele demened be.  
O noble god, who grete felicite 502  
Shuld be wyth vs, if' we wer' in þis plyth !  
We myth sey þan, our' leuyngt wer' ful ryght. 504  
“ Wyl 3e<sup>1</sup> now her' who puple may make her' kyngt 505  
To erre sumtyme & sumtyme to do a-mys ? <sup>1 MS. we</sup>  
Ryth be ensaumple shal I proue þis þingt.  
Ther' was a kyngt her'-be-syde, I-wys,  
ffer' in þe est', þat lyued in ioy & blys, 509  
In babilony euene,<sup>1</sup> nabugodonosor he hyth. <sup>1 r. I mene?</sup>  
his puple made hym to do a-gayn þe ryth. 511  
“ ffor he had with hym in maner of' a preest 512  
A ful goode man & of' grete abstinence—  
fful preuy þingis bar' he in his breest,

Thanne shal youre body ben ful heil and qvert, Bk. II. Ch. 7.  
 And moche more ese shul ye haue at hert." 483 be healthy  
and happy!

Cam. octauum.

Bk. II. Ch. 8.

“YE wolde algate þat I shulde wedded be, 484 Katharine  
answers  
the Earl of  
Joppa.  
 Ryght for this skyl, ye sey, men drede me nouglt ;

If ony sisme were reysed in this contre,  
 It were not lykly be me for to be brought  
 To ony good ende, men sette me at ryght nouglt ; 488  
 Ye shulde drede more a man þan ye doo me.  
 And I seye thus : I knowe as weel as yee, 490

“ A man allone, be he neuere so wys <sup>1 as ff. till 493 as I, on</sup> A King alone  
 Ne eke so strong as <sup>1 euer</sup> was ony in world þis, <sup>no more I-wys</sup>  
 What may he doo but as I? hys puple shal be nys

And eke euel tetched ; the power is not his can't mend  
all that's  
amiss.  
 To amende allone al that is a-mys : 495

his lordis muste helpe to his gouernayle,  
 And ellys his labour it wil lytyl avayle. 497

“ helpe ye on youre syde as I shal on myn ! 498

Looke ye be truwe on-to my crowne and me,  
 lete no treson in yowre hertys lyn : If her Lords  
'll be true  
to her,

Than shal this lond ful weel demened be.  
 O noble god, how gret felicyte 502 all will go  
well.

Shuld be wylt vs, if we were in this plyght !  
 We myght sey þanne, oure leuyng were ful ryght. 504

“ Wyl ye now here how puple may make her kyng 505 People often  
make Kings  
err.

To erre somtyme and somtyme to doo a-mys ?  
 Ryght be exaample shal I proue this thyng.

There was a kyng heero-bo-syde, I-wis,  
 ffer in the Est, that leued in ioye and blys, 509

In babylon euene, Nabuchodonosor he hyght.  
 his puple made hym to doo a-geyn the ryght. 511 Nebuchad-  
nezzar

“ ffor he had wyth hym in maner of a preest 512

A ful good man and of grete abstynence,  
 fful prouy thyngis bar he in his breest,



<u>Br. II. Ch. 8.</u>	he coude teH aH of <sup>r</sup> derth & <sup>1</sup> of <sup>r</sup> pestilence.	<sup>1</sup> overlined.
	O þing <sup>r</sup> þer was in which he dede offence :	516
	he worchipped not swech goddes as we doo—	
	Danyel he hyth. but a-mong lyones too	518
	“ Was he putt, ryth for þe puple so wolde ;	519
	The kyng <sup>r</sup> durst not wythstand hem in þat cas,	
	he must do soo, þow he wold or nolde.	
	fiul sor <sup>r</sup> repentaunt aftyr-ward he was :	
[fol. 25, b.]	ffor danyell was saued ryth be goddys grace,	523
[2nd hand]	Whечh god he seruyd—god wold I myght hym know,	
	þat noble godd þat made hys myght so growe	525
	“ In swech lowe puple ! her <sup>r</sup> may 3e see & ken :	526
	ffor puples crying a kyng may ofty <sup>n</sup> erre ;	
	þe woode opynyon <sup>d</sup> of swech fonned men	
	Makyth a lord oft-tyme to do þe wer <sup>r</sup> ,	
	To make hym meuyd, to sett him <sup>1</sup> oute of herr <sup>r</sup> —	530
	ffy on her <sup>r</sup> cry, qwan þei no reson <sup>d</sup> hafe !	<sup>2</sup> MS. hem
	3e sey alsoo, for þat 3e wold me saue,	532
	“ I must leue book, I must leue stody eke.	533
	My bokes, seres, godd help, what grene þei 3ow ?	
	þis werdly gouernaunce wer <sup>r</sup> not worth a leke,	
	Ne wer <sup>r</sup> þeis bokes ; þei ar <sup>r</sup> to mannes prow	
	ffull necessarye, for our <sup>r</sup> myndys ar <sup>r</sup> swech <sup>r</sup> now :	537
	It slydyth forby all þat euer þei know,	
	And be our <sup>r</sup> bokes a-geyn <sup>d</sup> full fast þei grow.	539
	“ Who schuld we wete þat þe fyrst man of aH	540
	had hyght Adam, & eke hys wyff eue,	
	Saue þat in a booke, whечh genesis þei calle,	
	I sey it onys wrete, & red it on a eue ?	
	3et is þat book not of our <sup>r</sup> be-leue	544
	Receyued as 3et—me þinkyth it mut nede,	
	Be-cause he tellyth þe be-gy <sup>n</sup> nyng & þe dede	546
	“ Of our <sup>r</sup> olde ffaderes. who schuld eke know	547
	þe worthy conquestys of elderys þat wer <sup>r</sup> her <sup>r</sup> ,	

he cowde tell al of derthe and of pestilence.		<i>Bk. II. Ch. 8.</i>
Oo ping ther was in wiche he dede offence :	516	
he wurshipped not swiche goddys as we doo—		
Danyel he hight. but a-mong leones too	518	put Daniel among lions because his people wisht it.
“ Was he put, right for the puple soo wolde ;	519	
The kyng durst not withstonde hem in þat cas,		
he muste doo soo whedyr he wolde or nolde.		
fful sore repentaunt afterward <sup>1</sup> he was :	<sup>1</sup> ward overlind.	But he repented afterwards.
ffor Danyel was saued ryght be goddys gras, <sup>2</sup> I m. overl.	523	
Whiche god he serued—god wulde I myght <sup>2</sup> hym knowe,		
That noble god þat maad his myght so growe	525	
“ In swiche lowe puple ! heere may ye see and ken) :		
ffor puples cryengis men may often erre ;	527	
The wood oppynyon) of suche fonned men)		The opinion of silly folk makes lordis go wrong.
Maketh a lord often)tyme to doo the werre,	529	
To make hym to be meved and sette hym) oute of herre—		
ffy on) her cry, whan) thei no reson) haue !		
Ye sey also, for that ye wolde me saue,	532	
“ I muste leue book, I muste leue stody eke.	533	As to leav books and study,
My bookis, seers, god help, what greue þei yow ?		
This wordly gouernauns were not wurth a leke,		
Ne where <sup>1</sup> these bookis ; thei arn) to mannys prow <sup>1</sup> r. were		
fful necessarye, for oure myndes arn) suche now :	537	
It slydeth forby al þat euere thei knowe,		
And be oure bookys a-geyn) ful faste thei growe.	539	why, books renew knowledge.
“ how shul we wete þat þe first man) of alle	540	
had hyght Adam), and eke his wyf Eue,		
Saue in a book, genesis thei calle,		
I seye it oones wretyn), and red it on an Eue ?		
Yet is that book not of oure be-leue	544	
Roceyued as yet—me thenketh it muste node,		
Be-cause he tolleth the be-gynnyng and the dede	546	
“ Of oure olde faderis. hoo shulde eke knowe	547	Books tell us of our Fere-fathers,
The wurthy conquestis of elderes that wer heere,		

- Bk. II. Ch. 8. If bokes told hem not only be rowe?  
 We can for-gete þat we dyd þis 3er!  
 Wherfor' our' bookes tell to vs ful cler' 551  
 Swech-maner' þinges as we had for-3ete.  
 3our' opynyon þer-for', ser', now must 3e lette. 553  
 "ffor goddys lawe ne manyns schuld not le know, 554  
 Ne wer' our' bokes, þis dar' I sauely say;  
 Our' precestes arn fayn) to loke hem be row  
 A-geyn a feest, a-geyn an holyday,  
 Whan þei wyll preche of any swech aray, 558  
 [fol. 26] Eyther' of Iubiter, or neptune, hys brothyr.  
 leue we þan þis mater' & carp of sume othyr! 560  
 "Blame not swech þing þat stant in full grete stede; 561  
 Curse not my mayster', for þan wyll I be wrotli!  
 [5th hand] It semyth 3ou bettir for to bydde 3our' bede  
 Than to sey swech wordes! eke it is ful lothe  
 To me, to sey þus, but only for myn) othe 565  
 Whech þat I made to meynteyn) al-maner þing  
 Whech longe to our goddis and to her offring." 567
- Bk. II. Ch. 9. Ca<sup>m</sup>. 9<sup>m</sup>.
- T**han spake a lord, þei called ser hercules, 568  
 The prince of paphon), of þat gret cuntre—  
 Euery man satt' stille and held his pees  
 To her þe speche, þe tale whech þat he  
 Be-gan to telle; for his auctorite 572  
 Was þoo ful gret, in special for his age.  
 his wordes wer acordyng to his visage. 574  
 Thus he be-gan: "it is bettir, my lady dere, 575  
 In swech a caas, whan it mote nedis be doo,  
 To do it at onys, þan for to lyue in dwere  
 And for to a-byde cythir 3er or too.  
 Take 3e no heed, consyder 3e not þer-too 579  
 Who ouyde seyde & wrote it in his booke:  
 'Whan þing is newe, be war be tyme and looke 581

If bookys tolde hem not oonly be rowe? Bk. II. Ch. 8.  
 We can forgete þat we dede this yere ;  
 Wherefore oure bookys telle to us ful clere 551  
 Swiche-maner þingis as we had for-yeet.  
 Youre oppynyon) therefore, sere, now must ye lect. 553

“ ffor goddis lawe ne mannys shuld not be knowe, 554 of God's law,  
 Ne were oure bookys, this dar I sauely say ; and man's.  
 Oure prestes arn) fayn) to looke hem be rowe  
 A-geyn) a feste, a-geyn) an holy day,  
 Whan) thei wil preche of ony suche aray, 558  
 Eyther of Iupiter, or Neptune, his brother.  
 leue we thanne þis mater and carpe of som) other ! 560

“ Blameth not suche þing þat stant in ful gret stede ; 561 Do not blame  
 Curse not my mayster, for þanne wil I be wroth) ! books.  
 It semeth yow better for to bydde yowre bede  
 Thanne seye swiche wordys !—eke it is ful looth  
 Soo (!) me to sey thus, but oonly for myn) ooth 565  
 Whiche þat I made to maynteyn) aH-manner thyng  
 Whiche longen) to oure goddis and to her offeryng.” 567

Ca<sup>m</sup>. nonum.

Bk. II. Ch. 9.

**T**hanne spak a lord, þei calle sir hercules, 568 Hercules,  
 The prynce of paphon), of þat grete contre— Prince of  
 Euery man sat styлле and helde his pees Paphon,  
 To here the speche, þe tale whyche þat hee  
 Be-gan) to telle ; for his auctoryte 572  
 Was tho ful grete, in specyal for his age.  
 his wordys were a-coordynge to his vysage. 574  
 Thus be-gan) he : “ it is better, my lady dere, 575 tells Katha-  
 In suche a cas, whan) it must nedes be doo, rine she'd  
 To doo it at oones thanne for to leue in dwere better get  
 Or for to abyde ether on yeer or too. married at  
 Take ye non heed, consydere ye not ther-too 579 once.  
 how ouyde seyde and wrote it in his book :  
 ‘ Whan) thyng is newe, be war be tyme and look 581

- Bk. II. Ch. 9. “ffor to amende it; for medecyn comyth ouyr-lathe<sup>1</sup> 582  
 Whañ þat þe man his<sup>2</sup> ded and hens I-goo, <sup>1</sup> r. late <sup>2</sup> r. is  
 And with his frendes born oute at þe gate’?  
 3our’ londes, lady, if 3e take heed þer-too,  
 ly fer a-sunder, for fro þis cuntre, loo, 586  
 Whech we be Inne, rith on-to famagost  
 Is many a myle; who schuld 3e with 3our host 588
- [fol. 26, b.]  
 [1st hand] “Ryde sweche a way? and if þat 3e schuld sayle, 589  
 It wold yow fese þe salt water rowe,  
 3our’ hert wold drede *wyth-outyn* ony fayle—  
 That I sey now, me þinkyth it for your’ prow.  
 The lond of cypre, þat I cam þorow now, 593  
 Is eke ful ferr’. it mute nedes be a man  
 Whech schal wil, & eke þat may & can, 595  
 “Do al þis labour’, both *in* flesh & gost, 596  
 Ryde & seyle, labour’ to se his lande,<sup>1</sup> <sup>1</sup> orig. londe  
 Suintyme her’, suintyme at famagost—  
 þus shal he gouerne þe lond, þe see, þe sand.  
 þan may 3e haue your’ bokes *in* your’ hond 600  
 And stody 3our’ fille, it shal not greue us.  
 Me þinkyth sewyrly þat 3e shul[d] wil þus! 602  
 “3e shul[d] desyr’ to be mor’ at 3our’ ese, 603  
 To weld 3our’ leyser’ as 3e desyr’ to haue;  
 þer is mech þing’ þat doth 3ou of[t]<sup>1</sup> displese, <sup>1</sup> MS. of  
 Whech shuld not þan. þerfor, if’ 3e wil saue  
 Your’ owne astate, & þus no lenger waue 607  
 Both too & fro, doth be our’ counsayle;  
 In tyme comyng’ it may 3ow mech avayle.” 609

- “Grameracy, ser’, of’ your’ goode counsayle!” 610  
 þus seyð þe qween, “if’ 3e be as 3e wer’,  
 3our’ myth & cunzyng’ may vs mech avayle,  
 &, as me þinkith, no man shal vs der’,  
 On paphon or cypre shal þer be no wer’ 614

“ ffor to amende it ; ffor medecyn comyth ouere-late		<i>Bk. II. Ch. 9.</i>
Whan þat the man is deed and hens I-goo	583	
And wyth his freendis boorn oute at þe gate ?		
Youre londes, lady, if ye take heed ther-too,		
lye fer a-sondre, for fro this contre, loo,	586	Her lands lie far asunder.
Whiche we be Inne, ryght on-to famagost		
Is many a myle ; how shuld 3e wyth your oost	588	
“ Ride swiche a weye ? and if ye shuld sayle,	589	How can she ride, and sail, and be every- where ?
It wulde yow fese, that salt water row,		
Your herte wolde drede wyth-outen ony fayle—		
That I seye now, me thenketh it for your prow.		
The lond of Cypre, that I cam thorgh now,	593	
Is eke ful ferre. it muste nedes ben a man		A man is needed
Whiche shal haue wiht, <sup>1</sup> and eke þat may and can <sup>1</sup> overl.	595	
“ Doo al this labour, bothe in flesh and goost,	596	
Ride and sayle, laboure to see his lande,		
Somtyme here, somtyme at famagoost—		
Thus shal he gouerne the lande, the see and þe sande,		to govern,
Thanne may ye haue your bookys in youre hande	600	while she may study her books.
And stodyen yowre fylle, it shal not greuen vs.		
Me thenketh suerly þat ye shulde wiln thus !	602	
“ Ye shulde desyre to be more at youre Eese,	603	
To welde your leysur þat ye desyre to haue ;		
There is moche thyng þat dooth yow ofte displese		
Whiche shulde not panne. therefore, if ye wil saue		The Prince urges Katha- rine to marry.
Youre owne astat, and thus no lengere waue	607	
Bothe too and fro, dooth be oure counsayle ;		
In tyme comynge it may yow moche awayle.”	609	

Ca<sup>m</sup>. decimum.

“ G Romerey, sir, of youre good counsayle !”	610	<i>Bk. II. Ch. 10.</i>
Thus seyde the queen, “ if ye be as ye were,		
Youre myght and cunynge may vs moche awayle		
And, as me thenketh, no man shal vs dere,		
On paphon or Cypre shal there be no werre	614	She praises his rule of Cyprus,

- Bk. II. Ch. 10. Whil þat 3e lyue, her-of I drede ryth nowth. 616  
 Now wold god so, it wer' ful der' I-boute
- “ Vp-on my body, in cas þat it stood soo 617  
 Thorow aH my lond as it in cipe stant!  
 I mith þan stody, þan myth I tend þer-to  
 And al my wil<sup>1</sup> þerof<sup>1</sup> now I want. <sup>1</sup> haue om.?
- 3e shuld plese god, if 3e wold set & plant 621  
 3our' knythly maneres in yong' men þat be her',  
 To lern hem iust; I wolde wele qwite 3our' h<sup>ere</sup>. 623
- [fol. 27] “ Of þat gret godd ek whech̄i gouerneth all batayle, 624  
 2<sup>nd</sup> hand] Mars I mene, whos knyght 3e hafe be founde,  
 3e schall haf worchep, thow 3e hafe non auayle,  
 To tech hem holde þe schaftes þat be rounde.  
 W<sup>yth</sup> 3our' praysyng my tale schuld mor' abunde 628  
 But þat we schuld nocht preyse men in presence.  
 Than in 3our' londe I lak not now þe absence 630
- “ Of my lorde my ffadyr; it is nocht gretly a-spyede 631  
 hys deth w<sup>yth</sup> yow. I sette cas ferthermor'  
 þat if I wer', as 3e wolde, now newe a-lyede,  
 Weddyd I mene, what schuld þan 3our' sore  
 Therby be esed? þat man is not 3et bore, 635  
 Wer' he neuyr so wys, manfull or stronge,  
 Of hert fell, of body broode & longe, 637
- “ That myght at onys be in all þese places 638  
 Whech 3e spak of ryght now in 3our' tale;  
 Thow he had plentifully all þe grete graces  
 Whech̄i kepe a man fro byttyr peynes bale  
 And saue hym harmles, as w<sup>yth</sup>-Inne þe wale 642  
 Of a strong schyppe a man is bor' a-lofte,  
 3et myght he nocht, rode he neuyr so softe, 644
- “ Be in too places at onys. for ryght as a stone, 645  
 Whan he is layd in hys naturall place,  
 May not þat tyme be founde but þer a-lone

- Whil þat ye leuen, her-of I drede ryght nought. Bk. II. Ch. 10.  
 Now wolde god so, it were ful dere I-bought 616
- “Vp on my body, in cas that it stood soo 617  
 Thurgh al my lond as it in Cypre stante!  
 I myght þanne stody, thanne myght I tende ther-too  
 And haue<sup>1</sup> al my wil ther-of now I wante. <sup>1 A. h. on erasure.</sup>  
 Ye shulde plesse god, if ye wolde sette or plante 621 and wishes  
 Youre knyghtly maners in yonge men tho ben her', he'd teach  
 To lerne hem Iusten; I wolde weel quyte your hyre. 623 her young  
 Syrians
- “Of þat grete god eke whiche gourneth al batayH, 624  
 Mars I mene, whos knyght ye haue be founde,  
 Ye shal haue wurship, thow ye haue not avayle,  
 To teche hem hoolde the shaftes tho ben rounde. to handle  
their spears.  
 With youre preysyng my tale shuld more abounde 628  
 But þat we shulde not preyse men in presens.  
 Than in yowre lond I lakke not now the absens 630
- “Of my lord, my fader; it is not gretely aspyede 631  
 his deeth with þow. I set cas ferthermore  
 That if I were, as ye wolde, now newe allyede,  
 Wheddede I meene, what shuld thanne your soore  
 Therby ben esed? þat man is not yeet bore, 635 No one man  
 Were he neuere soo wys, manful or strong,  
 Of herte fel, of body brood and long, 637
- “That myght at oones be in all these places 638  
 Whiche ye spak of ryght now in your tale;  
 Though he hadde plentyuously all þe grete graces  
 Whiche kepe a man from alle þe bitter peynes bale  
 And save hym harmles, as with-inne the wale 642  
 Of a stronge ship a man is bore a-loft,  
 Yet myght he not, rood he neuer so soft, 644
- “Be in to places at oones. for ryght as a ston), 645 can be in two  
 Whan he is leyd in his natural place, places at  
 May not at that tyme be founde but there alon) once,



- Bk. II. Ch. 10. Wher' he was leyd, ryght so in þis cas ;  
 O man may not be in dyerse place, 649  
 And þat at ones, for' be our' phylosophye  
 It is *condempned* as for an heresy. 651
- “ Therfor' ryght *thus* we *conclude* our' clause : 652  
 Euery body hath hys naturall rest,  
 Aftyr hys kende or aftyr hys priuy cause, <sup>1 on the margin.</sup>  
 Whech þat<sup>1</sup> þe goddes ryght euene as hem lest  
 haue *depar*tyde. to opyne *thus* þan holde I best : 656  
 he þat is her', he is her', & noo-wher' ellys—  
 Example lo I mene : who-so-euyr þat dwelles 658
- “ At grete Alysaundryr', he dwelleth not in famagost. 659  
 þan must euery man nedys hym-self remeue  
 And cary hys men thorow-owte all þe coost,  
 Ete at noone, rest [hym]<sup>1</sup> eke at eue <sup>1 om.</sup>  
 her' & þer' as hys iornay wyll preue. 663  
 Ryght so may I, thow I a woman be ;  
 þan in *3our* argument me thynkyth noo difficulte.” 665

Bk. II. Ch. 11.

## Cam. 11m.

- T**he duk of damaske was wroth *wyth* þis answer', 666  
 he stode up tho & þus he gan to sey :  
 “ In my 3ong age ryght *thus* dyd I ler' :  
 þe pupyll must nedys on-to þe kyng obeye,  
 loue hym & drede hym euyr tyll þei deye, 670  
 ffor þei ar' bounde full sor' *thus* to do ;  
 And we wyll euyr hertly bowe þer-too. 672
- “ So is a kyng swor' eke ful depe 673  
 To loue hys pupyll, be þei heye or lowe,  
 Ryght & trowth amonge hem alle to kepe,  
 So þat noo wrong schuld hem ouyr-throwe.  
 þus ar' 3e swor', madame ; 3e it know, 677  
 Bettyr þan I, qwat is to breke an othe—  
 Reson may not ne schall not make 3ow wroth. 679

- Where he was leyd, ryght soo in this cace ;  
 Oo man may not be in dyuers place, 649  
 And that at oones, for be oure philosophic  
 It is condemned as for an heresy. 651
- Bk. II. Ch. 10.*  
 as natural  
 philosophy  
 teaches;
- “ Therefore ryght thus we conclude oure clause : 652  
 Euery body hath his natural reste,  
 After his kynde or after his preuy cause,  
 Whiche that þe goddys ryght as hem leste  
 haue departed. to opyne thus than holde I beste : 656  
 he þat is here, he is here, and noo-where ellys—  
 Exaunple loo I mene : hoo-so-euere þat dwellys 658
- “ At grete Alysandre, he dwelleth not in famagost. 659  
 Than muste euery man nedes hym-self remeue  
 And carye his men thurgh-oute al the oost,  
 Ete at noon, eke reste hym at eue  
 heere and there as his Iorney wil preue. 663  
 Right soo may I, thow I a woman be ;  
 Thanne in youre argument me thenketh noon difficulte.”
- man must  
 move him-  
 self when he  
 wants to get  
 to another  
 place ;  
 so she, Ka-  
 tharine, can  
 do the same.

**Ca<sup>m</sup>. vndecimum.***Bk. II. Ch. 11.*

- T**he duke of Damask was wroth *wyth* þis answer, 666  
 he stood vp tho and thus gan he to seye :
- “ In my yonge age ryght thus dede I lere :  
 The puple must nedes on-to the kyng obeye,  
 Loue hym and drede hym euere tyl thei deye, 670  
 ffor thei arn bounde ful sore thus for to doo ;  
 And we wyl euere hertely bowe ther-too. 672
- “ Soo is a kyng sworn eke ful depe 673  
 To loue his puple, be thei heygh or lowe,  
 Right and treuthe a-mongis hem alle to kepe,  
 Soo that no wrong shulde hem ouere-throwe.  
 Thus arn ye sworn, madame, ye it knowe ; 677  
 Better þan I 3e <sup>1</sup>wot what<sup>1</sup> it is to breke an ooth— <sup>1</sup>overl.  
 Reson may not ne shal not make yow wrooth. 679
- The Duke of  
 Damascus  
 reminds  
 Katharine  
 that she  
 swore

<u>Bk. II. Ch. 11.</u>	“3owr’ othe was þis, if 3e rememyr’ 3ow welle :	680
	To ordeyn so for londe, for man & town),	
	þat alle þese þingys at euery tyme & secle	
	Schuld be redressed, be it vp or down),	
	ffor þat þei longe alle on-to 3our’ crown).	684
	þis othe may 3e not’ saue non other’ wey	
	But if 3e wyll on-to our’ wyll obeye,	686
	“ffor to be weddyd on-to sume worthy man.	687
	Wher’ is no lorde, þer is no lawe, men say.	
	Now, be my trowth, in no wey þink I can	
	þat ony woman, if þer come a fray,	
	Schuld sese vs sone, & specyaly a may.	691
	3e ber’ vs downn) wyth 3our’ philosophye ;	
	But at þe last 3e must bowe, hardlye.”	693

Bk. II. Ch. 12.Cam. 12<sup>m</sup>.

“Ser’,” seyð þe qwen, “3e make now swech a skyl 694	
Ryght in 3our tale whech 3e enforsed now,	
þat I wold thus, & þat it wer’ my wyll,	
þat 3e no gouernauns had. & I sewyr’ 3owe,	
I thowte it neuyr’ ; it wer’ not to my prow.	698
ffor thowe it <sup>1</sup> schuld noye alle our’ oost,	<sup>1</sup> MS. I
Thys wote I well, it schuld towch me moste.	700
“I kepe, & schall, myn othe whech I made,	701
Tyll þat I deye I schall it neuyr breke.	
3e may wel carpe & in 3our langage wade,	
New wordes reherse & new resonos speke,	
Whech wer’ reheryd & haue her’ answers cke ;	705
Me lyst not for to remembre swech thynk <sup>1</sup> a-geyn). <sup>1</sup> r. thynk	
But thus mech, ser’, to 3ow dar’ I seyn) :	707
“As for my ffadyr’, he left 3ow in rest & pes,	708
And in noo debate, ne lykely for to be ;	
If þer ryse ony, 3e may 3our-self it ses,	
And but 3e do, 3e be on-trewe to me,	
Not to me oonly, but to þe mageste	712

- “ Youre ooth was þis, if ye remembre yow weel : 680 *Bk. II. Ch. 11.*  
 To ordeyne soo for the lond, for man and town, an oath to  
 That alle þese þingis at euery tyme and seel redress all  
 Shulde be redressed, be it vp or down, her folk’s  
 ffor that thei longen alle to your crown. 684 wrongs ;  
 This oth may ye not saue non other weye and this she  
 But if ye wil on-to oure wil obeye, 686 cannot do  
 “ ffor to be wedded on-to som wurthy man. 687 unless she  
 Where is no lord, there is no lawe, men say. wedd some  
 Now, be my sothe, in no weye thenke I can worthy man.  
 That ony woman, if there come a fray,  
 Shulde cece vs soone, and speccally a may. 691  
 Ye bere vs down with youre phylosophie ;  
 But at þe last ye muste bowe, hardylyc.” 693
- “ **S**Ere,” seyde the queen, “ ye make now suche a skyl Katharine  
 Ryght in your tale whiche ye enforced now, 695 answers  
 That I wolde thus, and also<sup>1</sup> it were my wyl, <sup>1</sup> on erasure.  
 That ye no gouernance had. I sewer you,  
 I thoughte it neuere ; it were not to my prow. 698  
 ffor thow it shuld<sup>d</sup> noyen al oure oost,  
 This wote I weel, it shuld<sup>d</sup> touche me moost. 700  
 “ I kepe, and shal, myn ooth whiche I made, 701 that she will  
 Til þat I deye I shal it neuere breke. keep her oath.  
 Ye may weel carpe and in yowre langage wade,  
 Newe woordys reherse and newe resouns speke  
 Whiche where rehersed and haue her answeere eke ; 705  
 Me leste not for to remembre swiche þing ageyn.  
 But thus moche, sir, to yow dar I seyn : 707  
 “ That, for my fader lefte yow in reste and in pces 708  
 And in no debate, ne lykly for to bee,  
 If there ryse ony, ye may youre-seelf it cces ;  
 And but ye doo, ye ben on-trewe to me,  
 Not to me oonly, but to the maieste 712  
 If any quar-  
 rels rise,  
 it is the  
 Duke’s duty  
 to stop them.

Bk. II. Ch. 12. Of my crown, & gylty for to deye.  
A-vyse 3ow bettyr whan þat 3e lyst to seye!" 714

Bk. II. Ch. 13.

Ca<sup>m</sup>. 13<sup>m</sup>.

**A** Gret clerk þoo stod up be hym-selue, 715  
þat was fful scharp in wytte, as I wene;  
In þis mater' he thowte þoo for to delue  
A lytyll depper', þer-for vn-to þe qwene  
Thus he spake: " þese lordes all-be-dene 719  
þei can not, lady, a-spye as 3et 3our' art,  
Who pregnantly 3e can kepe 3our' part. 721  
" 3e ann lerned, & so be þei nowte; 722  
It is less wondyr' thow þei concluded be.  
But euyr wondyr I gretly in my thowte,  
3e sett no mor' be þat hye degre,  
Grettest of all, I mene þe regalte. 726  
Who schuld preys it but 3e? I supposyd,  
Afty'r þe name *wyth* wech 3e ar' losed, 728  
" That 3e wold enhaunse þis ilk degre 729  
Most of all wommen. what evelyth now 3our wytte?  
I am in poynt to leue it is noght 3e.  
þis mater', lady, on-to myn hert it sytte  
So sor', I-wys, me thynkyth it wyll it kytte. 733  
3e drynk so sor', I trowe, of poetrye,  
And most in specyale of hym, valerye, 735  
" Whech wold, it semyth, þat no man wedded schulde be,  
he counseled so to on ruffyn, 3e know it welle, 737  
3a ouyrwelle—what nede is for me  
ffor to reherce þe sorow, þe langwor' euerydelle  
Whech þat longyth vn-to þat fykell whelle 740  
Of spousalye, as wrytyth þis hold clerke,  
Valerye, þe moost in þis forsayd werke. 742  
" But thow in þe por' be often swech myschauns, 743  
It is not þus in swech grete mageste  
*Wyth* wech we wolde 3ow, lady, now avauns.

Of my crowne, and gylty for to deye. Bk. II. Ch. 11.  
 A-vyse yow better whan ye leste to seye!" 714

Ca<sup>m</sup>. duodecim<sup>um</sup>.

Bk. II. Ch. 12.

A grete clerk tho stood vp be hym-self, 715 A great Clerk  
 That was ful sharp in witte, as I wene;

In [t]his mater tho he thought for to delf  
 A lytil deppere, therfore on-to the queene  
 Thus he spak: "these lordes alle be-dene 719 admits that  
 Katharine

Thei can not, lady, a-spye as yet your art,  
 how pregrauntly ye kan kepe youre part. 721

"Ye arn lerned, and so be thei nought;  
 It is lesse wondir thow thei concluded bee.  
 But euer wonder I gretly in my thought,  
 Ye sette no more be that heye degre, 722  
 Grettest of alle, I meene the regalte. has shut-up  
 her objectors.

hoo schulde preyse it but ye? I supposed,  
 After the name with whyche ye arn losed, 726

"That ye wolde enhaunce this ilke degre 729 The great  
 Clerk  
 Moost of alle women. what eyleth now your wyt?  
 I am in poynt to leue it is not yee.

This mater, lady, on-to myn hert it syt  
 Soo sore, I-wys, me thenketh it wil it kyt. 733 reproaches  
 Katharine  
 for reading  
 Valerius,  
 Ye drynke so soore, I trowe, of poetrye,

And most enspECIAL of hym, Valerye, 735

"Whiche wolde, it semyth, þat no man wedded shuld be,  
 he counseiled soo to on ruffyn, ye knowe it weel, 737 who writes  
 against  
 marriage.

Ya ouerewel—what nedeth it for me  
 ffor to reherce the scorwe, the langour euery deel  
 Whiche þat longeth on-to þat fekel wheel 740

Of spousayle, as wryteth þis olde clerk,  
 Valery, the moste in this forseyd werk. 742

"But thow in the pore be often suche myschaunce, 743  
 It is not thus in swiche maieste  
 Wyth whyche we wolde you, lady, avaanee.

<u>Bk. II. Ch. 13.</u>	And eyr contrarye on-to our' wyll are 3e.	
	Thynk 3e not what 3e seyð wole late, parde?	747
	3e spake not long sythe & seyð ryght euen þus :	
	3e wold, 3e seyð, haue on to gouern) vs.	749
	“ What schuld he be but he wer' a kyng?	750
	þer may no man gouern) þis grete reem	
	But swyeli a man þat is able in all þing	
	To wedd 3ow ;—& for my lord 3our Em	
	May not wed 3ow neyther' in wecch ne drem,	754
	Therfor' he may not her' as in þis place	
	Ber' noo crown), for it stant in 3our grace	756
	“ Who schall it ber', it longeth on-to 3our ryght.	757
	Syth 3e haue graunted þan þat we schall haue	
	A gouernour' to sett vs in good plyth,	
	þan haue 3e graunted all þat eyr we craue ;	
	And fro þis purpos efte 3e turn) & waue,	761
	And sey 3e wyll no husbonde haue as 3itte!	
	Be-holdeth now wysely if so be þat 3our wytte	763
	“ Be stedefastly I-sett eyr vp-on o poynt?	764
	Me thynkyth nay, 3e changen) too & froo,	
	Now wyll 3e, now ar' 3e in an other' ioynite	
	And þan wyll 3e not. who schuld we come þer-too	
	To know your' purpos, whan 3e vary soo?	768
	lat vs know pleynly, lady, what 3e mene ;	
	We be 3our' men, þinkyth 3e be our' qwene.”	770

Bk. II. Ch. 14.**Ca<sup>m</sup>. 14<sup>m</sup>.**

“ S <sup>E</sup> Er,” seyð þe qwene, “ 3e be lordes fele,	771
And wyse also : what nedyth 3ow þus to care,	
Whan 3e be 3ung, lusty, & in good hele ;	
Eke 3our countres beth as now not bare	
Neyther of corn, of men, ne of welfar'?	775
But to 3ow, syr, I woundre mych mor' than 3e—	
ffor 3e sey in þis mater' 3e hafe meruayle of me ;	777

- And euere contrarye on-to oure wil arn) ye. *Bk. II. Ch. 12.*
- Thenke ye not what ye seyde wol late newele? 747 She has  
promist her  
folk some one  
to govern  
them.
- Ye spak not longe syth and seyde ryght thus :
- Ye wulde, ye seyde, haue oon) to gouerne vs. 749
- “What shulde he be but he were a kyng? 750
- There may no man) gouerne this grete reem
- But swliche a man that is able in al þing
- To wedde yow ;—and for my lord youre ceem)<sup>1</sup> <sup>1 orig. heem</sup> This must be  
her husband.
- May not wedde yow neyther in wetche ne in dreem, 754
- Therefore he may not here in þis plas
- bere no crowne, for it stant in youre gras 756
- “ho shal it bere, it longeth on-to your ryght. 757
- Syth that ye haue graunted thanne that we shal haue
- A gouernour to sette vs in good plyght,
- Thanne haue ye graunted al þat euere we craue ;
- And fro this purpos efte ye turne and waue, 761 But she says  
she won't  
have a hus-  
band.
- And seye ye wil non) housbond haue as yit.
- Be-holdeth now wysly if soo be þat youre wyt 763
- “Be stedfastly set euere vp-on) oo poynt? 764
- Me thenketh nay, ye chaungen too and fro,
- Now wil ye, now arn ye in a-nother ioynt
- And thanne wil ye nought. how shuld we come þer-too
- To knowe youre purpos, whanne ye varye soo? 768 Why does she  
vary so?
- Lete vs knowe pleyntly, lady, what ye meene ;
- We ben) youre men, thenketh ye ben) oure queene.” 770

Ca<sup>m</sup>. 13<sup>m</sup>.

*Bk. II. Ch. 13.*

- “**S**Ere,” seyde the queen), “ye be lordes fele, 771 Katharine
- And wyse also : what nedeth yow thus to care,
- Whan) ye be yonge, lusty, and in good hele ;
- Eke youre contrees beth as now not bare
- Neyther of corn, of men, ne of weelfare? 775
- But to you, sir, I wonder moche more than) ye—
- ffor ye sey) in this mater ye haue merueyle of me ; 777



- Bv. II. Ch. 14. “ And wher’ 3e sey þat I wold now disseyue 778  
 Wyth my termes my lordes whech I loue,  
 I pray 3ow hertly þat 3e wyll nocht conceyue  
 Of me swech þing. for truly, it wold not proue ;  
 Swech iapes to make wer’ not to be-houe, 782  
 Neythyr to me ne to non other’ wyght ;  
 To be a dysseyuour’ it is a grett dispyte. 784
- “ 3e sayd eft-sonc þat I dyspyse a kyng, 785  
 Eke þat astate I trede all vndyr fote.  
 Thow I be not enclyned to 3our askyng,  
 As for to be weddyd whan I schall, godd wote,  
 3et am I come bothe of þat stok & rote— 789  
 I may not hyde it, for it is know so wyde—  
 Bothe on my faderes & on my moder’s syde. 791
- “ Schuld I þan dyspyse þat hye degre, 792  
 Whech þat is ordeynd be goddys prouidens,  
 Whech is eke come be descense to me ?  
 Godd forbede in me þat gret offens,  
 Or þat I wer’ founde in swech neclygens ! 796  
 I wote full weele, a kyng is all a-boue  
 Ouyr hys legys, both in fer’ & loue ; 798
- “ And þei be to hym as it wer’ botraces, 799  
 To schoue & holde fast & stedefastly,  
 To mey[n]ten ryght a-geyn all wrong traces ;  
 A kyng’s myght full small is hardyly  
 Wyth-oute swech help, 3e wote as weel as I. 803  
 But þat 3e lyst to seye as for 3our’ part.  
 þan semeth it, ser’, þat I vse treuly myn art, 805
- “ And not pretende in no-maner’ terme 806  
 Non othyr sentens þan þe terme schuld haue,  
 But vse my langage stabyly & ferme ;—  
 Myn entent is swech, so godd me saue,  
 And cuyr schall be, I trow neuyr to waue 810  
 ffro þat purpos whylys þat I am her’—  
 þis is my mynde, if 3e wyll it her’. 812

- “ And where ye sey þat I wolde now disceyue 778 *Br. II. Ch. 13.*  
 With my termes my lordes whiche I loue,  
 I pray you hertily þat ye wil not conceyue  
 Of me swiche þing. for treuly, it wil not proue ;  
 Swiche iapes to make where not to be-houe, 782  
 Neyther to me ne to noon other whygt<sup>1</sup> ; <sup>1</sup> corrected.  
 To be a disceyuour<sup>2</sup> it is a gret disspyght. <sup>2</sup> orig. diss 784
- “ Ye seyde eftson e þat I despise a kyng, 785 or despise a King.  
 Eke þat astate I trede al vnder fote.  
 Thou I be not enclyned to *your* askyng  
 As for to be wedded whanne I shal, god wote,  
 Yet am I come bothe of þat stok & rote— <sup>1</sup> Ms. a 789  
 I may not hyde it, for it is knowe soo wyde—  
 bothe on my *faderis* and on my *moderis* syde. 791
- “ Shulde I thanne despyse that heigh degree, 792 *She reverences Royalty.*  
 Whiche þat is ordeyned be goddys prouydens,  
 Whiche is eke come be discens on-to me ?  
 God forbode in me þat grete offens,  
 Or that I were founde in suche neglygens ! 796  
 I wot ful weel, a kyng is al a-boue  
 Ouere his lyges, bothe in fere and in loue ; 798 *A King is over his lieges*
- “ And thei *ben*<sup>1</sup> to hym as it were boteras, <sup>1</sup> orig. be 799 *and they are a buttress to him to maintain Right.*  
 To shoue and holde faste and stedfastly,  
 To mey[n]teyn ryght a-geyn alle wrong tras ;  
 A kyngys myght ful smal is ha[r]dlyly  
 With-outen swiche helpe, ye wote as weel as I. 803  
 But that ye list to seye as for *your* part. <sup>1</sup> corr. to sir  
 Thanne semeth it, ser,<sup>1</sup> þat I vse treuly myn art, 805
- “ And not pretende in no-maner terme 806  
 Non other sentens thanne the terme shuld haue,  
 but vse my langage stabely and ferme ;—  
 Myn entent is suche, soo god me saue,  
 And euer shal bee, I trowe neuer to waue 810  
 ffro þat purpos wils that I am heere—  
 This is myn mende wyth-oute ony feere. 812

- Bk. II. Ch. 14. “**3e** list also me efte to repreue : 813  
 ffor I graunted **3ow** to haue a gouernour’,  
 Therfor’ **3e** sey, ffully I **3aue** **3ow** leue  
 To haue a kyng, lord of town & toure.  
 lett be **3our’** sophym ! **3our** termes ar’ but sour’ ! 817  
 ffor thow **3e** bryng forth alle **3our** hool bunch,  
**3e** schall not mak an elne of a vncli. 819  
 “ I sett cas a man hath **3oue** to **3ow** a best, 820  
 It folowyth not *per-of* *pat* he **3aue** **3ow** an ox ;  
 he may as weell paye *pe* mor’ as *pe* lest,  
 he may chese to **3eue** **3ow** a hors or a fox.  
**3our** termes come owte of *pat* sotyll box 824  
 Of Aristoteles clenkes, made *in* swych wyse  
 Who so *pat* lerneth hem, he schall seme wyse. 826  
 “ So graunted I to **3ow** to haue **3our’** choys fro 827  
 To chese a duke wheeli *pat* schuld lede **3ow**,  
 Not for to haue no (!) gouernauns vp-on me,  
 But to my byddyng he must lowte & bowe.  
 All *his* entent **3et** eft I new alowe, 831  
 Thus schull **3e** haue **3our** wyll, & I schall haue myne ;  
 ffor of myn answer’, ser’, her’ is *pe* fyne.” 833

Bk. II. Ch. 15.

## Cam. 15m.

- “ **M**Adame,” quod *pe* erle þoo of lymasones, 834  
 “ Alle these lordes *pat* now her’ sitte  
 Wondyr’ full sor’ of **3our** grete resonos,  
 þei wayle eke *pat* **3e** haue swech a wytte ;  
**3our’** wordes ar’ scharpe, þei can bynde & kytte. 838  
 But had **3e** ben as other’ wommen ar’,  
 þan schuld **3e** a ferde as other’ wommen far’. 840  
 “ **3our’** scole wyll schath vs, I-wys, we skape it nowte. 841  
 We hoped of **3ow** to haue had sume grete empyr-e,  
 But all is turned no-þing as we thowte.  
 In many materes men may be ouyr’-wyse !  
**3our’** conceytes, madame, set hem *in* sume syse ; 845

- Ye liste also me eft to repreue, 813 *Bk. II. Ch. 13.*  
 ffor I graunted yow to haue a gouernour,  
 Therefore ye sey, fully I yaue you loue  
 To haue a kyng, lord of toun and tour.  
 late be youre sophym! *your* termes arn but sour! 817  
 ffor thow ye brynke foorth al *your* hool bunch,  
 3e shal not make an elne of an vnch. 819
- “ I sette cas a man hath youe to you a beeste, 820  
 It folweth not therof þat he yaaf yow an<sup>1</sup> oxe; <sup>1</sup> MS. and  
 he may as wecl paye the more as the leeste,  
 he may chese to yeue yow an hors or a foxe.  
 Youre termes come oute of þat sotil boxe 824  
 Of aristoteles elenkes, made in suche gyse  
 ho-so þat lerneth hem, he shal some wise. 826
- “ Soo graunted I yow to haue *your* choys free 827  
 To chese a duke whiche þat shulde leede yow,  
 Not for to haue gouernauns vp-on mee,  
 But to myn biddyng he muste lowte and bowe.  
 Al this entent yet eft I newe allowe, 831  
 Thus shul ye haue *your* wil, and I shal haue myn;  
 ffor of myn answere, sir, this is the fyn.” 833

Ca<sup>m</sup>. 14<sup>m</sup>.*Bk. II. Ch. 14.*

- “ **M** Adame,” quod the Erl tho of lymasones, 834  
 “ Alle these lordes that now here sitte  
 Wondyr ful soore of youre grete resonos,  
 Thei wayle eke þat ye haue swiche a wytte; 837  
 Youre wordes arn sharpe, thei can bynde and knytte (!).  
 But had ye ben as other women are,  
 Thanne shulde ye a ferde as other women fare. 840
- “ Youre scoole wil scathe vs, I-whis, we scape it nowht. 841  
 We hopyd of yow haue had som grete empyse,  
 But al this turned no-thing as we thought.  
 In many maters men may ben ouere-wyse! 844  
 Your conseytes, madame, sette hem in som syse,<sup>1</sup> <sup>1</sup> MS. fyse

begs Katharine not to be otherwise,

- Bk. II. Ch. 15. ffor loue of godd, which is our' governour',  
 Accepte our' wyttes & leue sume-what of 3our' ! 847
- “ We may weel doo ryght as 3e sayn), 848  
 Chese vs now a leder', if þat we lyst,  
 [fol. 30] Whesch shall be to vs in maner' of a cheuctayn).  
 But in þis lond it was 3et neuyr wyst ; 851  
 he myght be swech parauentur' þat he schuld fro 3our' fyst  
 Drawe mech of 3our' lande eyn vn-to hym--  
 A-vyse 3ow ryght weele, þis mater' is full dym ! 854
- “ Eke, thow we peyned vs alle hym to plesse, 855  
 he schuld nocht lyke vs, certeyn, lyuyng 3ow ;  
 Our' hertes schuld not haue no rest ne no ese,  
 But he wer' lorde ryght as 3e be, lady, now.  
 It is full harde a-geyn wylle to bowe. 859  
 he cowde not be chose eke a-mong ony of vs ;  
 And hard it is to leue in langour' thus.” 861

Bk. II. Ch. 16.Ca<sup>m</sup>. 16<sup>m</sup>.

- [6th hand] **T**han) answeyrd schortely þat fayre swete may : 862  
 “ Sere erl,” sche sayde, “ 3e may full wele tryst,  
 þere is but o poynt to qwech I sey nay ;  
 And my cawse is þis : I haue 3it no list  
 þat ony man my maydynhod schuld twyst, 866  
 But if I knew better what þat he were.  
 Thus say I now, & þus sayde I ere : 868
- “ I wyH abyde tyH better tyme may come, 869  
 A 3ere or two, tyH þat I elder be ;  
 ffor to wedde 3it me thynk' it full sone ;  
 And to 3our' gouernawns þus I demene me.  
 If 3e lyst not to haue on, I graunt 3ow two or thre, 873  
 Whych men may gouerne wyth-owtyn enuye.  
 I profyr 3ow reson), what-so-euer 3e crye.” 875

ffor loue of god, whiche is oure gouernoure,  
 Accepte oure wittes and leue som) of your' ! 847

*Bk. II. Ch. 14.*

“ We may weel doo ryght as ye seyn), 848  
 Chese vs now a leedere, if that we lyst, but to adopt  
her people's  
views.  
 Whiche shuld be to vs in maner of a cheuentayn).

But in this lond it was neuer yet wist ; 851

he myght be swiche *paraventure* þat he shuld fro your fyst

Drawe meche of your lond euene on-to hym)—

Avyse yow ryght weel, this mater is ful dym) ! 854

“ Eke, thow we peyned vs alle hym) to plese, 855  
 he shuld not lyken) vs, certeyn), lyuyng yow ; No Governor  
under her  
'nd please  
her folk :

Owre hertes shulde haue non) reste ne non) ese,

But he were lord ryght as ye be, lady, now.

It is ful hard a-geyn) the wil to bow. 859 her Husband  
would.

he cowde not be chose eke a-mongis ouy of vs ;

And hard it is to lyue in langour thus.” 861

Ca<sup>m</sup>. 15<sup>m</sup>.*Bk. II. Ch. 15.*

**T**hanne answerde shortly þat fayr swete may : 862 Katharine  
declares she'll

“ Sir Erl,” she seyde, “ 3e may ful weel tryst,

There is but oo poynt to whiche I sey nay ;

And my cause is thys : I haue no lyst

That ony man) my maydenhod shuld twyst, 866 not marry  
any man till  
she knows  
what he is.

But if I knowe beter what þat he were.

Thus sey I now, and thus seyde I heere :<sup>1</sup> 1 = ere 868

“ I wyl a-byde til beter tyme may come, 869 She'll wait a  
year or two.

A yeer or too, til that I ooldere bee ;

ffor to wedle yet me thenketh it ful sone ;

And to yowre gouernauns thus I demene me.

If yee lyst not to haue oon), I graunte you too or thre, 873

Whiche men) may gouerned) withouten) enuye.

I profere yow reson), what-so-euere ye crye.” 875

- T**han spak þe amiraH of gret Alisawndre, 876  
 Thus he gan sey ryght in þis manere :  
 “ 3oure wordis to 3our wysdom) are but slaun)dre,  
 Thus thynk' 3our frendis aH þat sytte here.  
 Loke þat 3e þrow not now aH in þe mere ! 880  
 Loke þat 3e lese not now 3our gret namyd lose,  
 Whan þat 3e may so heyly it endoos ! 882  
 “ Who honoure 3e 3our' owne grete astate ! 883  
 Why hate 3e now þat ilk lady must haue ?  
 Wherefore haue 3e swech þing in hate  
 That may 3oure londes & eke 3our-self saue ?  
 Yf 3e wer' not my lady, I wold wene 3e raue ; 887  
 ffor yf aH þeis conseytes had come of' wyt,  
 Mo folk þan 3e wold haue usyd it. 889  
 “ Men seyn, madame, þat he maddyth mor'  
 þat doth lich no man, & is mor' out' of' herr',  
 þan is a foole þat can not se be-for'  
 Ne can not knowe þe best fro þe werr'.  
 Be ye<sup>1</sup> war' be-tyme þat 3e no lenger' erre ; <sup>1</sup> ms. þe 894  
 Schape not your-self' ne your' lond to schend,  
 Thynk now be-tyme what shal be þe ende ! 896  
 “ 3e wote þat I am keper of' þis grete cite,  
 And in þis same cite as now standyth it soo :  
 þer is many a man & many dyuerse degre,  
 Both cristen & hethen, frely com þer-too :  
 I woote not sumtyme what is best to doo, 901  
 I dweH her' soo in swech-maner drede,  
 I knowe not my frend whan I haue nede. 903  
 “ I se also her' an othir grete myscheffe,  
 In 3ow, madame, & 3e lyst to her' :  
 3e be to euery man both deynty & leffe,  
 & 3e no man cownt not at a per'.  
 It wyH not proue, swech solen daunger' ; 908

[fol. 30, b.]

[1st hand]

Ca<sup>m</sup>. 16<sup>m</sup>.Bk. II. Ch. 16.

- T**hanne spak the amreth of grete Alysandre, 876 The Amiral  
 Thus he gan seyn right in this manere : of Alexandria
- “ Youre woordis to *your* wyslam arn but slaundre,  
 Thus thenken youre freendys alle that sitten here. asks Katharine
- Looke þat ye throwe not now al in the meere ! 880
- Looke that ye lese not youre grete named loos,  
 Whanne that ye may soo heyly it endoos ! 882
- “ how honoure ye *your* owne grete astate ! 883
- Why hate ye now that ilke lady muste haue ? why she hates  
 Wherefore haue ye swiche thing in hate a Husband ?
- That may youre londes and eke *your*-self saue ?
- If ye were not my lady, I wolde wene ye raue ; 887
- ffor if alle these conseytes had come of wyt,  
 Mo folkys than ye wold haue vsed it. 889
- “ Men, madame, seyn<sup>1</sup> that he maddeth more <sup>1</sup> corr. 890 Her eccen-  
 That dooth liche no man, and is more oute of herre, trieties will  
 Than is a fool that can not see be-fore harm her  
 Ne kan not knowe the beste fro the werre. land.
- Be ye war be-tyme that ye noo lengere erre ; 894
- Shape not youre-self ne youre lond to shende,  
 Thenke now be-tyme what shal be the ende ! 896
- “ Ye wot þat I am kepere of this grete Cytee, 897 He, the  
 And in this same Citee as now standeth<sup>1</sup> soo : <sup>1</sup> corr. governor of  
 There is many a man in many dyuers degree, Alexandria,
- Bothe crystene and ethen, freely come ther-too :
- I wote not somtyme what is best to doo, 901 knows by ex-  
 I dwelle heere soo in swiche-manner dreede, perience how  
 I knowe not my freend whan I haue neede. 903 difficult it is  
 to rule alone.
- “ I see here also<sup>1</sup> a-nother grete myschef <sup>1</sup> overlined. 904
- In you, madame, and 3e listen to heer’ :
- Ye be to euery man bothe deynte and leef,  
 And ye no man counte the valu of a pere.  
 It wil not proue, swiche soleynd daungeere ; 908
- Every one  
 values her :  
 she regards  
 no one.



Bk. II. Ch. 17. Thinke on othir þat haue abyden long,  
And at þe last þei haue walkyd wrong<sup>t</sup>. 910

Bk. II. Ch. 18.

Cam. 18<sup>m</sup>.

“ And dede þei so,” seid þis noble qwene, 911  
 “ So shal I not, wyth grace of<sup>t</sup> god aboue ;  
 My wyttes, I telle 3ou, no-þing<sup>t</sup> besy been  
 I[n] swech mater, neythir to lust ne to loue—  
 fly on þo hertes þat euer on swech þing houe ! 915  
 Dred yow not of<sup>t</sup> me in þis mater,  
 Beth not a-ferd tyl 3e mor<sup>t</sup> þing<sup>t</sup> her<sup>t</sup>. 917

“ And as for your<sup>t</sup> puple þat amonges you dweH, 918  
 haue 3e not power<sup>t</sup> & ful auctoryte  
 To put out hem wech beth of<sup>t</sup> hert so feH,  
 Or hem þat use falshed or sotylte,  
 Be wech our<sup>t</sup> rewme happily harmed myth be ? 922  
 Syth þat 3e may, whi do 3e not your<sup>t</sup> dede ?  
 þe[i] þat lett yow, ar<sup>t</sup> worthy to be dede. 924

“ 3e ar<sup>t</sup> a man large & grete of<sup>t</sup> bones ; 925  
 Yf<sup>t</sup> your<sup>t</sup> hert be as 3our<sup>t</sup> grete body is,  
 3e ar ful lykly to do mor<sup>t</sup> note at onys  
 Than othir thre men. a schame for soth it is  
 That swech a man schuld fer<sup>t</sup> ony of<sup>t</sup> his, 929  
 Whan þat he may correct hem hym-selue ;  
 I wold 3eue<sup>1</sup> 3e alone shuld oppresse twelue ! ” <sup>1 r. wene</sup> 931

Bk. II. Ch. 19.

Cam. 19<sup>m</sup>.

“ An othir duke gan þan to approche, 932  
 Ser clamadour<sup>t</sup> þei calle his ryth name,  
 A worthi man & duke of<sup>t</sup> Antioche,  
 þe qwenes cosyn, a lord of<sup>t</sup> ful grete fame.  
 “ þei þat lerned you, ar ful mech þe<sup>1</sup> blame <sup>1 r. to</sup> 936  
 As in my conseyt,” þus seyde he to þe qwene,  
 “ ffor of<sup>t</sup> swech wytt & of<sup>t</sup> swech cunnyng<sup>t</sup> 3e been 938

Thenke other that haue abedew longe,  
And at the laste thei haue walked wronge." 910 *Bk. II. Ch. 16.*

Ca<sup>m</sup>. 17<sup>m</sup>.*Bk. II. Ch. 17.*

"And dede thei soo," seyde this noble queen, 911 Katharine  
"Soo shal I not, wyth þe grace of god aboue ; says she  
My wittis, I telle you, no-thing besy been does not care  
In swiche mater, neither to lust me to loue— for love.  
ffy on tho hertis þat euere on suche þing<sup>1</sup> houe ! 915  
Drede you not of me in this matere, <sup>1</sup> Ms. þingis  
beth not aferd til ye more þing here. 917.

"And as for *your* puple that a-mong yow dwelle, 918 The Amiral  
haue ye not power and ful auctoryte has full power  
To putte oute hem wiche been of herte soo felle, to banish ill-  
Or hem þat vsen) falshed or sotilte, doers :  
Be whiche oure reem happely harmed myght be ? 922  
Syth þat ye may, whi doo ye not youre offys<sup>1</sup> ? <sup>1</sup> corr. why does he  
They þat lette yow, arn) wurthi deed, be thei neuer so wys. complain ?

"Ye arn) a man) large and gret of bones ; 925 He is big  
If *your* herte be as youre grete body is, enough  
Ye arn) ful likly to doo more note at oones  
Than) other thre men. a shame forsothe it is  
That swiche man) shuld fere ony of his, for any 3  
Whan ye may correcte hem youre-selue ; men ; 929  
I wol wene, ye allone shuld oppresse twelue !" 931 nay, for 12.

Ca<sup>m</sup>. 18<sup>m</sup>.*Bk. II. Ch. 18.*

A n other duke gan) thanne to approche, 932 Sir Clama-  
Syr Clamadour' thei calle his ryght name, dour, Duke of  
A worthi man and duke of Antioche, Antioch,  
The queenes cosynd, a lord of ful grete fame.  
"Thei that lerned yow, arn) ful moche to blame 936 then argues  
As in myn) conseyte," thus seyde he to the queen, with Katha-  
"ffor of swiche wyt and of swiche con[n]yngye ye been, 938 rine.

<u>Bk. II. Ch. 19.</u>	"It passith our' wittis, þer is no mor' to say ;	939
	lych to an egle 3e flye vs all a-boue.	
	3ete in as mech as 3e be 3et a may,	
	And eke a qwene, it fallyth to 3our' be-houe	
	To fostre hem wech 3ou drede & loue,	943
	Despise hem nowt, þou3 þat þei be dulle,	
	Nout3 lich to 3ou—for 3e be in þe fulle,	945
	"As I suppose ; I pray god as for me,	946
	Grow 3e no hier', 3our' wyt is hye I-now.	
	Than, þow our' wytt be not in swech degre,	
	3et our' good wyll must 3e nedes a-low.	
	What shal men ellys wryte & sey of' yow :	950
	þat 3e dysdeyne þe pore creature	
	And hauns your' witt out of' aH mesur'.	952
	"What þing' letteth yow þat 3e wil not us leue,	953
	& be we your' men & your' seruau'tis aHe !	
	3our' counsayl, lady, wech shal 3ow not greue,	
	3e shuld tel us, for it may so falle	
	þat þe better end þat mater schalle	957
	Be browt to—for þe mo wyse hedes þer be	
	In ony mater', þe better is it, as þinkyth mee."	959

Bk. II. Ch. 20.Cam. 20<sup>m</sup>.

	"Cosyn," sche seyde, "3e preyse sor' a kyng'.	960
	But I wold wete of' you þe cause qwy	
	þat o man a-boue many shal haue gouernyng',	
	To byd & commaund, send both ferr' & nye ;	
	What is þe cause þat he hath swech maystry	964
	Ouer all men, & no man hath ouer hym—	
	he his lord of' lond, of' body & of' lym ?	966
[fol. 31, b.] [2nd hand]	"In elde tyme, for stryff & for þe bate <sup>1</sup>	<sup>1</sup> r. debate 967
	Amongys þe puple þat reyned to & froo,	
	And for to staunch bothe enuye & hate,	
	ffor to haue reule, þei wer' compellyd þer-too	
	To chese a leeder', hem for to gouerne thoo—	971

“ It passeth oure wyttis, there is no more to say ;	939	<i>Bk. II. Ch. 18.</i>
Lychē on-to an Egle ye flye us alle a-boue.		The Duke of Antioch says
Yet in as moche as ye been a may		
And eke a queen, it falleth to <i>your</i> be-houe		
To fostre hem whiche yow drede and loue,	943	
Despyse hem not, though þat þei be dulle,		Katharine ought to hear others,
Not lychē to yow—for ye be in the fulle,	945	
“ As I suppose, I prey god as for me,	946	
Growe ye non heyere, youre wyt is heye I-nowe.		
Thanne, thow oure wyt be not in suche degre,		especially her men,
Yet oure good wil muste ye nedes allowe.		
What shal men wryte ellis and sey of yowe ?	950	
That ye disdeyne the poere creature		
And haunce youre wyt oute of all mesure.	952	
“ What þing letteth you þat ye wil not vs leue,	953	
And be we youre men and <i>your</i> seruautys alle !		
Your counseil, lady, whiche shal you not greue,		and tell them her mind.
Ye shulde telle vs, for it may soo falle		
That þe better cende the mater shalle	957	
Be browt too—for þe moo wyse heedes ther be		
In ony mater, the better it is, as thenketh me.”	959	
<b>Cam. 19<sup>m</sup>.</b>		
“ Cosyn,” she seyde, “ ye preyse sore a kyng.	960	<i>Bk. II. Ch. 19.</i>
But I wolde wete of you þe cause whi		Katharine puts the question how there came to be kings,
That oon man a-boue many shal haue gouernynge,		
To bidde and commavnde, sende bothe fer and ny ;		
What is the cause that he hath swiche maystry	964	with such extravagant power ?
Ouere alle men, and no man hath ouere hym—		
he is lord of lond, of body and of lym ?	966	
“ In oolde tyme, for stryf and for debate,	967	
A-mongis the puple that regned too and froo,		
And for to staunche bothe enuye and hate,		
ffor to haue reule, thei were compelled þer-too		
To chese a leedere, hem for to gouerne thoo—	971	

<u>Bk. II. Ch. 20.</u>	þis was þe cause why þei chose a kyng ; þei schuld ellys a streue for many a thyng.	973
	“ ffor qwan þer is not ellys but per' & pere, þer is non as than wyll do for othyr, On seyth her', an other' seyth it schall be þer' ; þis stryffe it fallyth be-twyx brother' & brother, Ageyn þe sune sumtyme stryuyth þe modyr.	974 978
	Than wer' þei chose ryght for þis entent, To bryng in reule þing þat was wrong went.	980
	“ Summe wer' chose for wysdam & for wytt, Summe for strenght, summe for humanyte— þat I sey treuth, cronycles wytness it. So þan a kyng as in auctorite Excellyth hys puple—for þer be as wyse as he Oft-tyme seyn ryth wyth-inne hys loude. þan may 3e se þat all þis seruyle bonde	981 985 987
	“ Came oute of fredam—þe puple was sume-tyme fre And had noo lord, but ych man reuled hym-selfe. þus cam þei þan oute of her' liberte, Be her' fre choys ten of hem or twelue Wer' draw a-wey, þei schuld noo lenger' delue Ne do no labour', but reule þe cuntre a-bowte ; And to her' heed hem-self 3et must [þei] <sup>1</sup> lowte.	988 992 994
	“ But for 3e wyll allgate know myn hert, Whath þat I thynk, I tell 3ow platt & pleynd : þer schall neuyr man, be he neuyr so smert Ne eke so st[r]ong, wynne me, þat is to seynð haue me to spowse—I wyll no lenger' feynð— But if he be so strong hym-self a-lone þat he be able to fyght wyth all hys fone.	995 999 1001
	“ Thys is þe ende, & þis my wyll now is, let vs no mor' as in þis mater' speke. So god my soule bryng on-to hys blys,	1002

This was þe cause whi þei chose a kyng ;		<i>Bk. II. Ch. 19.</i>
Thei shulde ellis a streuen for many a thyng.	973	Kings were chosen
“ ffor whanne there is not ellis but peere and peere, 974		
There is non) as than) wil doom) for other,		
Oon seyth here, another seyth it shal be there ;		
This stryf it falleth be-twyxe brother and brother,		
A-geyn) the sone somtyme stryuet) þe moder.	978	
Thanne were thei chosyn) ryght for þis entent,		only to set
To brynge in rewle thyng þat was wrong went.	980	wrong, right.
“ Some were chosyn) for wysdam and for wyt,	981	
Some for strengthe, and some for humanyte—		
That I sey treuthe, cronyclys witnessse it.		
Soo thanne a kyng as in Auctoryte		
Excelleth his puple—for there been as wys as he	985	
Ofte-tyme seyn) ryght wythinne his loond.		
Thanne may ye see þat aȝ this seruyle boond	987	
“ Cam oute of fredam—the puple was sumtyme free 988	Folk were	first free,
And had no lord, but iche man) reuled hym-selue.		
Thus cand) thei thanne oute of her liberte,		
Be her fre choys ten) of hem or twelue		
Were drawe a-wey, þei shuld no lenger delue	992	and then
Ne doo no labour, but reule the contre aboute ;		gave up their
And to her hed hem-selue yet muste þei loute.	994	liberty.
“ But for ye wil algates knowe myn) herte,	995	
What þat I thenke, I telle yow plat and pleynd) :		She then
There shal neuere man), be he neuere so smerte		speaks out
Ne eke so strong, wynne me, þat is to seynd)		her mind :
haue me to spouse—I wil no lenger feynd)—	999	she will
But if he be soo strong hym)-self allone		never wed.
That he be able to feyghte <i>wit</i> alle his fone.	1001	
“ This is the cende, and this my wil now is,	1002	
Iete vs no more as in this mater speke.		Let no more
Soo god my soule brynge on-to his blys,		be said to
		her about
		Marriage.

Bk. II. Ch. 20. þis couenaund made ne schall I neuyr breke.  
 3e may well carp, stryue, clatyr & creke ; 1006  
 Whan all is doo, þis schall be þe ende ;  
 3our wordys þerfor' lett hem fall fro meende." 1008

Bk. II. Ch. 21.Ca<sup>m</sup>. 21<sup>m</sup>.

**T**han was þer' woo & waylyng eke enowe, 1009  
 þei morned alle & made mekyl mone  
 Whan þat þei sey wher<sup>s</sup>-to þe mater' drowe,  
 Carefull wytys wer' þei than ilkone.  
 þe qween, hyr' modyr, gan' to syghe & grone, 1013  
 Sche seyð : " doghtyr, þis is nocht 3our awayle,  
 Put not 3our purpos in swyeh̄ grete perayle ! 1015  
 " 3our dotyng-dayes, I trow, now be come ! 1016  
 What wold 3e hafe ? wote 3e qwat 3e say ?  
 Thorow-oute þis werlde, in grece ne in rome  
 Is no swyeh̄ man<sup>1</sup> þat þis thyng do may, <sup>1 r. woman ?</sup>  
 Schuld kepe a londe of so gret aray 1020  
 And he a-lone. what wene 3e for to hafe ?  
 It is impossible þat 3e desyr' and crafe. 1022  
 " A-vyse 3ow bettyr, & take an other' day, 1023  
 Tyll þat 3our wytte is chaunged & 3our thowte !  
 Is 3our wysdam now turned to sweeh̄ aray  
 ffor to desyr' swyeh̄ þing as is nowte ?  
 Cursyd be þei þat 3ow her<sup>s</sup>-to browte, 1027  
 On-to þis errour' to do as no man dothe ;  
 þat euery poynt þei varye fro þe sothe." 1029

Bk. II. Ch. 22.Ca<sup>m</sup>. 22<sup>m</sup>.

" **M**Adame," sche seyð, " þis þing wech̄ I schall doo  
 I not who sett it in myn hert, treuly. 1031  
 It is so fast, I may not fle þer-froo,  
 It cleuyth so sor', it wyll not slyde for-by,  
 Whythy<sup>r</sup> I goo, sytte, knele or elles ly ; 1034  
 ffor noo counseyll I may it not for-sake,  
 Ne for noo crafte a-wey I can it schake." 1036

This conuenaunt made shal I neuere breke. *Bk. II. Ch. 19.*  
 Ye may weel karpe, stryue, clatere, and creke<sup>1</sup>; 1006  
 Whanne al is doo, this shal be the ende; <sup>1</sup> MS. treke  
 Youre wordis therefore lete hem falle fro meende." 1008

Ca<sup>m</sup>. 20<sup>m</sup>.

*Bk. II. Ch. 20.*

**T**hanne was ther woo and weylyng eke I-now, 1009  
 Thei moorned alle and made mekel mone  
 Whan þat þei saugh wherto the mater drow,  
 Careful wyghtis were thei thanne ilkone. Katharine's  
Mother  
 The queen, hir moder, gan to sey and grone, 1013  
 She seyde: "doughter, þis is not youre awayle,  
 Putte not youre purpos in swiche grete perayle! 1015  
 "Youre dotyngc-dayes, I trowe, now be come! 1016  
 What wolde ye haue? wote ye what ye say?  
 Thurgh-oute this world, in grece ne in Rome says that no  
man even  
could rule the  
Land alone.  
 Is noon swiche man þat þis thyng doo may,  
 Shulde keepe a lond of soo grete aray 1020  
 And he allone. what wene ye for to haue?  
 It is impossible that ye desyre and craue. 1022 Katharine  
can't.  
 "Avyse yow bettere, and take another day, 1023 Let her wait  
till she's  
changed her  
mind.  
 Til þat youre wit is chaunged and youre thought!  
 Is youre wysdam now turned to swiche aray  
 ffor to desyre swyche þing as is nought?  
 Cursed be thei that you here-to han brought, 1027  
 On-to this errour to doo as no man dooth! <sup>1</sup> corr.  
 What<sup>1</sup>-euere thei poynt, ye varye euere for<sup>1</sup> sooth." 1029

"**M**Adame," she seyde, "this thyng whiche I shal doo  
 I not hoo seet it in myn herte, truly. 1031  
 It is soo fast, I may not flee ther-froo,  
 It cleuth soo sore, it wil not slyde forby,  
 Whether I goo, sytte, knele or ellys ly: 1034  
 ffor no counseH I may it not for-sake,  
 Ne for [no] craft a-wey I can it shake." 1036 Katharine  
sticks to her  
purpose.



Bk. II. Ch. 23.Ca<sup>m</sup>. 23<sup>m</sup>.

- T**han wept þe qween & was in car' & woo, 1037  
 And to þe lordes sche sayd : " all is I-lornð,  
 What schall we say, what schall we speke or doo ?  
 I wayle þe tyme þat euyr sche was bornð.  
 hyr hert is harde & tow as is<sup>1</sup> þe thornð, <sup>1 overlined.</sup> 1041  
 hyr wytte is sett so hye I wot not qwer' ;  
 þer is no man þat may hyr her' answe're. 1043  
 " What sey ze, cosynd, lord & duk of tyr' ? 1044  
 What comyth herof ? can ze owte ferther' say ?  
 fl'or as wyth me, durne is in þe myre,  
 Sche hath me stoynd & browte me [to] a-bay.  
 Sche wyll not wedde, sche wyll be styll a may ! 1048  
 It schall cause my deth, but mech soner', loo,  
 Be-cause I leue þus in swech car' & woo." 1050

Bk. II. Ch. 24.Ca<sup>m</sup>. 24<sup>m</sup>.

- T**han roos þis lord, em to þe qweenð, 1051  
 Gaufronð he hyght, he was her' omager',  
 And duke of tyre—mech þing had he seenð,  
 he had passed eke many a grete daunger' ;  
 he was þe next of hyr' kynrod ther', 1055  
 he myght mor' boldly sey all hys entent.  
 " Madame," he seyð, " a þing þat was neuer ment 1057  
 " What ayles zow þat ze desyr' so sore, 1058  
 And ze so zung, & wys woman alsoo ?  
 A þing þat lawe for-bedyth euyr-mor' ;  
 Natur' eke wyll zeue no leue þer-too—  
 þis ze desyr', ze wyll not twymð þer-froo. 1062  
 What is zour' wyll ? I wolde wyte quat ze mene.  
 Wyll ze zour' bodye fro alle men kepe clene ? 1064  
 " What boote was it to vs þat ze wer' bornð, 1065  
 If þat ze wyll not do ryght as þei dede,  
 I mene zour' ffadyr & modyr zow be-form' ?

Ca<sup>m</sup>. 21<sup>m</sup>.Bk. II. Ch. 21.

- T**hanne wepte þe queen) and was in care and woo, 1037 Her Mother weeps,  
 And to the lordes she seyde : “al is I-lorn),  
 What shal we say, what shal we speke or doo ?  
 I wayle the tyme that euere she was born).  
 hir herte is hard and tough as is the thorn), 1041  
 hir wyt is sette so hye I wot not where ;  
 There is no man) that may here hir answeere. 1043
- “What seye ye, cosyng), lord and duke of Tyre ? 1044 and appeals to the Duke of Tyre.  
 What cometh here-of ? can) ye owte ferthere say ?  
 ffor as wyth me, dun is in the myre,  
 She hath me stoynd and brought me to a bay.  
 She wil not wedde, she wil be styll a may ! 1048  
 It shal cause my deeth, but meche sonnere loo,  
 Be-cause I leue thus in suche care and woo.” 1050

Ca<sup>m</sup>. 22<sup>m</sup>.Bk. II. Ch. 22.

- T**hanne ros the lord, eem) on-to the queen), 1051 Gaufron,  
 Gaufron) he hyght, he was hir homagere, Duke of Tyre,  
 And duke of Tyre—moche þing he had seen), her Uncle,  
 he had passed eke many a gret daungere ;  
 he was the nexte of hir kenerede there, 1055  
 he myght more boldely seyn al his entent.  
 “Madame,” he seyde, “a thyng þat was neuere ment, 1057
- “What cyleth you þat ye desire soo sore, 1058 argues with Katharine.  
 And ye so yong and wyse woman) also ?  
 A þing þat lawe forbedeth euere-more ;  
 Nature eke wil yeue no leue ther-too—  
 This ye desyre, ye wil not twynne therfroo. 1062  
 What is youre wil ? I wold wete what ye mene.  
 Wyl ye youre body fro alle men) kepe clene ? 1064 Does Katharine mean to keep herself from men ?
- “What boote was it to us þat ye were born), 1065  
 If þat ye wil not doo ryght as thei dede,  
 I mene youre fader and moder yow be-forn) ? How would she be here

<u>Bk. II. Ch. 24.</u>	3e had not come ne sote (!) now in þis stede, had not 3our modyr' wyth mech care & drede	1069
	Browt 3ow forth & to þis lyght 3ow bore. ffolow 3e þe steppys of hem þat went be-fore !	1071
	“ 3e do wrong ellys on-to þo chyldryn alle Wech 3e ar' lykly to bryng forthe & bere. W <sup>h</sup> at desese & what myschefe may falle But if 3e do þus, I trow your'-self wot ner'. To put all þis thyng oute of drede & fere,	1072 1076
	And þat þis synne in 3ow schuld not be sene, A kynges doghtyr to dey bothe mayd & qween,	1078
	“ I counsell 3ow þis, & 3e receyue it wold : To fle þis chauns of feyned chastite. hewe not so hye but if 3e may it holde, Desyr' no thyng þat may not goten) be— Lerneth þis lesson, if þat 3e lyst, of me ; Sche is not born, me thynkyth, þat myght wynne To grype a degre so grete as 3e be-gynne.”	1079 1083 1085

Bk. II. Ch. 25.Cam. 25<sup>m</sup>.

“ V Ncle,” sche seyde, “ & þat wer' me full lothe To clyme so hye þat I myght not come down) ; ffor, as I wene, þat mater' wold greue us bothe, And lese our' londe be cyte & eke be town) ; It wer' destruccyon) eke to our' crown). God he lede vs þat we come not ther', To ley our' worchep so lowe vndyr brere !	1086 1090 1092
“ But for 3e say, to me it schuld be ioye To hafe a lord schuld gouern) both 3ow & me, I sey 3ow nay, it schulde be but a-noye On-to myn hert. for if it wer' so þat he Wer' louyng & gentyll, & all hys hert on me, þat he louyd me & I hym best of alle, What sorow, hope 3e, on-to myn hert schuld falle	1093 1097 1099

- Ye had not come ne sete now in þis stede,  
 had not *your* moder with moche care and drede 1069 *Bk. II. Ch. 22.*  
 Brought yow foorth and to this lyght you bore. if her Mother  
 hadn't  
 brought her  
 forth?
- ffolwe ye þe steppys of hem þat wente be-fore ! 1071
- “Ye doo wrong ellis on-to tho children alle 1072 Chastity is a  
 sin against  
 the unborn,  
 and im-  
 possible.
- Whiche ye arn lykely to brynge foorth and bere.  
 What disese and what myschef may falle  
 But if ye thus doo, I trowe youre-self wot neere,  
 To putte alle these thyngis in dreed and<sup>1</sup> fere. 1076
- And þat þis synne in yow shuld not be scene, <sup>1</sup> orig. and in  
 A kyngis doughter to dey bothe mayde and queene, 1078
- “I counseilþ you thus, and 3e<sup>1</sup> receyue it wolde : 1079 She should  
 give up this  
 feignd chas-  
 tity.
- To fleo this chauns of feyned chastyte. <sup>1</sup> overlined.
- hewe not so hye but if ye may it holde,  
 Desyre no thyng that may not gotten be—  
 Lerne this lesen, iff þat ye list, of me ; 1083
- She is not bore, me thynketh, that myght wynne  
 To gryppe of degree so grete as ye be-gynne.” 1085

Ca<sup>m</sup>. 23<sup>m</sup>.*Bk. II. Ch. 23.*

- “Vncle,” she seyde, “and that were me ful looth 1086 Katharine  
 answers her  
 Uncle.
- To clymbe so hye that I myght not comen down ;  
 ffor, as I wene, that mater wolde greue vs booth,  
 And lese oure lond be Cyte and be toun ;  
 It were grete destruceyon eke to oure croun. 1090
- God he lode vs that we come not there,  
 To ley oure wurshype soo lowe vnder brere ! 1092
- “But for ye sey, to me it shulde be Ioye 1093 Katharine  
 says,
- To haue a lord shulde gouerne bothe yow and me,  
 I sey yow nay, it shulde be but a-noye  
 On-to myn herte. for if it were soo þat hee  
 Were lovyng and gentyl and al his herte on me, 1097 if she lovd her  
 Husband,
- That he loued me and I hym beste of alle,  
 What sorwe, hope ye, on myn hert shuld falle 1099

KATHARINE.

L

- Bk. II. Ch. 25. "If þat he deyð or ellys wer' slayn in fælde, 1100  
 And I for-go þat þing þat I loued best?  
 It myght fall also, thow it hap but sekde,  
 þat þis loue be-twyx vs too myth brest  
 And part a-sundy<sup>r</sup>—þis wer' a full hard rest 1004  
 On-to our' hert! þer-for', to put alle oute of dowte,  
 I wyll not enter', wyll<sup>1</sup> I may kepe me owte. <sup>1</sup> = whil 1106  
 "What counsell 3e me swech game to be-gymne 1107  
 Whech is not stedfast, in lowe ne in astate?  
 In all her' gladeness sorow is eyr wyth-inne,  
 And wyth her' plesaunce eft medelett debate.  
 þer-for' þat lyfe I dispyce & hate 1111  
 þat hath noo sewyrte, but eyr is variable;  
 I wold hafe lyffe & loue<sup>1</sup> þat eyr is stable." <sup>1</sup> MS. lond

Bk. II. Ch. 26.

## Cam. 26m.

- "O Mercy godd," seyð þe gret baldake— 1114  
 he was þoo lord & prince of palestyne—  
 "þer' may no man my lady grype ne take,  
 her' craft is swech, we may her' not enclyne;  
 þer is no philosophy<sup>r</sup> ne ek noo diuine 1118  
 Whech sche dredyth, hyr' termys be so wyse;  
 What-eyr we say, sche 3euyth of it no pryce. 1120  
 "I sey 3ow, madame, as it is seyð be-fore: 1121  
 We want a leeder', if we owte schuld doo.  
 Be-thynk 3our-self, fro tyme þat 3e wer' bore  
 To gorgalus tyme—thre hundred 3er' & moo  
 It is, certeyn, & 3et stod it neuyr soo 1125  
 As it stant now, madame, in no lond of 3our'.  
 Of þing þat 3e reioye we schall hafe langour." 1127

Bk. II. Ch. 27.

## Cam. 27m.

- "Qwat wold 3e hafe?" seyð þis noble qween), 1128  
 "haue 3e not 3oue to me bothe crown & londe?  
 I am 3our lady, my subiectis all 3e been).

- “If þat he deyed or ellis were slaynd in feeld, 1100 *Bk. II. Ch. 23.*  
 And I for-goo þat thyng that I loued beste? and he died,  
 It myght falle soo, though it happed but seekþ,  
 That this loue be-twyxe vs to myght breste  
 And parte a-sondre—this were a ful harde reste 1104 it would  
 On-to oure herte! therefore, to putte aH oute of dowte, wryng her  
 I wyl not entre whil I may kepe me oute. 1106 heart.  
 “What counseH 3e me suche game to be-gynne 1107 Love is not  
 Whiche is not stedfast, in lowe ne in astate? steadfast, nor  
 In al her gladnesse sorwe is euere wyth-Inne, without  
 And wyth her plesauns ofte medeleth debate. alloy.  
 Therefore that lyf I despyse and hate 1111 She will have  
 That hath no suerte, but euere is varyable; <sup>1</sup> MS. lond no changing  
 I wolde haue lyf and loue<sup>1</sup> that euere is stable.” 1113 life.

## Cam. 24m.

*Bk. II. Ch. 21.*

- “O Mereyful god,” seyde the grete baldake— 1114 Baldake,  
 he was tho lord and prynee of palestyn— Prince of  
 “There may no man my lady gripa ne take, Palestine,  
 hir craft is suche, we may hir not enclyn);  
 There is no philisophre ner eke dyvyn 1118  
 Whiche she dredeth, hir termes be so wys;  
 What-euere we say, she yeueth of it no prys. 1120 says Katha-  
 rine won't  
 attend to  
 them.  
 “I sey yow, madame, as it is seyde be-fore : 1121 Prince Bal-  
 We wante a leedere, if we owte shulde doo. dake says  
 Be-thenke your-self, fro þat tyme that ye were bore they want a  
 To gorgalus tyme—thre hundred yeer and moo leader.  
 It is, certeyn), and yet stood it neuere soo 1125  
 As it stant now, madame, in no lond of youre.  
 Of thing þat ye reioe we shal haue langoure.” 1127

## Cam. 25m.

*Bk. II. Ch. 25.*

- “W hat wolde ye haue?” seyde this noble queen), 1128 Katharine  
 “haue ye not youe to me bothe crowne and loonde? says she is  
 I am youre lady, my subiectis alle ye been). queen;

Bk. II. Ch. 27. I wot full wele what longyth to þe bonde  
 Of regalte whech I hold *in mynd* honde. 1132  
 ffor *euery* werk, sothely, it stant *in* too :  
 In good counceH & eke *in* werkyng alsoo. 1134

“ The wytt & counceH, syr, þat schall be our, 1135  
 We schall telle who we<sup>1</sup> wyll haue it wrowte ; <sup>1</sup> MS. 3e  
 And al<sup>1</sup> þe labour & werke þat schall be 3our<sup>2</sup>— <sup>1</sup> MS. all?  
 3our grete lordchype 3e schul nogt haue for noutz !  
 þe lond of palestyne it was neuyr to 3ow boute, 1139  
 It was 3oue 3our<sup>3</sup> elderes 3ow be-fore  
 To serue my crown : & þer-to be 3e swore.” 1141

Bk. II. Ch. 28.

Cam. 28m.

**T**han spake a-nothyr, lord of nychopolye, 1142  
 he seyð wordys whech sempt full wyse—  
 hys name was called þoo syr Eugeny—  
 To þe qweend he spake þan ryght on þis wyse :  
 “ þe estate of regalte is of swych a pryce, 1146  
 Ther may no man, sothly, to it atteyne  
 But if he hath both power & wytte, centeyne. 1148

“ Therfor sey I 3ett þat we nedys muste 1149  
 Be rewled be on whech þat hath þeis too,  
 Boþe wytt *in* sadnesse, & power eke *in* lust,  
 And elles our reule sone wyll breke *in*-two.  
 As other londys ar<sup>3</sup> reuled, let vs be reulyd soo ; 1153  
 Let vs suppose þei be as wyse<sup>1</sup> as we. <sup>1</sup> MS. as wyse as wyse  
 for þus he wrytyth, þe astronomer tholome : 1155  
<sup>1</sup> MS. neybour)

“ ‘ Who-so wyll not doo as hys neybour[s]<sup>1</sup> werk, 1156  
 Ne wyll not be war<sup>3</sup> be hem<sup>3</sup> whan þei do amys,  
 Of hym schul other men boþe carp & berke,  
 And sey, be-holde þis man, lo [he]<sup>1</sup> it is— <sup>1</sup> om.  
 Wheythyr he do weel or wheyther he do amys. 1160  
 he wyll none exa<sup>3</sup>mp<sup>3</sup>le of other men i-take,  
 Exa<sup>3</sup>mp<sup>3</sup>le to othyr mene he schall be for þat sake. 1162





Bk. II. Ch. 28. “ ‘ All opir’ mene schul be war’ be hyme, 1163  
 ffor þei schul se & fele in hem-selue  
 þat hys werkys wer’ bothe derk & dyme.’  
 Therfor’, madame, what schuld I lenger’ delue  
 In þis mater’? me thynkyth, ten or twelue 1167  
 Schuld 3eue example, rather’ þan schall oone.  
 3e haue my moeyon), for my tale is doone.” 1169

Bk. II. Ch. 29.

Cam. 29m.

**T**he qween) full sadly answerd to þis lord : 1170  
 “ I wold wyte,” she seyd, “ of 3ow, whyll 3e be her’,  
 And alle, I trowe, to-gyder’ mote a-corde :  
 If þat I dede þis tyme at 3our’ prayer’,  
 To leue my wyll & put me in daunger’, 1174  
 I sett cas, þe man whech þat I schall chese  
 To be 3our’ lord, þat he haue non of þese, 1176  
 “ That is to sey neythyr wytte ne strength,<sup>1</sup> <sup>1 orig. strengh</sup>  
 What sey 3e now, who schall reule 3ow than, 1178  
 3our’ londys þat ly so fer’ in brede & length ?  
 þe febyll may nott, þe fool eke ne can)  
 Demene swych þing ; þan wyll 3e curs & baue 1181  
 þat eyr wer’ 3e subiectys to swech a foole,  
 And to 3our’ hert it wolde be full grete dole. 1183  
 “ 3e schuld be fayn) þan for to reule hyme, 1184  
 To counsell & rede þat he do not amys.  
 þis wer’ noo worchepe to me ne to my kyn)!  
 And sekyrly, a full grete cause it is  
 þat I wedde nowte, for owte of ioye & blys 1188  
 Schuld I þan passe & make my-selue a thralle.  
 held me excused, for sykyrly I ne schalle. 1190  
 “ ffor syth 3e sey þat I am now so wys, 1191  
 Than haue I o þing whech longeth to regalte.  
 þer is no man but if he be ouyr-nys,  
 But if<sup>1</sup> he wyll sey & held wyth me <sup>1 if on the margin.</sup>  
 þat it is bettyr, whan it non) other’ wyll be, 1195

- “ ‘ Alle othere men) shul be war be hym), 1163 *Bk. II. Ch. 26.*  
 ffor thei shul see and fele in hem-selue  
 That his werkys were bothe deerke and dym).’  
 Therefore, madame, what shulde I lenger’ delue  
 In thys mater? me thenketh, ten or twelue 1167  
 Shulde yeue exauple rathere þan) shal oon).  
 Ye haue myn) mocyon), for my tale is doon).” 1169 rather than  
one woman’s  
whims.

Ca<sup>m</sup>. 27.*Bk. II. Ch. 27.*

- T**he queen) ful sadly answerde to this lord : 1170  
 “ I wolde wyte of yow,” she seyde, “ whil ye ben) here,  
 And alle, I trowe, to-gedere mote acord :  
 If þat I dede this tyme of youre prayere,  
 To leue my wyl and putte me in daungere, 1174  
 I sette cas, the man) whiche þat I shal chese  
 To be youre lord, þat he haue noon) of these, 1176  
 “ That is to sey neyther witte ne strengthe, 1177 Suppose she  
marries a  
stupid or  
weak man,  
 What sey ye now, hoo shal reule you than),  
 Yourre londes þat lyn soo fer in brede and lengthe?  
 The feble may not, the fool eke ne kan)  
 Demene suche þing; than wil ye curse and ban) 1181 her folk ’ll  
curse him.  
 That euere were ye subiectis to swyche a fool,  
 And to youre hertis it wold been) ful gret dool. 1183  
 “ Ye shulde be fayn) thanne for to reule hym), 1184 They’d have  
to rule him.  
 To counseyH and rede that he dede not amys.  
 This were no worshep to me ne to my kyn) !  
 And sekyrly a ful gret cause it is  
 That I wedde not, for oute of Ioye and blys 1188  
 Shulde I thanne passe and make my-self a thral.  
 helde me excused, for sekyrly I ne shal. 1190 She will be  
free.  
 ‘ ffor syth ye sey that I am now so wys, 1191  
 Thanne haue I on) thyng whiche longeth to regalte.  
 There is no man), but he be ouere-nys,  
 But he wyl sey and holde wyth me  
 That [it] is better, whanne it no other wil bee, 1195

Bk. II. Ch. 29. To chese þe on þan for to want bothe.  
Chese 3e now ; we be no lenger' wrothe." 1197

Bk. II. Ch. 30.

Ca<sup>m</sup>. 30<sup>m</sup>.

} Et gan to knele eft be-for þe qween) 1198  
 } Bothe mayster & duke of Athenes þat cyte ;  
 Mayster he was in scole & long had been),  
 And duke I-chose be þe puple þoo was he—  
 ffor her' choys þer' as þan was fre 1202  
 To haue qwat man, wherh hem lyked to heed.  
 þus in hys tale be-gan he [in] þat steed : 1204

“ We supposyd, lady, eyr on-to þis tyme 1205  
 þat 3e had come of þat gentyll bloode  
 Of 3our modyr, descendyd down be lyne,  
 And of 3our fadyr þat was ful gentyll & good.  
 But our' opynyon is chaunged & our' moode, 1209  
 ffor, as it semyth, 3e ar' no-þing of kyne ;  
 And if 3e wer', 3e coude not cese ne blyne 1211

“ To folow þe steppes of 3our elders be-for', 1212  
 As grayn) reall growyn) oute of her' grounde—  
 ffor natur' wolde, thow 3e þe reuers had swore,  
 þat 3e wer' lych hem, certeyn, in euery stownde ;  
 And in our' Philosophye, I hope, þus it is founde 1216  
 þat naturaly þe braunch oute of þe rote  
 Schall tak hys sauour', be it sour' or swote. 1218

“ fferthermore zet sey our' bokys þus : 1219  
 ‘ þat euery lych hys lych he schall desyre.’  
 Be all þese menes it semeth þan to vs :  
 Eyther 3e can neuyr duly to þis empyr',  
 Or ellys 3our hert dyspysyth ioie as myr'. 1223  
 I can no mor', I speke on-curtlesye,  
 I may not chese, I am so vexed, trulye.” 1225

To chese the on) than for to wante bothe. *Bk. II. Ch. 27.*  
 Chese ye now ; we be no lengere wrothe." 1197

Ca<sup>m</sup>. 28<sup>m</sup>.*Bk. II. Ch. 28.*

- Y**et gan to knele efte be-fore the queen), 1198 The Duke of  
Athens  
argues with  
Katharine.  
 Bothe mayster and duke of athenes þat citee ;  
 Mayster he was in scole and longe had been),  
 And duke I-chose be the puple tho was hee—  
 ffor her choys there and thanne was free 1202  
 To haue what man), whiche hem lyked to hed.  
 Thus in his tale be-gan) he in that steed : 1204
- “ We supposed, lady, euere on)-to this tyme 1205  
 That ye had come of that gentyl blood  
 Of youre moder, descendet doun) be lyne,  
 And of *your* fader þat was ful gentil and good.  
 But oure oppynyon) is chaunged and oure mood, 1209  
 ffor, as it semeth, ye arn) no-thing of kyn) ;  
 And if ye were, ye cowde not sece and blyn) 1211
- “ To folwe þe steppes of youre older’s be-for), 1212 Katharine  
will not  
follow her  
elders.  
 As greyn) real growen) oute of her grounde—  
 ffor nature wolde, þough ye the reuers had sworn),  
 That ye were lyeche hem in euery stounde ;  
 And in oure philosophie, I hope, thus is it founde 1216  
 That naturally the braunche oute of þe rote  
 Shal take his sauour, be it soure be it swote. 1218
- “ fferthermore yet seyn) oure book’s thus : 1219 Like ought to  
follow like.  
 ‘ That euery liche his lyeche shal desyre.’  
 Be alle these menes it semeth þan to vs :  
 Eyther ye cam neuer dewly to þis empyre,  
 Or ellis youre herte despiseth ioye as myre. 1223  
 I can no more, I speke on-curteysely,  
 I may not chese, I am) so vexed, trewly.” 1225

- O**N-to þe duk þus answerþ þoo þe qween) : 1226  
 “ 3e make a reson) of ful gret apparens,  
 3e schew full wele wher’ þat 3e hafe been) :  
 In þe grete nest of bysy dylygens,  
 Wher’ stody & wytt is *in* experiens, 1230  
 I mene Athenes—of wysdam it beryth þe key ;  
 Who will oute lerne, lat hym tak þidyr þe wey. 1232  
 “ But neuyrþelasse, thow þat 3e be endewyd 1233  
*Wyth* werdly wysdam & can all þing pleynty,  
 So þat 3e may *wyth* no sophym be pursewyd :  
 3et to 3our motyff answerþ þus may I,  
 And voyd 3our’ resound well & *pregnantly*, 1237  
 If 3e wyll her’ & take entent to me.  
 ffor if men take heed, oft-tyme þei may se 1239  
 “ Owte of a tre growyng dyuerse frute, 1240  
 And þat same tre þat sumetyme bar’ þe grene,  
 Now bereth he reed or qwyte, of dyuerse sute.  
 Be þis example pleynty þus I mene :  
 My modyr is, & so am I, a qween), 1244  
 In þis we a-cord ; & þat I am a may,  
 In þat we dyuerse, I *can* not þer-to sey nay. 1246  
 “ It semeth me þat lych a griff am I, 1247  
 I-planted be god vp-on an elde stoke,  
 Of an *oþer* kynde, an othyr sauour’ hardyly ;  
 And euene as be miracle þe elde blok,  
 Wech is clouyn) *in* four’ *wyth* many a knok, 1251  
 Schall rather’ folow þe gryff, þan þe gryff hym,  
 So faryth it be me & be my elder’ kyn) : 1253  
 “ Thei schul rather’ *consent* to leue all sole 1254  
 As I do now, þan schall I<sup>1</sup> folow hen). <sup>1 r. I schall</sup>  
 ffor certeynly, I kepe not of þat scole  
 Wher’ þat her’ ioye is, but lych a drem)  
 ffarwell ffadyr, ffarwell modyr & eem, 1258

Ca<sup>m</sup>. 29<sup>m</sup>.Bk. II. Ch. 29.

- O**N-to the duke þus answered tho þe queen: 1226 Katharine  
 “Ye make a reson of ful grete apparens, answers the  
 Ye shewe ful weel where þat ye haue ben), Duke of  
 In the grete neste of besy diligens, Athens.  
 Where stody and wytte is in experiens, 1230  
 I mene athenes—of wysdam it bereth the keye ;  
 ho wil owte lerne, lete hym take thedir þe weye. 1232  
 “But neuerthelesse, thow þat ye be endwed 1233  
 Wyth werdly wisdam) and kan) aH thyng trewly,  
 Soo þat ye may with no sophyn) be pursewed :  
 Yet to youre motyf answer) thus may I,  
 And voyde youre reson) weel and prenauntly, 1237 She will upset  
 If ye wele here and take entent to me. his reasons.  
 ffor if men) taken heed, often-tyme may þei see 1239  
 “Oute of oo tre growyng dyuers frute, 1240  
 And þat same tree that somtyme baar the grene,  
 Now beryth he reed or white, or of dyuers sute. Katharine  
 Be þis exaample pleyndly thus I mene : says  
 My moder is, and so am I, a queene, 1244  
 In this we a-coorde ; and in þat I am a may,  
 In that we dyuers, I can) not ther-to sey nay. 1246  
 “It semeth me þat liche a gryf am I, 1247 she is like a  
 I-planted be god vp-on) a old stok, graft on an  
 Of another keende, a-nother savour hardyly ; old stock.  
 And euene as be myracle þe olde blok,  
 Whiche is clouen) in foure with many a knok, 1251  
 Shal rathere folwe the gryffe, than) þe gryffe hym),  
 Soo fareth it be me<sup>1</sup> and be myn) oldere kyn) : <sup>1</sup> overlined. 1253  
 “Thei shul rathere consente to lyve al soole 1254 She will not  
 As I doo now, than) I shal folwe hem. be married,  
 ffor certeynly I kepe not of þat scoole  
 Where þat her ioye is, but lyke to a drem) but live  
 ffar-weel, fadir, farweel, moder and em), single. 1258

Bk. II. Ch. 31. Whan þat her' counsell is not profitable ;  
I take swych lyffe, I hope is ferm & stabyll." 1260

Ca. 32m.

Ca. 32m.

**Q**wan þei had sayd all þat euyr þei coude, 1261  
þei went a-sundre & parted for a space ;  
Comound her wyttys styll, & no-þing lowde,  
Euyr [h]opyng & loking aftyr grace  
Of þis same mayde, if þei it myght purchase, 1265  
And at a day sette þei cam to-gedyr a-geyn,  
To haue an answer' of hyr plat & pleynd. 1267  
Thei chose a clerke to telle her' alders tale, 1268  
Whch was full wys & of full grete cunningg—  
flor uery stody hys vysage was full pale,  
Alle hys delyte & ioye was in lernyng ;  
Be alle her' consent he had enformyd a thyng 1272  
Whch he wyll vttyr if he may owte spede,  
And all is lost but sche þer-to take hede. 1274  
“ffour þinges,” he seyde, “madame, be in 3ow,  
Whch schuld excite 3ow wedded for to be ;  
If 3e commaunde, I wyll declar' hem nowe.  
þe fyrst of hem is þat grete dygnyte  
Of 3our bloode rygh— I trow þat þer non be 1279  
In all þis werld whch is so hye a-lyed.  
þe secunde also may be sone a-spyed, 1281  
“ffor it is open) to euery mannes eye : 1282  
I mene 3our beute—god mot it preserue !  
þer lyuyth no man þat euer fayrer' syze—  
Euyr lest it tyll tyme þat 3e sterue !  
þat blessed lady whch we clepe mynerue, 1286  
Sche hath 3oue 3ow þe thryd þat I of sayde :  
Whch is cunningg ; it is so on 3ow layde, 1288  
“ It may not fall fro 3ow be no weye. 1289  
And eke þe fourt is þe gret rychesse  
Whch þat 3e welde, I can not tell ne seye,

Whan her counseH is not profytable ; <sup>1 orig. his</sup> Bk. II. Ch. 29.  
 I take swyche lyf, I hope, as is<sup>1</sup> firme and stable." 1260

Ca<sup>m</sup>. 30<sup>m</sup>.

Bk. II. Ch. 30.

**W**hanne thei had seyde al that euere þei cowde, 1261 Katharine's  
 Thei went a-sundre and parted for a space ; lords depart,  
 Comouned her wittis styлле, and no-thing lowde, commune,  
 Euere hopynge and lookynge after grace  
 Of this same mayde, if thei myght it purchace, 1265  
 And at a day sette thei come to-gedyr a-geyn,  
 To haue an answeere of hir plat and pleyne. 1267 and assemble  
 again for her  
 answer.

Thei chose a clerk [to telle] her alderis tale, 1268 They choose  
 Whiche was ful wys and of ful grete connyng— a Clerk to  
 ffor very stody his face was ful pale, argue for  
 them.  
 Al hys delyte and ioye was in lernynge ;  
 Be al her consent he had enformed a þinge 1272 The Clerk  
 Whiche he wil<sup>1</sup> vttere if he may owte speede, <sup>1 MS. wild</sup> urges Katha-  
 And al is lost but she therto take heede. 1274 rine to marry,

"ffoure þingis," he seyde, "madame, ben in yow, 1275  
 Whiche shulde excite you wedded for to bee ;  
 If ye comaunde, I wil declare hem now.  
 The firste of hem is þat grete dignyte <sup>1 not—she over erasure.</sup> 1. for her high  
 Of youre blood rial—I trowe that not boorn his she<sup>1</sup> 1279 lineage,

In al þis world wich is so hy allyed.  
 The secunde also may bee ful soone aspyed, 1281

"ffor it is open to euery man—is eyze : 1282  
 I mene youre beute—god mote it preserue ! 2. for her  
 Ther leueth no man that euere fairere seyze— beauty,  
 Euere leste it til tyme that ye sterue !

That blyssed lady whiche we clepe mynerue, 1286

She hath youe yow the thredde that I sayde :  
 Whiche is connyng ; it is soo on yow layde, 1288 3. for her  
 knowledge,

"It may not falle fro yow be no weye. 1289

And eke the fourthe is the grete rychesse  
 Whiche þat ye welde, I can not telle ne seye, 4. for her  
 riches.



- Bk. II. Ch. 32. ffor, as I suppose, no man may hem gesse.  
 Suffyr me, lady, my resonos to expresse, 1293  
 So þat þei may be on-to 3ow plesaunce,  
 And eke 3our puple, I hope, it schuld avaunce. 1295  
 “The fyrst of alle, as I seyð be-for’, 1296  
 Is 3our’ bloode, 3our reall stok & lyne,  
 Owte of whech̄ 3e wer’ be-gote & bore :  
 þis schuld 3our hert boþe drawe & enclyne  
 ffor to spede our’ purpos well & fyne. 1300  
 Wote 3e nott welle of what lordes 3e came?  
 Kyng alysaundyr’, þat all þis werld wan, 1302  
 “Was of 3our kyn, & so was þat noble kyng 1303  
 Whech̄<sup>1</sup> made þis cyte, babel I mene be name,  
 Eke many an other’ þat her’ in her’ lyuyng <sup>1 þat crossed out</sup>  
 Wer’ enhaunshed hyely wyth gret fame. <sub>after Wh.</sub>  
 Take heed her-to, for goddys sake, madame ; 1307  
 Syth þei weddyd wer’ & eñ on had a make,  
 Dothe 3e þe same, for 3our’ kynrod sake ! 1309  
 “On þe other’ syde of 3our bryte beute 1310  
 þus dar’ I say, & I dar’ stand þer-by :  
 þer is no man þat eyr wyth eye zet see  
 Swech̄ an othyr as 3e be, hardyly.  
 I flatyr not, I am non of þoo, sewyrly ; 1314  
 It is not presyd in noo book þat I rede.  
 þan sey I thus þat natur’ wyth-oute drede, 1316  
 “Whan sche wyll peynt, þer can no man do bettyr. 1317  
 ffor sche schapyth parfytely all þat euer sche dothe,  
 Sche is vndyr godd made be patent lettyr  
 hys vycere generall, if I schall sey sothe,  
 To 3eue mankynd bothe nase, eye, & tothe 1321  
 Of what schape þat hyr lykyth to 3eue,  
 And of hyr werk no man hyr to repreue. 1323  
 “Sche hath 3oue, lady, ryght on-to 3our persone 1324  
 3our’ bryght colour & fayr’ schap eke wyth-alle,

- ffor, as I suppose, no man) may hem gesse. Bk. II. Ch. 30.
- Suffre me, lady, my resonos to expresse, 1293
- Soo þat þei may bee on-to you plesauns,
- And eke youre puple I hope it shuld avausns. 1295
- “The firste of alle, as I seyde before, 1296 The Clerk enlarges on these points.
- Youre blood, youre ryal stook and lyne,
- Oute of whiche ye were be-gote and bore,
- This shulde youre herte bothe drawe and enclyne
- ffor to spedyn) oure purpos wecle and fynce. 1300
- Wote ye not weel of what lordes ye cam ?
- Kyng Alysandre, that al thys word wan, 1302 Alexander
- “Was of youre kyn, and so was þat noble kyng 1303 was of Katharine's kin.
- Whiche made pis citee, babel I mene be name,
- Eke many an other in er lyuyng
- Were enhaunced hyly *wyth* ryght grete fame.
- Taketh heed her-to, for goddys sake, madame ; 1307
- Syth thei wedded were and iche had a make,
- Dooth ye the same, for youre kenredes sake ! 1309 She should marry.
- “On the other syde of youre bryght beute 1310
- Thus dar I seye, and I dar stande ther-by :
- There is<sup>1</sup> noman) that euere with eye yet see <sup>1</sup> overlined. She is very beautiful.
- Suche an other as ye be, hardly.
- I flather not, I am noon) of tho suerly ; 1314
- It is not preynd in ony book þat I reede.
- Thanne sey I thus þat nature with-oute dreede, 1316
- “Whanne she whil poynte, þer can no man) doo better.
- ffor she shapeth *parfyghtly* al þat euere she dooth, 1318 Nature has given her
- She is vnder god made be patent letter
- his viker general, if I shal sey sooth,
- To yeve mankeende bothe nase, eye and tooth, 1321
- Of what shap þat hir lyketh to yeue,
- And of hir werk no man) hir to repreue. 1323
- “She hath youe, lady, ryght on-to youre *persone* 1324 colour and shape,
- Youre bryght colour and fayr shap ryght *wyth*-al,

- Bk. II. Ch. 32. To þis entent 3e schuld not leue a-lone,  
 But wyth charyte departe þis 3yfte 3e schall.  
 But 3e do þus, 3e may sone haue a faß, 1328  
 ffor sche may take þing þat sche 3afe, certayn,  
 And doth allday fro hem þat ar' dysdayn), 1330
- “ Whech can not thank hyr' of hyr hye grace. 1331  
 þerfor', madame, taketh heed her-to, I pray,  
 lese not 3our holde, lese not 3our purchase,  
 lete mekenesse dwelle wyth swyche a fresche may!  
 þan schall we sykyrly of 3ow syng & say 1335  
 þat all is well, ryght as we wold it haue.  
 fferþermor', so godd my sowle mote saue, 1337
- “ I trow, þow natur' had coupled in o persone 1338  
 All hyr 3yftis—as, if sche wyll, sche kan,  
 Than trowe I welle 3e haue hem all a-lone.  
 Of 3our' charyte þan take to 3ow sume man,  
 lete hym haue parte of swech þing as 3e han! 1342  
 Swech goodely 3yftis wold not euer be hyd—  
 If natur' wer' her', þe same sche wold byd. 1344
- “ And for þe thryd poynt in whech I 3ow commende,  
 Whyche is 3our wysdam & 3our gret lernyng : 1346  
 3our' wyttys ar' swech, þer can no man amende  
 3our' conceytes hye, for, if 3e had a kyng,  
 he myght ful well trost in 3our cunnyng, 1349  
 Thow he hym-self had not as 3e haue.  
 And as me þinkyth, 3our soule can 3e not saue 1351
- “ But if 3e comound þis 3yfte to other' mene— 1352  
 It is not 3oue 3ow to haue it all a-lone.  
 þe fyrst meuer', as our' bokes vs ken),  
 Whech syttyth a-boue þe sterrys in hys trone,  
 he 3euyth sume man more wysdham be hys one 1356  
 þan haue xx<sup>ti</sup>, only for þis entent  
 þat he to other' schall comon) þat godd hym sent. 1358

- To this entent ye shulde not lyue allone,  
 But with charyte departe this yifte ye shal.  
 But ye doo thus, ye may soone haue a fal, 1328  
 ffor she may take thyng that she yaf, certayn,  
 And dooth al day fro hem þat arn dysdayn, 1330
- “Whiche can not thanken hir of hir hy grace. 1331  
 Therefore, madame, taketh heed hir to, I you<sup>1</sup> pray, <sup>1 on eras.</sup> Katharine  
 lese not youre hold, lese not youre purchase,  
 lete mekenesse dwelle with suche a freshe may!  
 Thanne shal we sekerly of you syng and say 1335  
 That al is weel, ryght as we wold it haue.  
 fferthermore, so god my sowle mote saue, 1337
- “I trowe, though nature had complet in oon persone  
 Alle hir yeftes—as, if she wil, she can), 1339  
 Than trowe I weel ye haue hem aH allone.  
 Of yowre charyte þanne take to you som man),  
 lete hym haue part of suche þing as ye hane! 1342 should share  
her gifts with  
a Husband.  
 Swiche goodly yyftis wolde not euer ben hyd—  
 If nature were here, the same she wold byd. 1344
- “And for the thredde poynt in whiche I yow commende,  
 Whiche is youre wysdam and youre gret lernynge : 1346 She is very  
wise.  
 Yourre wittis arn swichic, there can noo man amende  
 Yourre conseytes hye, for, if ye had a kyng,  
 he myght ful weel trost in youre conyng, 1349 A King could  
trust her.  
 Thow he hym-self had not as ye haue.  
 And as me thenketh, youre soule can ye not saue 1351
- “But if ye comoun thys yifte to other men— 1352 If she doesn't  
marry,  
 It is not youe you to haue it allone.  
 The first meuere, as oure bookis us ken),  
 Whiche sitteth a-boue the sterris in his trone,  
 he yeueth som man more wysdam be his oone 1356  
 Thanne haue twenty, only to this entent  
 That he to other shal comoun þat god hym sent. 1358

<u>Bk. II. Ch. 32.</u>	“ Take heed herto, for perellis þat may falle If 3e dysplese þat meuer <sup>r</sup> whych sitt a-boue ; hys 3yftis fro 3ow draw a-wey he schaff— þat I spek now, I sey it of very loue, And, as me pinkyth, mech to 3our <sup>r</sup> be-houe. þe fourt poynt of theyse & last of alle, Is þe rychesse whch is on-to 3ow falle. “ 3e be so rych þe world woundyrth of it. What schall 3e do wyth alle þis welth a-lone ? I sey of þis as I seyð of 3our <sup>r</sup> wytt : þei wer <sup>r</sup> I-graunted of godd to 3our <sup>r</sup> persone þat 3e schuld part all þis welth & woone ; þat schall 3e best [do] <sup>1</sup> if 3e take a kyng. her <sup>r</sup> is my tale, her <sup>r</sup> is myw askyng.”	1359 1363 1365 1366 1370 1372
------------------------	--	--

<sup>1</sup> om.Bk. II. Ch. 33.Ca<sup>m</sup>. 33<sup>m</sup>.

<b>T</b> han answerd sone þat swet gracyous wyght, And to þis mayster sche seyð þus a-gayn :	1373
“ 3our <sup>r</sup> commendacyon <sup>w</sup> whch 3e dyd endyth, If it be soth as 3e sayð plat & playn, Schall cause me, þer is no mor <sup>r</sup> to sayn, To plese þat lord wyth all hert & mynde þat in hys 3yftis hath be to me so kynde	1377 1379
“ And sent me graces whch oþer women want. 3e seyð efte : for þat I am so fayr <sup>r</sup> And eke so wys & rych as 3e warant, þerfor <sup>r</sup> me must purpos to haue a ayr <sup>r</sup> , To chese an husbond good & debonayre. A-vyse 3ow, syr <sup>r</sup> , what þat 3e haue sayde ; We wyll not lyght lower þan 3e vs layde.	1380 1384 1386
“ 3e haue sett our <sup>r</sup> loos a-boue so hye, We pase all women þat now formed are. And on 3our <sup>r</sup> grounde a-geyn I þus replye : I wold know to me who þat worthy ware. þis is 3our argument, þis is 3our owne lare	1387 1391

- “Take heed her-to, for perih that may falle, 1359 *Bk. II. Ch. 30.*  
 If ye displese that meure whiche sit a-boue ;  
 his yiftes fro you drawe a-wey he shalle—  
 That I speke now I sey it<sup>1</sup> of very loue, 1 overlined. God may  
 And, as me thenketh, moche to youre be-houe. 1363 His gifts  
 The fourthe poynt of these and last of alle, from her.  
 Is the rychesse whiche is on-to yow falle. 1365 Katharine  
 “Ye be so ryche the world wondreth of it. 1366 has such  
 What shal ye doo wyth al this welthe allone ? riches,  
 I sey of this as I seyde of youre wit :  
 Thei were I-graunted of god to youre persone  
 That ye shuld parte al this welthe and wone. 1370 that she  
 That shal ye best doo if ye take a kyng. should share  
 here is my tale, here is myn askyng.” 1372 them with a  
 Husband.

Ca<sup>m</sup>. 31<sup>m</sup>.

*Bk. II. Ch. 31.*

- T**hanne answerde þat swete gracyous whigt, 1373 Katharine  
 And to this mayster she seyde thus a-geyn) : answers the  
 “Yourre commendacyon) whiche here now ye endyght, wise Clerk.  
 If it be sooth as ye seyde plat and pley),  
 Shal cause me, there is no more to sey), 1377  
 To plesse that lord with al myn) herte and mynde  
 That in his yiftes hath been) to me so kynde 1379  
 “And sente me grace whiche other women) wante. 1380  
 Ye seyde efte : for þat I am so fayre  
 And eke so wys and ryche as ye warante, As he has  
 Therefore me muste purpos to haue an ayre, made her out  
 To chese an husbond good and debonayre. 1384 to be perfec-  
 Advise you, sir, what that ye haue sayde ; tion,  
 We wil not lyght lower than) ye vs layde. 1386  
 “Ye haue sette oure loos a-boue so hye, 1387  
 We passe alle women) þat now foormed are.  
 And on your grounde a-geyn) I thus replye :  
 I wulde knowe to me hoo worthy ware.  
 This is your argument, this is your owne lare 1391

- Bk. II. Ch. 33. þat I am worthyest lyuyng of all women :  
 þan must I hafe þe worthyest of all men), 1393
- “ It folowyth full euene ryght of<sup>1</sup> *3owr* tale, <sup>1</sup> MS. on 1394  
 If 3e take heed. I pray 3ow wher<sup>2</sup> dwellyth he,  
 So wyis, so fayr<sup>2</sup>, so ryeh wyth-outen bale,  
 And of swech lynage born<sup>2</sup> as we be?  
 But if 3e fynde swech on, 3e may leue me 1398  
 I wyll noon<sup>1</sup> haf; þer-for<sup>2</sup> loke well a-boute!— <sup>1</sup> MS. now  
 þe mor<sup>2</sup> 3e plete, þe mor<sup>2</sup> 3e stand *in* doute. 1400
- “ But 3e wyll wyte allgate what I desyr<sup>2</sup>: 1401  
 I schall dyscriue myn<sup>2</sup> husbond whom I wyll hafe.  
 A-boue all lordes he must be, wyth-oute pere,  
 Whom he wyll to spylle or elles to saue;  
 he must be stable, & neuyr turn<sup>2</sup> ne waue 1405  
 ffro noo purpos þat he set hym on—  
 But he be swech, husbond schall he be none 1407
- “ As on-to vs, whom 3e hafe so commended. 1408  
 he must be wyis alsoo, þat he knowe aH,  
 Euery þing þat it may be a-mendyd  
 And reryd a-geyn, or it fully faH.  
 If þer be swech on, receyue hym sone we schall, 1412  
 And ellys, sekyr, we wyll haue husbond none.  
 loke well a-boute if 3e can fynd swyeh on! 1414
- “ fferþer-mor<sup>2</sup> 3et must he haue swech myght 1415  
 þat hym nedyth no help of no creature,  
 But he hym-self be suffyeyent to do þe ryght;  
 And euer hys myght demened wyth mesure.  
 If þat 3e wyll swech on me ensure, 1419  
 I wyll hym hafe, I schall neuer sey nay.  
 Herkenyth also more what I wyll say: 1421
- “ I wold eke þat he schuld be so ryeh 1422  
 þat hym neded not of oþir mennys goode;  
 No lorde *in* erthe I wold haue hym lych;

- That I am wurt[h]yest lyuyng of alle women :  
 Than must I haue þe wurt[h]yest of aH men), 1393
- “ It folweth ful euene ryght of youre tale,  
 If yee take heed. I prey yow where dwelletli he,  
 So wys, so fayr, so ryche wyth-oute bale,  
 And of swyche lynage born) as we bee ? 1394
- But if ye fynde suche oon), ye may leue me 1398  
 I wil noon) haue ; þerfore looke weel a-boute !—  
 The more ye plete, the more ye stonde in doute. 1400
- “ But ye wil wete algat<sup>is</sup> what I desyre : 1401  
 I shal discerie myn) husbonde whom) I wil haue.  
 A-boue alle lordes he muste be and wyth-oute pyre,<sup>1</sup> <sup>1</sup> corr. He must be peerless,  
 Whom he wil to spille or ellis to saue ;  
 he muste be stable, and neuere turne ne waue 1405  
 ffro no purpos that he sette hym up-on)—  
 But he be swiche on husbond, myn) shal he be noon), 1407
- “ As on-to vs, whom) ye haue so commended. 1408  
 he must be wys also, that he knowe al, most wise,  
 Euery thyng that it may be mended,  
 And rered ageyn), or it fully fal.  
 If there be swiche on), receyue hym) soone we shal, 1412  
 And ellys, sekyr, we wil haue husbond noon).  
 looke weel a-bouthe if ye can) fynde swiche oon) ! 1414
- “ fferthermore yet muste he haue suche myght 1415 most mighty,  
 That hym nede non) helpe of other creature,  
 But he hym-self be suffycyent to doo ryght ;  
 An euere his myght demened wyth mesure.  
 If that ye wil swiche on) me ensure, 1419  
 I wyl hym haue, I shal neuere sey nay.  
 herkeneth also more what I wil say : 1421
- “ I wil eke þat he shal be so ryche 1422 most rich,  
 That hym nedeth not of other mannys good ;  
 No lord in erthe I wulde haue hym lyche ;

*Bk. II. Ch. 31.*

she must have a perfect Husband.

But where is a Husband worthy of her to be found ?



- Bk. II. Ch. 31. I desyr' eke he schuld be so large of goode,  
ffire of hert & manfull eke of moode, 1426  
þat, what man onys asked hym any þing,  
he schuld hem graunte mor' þan her' askyng. 1428
- “ he must be fayr' also, he whom I desyre, 1429  
So fayr' & amyable þat he must pase me ;  
ffor syth he schall to me be lord & syr',  
It is good resound þat hys schynyng ble  
Pase hyr colour' whech schall hys seruauant be, 1433  
And on-to hys lordchype boþe seruauant,<sup>1</sup> spouse & wyffe.  
fferþermor' 3et schall þis lordes lyff <sup>1 to be om.?</sup> 1435
- “ Be eterne—elles all þis is nowte, 1436  
All þat is sayd, but he haue þis ;  
ffor syth he schall wyth so gret labour' be sowte,  
As me semeth, þe game went sor' a-mys,  
Whan all wer' well & all in ioye & blys, 1440  
Sodenly to fayle & falle fro swech welth.  
þerfor I tell 3ow, I dysyr' þat hys helthe, 1442
- “ hys age, hys strength, þat all þeis fayl neuyr, 1443  
But euermor' lest, for sorow þat it wold make  
To me whech-tyme þat we schuld dysseuyr—  
ffor other' lord wold I neuermor' take,  
But wepe & morne all in clothys blake. 1447  
þer-for 3e schull me warant he schall not deye,  
þis lord to whom 3e wold me newe alye : 1449
- “ And þan consent I to all þat euer 3e craue, 1450  
Elles nowt. wene 3e þat I wold fare  
As many other' do, & haue as þei haue,  
lych to my modyr, þe sorow, þe wo, þe care  
Whech sche had, whan þei departed ware, 1454  
My lord my fadyr & eke my lady a-sundyr ?  
þat I fle þis, me þinkyth it is no woundyr !” 1456

I desyre eke he shulde bee so large of food,		<i>Bk. II. Ch. 31.</i>
ffre of herte and manful eke of mood,	1426	most liberal,
That, what man asked hym oones ony thyng,		
he shulde hem graunte more than her askyng.	1428	
“ he muste be fayr also whom I desyre,	1429	most fair and
Soo fayre and anyable that he muste passe me ;		amiable,
ffor sith he shal to me be bothe lord and syre,		
It is good reson that his shynyng blee		
passe hir colour whiche shal his seruaunt bee	1433	
And on-to his lordshype bothe seruaunt, spouse and wyf.		
fferthermore yet shal this lordys lyf	1435	
“ Ben eterne—ellis al this is nought	1436	immortal,
Al þat is seyde, but if he haue this ;		
ffor sith he shal with soo grete labour be sought,		
As me semeth, the game wente sore amys,		
Whan al were weel and al in Ioye and blys	1440	
Sodey[n]ly to fayle and falle fro swiche welthe.		
Therefore I telle you, I desyre that his holthe,	1442	
“ his age, his strengthe, that alle these fayle neuere,		and ever
But euere-more leste, for sorwe þat it wolde make	1444	vigorous.
To me whiche-tyme þat we shulde disseuere—		
ffor other lord wolde I neuere-more take,		
But wepe and moorne al in clothys blake.	1447	
Therefore ye shul me warrant he shal not deye,		When a man
This lord to whom ye wolde me newe alleye :	1449	like this can
		be found,
“ And than consente I to al þat euere ye craue,	1450	Katharine
Ellis nought. wene ye that I wold fare		’ll marry
As many other doo, and haue as <sup>1</sup> thei haue,	<sup>1</sup> as corrected.	him; else
lyche to my moder, the sorwe, þe woo, þe care		not.
Whiche she had, whan thei departed ware,	1454	
My lord my fadyr and eke my lady a-sunder ?		
Thou I flee this, me thenketh it is no wonder !”	1456	

- W**han sche had seyde þese wordes all a-lowde 1457  
 And vttyrd hyr conceyte pleyndly to hem alle,  
 þer was no man as þan þat him kepe cowde  
 ffro wepyng teres—full sor' þei gun downe falle.  
 hyr modyr fel downe as rownde as any balle, 1461  
 ffor very sorow sche swoundyd in þat place,  
 ffor now sche seeth þer is non othyr grace. 1463
- Sche was lyft vp & comforted new a-gayne, 1464  
 And at þe last, whan sche had caut wynde,  
 “Alas,” sche seyde, “sorow hath me nye slayne!  
 Wher' schall we seke, wher' schall [we] swych on fynde?  
 My dowtyr, I trowe, hath not well her' mynde, 1468  
 Sche wote not what sche seyth, sche is so made!  
 Who may it be? wher' may swech on be halde? 1470
- “As sche desyryth it is not parde! possible, 1471  
 Ther is non swech, þan schall sche neuer haue non;  
 Neuyr deye, neuer seke, he must be inpassible!—  
 We may well see sche scornyth vs echon.  
 Go we fast hens, let hyr haue it a-loone! 1475  
 Worcheþ & rychesse sche schall ful soone lese,  
 No defaute in vs, for we may not chese.” 1477
- Thus wayled þe lordes as þei sote be-decne, 1478  
 Cursyng hyr maysterys, cursyng her' bokes alle:  
 “Alas,” þei seyde, “þat euer any qweene  
 þus schuld be comered! our' worcheþ is downe falle!  
 God send neuyr reme kyng þat wereth a calle! 1482  
 We pray godd þat he neuyr woman make  
 So gret a mayster as sche is, for our' sake.” 1484
- Thus wyth wo, mych care & gruechyng 1485  
 þei parte a-soundyr, ech man on-to hys home  
 þei goo or ryde or sayle at her' lykyng;

Cam. 32<sup>m</sup>.Bk. II. Ch. 32.

- W**han she had seyde these wordys alle allowde 1457  
 And vtteryd hir conseyte pleynty to hem alle,  
 There was no man as þanne þat hym kepe cowde Katharine's  
Lords weep;  
 Fro weepyng teeres—ful sore thei gunne doun) falle.  
 hir moder fel doun) as round as ony balle, 1461  
 for very sorwe she swouned in that place,  
 ffor now she seeth ther is noon) other grace. 1463
- She was lyfted vp and comforted newe a-gayn), 1464  
 And at the laste, whan) she had caute wynde,  
 “Allas,” she seyde, “sorwe hath me ny slayn) !  
 Where shal we seeke, where shal we swyche oon) fynde ?  
 My doughter, I trowe, hath not weel hir mynde, 1468 her Mother  
thinks she's  
mad:  
 She wot not what she seyth, she is soo mad !  
 how may it bee ? where may swiche oon be had ? 1470
- “As she desireth it is not trewely possible, 1471  
 There is noon) suche, than) shal she neuere haue noon) ; no immortal  
man can be  
found.  
 Neuere deye, neuere seek, he muste bee impassible !—  
 We may weel see she skorneth vs eche oon).  
 Go we fast hens, lete hir haue it alloon) ! 1475  
 Wurshipe and rychesse shal she ful soone lese,  
 No defaute in vs, ffor we may not chese.” 1477
- Thus weyled the lordes as þei sete be-deene, 1478  
 Cursyng hir mayster's, cursyng hir book's alle :  
 “Allas,” thei seyde, “that euere ony queene  
 Thus shuld be comered ! oure wurshype is doun) falle !  
 God sende neuere reem a kyng that wereth a calle ! 1482  
 We prey god þat he neuere woman make  
 Soo grete a mayster as she is, for hir sake.” 1484
- Thus wyth woo, meche care and grutchyngc 1485 The Parli-  
ment breaks  
up. Its  
members  
grumble.  
 Thei parte a-sondre, iche man) to his hom  
 Thei goo or ryde or sayle as here lykyngc ;

<u>Bk. II. Ch. 31.</u>	ffor wyth þe qween wroth þei are echon.	
	Sche is now left for hem to dwell a-lon;	1489
	Sche may stody, rede, reherse, & wryght.	
	þus is þe parlement fynchyd, & euery wyght	1491
	Is in drede & leueth wyth hert suspens,	1492
	lokyng alwey aftyr new chaungyng;	
	Alle her' wyttes & all her' grete expens	
	Are now but <sup>1</sup> lost. & her' schall be þe endyng <sup>1 on the margin.</sup>	
	Of þis same boke, whech trectyth of þe pletyng	1496
	Be-twyx þis qween) & all hyr lychemen.	
	God send vs parte of hyr prayer. AmEX.	1498

Bk. III. Prolog.

## Liber iij. (Prolog.)

<b>S</b> ith no man may her' in þis lyffe present	1
Doo no good dede, but he enspyred be	
Of þat goste whech fro þe omnipotent	
flader of heuyn & fro þe sune so fre	
Is sent to us, ryght so be-leue now we	5
þat [it] is best þat we our' labour' commende	
On-to þis gost, if we wyll haue goode ende.	7
ffor I haue tolde 3ow schortly, as I can,	8
þe byrth, þe kynrod, þe nobyllhed of þis mayde,	
þe gret disputyng of lordes who it be-gan,	
And eke hyr answer', what sche to hem sayd;	
þis haue I pleyzly now be-for 3ow layde	12
In swech ryme, as I coude best deuysel—	
Schall neuyr man lese no labour' ne no seruyse	14
Whech þat he doth on-to þis noble qween);	15
And now hens-for-warde schall be my labour	
To tell of hyr be ordre & be-deen)	
Who sche was womne to crist, our' sauynour,	
Who meruelously he entred to hyr toure	19
I mene daun adryan þe munke, whech our' feyth	
fyrst to hyr tawte, as þis cronycle seyth.	21

ffor wyth the queen wroth thei are iche oon.		<i>Bk. II. Ch. 32.</i>
She is now left for hem to dwelle allow ;	1489	
She may stody, reede, reherce and write.		
Thus is the parlement fynyshed, and euery whyte	1491	The meeting of the Parliament has been in vain.
Is in dreded and lyuoth wyth hert suspens,	1492	
lookyng alwey after newe chaungynge ;		
Alle her wyttis and alle her grete expens		
Arn now but lost. and [here] shal be the endyng		
Of this same book whiche treteth of þe pleytynge <sup>1</sup>	1496	
Be-twyxe the queen and alle hir lygemen). <sup>1</sup>	MS. pleyntyng	
God sende vs part of hir prayere, amen.	1498	

---

**Liber iij. Ca<sup>m</sup>. primum.<sup>1</sup>**

1 r. Prolog.

*Bk. III. Ch. 1.*

<b>S</b> ith noo man may here in this lyf present	1	
Doo no good dede, but he enspyred bee		
Of þat goost whiche fro the omnypotent		To the Holy Spirit
ffadir of heuene and fro the sone soo free		
Is sent to vs, ryght soo be-leue now we	5	
That it is best that we oure labour commende		I commend my work.
On-to this goost, if we wil haue good cende.	7	
ffor I haue tolde yow shorthly, as I kan,	8	I've told you of Katharine's birth,
The berth, þe kynrede, þe noblehed of þis mayde,		
The grete disputyng of lordis hov it be-gan,		
And eke hir answe, what she to hem sayde ;		and her refusal to marry ;
This haue I pleyntly now be-fore yow layde	12	
In swiche ryme as I cowde beest deuyse—		
Shal neuere man lese labour ne seruyse	14	
Whiche that he dooth on-to this noble queen ;	15	
And now hens-forthward shal ben my labour		now I'll tell you
To telle of hir be ordre and be-deen		
how she was wonne to cryst, oure saucour,	18	how she was won to Christ.
how meruelyously <sup>1</sup> he entred in to hir tour	1 or. meruelyously	
I mene daun Adryan the monke, whiche oure feyth		
ffirst to hir taught, as this cronycle seyth.	21	

<u>Bk. III. ProL.</u>	And if 3e dowte, 3e reders of þis lyffe,	22
	Wheyther' it be sothe, 3e may well vnderstande :	
	Mech þing hath be do whech hath be ful ryue	
	And is not wretyn ne cam neuer to our' hande,	
	Mech þing eke hyd in many dyuerse lande ;	26
	Euene so was þis lyffe, as I seyð in þe prologe be-for',	
	Kept all in cage, a-boute it was not bore.	28
	Now schall it walk wyder' þan enyr it dede,	29
	In preysyng & honour' of þis martir Katerine ;	
	hyr lyff, her' feyth, hyr passyõ schall neuer be dede	
	Whyll þat I leue, I wold fulfayn' enelyne	
	hyr holy prayer' to be my medycyne	33
	And eke my tryacle a-geyns þe venym foule	
	Whech þat þe deuyll hath þrowyn on my soule.	35
	I dresse me now streyt on-[to] þis werk.	36
	Thow blyssyd may, comfort þou me in þis !	
	Be-cause þou wer' so lerned & swech a clerk,	
	Clerkes must loue þe, reson' for-sothe it is !	
	Who wyll oute lerne, trost to me, I-wys,	40
	he dothe mech þe bettyr if he trost in þis may.	
	þus I be-leue, & haue do many a day.	42

	<b>T</b> her' was an hermyth, as elde bokes telle,	43
	A munke, a man of ful hys grace & fame ;	
	Be þe see, þei sey, sett was <sup>1</sup> þoo <sup>2</sup> hys celle—	<sup>1</sup> MS. wall <sup>2</sup> overlined.
	Adryane, I rede þat it was hys name ;	
	hys knelyng had made hys knes full ny lame ;	47
	A prest he was eke, sothely, as I fynde,	
	he had a chapell in whech he song & dynde,	49
	Slepe & welk—for other' hous had he non.	50
	þis man knew þe counseff of þis mayde	
	ffyrst of alle—for Athanas, of whom long a-gõd	
	We spoke be-for, was not þan arayde	
	Ne eke a-noynted wyth baytym ne assayde	54

And if ye doughte, ye rederes of this lyf,	22	<i>Bk. III. Ch. 1.</i>
Whether it be sooth, ye may weel vnderstande :		
Moche thyng hath be doon whiche hath ben ful ryf		
And is not wretyn ne cam neuere to oure hande,		
Moche þing hid eke in many dyuers lande ;	26	
Euene so was this lyf, as I seyde in the prolog before,		
Kepte al in cage, a-boute it was not bore.	28	
Now shal it walke wydere than euere it dede,	29	Her fame shall spread ouer wider.
In preysyng and honour of this mayde Kataryne ;		
hir lyf, hir feyth, hir passyon shal euere-more sprede		
Whil þat I leue, I wolde ful fayn enclyne		
hir holy preyere to be myn medecyne	33	
And eke my treacle a-geyns the venym foule		
Whiche that the deuele hath throwen on my soule.	35	
I dresse me now streyt on-to this werk.	36	
Thou blyssed may, comforte þou me in this !		Blessed Maiden, strengthen me in my work!
Be-cause þou were so lerned and swiche a clerk,		
Clerkys muste louen þe, reson forsothe it is !		
Who wil owte lerne, troste to me, I-wys,	40	
he dooth moche þe bettere if he truste in þis may.		
Thus I be-leue, and haue doo many a day.	42	

Ca<sup>m</sup>. secundum.<sup>1</sup>      <sup>1</sup> r. primum.*Bk. III. Ch. 2.*

<b>T</b> here was an Ermyte, as olde bookys telle,	43	There was a hermit named Adrian.
A monke, a man of ful hey grace and fame ;		
Be þe see, thei seyð, set was tho his celle—		
Adryan, I rede that it was his name ;		
hys kneelynge had maad his knees ful ny lame ;	47	
A preest he was eke, soothly, as I fynde,		
he had a chapel in whiche he song and dnynde,	49	
Sleep and welk—for other hous he had noon.	50	
This man knew the counseiff of þis mayde		This monk Adrian first converted Katharine.
ffirste of alle—for Athanas, of whom longe agoon		
We spoke before, was not þan arayede		
Ne eke anoynted w <sup>th</sup> baptem ne assayede	54	



<u>Bk. III. Ch. 1.</u>	<i>Wyth</i> goldys seorge; for he was turned be hyr',	
	And sche <i>conuertyd</i> be miracle, as 3e schul here.	56
	This man was ordeynd lych, I vnderstande,	57
	To seynt Ioseph our' lady to lede & gyde:	
	ffor euene as Ioseph <i>in</i> to egypte lande	
	Went <i>wyth</i> our' ladye, euermor' be hyr syde,	
	So was þis Ermyte þan <i>in</i> þat tyde	61
	A bodyly leder to þis gostly werke,	
	Whech-tyme þat cryst þis noble mayd schulde merk	63
	<i>Wyth</i> hys crosse to make hyr strong & stabylle	64
	A-geyns þe flesch, a-geyns þe affluens	
	Of wordly delyte, & make hyr' to hym abyll,	
	Bothe spouse & wyffe; whech feestly dyligens	
	Was wroght so wondrously, it paseth experiens	68
	Of wordly men. wherfor' I am a-gast	
	To spek <i>per</i> -of, knowing it passeth þe gnast	70
	Of my cunzyng, but þat I leue <i>in</i> hope	71
	þat thorow þe prayer' of hyr & adryane	
	I schall haue myght & strength eke to grope	
	Thys holy mater', to telle forth of þis man	
	Who þat he lyuyd & who he vytail wan.	75
	ffor on-to town wolde he neuyr aproche,	
	But tylyd hys londe heye up-on a roche.	77
	Sumetyme of schyppes þat ryden þer' fastby,	78
	had he comfort of mete & eke of drynke.	
	Sexty 3er' þis lyffe he led, sothely,	
	þat neuyr went he a-way fro þat brynke.	
	þus party <i>wyth</i> elmesse, party <i>wyth</i> hys swynke,	82
	Alle blyssydly <i>in</i> abstinens & prayer'	
	þis lyffe led he, þis ermyte or þis frere—	84
	ffor frere was name þan to all crysten men	85
	Comon, I rede, & ermytys wer' þei called	
	þat dwelt fro town, mylys sex or ten,	
	Wer' þei growen, wer' þei bar' or balled;	
	Be-cause þei wer' eke all soole I-walled,	89

Wyth godd <sup>is</sup> scourge ; for he was turned be hir,		<i>Bk. III. Ch. 2.</i>
And she conuerted be myracle, as ye shul here.	56	
This man was ordeyned lieche, I vnderstonde,	57	
To seynt Ioseph oure lady to lede and gyde :		He led her as Ioseph led St. Mary into Egypt.
ffor euene as Ioseph in to Egipte londe		
Wente wyth oure lady, euere more be hir syde,		
Soo was this ermyte thanne in that tyde	61	
A bodyly leedere to þis goostely werk,		
Whiche-tyme þat crist þis noble mayde shuld merk	63	
Wyth his cros to make hir strong and stabil	64	
A-geyns the flesh, a-geyns the affluens		
Of wordly delyte, and make hir to hym abil,		
Bothe spouse and wyf ; whiche feestly dylygens		
Was wrought so wonderly, it passeth experiens	68	
Of wordly men. wherfore I am a-gast		
To speke ther-of, knowynge it passeth þe gnast	70	
Of myn connynge, but þat I leue in hope	71	
That thurgh the prayere of hir and Adrian		Thro' his prayer and Katharine's
I shal haue myght and strengthe eke to grope		
This holy mater, to telle foorth of this man		I'll tell you about him.
how þat he leued and how þat he vitayl wand.	75	
ffor on-to tounne wolde he neuere approche,		
But tilled his lond hey vp-on a roche.	77	
Sontyme of shippys þat reden there faste-by	78	
he had conforte of mete and eke of drynk.		
Sexty yeer he ledde this lyf soothly,		Adrian liued 60 years on a rock.
That neuere wente he away fro that brynk.		
Thus party wyth elmesse, party wyth swynk,	82	
Alle blessedly in abstinens and prayere		
This lyf led he, this ermyte or this frere—	84	
ffor frere was name thanne to alle cristene men	85	Friars who dwelt 6 or 10 miles from a town were cald Hermits.
Comou[n], <sup>1</sup> I rode, and ermytes were thei called	<sup>1</sup> n. erased.	
That dwelled fro town myles sexe or teen,		
Were thei growen, were thei bare or balled ;		
Be-cause thei were eke al sool I-walled,	89	

Bk. III. Ch. 1. Sume men called hem munkys, wyth-owte drede—  
ffor þeis wordes, munke & soole, ar on), as we rede. 91

Bk. III. Ch. 2.

Cam. 2m.

**W**han þis ermyte was fall (!) stope *in* age, 92  
And myght not byd hys bedys as he was wont,  
þan wold he goo forthe a grete passage,  
Ryght be þe see, on stones scharp & blunte,  
And euyr hys body wold he chyde & runte : 96  
“ What eylth þe now, why art þou so some oute  
Of holy prayer, of werkes þat be deuoute ? 98  
“ Now god,” he scyd, “ þat sytthest hey *in* trone,  
ffor-zeue it me þat I do not so weell  
As I was wone ! my body is cause a-lone,  
And not my soule, ful sykyrly þis I feele ;  
I may not wake ne fast neuyr a dele, 103  
I can no mor—all þis defaute is myne ;  
If any goodenes haue I, lord þat is þin. 105  
“ Demene<sup>1</sup> not me, lorde, aftyr my febyll myght, <sup>1 r. Deme?</sup>  
But aftyr [my] wylle, þat euyr desyreth<sup>1</sup> *in* on) <sup>1 MS. sesyreth</sup>  
Wyth blessed dedes to be a-losed *in* þe syte  
Of þi mercy ! for þow; my myght be gon),  
þet is my soule as stable as any ston), 110  
And euyr schal be, as I can best deuyse,  
In þi drede & eke *in* þi seruyse.” 112  
Vn-nethys had he ended hys oryson), 113  
he saw a syght, a meruelous þo, he þowte.  
ffor as he walkyd þe strondes up & down),  
he fond a þing whech he had long I-south,  
A blessed syght on-to hys eye was browte : 117  
A qween) he sey, of vysage & stature,  
Pasyng full mech alle erdely creature, 119  
All hyr aray a-cordyng eke þer-too, 120  
So bryght a corownd), so bryte clothys eke !  
he wot not what hym is best to do ;

Some men called hem monkes wyth-outen dreed—  
ffor this woord monk and sool are on), as we reed. 91

Bk. III. Ch. 2.

Cam. terciu<sup>m</sup>.

Bk. III. Ch. 3.

Whanne this ermyte was fer stope in age, 92  
And myght not bydden his bedes as he was wont,

When Adrian  
couldn't pray,

Thanne wolde he gon) foorth a grete passage  
Ryght be the see on) stones sharp and blont,  
And euere his body wolde he chyde and ront : 96

he walkt on  
the stony  
shore,

“What eyleth the now, why art þou soo some oute  
Of holy preyere and of werkys that ben) deuoute ? 98

“Now god,” he seyde, “þat sittest hyest in throne, 99  
ffor-yeue me þat I doo not soo wel

As I was wont ! my body is cause allone  
And not my soule, ful sekerly this I feel ;  
I may not wake ne faste neuere a deel, 103

and told God  
that his body  
was at fault,  
not his soul.

I can) no more—al this defaute is myn) ;  
If ony goodnesse haue I, lord, þat is thyn). 105

“Deme<sup>1</sup> not me, lord, after my febyl myght, <sup>1 orig. Demene</sup>  
But after my wyl, þat euere desireth in oon) 107

Wyth blyssed dedes to be allowed in the sight  
Of thi mercy ! for though my myght be goon),  
Yet is my sowle as stable as ony stoon), 110

And euere shal be, as I can) beste deuyse,  
In thi dreed and eke in thi seruise.” 112

Vnnethes had he eended his oryson), 113  
he saugh a sight, a meruelous tho, he thought.

ffor as he walked the strondes vp and down),  
he fond a þing whiche he had long I-sought,  
A blyssed sight on-to his eye was brought : 117

As Adrian  
is on the sea-  
shore,

A queen) he sawe, of vysage and of stature  
Passyng ful meeche aft) erthely creature, 119

he sees the  
Virgin Mary.

Alle hir array acordyng eke ther-too, 120  
Soo bryght a coroun), soo bryght clothes eke.

he wot not what hym is best to doo ;

<u>Bk. III. Ch. 2.</u>	he is not febyll, he is no lenger' seke,	
	hys blode is come a-geyn on-to hys cheke,	124
	hys eyne haue caute of new coumfort a lyght,	
	hys body is 3onthyd, he þinketh hym-self ful lygth.	126
	Than gan þis ermyte stalk <sup>1</sup> ny & nye, <sup>1 r. stalken</sup>	127
	To se þis syght, þis seleowth new þing.	
	“ O benedicite ! ” he seyð, “ mech meruayle haue I,	
	þat þis lady fresch & fayr' & 3yng	
	Is come so sodenly hydyr in þis morownyng,	131
	And schyppe ne boote ne can I now her' see,	
	Neyther' on lond ne fletyng on þe see.”	133
	Thus merueylyng be-twyx ioye & drede	134
	A full softe pase on-to hyr-ward he went ;	
	ffor, as hym thowte, sche also to hym 3ede.	
	But sche spake fyrst wyth full meke entent :	
	“ Brothyr,” sche sayde, “ þe lord onzipotent,	138
	Whech made þe heuyn, þe watyr, & þe loude,	
	he saue 3ow eyr & blysse 3ow wyth hys honde ! ”	140
	The ermyte þan on-to our' lady sayde :	141
	“ Gramercy, madame ! & he kepe 3ow alsoo	
	ffro aH myshap, þat 3e be not a-frayde	
	Of noo dysese, but eyr wyth-owten woo !	
	I prey to godd, 3e mote be on of thoo	145
	Whech þat schall dwelle wyth hym in hys blys,	
	Wher' may no ioye ne no solace mys.”	147
	“ Good syr,” seyð sche, “ I wolde 3ow pray full fayn	148
	To do a massage fro me vn-to a whyte	
	Whech þat I loue & trost, 3e may hyr sayn—	
	So doth my sone, for werkys þat be ryght	
	Whech þat sche vsyth, þat mayde fayr' & bryte.	152
	And 3e, syr, our' massanger' I wold 3e were,	
	Our' wyll & our' wordes to þis lady for to bere.”	154
	“ O mercy, godd ! ” seyð þoo þis adryan,	155
	“ What, wold 3e now I schuld forsak my celle,	
	fforsake my seruyce & to be 3our' man ?	

he is not feble, he is no lengher seeke,		<i>Bk. III. Ch. 3.</i>
his blood is come a-geyn on-to his cheeke,	124	
his eyne hand caute a newe comfort of lyght,	<sup>1</sup> The 4 last words on erasure.	
his body is yonghted, he thenketh, and strengthed in myght. <sup>1</sup>		
Than gan this ermyte stalke ny and ny,	127	He draws nigh to her.
To see this sight, this selkouth newe thyng.		
“O benedicite!” he seyde, “moche merueyle haue I		
That this lady fresh and fayr and ying,		
his come soo soleylnly hedir this mornying,	131	
And ship ne boot ken I noon her to be <sup>1</sup>	<sup>1</sup> ken—be on erasure.	
Neyther on lond ne fletyng on the see.”	133	
Thus merueylyng be-twyxe Ioye and dreed	134	
A ful soft paas on-to hir he went;		
ffor, as hym thought, she also to hym yeed.		
But she spak first wyth ful meke entent:		
“Brother,” she seyde, “the lord omnipotent,	138	She blesses him.
Whiche made þe heuene, þe water, and þe lond,		
he saue yow euere and blysse yow wyth his hond!”	140	
The ermyte thanne on-to oure lady sayde:	141	
“Gromericy, madame, and he kepe you also		Adrian thanks the Virgin Mary.
ffro al myshap, that ye be not afrayed		
Of no disese, but euere with-oute wo!		
I prey to god ye mote ben on of tho	145	
Whiche shal dwelle wyth hym in his blis,		
Where may no ioye ne solas mys.”	147	
“Good sir,” seyde she, “I wolde you prey ful fayn	148	She asks him to be her messenger to a Maiden.
To doo a masage fro me on-to a whight		
Whiche þat I love and truste, ye may hir sayn—		
Soo dooth my sone, for werkys tho be ryght	151	
Whiche þat <sup>1</sup> she vseth, þat mayde fair and bryght.	<sup>1</sup> MS. þo?	
And ye, sir, oure masager I wolde ye were,		
Oure wyl and oure wordis to þis lady for to bera.”	154	
“O mercyful god,” seyde tho þis Adryan,	155	
“What, wolde ye now I shulde forsake my celle,		
ffor-sake my seruyse and to be your man?”		

Bk. III. Ch. 2. I haue made couenaunt cuyr' her' to dwelle  
 Whyl þat me lestys brethe, flesch & felle, 159  
 Tyl ihesu wyll fecch me, þat was maydenys sone.  
 Spek not þer-of, for it may not be don!" 161

Bk. III. Ch. 3.

Ca<sup>m</sup>. 3<sup>m</sup>.

**T**han sayd þat mayde a-geyð on-to hym : 162  
 " Art þou a-vysed what þou hast seyð to me?  
 þou prayed full late, whyll þe nyte was dyme,  
 þat god hym-self no-þing wrothe schuld be  
 Wyth þin age ne wyth þi febylte ; 166  
 þou prayed eke hys modyr, I herd it, loo,  
 Sche schuld be mene ryght be-twyx 3ow too. 168  
 " I am sche to whom þat þou so ofte 169  
 Wyth pytous noys hast cryed boþe day & nyght  
 þat I schuld help þi dulnes for to softe.  
 þer-for I wyll þou force þe wyth þi myghte  
 To be my massanger, & eke my gostly knyth, 173  
 On-to þat lady whom I loue full wele—  
 3et hath sche of me knowyng neuer a deele. 175  
 " Therfor busk þe to Alysaundyr' for to goo, 176  
 On-to þat cye whech men called sune-tyme  
 Grete labell— þer be swyçh no moo  
 In all þis werld, þus seyth every pylgryme.  
 What schuld I lenger tary in my ryme? 180  
 þou schalt fynde þer' a qween full reall,  
 And on-to hyr' bodyly<sup>1</sup> speke þou schall. <sup>1 r. boldly :</sup> 182  
 " Sey ryght thus : ' þe lady, boþe modyr & mayde, 183  
 Gretyth hyr<sup>1</sup> well, & þat in goodely wyse, <sup>1 r. þe</sup>  
 Ryth be me, for sche both comaunde & prayde  
 þat I schuld doo to hyr þis goode seruyse.'  
 þus schall þou sey, ryth as I denyse— 187  
 Sche schall make straung & be a-stoynd sor',  
 leue not þis massage for þat cause neuer-þe-more ! 189

I haue made conuenaunt euere here for to dwelle		<i>Bk. III. Ch. 3.</i>
Whil þat me lesteth breth, flesh and felle,	159	Adrian says he has vowd to live on his rock.
Til ihesu wil fetehe me, þat was maydenes sone.		
Speke not ther-of for it may not be done!"	161	

Ca<sup>m</sup>. *quartum.*

*Bk. III. Ch. 4.*

<b>T</b> hanne seyde þat mayden a-geyn on-to hym :	162	The Virgin
“ Art thou avysed what þou hast seyde on-to me ?		

Thou preyed ful late, whan the nyght was dyn),	
That god hym-selue no-þing wrooth shulde bee	
With thyn age ne wyth thi febilte ;	166

þou preydest eke is moder, I herde it loo,	
She shuld be mene ryght be-twyxe yow too.	168

“ I am she to whom þat thou soo ofte	169	tells Adrian who she is,
Wyth pytous voys hast cryed bothe day and nyght,		
That shulde helpe thy dulnesse for to softe.		and that he is

Therfor I wil þou force the wyth thi myght	
To be my masager, and eke my goostly knyght,	173

On-to that lady whom I loue ful weel—	
Yet hath she of me knowyng neuere a deel.	175

“ Therefore buske the to Alysaundyr for to goo,	176	to go to Alex- andria,
On-[to] that citee whyche men called som-tyme		
Grete babel—there be suche no moo		

In al þis worlde, þus seyde euery pilgryme.	
What shuld I lengere tarye in myn ryme ?	180

þou shalt fynde there a queen ful real,	
And on-to hir bodyly spekyn þou shal.	182

“ Sey ryght thus : ‘ the lady bothe moder and mayde		and greet Katharine from her.
Greeteth hir <sup>1</sup> weel, and that in goodly wise,	184	<sup>1</sup> r. þe
Right be me, for she bothe commaunde and prayde		
That I shuld doo to hir this good seruyse.’		

Thus shalt þou seyn), ryght as I deuyse—	187
--	-----

She shal make straunge and be astoynd sore,	
Leue not þis masage for þat cause neuere the more !	189



<u>Bk. III. Ch. 3.</u>	“ It is not goo now but a lytyll whyle	190
	Syth þat þis lady was wyth hyr counsayle,	
	In whech þer was ordeynyd many a wyle	
	And many a mene, & spent mych trauayle,	
	To do hyr wedde ; but it myght not a-vayle.	194
	ffor I my-selue haue ordeynd hyr a lorde,	
	To whom sche schall in elennesse well a-corde.	196
	“ Eke þat þou schuld þe mor’ deynthe haue	197
	To do þis massage & all þis grete labour’,	
	I wyll þe tell pleynty, I wyll not waue,	
	I wyll not varye, but the lynage, <sup>1</sup> þe honour’,	<sup>1</sup> MS. lynager)
	The uertu, þe occupacyon of þis swete flour’	201
	þou schalt it knowe be informacyoun of me,	
	Boþe hyr goodenes, hyr cunnynge & hyr degre.	203
	“ ffyrst of alle þou whyte <sup>1</sup> sche is a when), <sup>2</sup>	<sup>1</sup> r. wyte <sup>2</sup> == qwen)
	A ryche, a reall, a wys, & eke a fayr’—	
	ffor in þis werlde swech no moo þer been ;	
	Sche hath no chylde ne sche hath non ayr’,	
	ffor, if sche leue, sche schalt loue bettyr þe hayr’	208
	Than any <sup>1</sup> reynes, aftyr þat sche be drawe	<sup>1</sup> corr. from ony
	On-to my seruyse & to my summes lawe.	210
	“ Sche is also, in sothenesse, a ryth grete clerke,	211
	And eke a sotyll, in alle þe seuynd seyens ;	
	þat schewyd sche welle bothe wyth worde & werke	
	In þe parlement, wher’ was grete expans	
	Of werdly rychesse, & eke grete dyligens	215
	Of werdly wytte to make hyr wedded be ;	
	But þei sped not. a heyer’ lord of degre	217
	“ Schal be hyr spouse, whom sche zet not knowyth ;	218
	Sche must for-ber’ fyrst mech þing, certayn,	
	I mene þe rychesse in whech sche now flowyth ;	
	ffor of pouert schall sche be as fayn	
	As eyr sche was of rychesse, sothe to sayn,	222
	Or of ony welth or ony grete honour’.	
	I schall be to hyr a counfortour’	224

“ It is not goo now but a lytel while	190	<u>Br. III. Ch. 1.</u>
Sith that this lady was with hir counsayle,		
In whiche ther <sup>r</sup> was ordeyned many a wyle		
And many a mene, and spente moche <i>trauayle</i> ,		
To doo hir be <sup>1</sup> wedde ; but it myght not avayle. <sup>1</sup> overl.	194	
ffor I my-self haue ordeyned hir a loord,		
To whom she shal in clemesse weel acoord.	196	She has provided a Husband for Katharine.
“ Eke þat þou shuldest þe more deynte haue	197	
To doo this massage and al þis grete labour,		
I wyl the telle pleynty, I wil not waue,		
I wil not varye, but the lynage, the honour,		
The vertu, þe occupacyon of þis swete flour	201	
Thou shal it knowe be informacyon of me,		
Bothe hir goodnesse, hir comynge and hir degree.	203	
“ ffirste of alle þou wite she is a queen),	204	The Virgin tells Adrian that Katharine is a Queen,
A ryche, a real, a wys, and eke a fayre—		
ffor in þis world no mo swiche ther been) ;		
She hath no chyld ne she hath noon <sup>1</sup> ayre,	<sup>1</sup> MS. noon	
ffor, if she leue, she shal loue bether þe hayre	208	
Than ony regnes, after þat she be drawe		
On-to my seruyse and on-to my sones lawe.	210	
“ She is also, in soothnesse, a right grete clerk,	211	
And eke a sotil, in alle the seuene seyens ;		who knows the 7 Sciences:
That shewed she weel bothe in word and werk		
In the <i>parlement</i> , where was gret expens		
Of woordly ryches, and eke grete diligens	215	
Of woordly wytte to make hir wedded to bee ;		
But þei sped not. An hyere lord of degree	217	
“ Shal ben hir spouse, whom she yet not knoweth ;	218	
She must for-bere first moche þing, certayn),		but she must give up her riches.
I mene the rychesse in whiche she now floweth ;		
ffor of pouerte shal she ben) as fayn)		
As euere she was of rychesse, sooth to sayn),	222	
Or of ony welth or ony grete honour.		
I shal ben) to hir a comfortour	224	

<u>Bk. III. Ch. 3.</u>	“ In all her' nede, whan þat sche schall fyght	225
	A-geyns þe heresy of philosophye ;	
	Of all her' resones sche schall rek but lyght,	
	Thow þei her' sophymes sotyly multiplye ;	
	Sche schall asoyle hem & a-geyn replye	229
	So myght[i]ly, þat þei schul lese her' art,	
	And sche schall drawe hem to be in goddis part.	231
	“ ffor aftyr me, I tell þe sykyrlye,	232
	þer was neuer swech an other' lady lyuande	
	þat wyth-owte ensaunple cowde leue parfytely,	
	As sche hath now newly take on hande	
	So holy a lyffe. þerfor, þou vnderstande,	236
	Sche schall haue eke as glorious [a] hende	
	As eyr had woman þat lyued her' in kende.”	238

Bk. III. Ch. 4.**Ca<sup>m</sup>. 4<sup>m</sup>.**

<b>W</b> han þat our' lady had seyde all þis þing,	239
þis ermyte fell to grounde plat & pleynd,	
he was a-ferd & raueched in swownyng.	
And sche full mekely lyft hym vp a-geyn,	
“ Be not a-ferd,” sche gan þoo to hym seyn.	243
And he answerd : “ gramerey now, madame.	
ffor-gyfe me now ! in þat I was to blame	245
“ That I knew not crystis moder' der',	246
But all wytes, rekles & boystous	
Was I, lady, full late in myn answer'.	
þe may well se my wytte is komerous,	
þour comyng was to me so meruelous	250
My wytt was goo þan, I sey þow veryly.	
My lordes moder', myn aduocate, my mary,	252
“ And I her' seruauant, & eyr' hath be & cast ! <sup>1</sup>	253
Allas, alas ! & it is wrete full pleynd	<sup>1</sup> so all MSS.
A hard þing of whech I am a-gast :	
‘ Who wyll not know, schall be for-gete, certeyn.’	
þis is my thowght, my lady souereyn,	257

“ In al hir nede, whan þat she shal fyghte A-geyn the heresy of philosophie ; Of alle her resoness she shal rekken but lyghte, Thou þei her sophems sotly multiplye ; She shal a-soyle hem and ageyn hem replye Soo myghtyly, þat þei shul lese her art, And she shal drawe hem to be in goddis part.	225 229 231	<i>Bk. III. Ch. 4.</i>  The Virgin will enable Katharine to confute all her op- ponents.
“ ffor after me, I telle the sekerly, Ther was neuere suche another lady lyuande That wyth-outen example cowde lyue so purfyghtly As she hath now newely take on hannde Soo hooly a lyf. therefore, þou vnderstande, She shal haue eke as glorious an eende has euere had woman that leued here in keende.”	232  236 238	

**Cam. quintum***Bk. III. Ch. 5.*

<b>W</b> han þat oure lady had seyde al þis thyng, This ermyte fel to grounde plat and pleyne, he was a-fered and rauyshed in swownyng. And she ful mekely lift hym vp a-geyn, “ Be not afered ! ” she gan tho to hym seyn. And he answerde : “ gromericy now, madame. ffor-yeue me now ! in þat I was to blame “ That I knew not cristes moder deere, But al wytteles, rekles and boystous Was I, lady, ful late in myn answer. Ye may weel see my wytte is comorous, Youre comyng was to me soo meruelous, My wytte was goo whan I sey you, verely. My lordis moder, myn aduocate, my mary, “ And I hir seruaunt, and euere haue be chast ! Allas, allas ! and it is wreten ful pleyne An hard þing of whiche I am a-gast : ‘ Who wil not knowe, shal be forgete, certeyn.’ This is my thought, my lady souereyn,	239  243 245 246  250 252 253 257	  Adrian swoons.  He begs the Virgin’s tor- giveness for not knowing her.  He is her servant.
---	--	---

<u>Bk. III. Ch. 4.</u>	Be-cause þat I so recles was full late, þat 3our' loue schuld now turne to hate. 259
	“ Therfor' 3our' <i>grace</i> wyth pytous voys I pray 260 To punch & snybe, 3our-self as 3e lest, And I am redy euermor' nyght & day To be obedyent ryght at 3our request, To do 3our massage, so as I can best. 264 But sewyrly, þis gret cyte large Of whech 3e spoke whan 3e dyd me charge, 266 “ I know it noght, ne eke þe wey þer-to, 267 I haue not herd but lytyll of it, certayn. But as 3e wyll, ryght so mote I do ; To fulfyll 3our' byddyng myn hert is ful fayn ; þow I for werynesse dey or elles be slayn, 271 I schall go thedyr. 3et haue I full mech care Of wysom weyis or þat I come þar', 273 “ ffor, as I wene, many a wyldyrnesse 274 Is in þat wey, & many a wyked beest. 3et schall I forward hastily now me dresse ; I trost on 3ow þat 3e schull at þe leest Ordeyn for me þat I be noght a-reest, 278 But vndyr 3our wyng & 3our proteccyon May be þis vyage & þis progressyon.” 280

Bk. III. Ch. 5.

## Cam. 5m.

<b>T</b> han seyð þe qween on-to hym a-geyn) : 281
“ Well may þou blys þat lord þat boute vs alle, þat he be the wold send or elles seyñ þis reall mater', & eke þer-to þe calle ! Go now þi wey, þou may not stumblen ne falle 285 Whan swech a leder' is to þe a gyde. But whan þou comst wyth-in þoo 3atis wyde, 287 “ Whom-euer þou mete, if he spek to þe, 288 Spek not a-geyn in no-maner' wyse : I tell þe why : þe hye noble secre

Be-cause þat I soo rekles was ful late,		<i>Bk. III. Ch. 5.</i>
That youre loue shulde now turne to hate.	259	
“ Therefore youre grace w <sup>yth</sup> pytous voys I pray	260	
To punyshe and snebbe, youre-self as ye lest,		
And I am redy euere-more nyght and day		Adrian tells the Virgin he will do all she wishes.
To be obedyent ryght at youre request,		
To doo youre message soo as I can best.	264	
But suerly, this grete eyte large		
Of whiche ye spoke whan ye dede me charge,	266	
“ I knowe it nought, ne eke the weye þer-too,	267	Adrian knows not the way to Alexandria,
I haue not herd but lytil of it, certayn.		
But as ye wil, ryght soo mote I doo ;		
To fulfillle <i>your</i> byddyng my herte is ful fayn ;		
Though I for werynesse dey or ellis be slayn,	271	
I shal goo theder. yet haue I ful moche care		
Of wylsom weyes, er thanne I com thare,	273	
“ ffor, as I wene, many a wyldernesse	274	
Is in þat weye, and many a wykked beste.		
Yet shal I forward hastyly me dresse ;		
I truste on you þat ye shul at the leste		but he will go there, trusting to the Virgin.
Ordeyne for me þat I be nought a-reste,	278	
But vnder <i>your</i> wenge and youre proteccyon		
May be this viage and this progression.”	280	

Ca<sup>m</sup>. sextum.*Bk. III. Ch. 6.*

Thanne seyle the queen on-to hym a-geyn :	281	
“ Weel may þou blysse þat lord that bought vs alle,		
That he be the wold sende or ellis seyn		
This ryal mater, and eke þer-to the calle !		
Goo now thi weye, þou may not stomble ne falle	285	She bids him start at once,
Whan swiche a leedere is to the a gyde.		
But whan þou comest with-inne tho yates wyde,	287	
“ Whom euere þou mete, if he speke to the,	288	
Speke not ageyn in no-manner wise !		and speak to no one he meets.
I telle the whi : þe hye noble secrec		

<u>Bk. III. Ch. 5.</u>	To whych þou schall do labour & seruyse, If vnworthy herd it, þei myght it dyspyce.	292
	Eke þi-self þi mouth must þou spere, And kepe þi wordys only for þis mater'.	294
	“So schall þou goo thorow þat grete cyte, Tyll þat þou come on-to þe paleys reall Whech þat he made, costus þe kyng so fre, Both dych & hylle, dounгон, tour', & wall. Many a knyth & many a sqwyer' þou schall	295 299
	ffynd þer' & se, þe gates for to kepe : Be not a-ferde, my son' schall þe kepe	301
	“ffro all her' manace & all her' grete daunger'. Blesse þe well, & eke my sones name Ryght in þi forhed loke þou crouch & bere : þau no man schall haue power' þe to blame Ne eke to lett þe, tyll þou come at þat dame.	302 306
	And wher' sche dwellyth, now wyll I þe say : þou schall goo forthe & passe all þat a-ray,	308
	“Tyll þat þou see wallys fayr' & newe ;	309
	And at [a] posterne, smalle of forme & <sup>1</sup> schap— <sup>1</sup> ms. & of On-to þat same loke þat þou fast sewe ; þer nedyth þe nocht neyther' ryng ne rap, þe gate schall ope[u] lygtly at a swap ;	313
	þou schalt' enter' & fynd þat swet may. Whech schall to hyr be full grete a-fray,	315
	“ffor sche schall wondyr' who þat any man Myght enter' to her' in to þat pryuy place ; hyr booke, hyr stody schall sche leue ryght than And loke on þe wyth full sobyr face.	316
	haue þou no fer' in no-maner' cace	320
	Of hyr qwestyouns ne of hyr apposayle, I schall enforce þe soo þou may not fayle	322
	“To 3eue hyr answer' to euery questyoun). So sayd my sone to hys aposteles twelue :	323

To whiche þou shalt doo labour and seruyse,		<i>Bk. III. Ch. 6.</i>
If onwurthi herde it, þei myght it despyse.	292	
Eke thi-self thi mouth must þou spere,		
And kepe thi woordis only for this matere.	294	
“ Soo shalt þou goo thurgh that grete citee,	295	The Virgin Mary tells Adrian how to find Katharine in Alexandria.
Til þou come on-to the paleys real		
Whiche þat he made, Costus the kyng soo free,		
Bothe dycche and hyH, dongeon, tour, and wal.		
Many a knyght and many a sqwyer þou shal	299	
ffynde there and see, the gates for to keepe :		
Be nought a-ferde, my sone shal defende þe fro all þe heepe,		
“ ffro her manace and al her grete daungere.	302	
Blysse þe weel, and eke myn̄ soncs name		
Ryght in thi forhel looke þou crosse and bere :		
Than no man̄ shal haue pouer the to blame		
Ne eke to lette, til þou come at þat dame.	306	
And where she dwelleth now wil I the say :		
Thou shal goo foorthie and passe al þat aray,	308	
“ Til þat þou see walles fayre and newe ;	309	
And at a posterne smal of foorme and shap—		The postern
On-to that same looke þat þou faste sewe,		
There nedeth the not neyther ryngc ne rap,		
The gate shal open lightly at a swap ;	313	gate will open, and he will find
þou shal entre and fynde the swete may.		
Whiche shal be to hir ful grete afray,	315	
“ ffor she shal wondir hough þat ony man̄	316	
Might entre to hir in þat preny place ;		
hir book, hir stody shal she leuce ryght than̄		Katharine studying.
And looke on the with ful sober face.		
haue þou no fer in no-maneꝝ cace	320	
Of hir questyons ne of hir apposayle,		
I shal enforce þe soo þou may not fayle	322	
“ To yeue hir answeꝝe to euery questyon̄.	323	
Sob̄ seyde my sone to his apostellis twelue :		



- Bk. III. Ch. 5. ‘Whan 3e stand,’ he seyð, ‘be-for þe dome  
 Of many tyrauntys, & 3e a-lone 3our’selue,  
 Thow þei 3ow calle lollard, whych or elue, 327  
 Beth not dysmayd, I schall gyue 3ow answere,  
 þer can no man swech langage now 3ow lere.’ 329
- “ Ryght so schall þou haue *in* þi langage 330  
 Swech wonder’ termes þat sche schall stoynd be,  
 Cryst schall endewe þin eld[e] rekeles age  
 Wylth eloquens which full meruelous, trost me,  
 Schall be to þe, & most specyaly sche 334  
 Schall lyste ful sore aftyr þis new doctrine,  
 Alle her’ wyttys þer-to wyll sche enclyne. 336
- “ No wondyr it is, for my sone, *in* sothenesse, 337  
 hath chose hyr specyaly aboute all oþer lyuande,  
 ffor hyr uertew & for hyr’ grete clenness,  
 he wyll wedd hyr *in* schort tyme comande ;  
 þou schall be massanger’ & tak þis werk on hande : 341  
 þou schall brynge her’ euene vn-to þis place  
 þi-selue a-lone wylth-owtyn othyr’ solace. 343
- “ Thys same tokne schall þou to hyr bere : 344  
 ffor if sche enqwyre who þe þedyr sent,  
 þe same lord, sey a-geyn to hyr’,  
 Whom þat sche chees syttyng *in* parlement,  
 ffor which choys sche was full nye I-schent 348  
 Of hyr lordes, so as þei þan durst ;  
 Sche toke þe bettyr & forsok þe wurst. 350
- “ Wylth-inne her’ stody þus schall þou hyr fynde. 351  
 Be not a-ferd of hyr sotell cunnyng,  
 þou schall not fayle of answer’ to þe kynde  
 Of all hyr wytte & all hyr stodyng.  
 Go now forth fast, & hedyr sone her’ bryng, 355  
 Gyrde þe sore & tuk vp well þi lappe,  
 Tak wylth þe þi staffe & ek þi cappe !” 357

- ‘Whan ye stande,’ he seyde, ‘be-fore the doom Bk. III. Ch 6.  
 Of many tyrant<sup>is</sup>, and ye allone *your*-selue,  
 Though<sup>n</sup> thei you calle lollard, wyteche or clue, 327  
 Beth not dismayed, I shal geue you answere,  
 Ther can no man swiche langage now you lere.’ 329
- “Right soo shal þou haue in thi langage 330  
 Swiche wonder termes þat she shal stoynd be,  
 Criste shal endwe thyn old rekles age <sup>1 MS. merueyous</sup> Christ will  
 With eloquencye whiche ful merueyclous,<sup>1</sup> troste me, 334 give Adrian  
eloquence to  
speak to  
Katharine,  
 Shal be to the, and most speccially she  
 fful sore after this newe doctryne  
 Alle hir wittes ther-to wil she enelyne. 336
- “No wonder it is, for my sone, in soothnesse, 337  
 hath chosyn hir speccially a-boue aH other lyuande,  
 ffor hir vertu and for hir clenuesse,  
 he wyl wedde hir in short tyme comande ; whom He will  
soon wed,  
 þou shalt be massager and take this werk on hande : 341  
 Thou shal bryngen hir euene on-to þis place  
 Thi-self allone with-outen other solace. 343
- “This same tookne shalt thou to hir bere : 344  
 ffor if she enquere hoo the thelyr sent,  
 The same lord, sey ageyn to here,  
 Whom þat she chees syttyng in parlement, and who is  
the Lord  
whom she  
chose in her  
Parliament.  
 ffor whiche she was ful ny I-shent 348  
 Of hir loord<sup>is</sup>, soo as thei thanne durst ;  
 She took þe better and for-sook þe wurst. 350
- “With-Inne hir stody thus shal þou hir fynde. 351  
 be not aferde of hir sooty<sup>l</sup> connyng,  
 þou shalt nought fayle of answere to þe kynde  
 Of aH hir witte and al hir stodyng.  
 Goo now foorth faste and heder soone hir brynge, 355 Adrian is to  
start at once.  
 Girde þe soore and tukke vp weel thi lappe,  
 Take wyth þe thy staf and eke thi cappe !” 357

**T**hus goth þis ermyte forth ryght in hys way, 358  
 Trostyng on gydes sweech as long to heuen);  
 ffor thow he non) aungellys þoo herd ne say,  
 Wylth-oute dowte, her' ledyng browte hym euene  
 On-to þis cyte, long or it was euene, 362  
 Nowt þat same day, but aftyr a full long whyle,  
 Whan he had go & rune full many a myle. 364  
 Thus wyll god wylth ful onlykly þing, 365  
 As to þe werld, werk whan þat hym leest ;  
 he chesyth sume-tyme on-to hys hyc werkyng  
 ffull febyll & sekely, & a-wey can kest  
 þe strong & wyse—poule seyth þis best 369  
 In hys epistles, who þat wyll hem rede.  
 Ryght þus dede he her', wylth-ouen drede. 371  
 fful on-likly was þis man to þis massage, 372  
 But þat god chese hym of hys goodenesse.  
 he is now goo forth in hys vyage,  
 Be hyllys<sup>1</sup> & pleyñ, felde & wyldyrnesse ; <sup>1 r. hy??</sup>  
 he is now come wher' as þis emperesse 376  
 Satte in her' garleyñ, stodyng þan ful sore ;  
 Sodenly enterd set he is hyr be-for'. 378  
 fful sore a-stoynd wer' þei þan both-two, 379  
 þe on for meruayle of hyr' hyc beaute,  
 The other' was marred, if we schuld sey soo  
 þat sche a man so sodeynly þer gan se  
 Be-for hyr knele now ryght in hyr secre. 383  
 As, if 3e wyll þis conceyt here mor' pleyñ,  
 þe ermyte in hys wytte was a-stoynd, certeyñ, 385  
 ffor he fond hyr þan lenyng on a booke, 386  
 In sad stodye, ful solitarie all a-lone,  
 And often a-mong to heuene gan sche look ;  
 But swych bente sey þis man neuyr none  
 As now he sethe in þis same persone, 390

Ca<sup>m</sup>. septimum.Bk. III. Ch. 7.

- T**hus gooth this Ermyte foorth right in his way, 358  
 Trustyng on gydes swiche as longen to heuene ;  
 ffor though he non Aungellis tho herde ne say, <sup>1</sup> w.—st. on eras.  
*Wyth*-oute doute, here leedyng *wyth* ful myelde steuene<sup>1</sup>  
 Brovght hym to the citee longe be-fore<sup>2</sup> euene, <sup>2</sup> all this on eras.  
 Nought that same day, but after a ful long while,  
 Whan he had goo and ronne ful many a myle. 364
- Thus wil god *wyth* ful onlykly thyng, 365  
 As to the world, werke whan that hym lest ;  
 he cheseth somtyme on-to his hey werkyng  
 fful febyl and sekely, and away can kest  
 The strong and wyse—paule seith þis best 369  
 In his epystoles, hoo þat wil hem reede ;  
 Ryght thus dede he here, *wyth*-outen dreede. 371
- fful onlykly was this man to this massage, 372  
 but þat god chees hym of hys goodnesse.  
 he is now goon foorth in his viage,  
 Be hiß and pleyñ, feeld and wildernesse ;  
 he is now come where as this empresse 376  
 Saat in hir gardeyn, stodyenge ful sore ;  
 Sodeynly entred set is he hir before. 378
- fful soore a-stoynd were thei þanne bothe-too, 379  
 The on for meruayle of hir hy bewte,  
 The other was marred, if we shulde sey soo, ✓  
 That she a man soo sodeynly there gan see  
 Be-fore hir knelyng ryght in hir secree. 383  
 As, if 3e wiln this conseit heere more pleyñ,  
 The ermyte in his witte was astoynd, certeyñ, 385
- ffor he fond hir thanne leenyng on a book, 386  
 In sad stodye, ful solitarie al alone,  
 And ofte a-monge to heuene gan she look ;  
 but suche beaute saugh this man neuere noone  
 As nough he seeth in this same persone, 390

Adrian is led  
by heavenly  
Guides to  
Alexandria.He finds  
Katharinestudying in  
her garden.She is  
astonisht to  
see him  
kneeling  
before her.Adrian has  
never seen

Ca<sup>m</sup>. septimum.

Bk. III. Ch. 7.

- Thus gooth this Ermyte foorth right in his way, 358  
 Trustyng on gydes swiche as longen to heuene ;  
 For though he non Aungell's tho herde ne say, <sup>1</sup> w.—st. on eras.  
 W<sup>yth</sup>-oute doute, here leedyng wyth ful myelde steuene<sup>1</sup>  
 Brovght hym to the citee longe be-fore<sup>2</sup> euene, <sup>2</sup> all this on eras.  
 Nought that same day, but after a ful long while,  
 Whan he had goo and rounne ful many a myle. 364
- Thus wil god w<sup>yth</sup> ful onlykly thyng, 365  
 As to the world, werke whan that hym lest ;  
 Cheseth somtyme on-to his hey werkyng  
 And sekely, and away can kest  
 Wyse—paule seith þis best 369  
 That noo þat wil hem reede ;  
 He here, w<sup>yth</sup>-outen dreede. 371
- Whan this man to this message, 372  
 Of hys goodnesse.  
 He is now goon foorth in his viage,  
 Be hiH and pleynd, feeld and wildernesse ;  
 He is now come where as this empresse 376  
 Saat in hir gardeyn, stodyenge ful sore ;  
 Sodeynly entred set is he hir before. 378
- fful soore a-stoynd were thei þanne bothe-too, 379  
 The on for meruayle of hir hy bewte,  
 The other was marred, if we shulde sey soo,  
 That she a man soo sodeynly there gan see  
 Be-fore hir knelyng ryght in hir secree. 383  
 As, if 3e wiln this conseit heere more pleynd,  
 The ermyte in his witte was astoynd, certeynd, 385
- ffor he fond hir thanne leenyng on a book, 386  
 In sad stodye, ful solitarie al alone,  
 And ofte a-monge to heuene gan she look ;  
 But such a beaute saugh this man neuere noone  
 As nough he seeth in this same persone, 390

Adrian is led  
by heavenly  
Guides to  
Alexandria.He finds  
Katharinestudying in  
her garden.She is  
astonisht to  
see him  
kneceling  
before her.Adrian has  
never seen

Bk. III. Ch. 6.

Saue our lady—blessed mot sche be!—  
 So bryght & se[h]lynyng was þoo hyr fayr ble. 392  
 “A, meruelous godd,” thowth he in hys mynde, 393  
 “Wend I neuer a seynd swech creatour lyunyng!  
 I trow, in erde as in womannes kynde  
 Is non so bryght, so beuteuous in all þing.  
 Blessed be ihesu, þat hye heuyne-kyng, 397  
 þat me sent hedyr to se þis creature!  
 ffor aftyr our lady sche passeth wyth-oute mesure 399  
 “Alle oper women.” And wyth þis þouth a-nouð 400  
 Sche lokyd on hym, & was a-stoynd sore  
 Who þat he myght ouyr þoo wallys of ston,  
 þis olde man, clyme, or ellys if he wore  
 Crope thorow þe zate? þan meruelyth se  
 Syth þat hyr-self had be þer last,  
 ffor sche bar þe key, & sperd it w  
 Wyth þis same stoynyng hyr blood  
 Mech mor frescher þan it was be-fore,  
 In cheke & forhed newly doth it brenne;  
 And if sche fayr & bryght wer be-fore,  
 It is a-mendyd a hundred parte more 411  
 As to hys syght, þis olde ermyte lame.  
 he knelyth down & seyth “all heyll, madame.” 413

Bk. III. Ch. 7.Ca<sup>m</sup>. 7<sup>m</sup>.

Sche ryght þus a-geynd on-to hym sayde: 414  
 “Good syr, tell me who may þis be—  
 ffor of þour persone be we sor dysmayde—  
 þat we so sodenly þow in our presence see,  
 I-come þus a-lone wyth-owte oper menee? 418  
 þis ask we fyrst, for sekyr, wete we<sup>1</sup> must; <sup>1 MS. ws?</sup>  
 Wheythyr þis is truthe or apparens, it schall be wust. 420  
 “What-maner mane myght make þow so maisterlye 421  
 To clyme our wallys whech are so hye?  
 I trow, be enchaun[t]ment or be nygromancye

<u>Bk. III. Ca. 6.</u>	Saue our lady—blessed mot sche be!—	
	So bryght & se[h]yning was þoo hyr fayr ble.	392
	“A, meruelous godd,” thowth he in hys mynde,	393
	“Wend I neuer a seyn swech creatour lyuyng!	
	I trow, in erde as in womannes kynde	
	Is non so bryght, so beuteuous in all þing.	
	Blessed be ihesu, þat hye heuyn-kyng,	397
	þat me sent hedyr to se þis creature!	
	ffor aftyr our lady sche passeth wyth-oute mesure	399
	“Alle oþer women.” And wyth þis þouth a-non)	400
	Sche lokyd on hym, & was a-stoynd sore	
	Who þat he myght ouyr þoo wallys of ston,	
	þis olde man, clyme, or ellys if he wore	
	Crôpe thorow þe zate? þan meruelyth sche more,	404
	Syth þat hyr-self had be þer last,	
	ffor sche bar þe key, & sperd it wondyr fast.	406
	Wyth þis same stoyning hyr bloode gan to renne	407
	Mech mor frescher þan it was be-fore,	
	In cheke & forhed newly doth it brenne;	
	And if sche fayr & bryght wer be-fore,	
	It is a-mendyd a hundred parte more	411
	As to hys syght, þis olde ermyte lame.	
	he knelyth down & seyth “all heyll, madame.”	413

Bk. III. Ca. 7.Ca<sup>m</sup>. 7<sup>m</sup>.

S	che ryght þus a-geyn) on-to hym sayde :	414
“	Good syr, tell me who may þis be—	
ffor	of 3our persone be we sor dysmayde—	
þat	we so sodenly 3ow in our presence see,	
I-come	þus a-lone wyth-owte oþer menee?	418
þis	ask we fyrst, for sekyr, wete we <sup>1</sup> must; <sup>1</sup> MS. was?	
Wheythyr	þis is truthe or apparens, it schall be wust.	420
“	What-maner mane myght make 3ow so maisterlye	421
To	clyme our wallys wher are so hye?	
I	trow, be enchaun[t]ment or be nygromancye	

- Sauc oure lady—blyssed mote she be!— *Bk. III. Ch. 7.*  
 Soo bryght and shynynge was tho hir fair blee. 392  
 “O *merueyleous* god,” thought he in his mynde, 393  
 “Wende I neuere a seen swiche a creature lyuynge. so lovely a lady as Katharine.  
 I trowe, in erthe as in womans kynde  
 Is noon soo bryght, soo bewtyvous in al thyng.  
 blyssed be ihesu, þat hy heuene-kyng, 397  
 That me sente heder too see this creature!  
 ffor after oure lady she passeth wyth-oute mesure 399  
 “Alle other women.” and wyth this thought a-noon 400  
 She loked on hym, and was a-stoynd sore She wonders how he, so old, could climb over her walls.  
 how þat he myght ouere tho walles of stoon,  
 This olde man, clymbe, or ellis if he wore  
 Crope thurgh the yate? thanne *merueyleth* she more, 404  
 Sith that hir-self had been there last,  
 ffor she baar the keye, and spered it wonder fast. 406  
 Wyth this same stoynege hir blood gan to renne 407  
 Meche more freshere than it was be-fore,  
 In cheke and forhed newly dooth it brenne;  
 And if she fayr and bryght were hoore,<sup>1</sup> <sup>1</sup>—ore, on er. (or. before)  
 It is a-mended an hundird part more 411  
 As to his sight, this olde ermyte lame.  
 he kneleth doun and seith “al heil, madame.” 413 Adrian says “All hail!” to her.

Ca<sup>m</sup>. octauum.*Bk. III. Ch. 8.*

- S**he right thus ageyn on-to hym sayde : 414  
 “Good sir, telle me how may this bee—  
 ffor of *your* persone be we sore dismayde—  
 That we soo soodeynly you in oure *presens* see,  
 I-come thus alone wyth-outen other menee? 418  
 This aske we first, for sekyr weten we must,  
 Whedir this is truthe or apparens, it shal be wust. 420  
 “What-*maner* man<sup>1</sup> myght make yow soo maisterlye 421 Katharine asks Adrian who enabled him to climb over her walls.  
 To clymbe oure wallys whiche arn soo hye? <sup>1</sup> overlined.  
 I trowe, be enchaument or be nygramauncey



<u>Bk. III. Ch. 7.</u>	Are 3e entyrd now her' be-for' our' y3e.	
	We wyll wete þis þing, be 3e neuyr so slye,	425
	Who 3aue 3ow hardyuesse for to be so bolde	
	Wyth-owte our' [leue] to entre to owr' holde?	427
	“ ffor of all þe lordes & knytyz þat we haue	428
	Is non so hardy but we 3efe hym leue,	
	But if he wyll reklesly hys lyff laue,	
	Onys to entre, neyþer morow ne eue,	
	Our' priuy secre. þer-for is it repreue	432
	On-to 3our age to tak swech þing on 3ow ;	
	It wyll not fall happyly on-to 3our' prow.	434
	“ Ther-for' now tell me schortly in a clause :	435
	Who 3aue 3ow boldenesse to do þis grete folye?	
	Sekyr may 3e be we wyll wete þe cause,	
	And euery mene þorow whech 3e wer' hardy,	
	Perauentur' if treson be found in our' meny.	439
	þis schall 3e telle, or 3e fro vs weende ;	
	3e gete of vs elles no ryght fayr' ende.”	441

Bk. III. Ch. 8.Ca<sup>m</sup>. 8<sup>m</sup>.

<b>B</b> E þis was þe erymyte counforted a-geyn),	442
ffor wyth bolde spech he 3aue þis answey	
And wyth manly voys þus gan he seyn :	
“ Sche þat me sent is gretter', if 3e wyll lere,	
Than ony lady in erde þat dwellyth her' ;	446
And eke þe lest þat longyth to hyr bour'	
Is more of astate þan kyng or emperour'.	448
“ Eke for 3e ween' þat 3e be so fayre,	449
So ryeh in welth as it is seyð, certayn',	
3et may 3e not to hyr' beaute repayr',	
Ne neuyr 3e schall, sothly dar I sayn.	
Boþe hyr & 3ow wyth eyne haf I seyn,	453
I may þe mor' boldely mak þis commendyng :	
Sche paseth 3ow, certayn, in all-maner þing.	455

**MS. Arundel.] Katharine asks Adrian about his coming. 197**

Arn ye now entred here be-forn oure eye.		<i>Bk. III. Ch. 8.</i>
We wyl wete this thyng, be ye neuere soo slye,	425	
hoo yaf yow hardynesse for to be so bolck,		
Wyth-outen oure leuce to entre in to oure holck?	427	
“ffor of alle the lordes and knyghtes þat we haue	428	None of Katharine's lords would
Is noon so hardy, but we yeue hym leuce,		
but he wil reklesly his lyf laue,		
Ones to entre, neyther morwe ner eue,		come into her private retreat.
Oure preuy secree. therefore is it to <sup>1</sup> repreue	432	<sup>1</sup> overliued.
On-to youre age, to take suche thyng on you ;		
It wil not falle happily on-to youre prow.	434	
“Therefore telle me shortly now in a clause :	435	
ho yaue you boldnesse to doo this gret foly ?		Who has let Adrian in ?
Sekyr may ye bee we wil wete þe cause,		
And euery mene thurgh whiche ye were hardy,		
Peraventure if treson be founde in oure meny.	439	Has any of her houses hold been a traitor ?
This shal ye telle, er ye fro vs wende ;		
Ye gete of vs ellis no <sup>1</sup> right fayr ende.”	441	<sup>1</sup> or, no good

**Ca<sup>m</sup>. nouum.**

*Bk. III. Ch. 9.*

<b>B</b> E this was the ermyte comforted ageyn,	442	
ffoorth with bold speche he yaf this answe <sup>r</sup> e		
And with manly voys thus gan he sey <sup>n</sup> :		
“She þat me sente is grettere, if ye wil lere,		Adrian says the highest Lady sent him.
Than ony lady in erthe þat dweleth here ;	446	
And eke the leest þat longeth to hir bour		
Is more of astate than kyng or emperour.	448	
“Eke, for ye wene þat ye ben soo fayre,	449	A Lady who is more beautiful than even Katharine,
Soo ryche in welthe as it is sey <sup>d</sup> , certayn,		
Yeet may ye not to hir bewte repayre,		
Ne neuere ye shal, soothly dar I sayn.		
I haue you bothe seen, ther-of I am ful fayn,	453	
I may the more boldely make þis commendyng :		
She passeth you, certeyn, in al-ma <sup>ner</sup> good thyng.	455	

Bk. III. Ch. 8. "Eke hyr grete power þat is spred so fer', 456  
 Sche may doo what þat euer sche lyst ;  
 ffor be 3on 3ate whech 3e dyd sper'  
 Sche browte me in, sekyr, or I it wylt.  
 If sche be wrothe, no man skapyth hyr fyst ; 460  
 þer-for a-vyse 3ow, lady, what 3e wylt say,  
 lest þat my lady turne fro 3ow a-way." 462

Bk. III. Ch. 9.

## Cam. 9m.

**T**han gan þe qweend merueyle of þis word, 463  
 Mor þan sche dyd euyr hyr lyue be-fore  
 Of ony mater. cryst had made hys horde  
 Or þis ermyte cam, & leyd hys grete tresour'  
 Ryght in hyr hert empredded full sore ; 467  
 ffor þow 3 he sent þe ermyte as hys massanger',  
 Or þe ermyte cam crist hym-self was ther'. 469  
 Ryght as gabriell, whan he fro heuene was sent 470  
 On-to our lady to do þat hye massage,  
 In to nazareth in forme of man<sup>1</sup> he went, <sup>1 MS. o man :</sup>  
 ffayr' & fresch, & zong eke of age,  
 But er' that he cam on-to þis maydes cage, 474  
 Cryst was ther', as we in bokes rede :  
 Ryth so dyd he her', if we wylt take hede. 476  
 But þow 3 god wer' come as þan to hyr hert, 477  
 It was fer' as 3et fro hyr knowlechyng.  
 þer-for wylth wordes þat wer' full smert  
 Sche turneth a-geynd on-to þe same þing  
 Whech we left er', & þus in apposyng 481  
 Sche þus procedyth, sey[i]ng to þis man :  
 "Who may 3our lady be so worthy woman 483  
 "As 3e commende now in 3our tale to me 484  
 Of hyr hye worchepe & also of hyr wytte?  
 þe worthyest of all women we weend þat we be,  
 We herd neuyr of non worthyer' 3ytte.  
 Wher' lyghte hyr loude, we wold fayn know itte ; 488

“Eke hir grete power þat is spred soo fer, 456 *Bk. III. Ch. 9.*  
 She may doo what that euere she lyst ;  
 ffor be youre yate, whiche ye dede sper,  
 She brouthe me in, seker, er I it wyst.  
 If she be wroth, no man skapeth hir fist ; 460  
 Therefore avyse yow, lady, what ye wyl say,  
 lest þat my lady turne fro you a-way.” 462

Ca<sup>m</sup>. *decimum.*

Thanne gan the queene meruayle of þis woord, 463 *Bk. III. Ch. 10.*  
 More than she dede euere hir lyf before  
 Of ony mater. crist had maad his hoor!  
 Er this ermyte cam, and leyde his gret tresore  
 Ryght in hir herte empredded ful soore ; 467  
 ffor though he sente the ermyte as his massanger,  
 Er the ermyte cam, cryst hym-self was there. 469

Right as gabriel whanne he fro heuene was sent 470  
 On-to oure lady to doo that hye message,  
 In to nazareth in foorme of a man he went,  
 ffayr and fresh, and yong eke of age,  
 But er that he cam to this maydenes cage, 474  
 Crist was there, as we in bookys rede :  
 Right soo dede he here, if ye wil take heede. 476

But though god were com as þanne to hir herte, 477  
 It was fer as yet fro hir knowlechyng.  
 Therefore wyght<sup>1</sup> woordys tho were ful smerte, <sup>1 = wyth</sup>  
 She turned a-geyn on-to the same thyng  
 Whiche we lefte ere, and thus in apposyng 481  
 She þus procedeth, seyng on-to this man :  
 “how may youre lady be so worthi a woman 483

“As ye comende in youre tale now on-to mee 484  
 Of hir hygħ wurship and also of hir wyt ?  
 The wurthyest of alle women we wene þat we bee,  
 We herd neuere of noon worthiere yit.  
 Where lyghit hir lond, we wolde fayn knowe it ; 488

and whose  
power is  
almighty.

Katharine  
wonders at  
this.

Tho' Christ  
is in her  
heart,

she does not  
yet know it.

Katharine  
asks Adrian

<u>Bk. III. Ch. 9.</u>	Who is her' lorde, or wheyther' is sche lorde-lees?	
	3e telle vs þingys whech̄ we holde but lees.	490
	“Wheythyr' is þat dame lyuyng in spousayle,	491
	Or leuyth sche sool as we do now?	
	If sche be weddyd, sykyrly sche may fayle	
	Mych̄ of hyr wyll, for sche mote nedys lowe	
	On-to hyr lord, loke he neuer so row;	495
	And if sche lyue be hyr-self a-lone,	
	þan may sche make full oft mech̄ mone	497
	“Ryght for vexacyon of hyr' lordes a-boute—	498
	þis know we well, we are vsed þer-to.	
	þer-for, goodeman, put vs oute of doute,	
	Tell vs þe soþe, be it ioye or woo	
	Whech̄ þat þis lady most is vsed too;	502
	And we wyll þank & rewarde 3ow eke	
	Wyt̄h swech̄ plente þat it schall 3ow leke.”	504

Bk. III. Ch. 10.Ca<sup>m</sup>. 10<sup>m</sup>.

	“I-wys, madame,” seyð þis ermyte þoo,	505
	“þe grete lordscheppe of my lady seuereyn	
	Is spredd ouyr heuyn, & ouyr erd þer-too,	
	And ouyr þe see eke, sothely to seyn;	
	þer comyth noo sune, no dewys ne no reyn	509
	But be comaundement of hyr lord & hyr desyre—	
	Swech̄ is hyr myght & all-so hyr powere.	511
	“hyr ladschepe eke þer-to is so strong	512
	And euyr so stedfast, þat it may not fayle,	
	þer may no man, treuly, do hyr wrong;	
	ffor þow 3 þei doo, þei lese her' trauayle.	
	þer may no myght a-geyn hyr myght a-vayle,	516
	hyr lord & sche, þei lyue in full grete pees,	
	Wyt̄h many mylyons of men & mekyll pees.	518
	“he is hyr lord, & eke to hym sche is	519
	Moder' & noryse, 3et is sche a mayde—	
	lord & sone boþe to-gedyr I-wys,	

hoo is hir lord, or wheder is she lordles ?		<i>Bk. III. Ch. 10.</i>
Ye telle vs thyngis whiche we holde but lees.	490	who this noblest of women is.
“ Whedir is þat dame leuyng in spousayle,	491	Is she married, or single ?
Or leueth she sool as we doo now ?		
If she be wedded, sekerly, she may fayle		
Myche of hir wyl, for she mote nedes bow		
On-to hir lord, looke she neuere soo row ;	495	
And if she lyue be hir-self allone,		
Thanne may she make ofte ful moche mone	497	
“ Right for vexacyon) of hir lordes a-bowte—	498	If she's single, her lords must worry her.
This knowe we weel, we am) vsed ther-too.		
Therefore, goodeman), put vs oute of dowte,		
Telle vs þe sooth, be it Ioye or woo,		<sup>1</sup> 3 last words on eras.
Whiche hat this lady most absenteth hir froo <sup>1</sup> ;	502	
And we wil thanke and reward yow eke		
Wyth swichie plente þat it shal yow leke.”	504	

**Ca<sup>m</sup>. vndecimum.**

		<i>Bk. III. Ch. 11.</i>
“ I-wys,” madame,” seyde this ermyte thoo,	505	Adrian says his Lady has Lordship over heaven, earth, and sea.
“ The gret lordship of my lady souereyn)		
Is spred ouere heuene, and ouere erthe þer-too,		
And ouere the see eke, soothly for to seyn) ;		
Ther cometh noon) sonne, no dewes ne no reyn)	509	
But be commaundement of hir lord and hir desire—		
Swiche is hir myght and also hir powyre.	511	
“ hir ladyship therto eke is soo strong	512	Adrian's Lady is so strong,
And euere soo stedfast, þat it may not fayle,		
Ther may no man), trewely, doo hir wrong ;		
ffor þough þei doo, thei lese her travayle.		
There may no wyght ageyn) hir myght pre[u]ayle,	516	that no one can prevail against her.
hir lord and she, thei leue in ful grete pees		
Wyth many myllyons of men) and meche prees.	518	
“ he is hir lord, and eke to hym) she is	519	She is the Mother of her Lord,
Moder and norse, yet is she a mayde—		
lord and sone bothe to-gedyr I-wys,		

Bk. III. Ch. 10. þis longyth to hym, & 3et ist,<sup>1</sup> as I sayde— <sup>1</sup> = is it  
 leuyth my tale & beth no-þing dysmayde— 523  
 ffor sche is modyr & also clene virgyne ;  
 þis schall 3e know aftyr well & fyne.” 525

Bk. III. Ch. 11.Ca<sup>m</sup>. 11<sup>m</sup>.

“**S**Er,” seyð þe qween, “now merucyle I ful sore 526  
 ffor 3e prech of þis hye degre  
 Of þis same lady ; for 3e seyð þis more  
 Sche passyth all other’ in very felycite  
 Whech þat be her’ now or euyr-mor’ schall be : 530  
 þan wondyr we sore þat sche sent vs here  
 So euyll arayd, so sympyll a massengere. 532  
 “ffor to hyr astate it had be full comuenient 533  
 To send moo men, & not send on a-lone,  
 Wher’ sche so many hath at hyr comaundement ;  
 Eke, as me þinkyth, to swech a grete persone  
 Schuld long, all seruauntes þat ar’ in hyr wone 537  
 To clothe mor’ clenly, for worchyp of hyr hous ;  
 ffor, syr’, 3our clothyng semeth not ryght precyous !” 539

Bk. III. Ch. 12.Ca<sup>m</sup>. 12<sup>m</sup>.

“**M**A-dame,” seyð he, “if 3e wold me leue, 540  
 I wold tell 3ow pleydy þe cause & why  
 To mak me massenger’ dyd þis lady meue.  
 ffor þow þat sche hafe many mylyons of meny,  
 Sche is in hert neuer þe hyer’, hardyly ; 544  
 And swech as sche is, ar’ hyr seruauntes, lo ;  
 ffor all þat loue hyr þei must do ryght so. 546  
 “3e wote well, madame, for mych þing 3e know, 547  
 þat gostly aray passeth in souereyn wyse  
 Bodyly dysgysyng, in hye & in lowe ;  
 þe sete of uerteu is sett in swych asyse,  
 Euen as þei witnessse, clerkes þat be wyse, 551  
 þat treuth is fayrer’ be many degrees  
 þan euer was eleyñ, þe fayr lady of grees. 553

This longeth to hym, and yet eft, as I sayde,		<i>Bk.III.Ch.11.</i>
leueþ my tale and be no-þyng dismayde!	523	
ffor she is moder and also clene virgyn;		and yet a Virgin.
This shal ye knowe after weel and fyn."	525	

**Ca<sup>m</sup>. duodecim<sup>m</sup>.**

*Bk.III.Ch.12.*

" <b>S</b> ere," seyde the queen, "now merueyle I ful soore.		Katharine wonders why so greet a Lady
ffor ye soo preche of this hy degree	527	
Of þis same lady; for ye seyde this more		
She passeth alle other in very felycyte	<sup>1</sup> MS. er	
Whiche þat ben here now or <sup>1</sup> euere-more shul be:	530	
Thanne wonder we soore that she sente us here		sent so poor a Messenger.
Soo eucl arayed, soo symple a massangere.	532	
"ffor to hir astate it had be conuenyent	533	
To a sentte mo men thanne to sende oon alone,		She should haue sent many,
Where she soo many hath at hir comaunderment;		
Eke, as me þenketh, to suche a grete persone		
Shuld longe, alle seruaunt's þat arn in hir wone	537	
To clothe more clenly, for wurship of hir hous;		grandly clad.
ffor, sir, youre clothynge semeth not ryght presyous."	539	

**Ca<sup>m</sup>. 13<sup>m</sup>.**

*Bk.III.Ch.13.*

" <b>M</b> Adame," seyde he, "if ye wolde me leue,	540	Adrian tells Katharine
I wolde telle you pleynly the cause and why		
To make me massanger dede this lady meeue.		
ffor though þat she haue many myllyons of meny,		
She is in herte neuere the hyere, hardly;	544	
And suche as she is, arn hir seruauntis, loo;		
ffor alle tho louen hir, thei must doo right soo.	546	
"Ye wete weel, madame, for meeche thyng ye knowe,		
That goostly aray passeth in souereyn a vyse <sup>1</sup>	<sup>1</sup> orig. wyse	that spiritual clothing is far above bodily.
Bodily dysgysynge, in hy and in lowe;		
The sete of vertu is set in suche assyse,		
Euene as thei witenessen, clerkys þat be wyse.	551	
That truthe is fayrere be many degrees		
Than euere was Eleyne, the fayre lady of grees.	553	



<u>Bk. III. Ch. 12.</u>	“ Therfor þat lady þat me to 3ow now sent,	554
	Desyreth mor' gostly inwardly aray	
	þan golden clothys spred on bodyes gent.	
	And ferthermor' zet boldly dar I say,	
	Sche hath be-fore hyr in hyr paleys ay	558
	Many a thowsand wyth faces bryght & schene,	
	Swech as in erde zet neuyr wer' sene.	560
	“ Sche sayde to me, þat hyc noble qweene,	561
	þat my seruyce plesyd hyr so weele	
	þat sche wold send me wyth þis aray mene	
	To sey hyr wyll on-to 3ow euery dele.	
	And be þis processe may 3e see & feel :	565
	If 3e wyll þis ladyes ffrenchyp now wyne,	
	ffro werdly delyte mote 3e part & twynne.	567
	“ ffor erdely welthys sett my lady at nowte,	568
	þerfor' hyr seruantes schull not haue ;	
	Who-so hyr loue, holy mote be her' thowte	
	Wyth deuoute lyuyng her sowles to saue ;	
	þe mor' þei forsake her', þe mor' may þei craue	572
	Whan þat þei come þer' her' lady is,	
	To hyr regyon wher' þei dwell in blys.	574
	“ But, lady, to þe purpos now wyll we goo :	575
	Thys blessed qween a tokne dyd me take	
	Whan sche me sent 3our' reuerens on-to ;	
	þus sayd sche þan : ‘ my massenger' I þe make	
	On-to 3en maydyn ; sche may it not forsake	579
	þe tokne I take þe, so enpre[n]ded it <sup>1</sup> is	<sup>1</sup> overlined.
	On-to hyr hert sche can it not mys.’	581
	“ Thys is þe tokne þat 3e syttyng in parlement,	582
	Wyth princes, dukes & erles in-ferre,	
	þis was 3our answer' & þis 3our entent :	
	3e wold no lorde ne kyng haue, but if he were	
	So strong, so myghty þat he had neuyr fere,	586
	So fayr', so gentyll þat no man wer' hyn' lychi,	
	So enduyd wyth good þat no man wer' so rychi ;	588

- “ Therefore þat lady that me to yow now sente, 554 *Bk. III. Ch. 13.*  
 Desireth more goostly inwardly aray His Lady  
(the Virgin  
Mary)  
 Than goolden clothes sprede on bodyes gente.  
 And fethermore 3et boldely dar I say,  
 She hath beforð hir in hir paleys ay 558 has Angels in  
her service,  
 Many a thousand with faces bryght and shene,  
 Swiche as in erthe yet neuere were seene. 560  
 “ She seyde to me, þat hy noble queene, 561 yet she chose  
lowly hiin  
 That my seruyse plesed hir so weel  
 That she wolde sende me with þis aray mene  
 To sey hir wil on-to yow euery deel. to tell Katharine  
her will.  
 And be this processe may ye see and feel : 565  
 If ye wil this ladyes frenshyp now wyne,  
 ffor wordly delyte mote ye parte and twynne. 567  
 “ ffor erthely welthes set my lady at nought, 568  
 Therefore hir seruauntes shul not haue ;  
 ho-soo hir loue, holy<sup>1</sup> mote be her thought, <sup>1</sup> orig. hooly  
 With deuoute lyuynge her sowles to saue ;  
 The more thei forsake heere, the more mon þei craue 572 Adrian tells  
Katharine  
 Whanne that þei come there her lady is,  
 To regyon where thei dwelle in blys. 574  
 “ But, lady, to þe purpos now, wil I goo : 575  
 The blissed queen a tooken dede me take that the  
Virgin bade  
hiin  
 Whan she me sente *your* reuerens on-too ;  
 Thus seyde she : ‘ my massanger I the make  
 On-to yone mayden ; she may it not forsake 579  
 The token I take the, soo enpreuded it is  
 on-to hir herte, she can it not mys.’ 581  
 “ This is the tokene þat ye sittynge in parlement, 582 remind her  
of her answer  
in her Parliam-  
ent,  
 With pryneys, dukes and Erlis in prees there,<sup>1</sup> <sup>1</sup> in p. th. on er.  
 This was *your* answe, and þis is<sup>2</sup> youre entent, <sup>2</sup> overl.  
 Ye wolde no lord ne kyng haue, but if he were  
 Soo strong, soo myghty þat he had noo fere, 586  
 Soo fayr, soo gentel that no man were hym lyche,  
 Soo endued wylh good þat no man were so ryche ; 588

<u>Bk. III. Ch. 12.</u>	“Thys was at þat tyme, lady, 3our desyre	589
	þat þis lorde whech þat 3e wold haue	
	Schuld lyue euermore, neuyr wyth watyr ne fyre	
	Be dreynt ne brent, but euyr hym-selſe saue ;	
	3e wold be wyth hym euyr, & neuyr fro hym waue.	593
	þis was 3our wyll, & fullfyllid schall it be,	
	My lady sent 3ow bode, if 3e wyll folow me.	595
	“ffor þis same lord whech wyth my lady is,	596
	he hathe alle þese, mor' pleynteuously, I telle,	
	þan ony man in þis world may þink, I-wys ;	
	ffor of alle uertues he is þe very welle.	
	Come 3e forth wyth me hom to my celle :	600
	And if 3e fynde my wordes be vnstable,	
	A-noþir day a-rest me be 3our' constable !	602
	“3e schull haſe hyr lord & hyr sone eke,	603
	A gracyous lynage þat may nocht mys,	
	A merueylous kynrode, to lerne if 3e leke ;	
	he is hyr lorde, sche hys modyr is ;	
	he is hyr sone & sche mayde, I-wys ;	607
	he made hyr, sche bar' hym in hyr wombe,	
	þe synnes of þe werld he clenſyth, þis lombe.”	609

Bk. III. Ch. 13.Ca<sup>m</sup>. 13<sup>m</sup>.

<b>T</b> han was þis mayden sor' marred in mynde—	610
Men myght se in hyr colour', in cheke & in pytte	
So ran hyr bloode, so changed hyr kynde—	
ffor neuyr was sche or now put in þis wytte ;	
Sche is in swech a trau <sup>er</sup> s, wheyther' sche stant or sytte	614
Sche wote not hyr-selue ; sche is in swech cas,	
ffor to sey a sothi, sche wote not wher' sche was.	616
Be-twyx too þingys so is sche newly falle,	617
Whch sche schall leue or whech sche schall take.	
If sche leue hyr lawe whych hyr lordes alle	

- “This was at that tyme, lady, youre desyre 589 *Bk. III. Ch. 13.*  
 That þis lord whiche þat ye wolde haue that she must  
 Shulde leuen euere-more, neyther wyth water ner fyre have a Lord  
 Be dreynt ne brent, but euere hym-self saue ; immortal.  
 Ye wolde<sup>1</sup> be with hym euere and neuere fro hym waue. 593  
 This was your wil, and fulfillyd shal it bee, <sup>1</sup> overl.  
 Mi lady sente 3ow bode, and ye wil folwe mee. 595
- “ffor þis same lord whiche with my lady is, 596 This Lord  
 he hath alle these, more plenteuously, I you telle, is with the  
 Than ony man in þis world may thenke, I-wys ; Virgin.  
 ffor of alle vertues he is the very welle.  
 Come ye foorth with me hom to my celle : 600 Katharine  
 and if ye fynde my woordys be vnstable, and see Him.  
 A-nother day areste me be youre constable ! 602
- “Ye shul haue hir lord and hir sone eke, 603 Katharine  
 A gracious lynage that may not mys, shall have  
 A merueylous kynrede, to lerne if ye lyke ; the Virgin's  
 he is hir lord, she is moder his<sup>1</sup> ; <sup>1</sup> m. h. on er. Lord and  
 he is hir sone and she mayden, I-wys ; 607 Son,  
 he made hir, she bare hym in hir wombe,  
 The synnes of þis world he clensted, þis lombe.” 609 who washes  
 away the sins  
 of the world.

Ca<sup>m</sup>. 14.

*Bk. III. Ch. 14.*

- T**hanne was thys mayden sore marred in mende— 610  
 Men myght see in hir colour, in cheke and in pyt  
 Soo ran hir blod, soo chaunged hir kende—  
 ffor neuere was she er now put in this wyt ;  
 She is in swiche a trauns, whether she stant or syt 614 Katharine is  
 She wot not hir-selue ; she is in suche caas, in a trance.  
 ffor to sey a sooth, she wyst not where she was. 616
- Be-twyx too þingis soo is she newly falle, 617  
 Whiche she shal leue or wyche she shal take.  
 If she leue hir lawe whiche hir lordis alle

- Bk. III. Ch. 13. hold at þis tyme, & now it forsake,  
 falle to a newe for a straunge lordes sake, 621  
 Sche seeth not what *perch* in þis mater' is.  
 But for þe ermyte spake of þis lordes blys, 623  
 hys wordes haue enclyned now ful sor' hyr þowte 624  
 þat sche schall haue a þing long desyred.  
 Alle hyr goddys & hyr goode set sche at nowte,  
 So sor' is hyr hert *wyth* þis loue I-fyred,  
 It schall no mor', sche cast, *wyth* þe werld be myred. 628  
 þer-for' to þe ermyte eft sche gan þus seye :  
 " All *þour* informacyon I ber' well a-weye, 630  
 " Saue þat of o þing grete merueyle I ber'. 631  
 3e seyde me ryght now whan 3e told *þour* talle,  
 þat þis grete lady, if I wolde lere,  
 Bar' a noble chyld *wyth*-outen any bale,  
 And 3et sche is a mayden at asay & sale. 635  
 þis same mater' is a-geyn<sup>1</sup> kynde ; <sup>1</sup> r. ageynis  
 What, wene 3e, ser', þat I wer' so blynde 637  
 " þat I cowde not vnderstand of *generacyon* 638  
 þe preuy weyes? þowe I non excersy[c]e  
 haue had in my lyffe of swetȝ occupacyon,  
 Ne neuyr wyll haue, be þat hie iustyce  
 Whech 3e to me now newly gan deuyse, 642  
 3et know I wele, & ilk<sup>1</sup> man it knowyth, <sup>1</sup> r. ilka  
 Who wyll ha chyld, seed sume-tyme [he] sowyth." 644

Bk. III. Ch. 14.Ca<sup>m</sup>. 14<sup>m</sup>.

- " **W**yth-outen seed, lady, or *wyth*-outyn synne 645  
 May god make a man, & so he dede or now.  
 ffor if we at Adam or at Eue be-gyne,  
 It is full pleyn for to schew on-to 3ow :  
 ffor whan þat same Adam slepȝ in a swow, 649  
 Our' lord owte of hys syde þan made Eue.  
 þan be þis ensaunple pleynly may 3e preue : 651

- holde at þis tyme, and an other make,<sup>1</sup> 1 an o. m. on er. *Bk. III. Ch. 11.*  
 falle to a newe for a straunge lordys sake, 621  
 She seeth not what *pereth* in this mater is.  
 But [for] the Ermyte spak of þis lord of blys, 623  
 his woordys haue enclyned now ful soore hir thought 624  
 That she shal haue a þing longe desyred.  
 Alle hir goddis and hir good set she at nought,  
 Soo sore is hir herte with þis loue I-fyred, Katharine  
counts her  
Gods as  
nothing.  
 It shal no more, she casteth, *wyth* þe world be myred. 628  
 Therefore to the ermyte eft she gan thus seye :  
 "Alle *your* informacyon I bere weel a-weye, 630  
 "Saue þat of oon þing grete merueyle I bere. 631  
 Ye seyde me right now, whan þe told *your* tale, She asks  
Adrian  
 That þis grete lady, if I wolde lere,  
 Bar a noble chyld *wyth*-outen ony bale, how his Lady  
can haue a  
child, and yet  
be a Virgin.  
 And yet she is a mayden at a-say and sale. 635  
 This same mater is a-geyns kynde ;  
 What, wene ye, sir, þat I were so blynde 637  
 "That I cowde not vnderstonde of generacyon) 638  
 The *preuy* weyes ? though I not excereyse<sup>1</sup> 1 or. excersyse  
 haue had in my lyf of suche occupacyon),  
 Ne neuere wil haue, be þat hey Iustyse  
 Whiche to me now newly ye gan deuyse, 642  
 Yet knowe I weel, and ilke man knoweth,  
 hoo wil haue a child, seed somtyme he soweth." 644  
Children  
come from  
seed.

Ca<sup>m</sup>. 15<sup>m</sup>.*Bk. III. Ch. 15.*

- "**W**yth-outen seed, lady, or *wyth*-outen synne 645 Adrian ex-  
 May god make a man, and soo he dede er now : plains,  
 ffor if we at Adam or at Eue begynne,  
 It is ful pleyn for to shewe on-to yow :  
 ffor whan þat same Adam slepte in a swow, 649 that as God  
 Oure lord oute of his syde þan made Eue. made Eve out  
 of Adam,  
 Thanne be þis example pleynly may ye *preue* : 651

- Bk. III. Ch. 11. " Syth þat he made a uirgyn of a man), 652  
 he was of power' eke for to make  
 A man of a uirgyne—þus he werk can,  
 þis gracyous lorde whech 3e to make  
 Chosen in 3our parlement. 3et for 3our sake 656  
 A-nother' demonstracyon in þis same mater'  
 I wyll to 3ow schewe, if 3e wyll it here. 658  
 " þer may no man, if we take good hede, 659  
 Preue be any reson) who all þing be-gan);  
 Speke we now of creatures & leue þe godhede,  
 þe sune & þe mone, þe bryght & þe wan),  
 Of her' be-gynnyng þer can nowe no man 663  
 haue no remembrauns ne tell in what plyght  
 þat þei wer' made, eyther' day or nyght. 665  
 " Than, syth no man may of þese erdely werkis 666  
 Tell þe pryuy cause, no wondyr is, certeyn),  
 þat þei of feyth schull<sup>1</sup> tell ony merkys; <sup>1 r. schuld not</sup>  
 ffor feyth is not prouable, as clerkys seyn.  
 þer-fo' our' wyttes must be ful beynd) 670  
 To leue swech þingys þat we can not proue—  
 lete argumentys walk, þei ar' not to our' be-houe." 672

Bk. III. Ch. 15.Cam. 15<sup>m</sup>.

- " **W**hat aylyd þat lord þat all myght hadde, 673  
 In our' frele natur' hym for to clothe,  
 To leue þe bettyr & þus take þe badde,  
 Or ellys at hys lykyng to kepe styll boþe?  
 Was he wyth mankynde euer or now wrothe, 677  
 Was he eyr offendyd? we wolde wete faynd)  
 What 3e to þis mater' now can vs sayn)." 679

Bk. III. Ch. 16.Cam. 16<sup>m</sup>.

- " **F**Or myschef, madame, þat man fell in 680  
 Whan Adam þe appyll ete in paradys,  
 Wold þis lord in erde lowly take hys ine,

- “ Sith þat he made a virgyn of a man, 652 *Bk. III. Ch. 15.*  
 he was of power eke for to make  
 A man of a virgyn—thus he werke can,  
 This gracyous lord, whiche ye not slake<sup>1</sup> <sup>1 n. s. on er.</sup>  
 To chesyn in youre parlement. 3et for 3our sake 656  
 A-nother demonstracyon in þis same matere  
 I wil to yow shewe, if ye wil it heere. 658
- “ There may no man, if we take good heed, 659  
 Prouen be omy reson how alle þingis be-gan ;  
 Speke we of creaturis and leue the godhed,  
 The sonne and the mone, þe bryght and þe wan,  
 Of her begyunyng ther can now no man 663  
 haue in<sup>1</sup> remembrauns and telle in what plyght <sup>1 r. no</sup>  
 That þei were made, eyther day or nyght. 665
- “ Than sith that no man may of these erthely werkys 666  
 Telle þe preuy cause, no wonder is, certeyn,  
 That þei of feith shulde telle ony merkys ;  
 ffor feith is not prouable, as clerkis seyn.  
 Therefore oure wittes musten ben ful beyn 670  
 To leue suche þingis that we can not proue—  
 lete argumentys walke, þei arn not to oure behoue.” 672
- “ **W**hat eyled that lord þat al myght hadde, 673  
 In oure freel nature hym for to clothe,  
 To leue the beter and thus taken the badde  
 Or ellys at his likyng to kepe stille bothe ?  
 Was he with mankeende euere or nought wrothe, 677  
 Was he euere offended ? we wulde wyte fayn  
 What ye to þis mater now can vs sayn.” 679
- Ca<sup>m</sup>. 16<sup>m</sup>. *Bk. III. Ch. 16.*
- “ **F**Or myschef, madame, þat man fel to<sup>1</sup> then 680  
 Whan Adam the Appel cete in paradys, <sup>1 to on er.</sup>  
 Wulde this lord in erthe louly take his en,<sup>2</sup> <sup>2 orig. in</sup>  
Adrian answers: To undo the mischief done by Adam's apple-eating,  
P 2



Bk. III. Ch. 16. Not leuyng þat place full of delys,  
 But boþe her' & ther' at hys deys 684  
 he dwelt, as we leue, our' soules to lech —  
 þis semyth to 3ow full wondyrfull spech! 686  
 “And þat same lord, as nobyll marchaunt,  
 hys blood for our' synne on crosse wold spylle. 687  
 Of þat same deth we may make a-vaunt,  
 It waschyth from vs alle þat we dede ille.  
 Of our' feyth, lady, þis is þe grettest bylle, 691  
 þat cryst hys bloode payed for' our' synnes alle;  
 Best of all marchauntis þer-for' we hym calle.” 693

Bk. III. Ch. 17.Ca<sup>m</sup>. 17<sup>m</sup>.

“**W**ho may 3e couple now þat 3e<sup>1</sup> haue sayd? 694  
 he is lord of all, eyr', watyr & londe, <sup>1 MS. we</sup>  
 lyuyng in pees wyth hys modyr & mayde;  
 her-too þus 3e adde þat he is so bonde  
 þat he suffrede to be slaynd wyth wykkyd honde— 698  
 Who can 3e a-cord þat þis gret possessyound  
 Schuld long on-to hym, & eke þis strong passyow? 700  
 “Who may þat lord lyuyn eyr' & ay 701  
 Whan he is coupled of contraries too?  
 ffor of man & godd hys persone, as 3e say,  
 hath take resultauns, & 3et sey 3e moo  
 he is boþe eternd & temporall, loo. 705  
 lok if 3our' spech be now no heresy!  
 þis wote I weel þat<sup>1</sup> it offendyth phylosophye.” <sup>1 to be om.</sup>

Bk. III. Ch. 18.Ca<sup>m</sup>. 18<sup>m</sup>.

“**T**O þese questyouns þus I answe: 708  
 ffor it paseth nature & all hyr scole.  
 Natur' fayleth whan we feyth lere,  
 ffor our' be-leue standyth so sole, 711  
 Wyth þeis argumentis which are full of dole<sup>1</sup> <sup>1 = Lat. dolus</sup>  
 Wyll sche not medelle be no-maner' preue—  
 Ther' wer' no mede þan in our' be-leue. 714

Not leuyng that place ful of delys,		<i>Bk. III. Ch. 16.</i>
But heere and there at his deuys	684	
he dwelt, has we leue, oure soulys to leche—		
This semeth to yow ful wondirful speche !	686	
“ And that same lord as a noble marchaunt	687	
his blood for oure synne on crosse wolde spylle.		and to spill
Of þat same deeth we may make avaunt,		His own
It washeth from vs al þat we dede Ille.		blood to
Of oure feyth, lady, this is the grettest bille,	691	cleaue us.
That cryst his blood payed for oure synnes alle ;		
Best of alle marchauntis therfore we hym calle.”	693	

(Questio.)

“ <b>H</b> OW may ye couple now that ye haue seyde ?	694	Katharine
he is lord of aH, Eyr, water, and londe,		asks how
leuyng in pees with his moder and mayde ;		Christ can be
her-too thus ye adde <sup>1</sup> that he is soo bonde	<sup>1</sup> or. hadde	Lord of all,
That he suffred to be slaynd wyth wykked honde.	698	and yet slain
how can ye acoorde that this grete possessyon		by wicked
Shulde longe on-to hym, and eke þis stronge passyon ?	700	hands ;
“ how may that lord leuend euer and ay	701	
Whan he was coupled of contraries too ?		
ffor of man and god his persone, as ye say,		
hath take resultans, and yet sey ye moo		
he is bothe eternal and temporaH alsoo.	705	how be both
looke if þoure speche be now noon heresy !		eternal and
This wote I weel þat it offendeth philosophie.”	707	mortal.

Ca<sup>m</sup>. 17<sup>m</sup>.

“ <b>T</b> O these questions thus I answeere :	708	<i>Bk. III. Ch. 17.</i>
ffor it passeth nature and al her scoole.		Adrian tells
Nature fayleth whan we feyth leere,		her.
ffor oure beleue standeth soo sole,		
With these argumentis whiche arnd ful of dole	712	Relief doesn't
Wil she not medele be non-maner preue—		trouble about
There were no mede thanne in oure beleue.	714	arguments.

<u>Bk. III Ch. 18.</u>	“ Therfor, lady, if 3e wyll lerne þis þing,	715
	3e schall mechi bettyr whan 3e 3our groundys haue.	
	ffor of oo poynt I geue 3ow full warnyng :	
	3e can neuyr grace of 3our <sup>r</sup> lorde crane,	
	Ne 3our <sup>r</sup> soule eke schul 3e neuyr saue,	719
	But if 3e forsake for euyr 3our <sup>r</sup> elde be-leue	
	And trow swech þing as 3e can not preue.	721
	“ Who knew 3e þat costus, kyng of þis londe,	722
	Was fadyr on-to 3ow ? & what eydens haue 3e	
	þat 3e wer <sup>r</sup> bounden sumetyne wyth a bonde,	
	Armes, bodye, bak, legges & kne,	
	layde þus in cradyll as <sup>1</sup> chyldyr are, <i>parde?</i> <sup>1 MS. all</sup>	726
	Of all þeis þingys can we make no preue ;	
	Wherfor <sup>r</sup> full mekely we must hem be-leue.	728
	“ So schall we be-leue all-maner <sup>r</sup> þing	729
	Whechi þat our <sup>r</sup> lord comaundeth [on]-to vs ;	
	ffor þat same lorde þat all hath in weldyng,	
	Our <sup>r</sup> blessed god, our <sup>r</sup> sayour <sup>r</sup> ihesus,	
	Whan þat he byddyth þat we schall do þus,	733
	Suffyseth us as þan to be obedyent ;	
	ffor but if we be, I holde vs but schent.	735
	“ 3et, for 3e argue be 3our <sup>r</sup> demonstracyoun	736
	þat þis same doctrine schuld be <i>contrarius</i> ,	
	Be-cause þat I seyð in my declaracyon	
	Who þat blessed lord which is full delycyous,	
	I mene ihesu our <sup>r</sup> sayour <sup>r</sup> , of all most vertuous,	740
	þat he schuld be god & man eke <i>in-fere</i> :	
	Of þis same doctryne example may 3e lere ;	742
	“ And for 3e dowte eke of þis coupelyng,	743
	þat we two natures in cryst sey & prechi,	
	I wyll preue þis be 3our <sup>r</sup> own <sup>d</sup> felyng,	
	And 3e 3our <sup>r</sup> -selue 3our <sup>r</sup> owne selue schall teche,	
	Myn arbytrou <sup>r</sup> I make 3our <sup>r</sup> owne tung & speche :	747
	ffor <i>wyth-inne</i> 3our <sup>r</sup> -selue, if 3e <sup>1</sup> take heede, <sup>1 MS. we</sup>	
	Two natures haf 3e, <i>wyth-outen</i> any drede,	749

“ Therefore, lady, if ye wil lerne this thyng, Ye shal moche beter whan ye youre groundis haue. ffor of oon <sup>d</sup> poynte I geue you ful warnyng :	715	<i>Bk. III. Ch. 17.</i>
Ye can <sup>d</sup> neuere grace of youre lord craue, Ne youre soule eke shal <b>3e</b> neuere sauc, But ye forsake for euere <i>your</i> olde beleue And trowe swliche þinge as ye can not preue.	719 721	Katharine must believe what can't be proved.
“ how knewe ye that Costus, kyng of þis lond, Was fadir on-to you? and what eydens haue yee That ye were bounden <sup>d</sup> somtyme with a bonde, Armes, body, bak, leggis and knee Leyde thus in cradel as <sup>1</sup> children arn <sup>d</sup> , ye mowe see? Of alle these thyngis can we make no preue ; Wherefor ful mekely we must hem beleuee.	722 726 728	<sup>1</sup> as & c. on er.
“ Soo shal we beleue al-manner thyng Whiche þat oure lord commaundeth to vs ; ffor þat same lord that al hath in weeldyng, Oure blisshed god, oure saueour <i>ihesus</i> , Whanne þat he byddeth þat we shal doo thus, Suffyseth vs as thanne to be obedyent ; ffor but if we bee, I holde vs but shent.	729 733 735	We must believe what Christ tells us to.
“ Yet, for ye argue be youre demonstracyon <sup>d</sup> That this same doctryne shuld be contraryous, Be-cause that I seyde in myn <sup>d</sup> declaracyon <sup>d</sup> how þat blisshed lord whiche is ful delicious,— I mene <i>ihesu</i> , oure saueour, of alle most virtuous,— That he shulde be god and man <sup>d</sup> eke in fere : Of this same doctrine example may ye leere ;	736 740 742	But that He is God and man, and
“ And for ye doute eke of this coupelynge, That we too natures in cryst sey and præche, I wil proue this be youre owyn <sup>d</sup> feelynge, And <b>3e</b> youre-self youre owne self shal tecche, Myn arbitroure I make <b>3oure</b> owne tunge and speche : ffor with-inne youre-seelf, if ye take heed, Too natures haue ye, with-ouen ony dreed,	743 747 749	has two con- trary natures,  you may judge,  for you have two natures,

<u>Bk. III. Ch. 18.</u>	“ Whech <i>contrarye</i> be ; I prene it be þis skylly :	750
	ffor þat þe on desyreth, þe other <sup>o</sup> wyll nouth ;	
	Contrarye þan be þei, þese too, in wyll,	
	In desyre, in werkyng, in appetyte, in thowth.	
	Ryght so in þat lorle þat vs alle hath bouth	754
	Bethe too kyndes & wylles eke too,	
	Bothe in oo persone —our <sup>o</sup> feyth seyth ryght soo.	756
	“ Now wyll we declare on-to 3our <sup>o</sup> renerens	757
	Who god is eterne & <i>wyth</i> -outen <sup>o</sup> ende.	
	ffor if 3e loke wysely, þat same sentens	
	Schul 3e haue in 3our <sup>o</sup> bokes þat trete of kende ;	
	þei determynd þus, if 3e haue mende :	761
	All þing þat is made be-gymnyng must haue ;	
	And for þei fro þat heresy schuld hem saue	763
	“ Whech two begymnynges puttyth in kynde,	764
	þer-for on hafe þei chose, & þus þei hym calle	
	‘ þe fyrst meuer,’ if I <sup>1</sup> haue mynde ;	1 r. 3e
	Of whych meuer <sup>o</sup> oþer <sup>o</sup> causes alle	
	her <sup>o</sup> oryginall spryng both haue & schah,	768
	All þat haue ben, & euer-mor <sup>o</sup> schul be.	
	Of 3our <sup>o</sup> owyn <sup>o</sup> bokes þis is þe decre.”	770

<b>W</b> han adryan þe ermyte þese wordes had herle,	771
Assoyled alle þese qwestyouns, & many moo,	
On-to þe lady þus he last answerde :	
“ Madame,” he seyth, “ if 3e wyll now goo	
And walk forth <i>wyth</i> me, non but we two,	775
þis lord schall 3e see, þis lady schall 3e speke ;	
howses schall 3e haue þer <sup>o</sup> schull neuyr breke.”	777
These wordes went so depe, sche left bokes alle ;	778
So a-stoynd sche was, sche wot not veryly	
Wheither <sup>o</sup> sche schall þis ermyte a man now calle	
Or ellys an aungell, come down fro hye.	
ffor hys clothys to hys wordes ar <sup>o</sup> full on-lykly,	782

“Whiche contrarye be; I preue it be þis skyl :	750	<i>Bk. III. Ch. 17.</i>
ffor þat þe oon desyreth, the other wil nought ;		
Contrarye thanne be þei, these too, in wil,		each striving against the other.
I[n] desyre, in werkyng, in appetite, in thought.		
Right soo in that lord þat vs alle hath bought	754	
Beeth too keendes and willes eke too,		
Bothe in oo persone—oure feith seyth right soo.	756	
“Now wil we declare on-to youre reuerens	757	
how god is eterne and with-outen) ende.		God is eter- nal,
ffor if ye looke wysly, þat same sentens		
Shul ye haue in youre bookes þat treete of keende ;		
Thei determynd thus, if ye haue meende :	761	
Alle þing þat is made, begynnyng must haue ;		because all things spring from Him,
And for thei fro that heresy shuld hem saue	763	
“Whiche too begynnyngis putteth in keende,	764	
Therefore oon haue thei chose, and thus þei hym) calle		
The firste mouere, if ye haue meende ;		the First Mouer.
Of whiche mouere other causes alle		
her oryiginal spryng bothe haue and shalle,	768	
Alle þat haue ben and euere-more shal bee.		
Of youre owne bookys that is the decree. <sup>1</sup> ” <sup>1</sup> MS. degree	770	

Cam. 18m.

*Bk. III. Ch. 18.*

<b>W</b> han Adryan the ernyte þese wordis had herde,	771	Adrian asks Katharine
Asoyled alle these questions and many moo,		
On-to the lady thus he at last answerde :		
“Madame,” he seyth, “if ye wil now goo		to go with him,
And walken forth <i>wyth</i> me, noon) but we too,	775	
This lord shal ye sec, this lady shal ye speke ;		see Christ, and talk to the Virgin.
howses shal ye haue, thei shal neuere breke.”	777	
These woordys wente soo deepe, she lefte bookys alle ;		
Soo astoynd she was, she wote not verely	779	Katharine thinks whether she shall trust Adrian.
Whether she shal this ernyte a man) now calle		
Or ellis an aunget), come doun) fro hy.		
ffor his clothis to his woordis and ful onlykly,	782	

- Bk. III. Ch. 19. An olde man & hor' clade in clothys bare,  
A wyse man, a well a-vysed & a ware ; 784
- A man lych a begger whan men hym see, 785  
A man lych a doctour' whan þei hym here ;  
ffew wordes & wyse & full of sentens had hee,  
he semyth not so wyse be aray ne chere  
As þis lady hath preuyd in dyuers manere. 789  
Wherfor' aftyr hys counsele, certeyn, sche wyll do,  
No man schall lett hyr, for sche wyll soo. 791
- ffor a-noon as þe ermyte buskyd hym to fare 792  
forth in hys iornay, sche folowyth a-pace.  
All lordes & knytes þat in þe castell war',  
þei herd not, þei sey not of all þis solace ;  
Ne thorow-oute þe cyte as þei gun trace, 796  
Was no man a-spyed hem, but as inuisible  
þei passed forby. ryght so seyth our' byble 798
- Of þe men of sodom a-boute loth-is hous, 799  
Who þei neyther dores ne 3ates myght fynde :  
Godd smet hem þoo wyth a sekeneis meruelous—  
It is called acrisia, it maketh men seme blynde  
As for a tyme, for sykyr all her' mynde 803  
Schall be so a-stoynd þat þei schull not see  
þing þat in her' hand vp hap þan bee. 805
- So was all þe cyte a-stoynd ryght þan, 806  
Be goddes prouidens fully, as we wene.  
Lete hem curse now, lett hem chyde & banne,  
No man knowyth now whedyr is þe qweene.  
þus goo þei forth walkyng be-deene, 810  
Tyll þei come to þe stronde wher' þat hys hous,  
þis ermyte I mene, þis man meruelous, 812
- Was won for to stande—but all is a-goo ; 813  
þer is no home, all<sup>1</sup> is wylldyrnesse. <sup>1</sup> orig. all þis  
he wayled, he loked, he went too & froc,

An olde man and an hore clad in clothis bare, A wisman and a weel avysed and a ware ;	784	<u>Bk. III. Ch. 18.</u>
A man liche a beggere whan men hym see, A man liche a doctoure whan men hym here ; ffewe wordis and wyse and ful of sentens had hee, he semed not [so] wys be aray ne be chere As this lady hath proued in dyuers manere.	785	
Wherfore after his counseff, certeyn, she wil doo, No man shal letten hir, for she wil soo.	789	Katharine
ffor a-noon as the ermyte busked hym to fare ffoorth in his iornay, she folwed a-paas. Alle loordis and knyghtis that in þe castel ware, Thei herd not, thei sey not of al this solaas ; Ne thurgh-oute the Citee as þei gun traas,	792	follows Adrian.
Was noo man aspyed hem, but as inuysible Thei passed forby. right soo seyth oure bible	796	They pass in- visibly from Alexandria.
Of the men of sodom a-bowte loth-is hous, how thei neyther dores ner yates myght fynde : God <sup>1</sup> smette hem tho with a sakenesse merueylous— It is called Aurisia, <sup>2</sup> it maketh men þat sen, blynde As for a tyme, for sekyr al her mynde	798	<sup>1</sup> MS. soo <sup>2</sup> r. acrisia
Shal ben soo astoynd þat þei shul not see Thyng þat in her hand up hap than bee.	803	
Soo was al that Citee astoynd right þanne, Be goddis prouidens fully, as we wene. lete hem curse now, lete hem chyde and banne, Noo man knoweth now whyder his the queene. Thus gon thei foorth walkyng be-dene,	805	806 The Citizens know not where their Queen has gone.
Til thei come to the stronde where that his hous, This ermyte I mene, pis man merueylous,	810	
Was wont for to stonde—but al is a-goo ; There is noon hom, al is wilderness. he wayled, he looked too and froo,	812	813 Adrian can- not find his Cell. It has vanisht.



- Bk. III. Ch. 19. he cast þe cuntre, but he coude not gesse.  
 þus is he lefte *in car* & heuynesse. 817  
 “Good lord,” he seyth, “*wyth* me do what þou lest,  
 But, as þou hight me, *counforte* my gest!” 819  
 In who long tyme or *in* who many dayes 820  
 þat þei fro Alysaunder went to hys celle,  
 It is full harde to telle; for sewyrly, þo wayes  
 We’ so meruelous, we can not *wyth* hem melle.  
 þer-for of þis mater’ no mor’ wyll I telle; 824  
 But he made hem myghty þis iornay to take  
 þat be þe aungell led Abacue to þe lake. 826  
 Thus mornyth þis man, þus turneth he a-boute, 827  
 he lokyth *euery* coost sekyng hys celle,  
 he is falle now sodeynly *in* full grete doute;  
 ffor all hys sorow, sothely for to telle,  
 Was for þis lady wher’ sche schall dwelle; 831  
 þus seyde he to hym-selue: “sche schall ween, I were  
 A fals deceyuoure, a ontrewre massanger.” 833

Bk. III. Ch. 20.Ca<sup>m</sup>. 20<sup>m</sup>.

- The when a-spyed be þe ermytes face, 834  
 ffor uery uexacyound who he chaunged moode;  
 “Good syr,” sche seyde, “I pray 3ow of 3our’ grace,  
 haue we any tydynges othyr but goode?  
 þat 3e ar’ turmentyd I se be 3our’ bloode. 838  
 Telle me what doute þat 3e stand now Inne;  
 Counsell ha 3e non but me, mor’ ne þe myn[n]e.” 840  
 “Madame,” he seyde, “her’ left I myn hous 841  
 Whan I went for 3ow, as I was sent,  
 And now þe cuntre to me is meruelous,  
 Alle is a-goo, I-drenchyd or I-brent.  
 I must seke a new hous, for myn ekde is schent. 845  
 I had neuyr þowth myn herborow to chaunge:  
 Now mote I nedys, & þat schall be straunge.” 847

- he caste the contre, but he cowde not gesse. Bk. III. Ch. 18.  
 Thus is he lefte in care and in heynesse. 817  
 "Good lord," he seyth, "wyth me doo what þou leste,  
 But, as þou hight me, comforte my geste!" 819
- In how longe tyme or in how many dayes 820  
 That þei fro Alisaundre went to his celle,  
 It is ful hard to telle; for suerly, tho wayes  
 Were soo merueylous, we can not wyth hem melle.  
 Therefore of this mater no more wil I telle; 824 Christ en-ables Adrian  
and Katharine to travel.  
 But he made hem myghty this iornay to take  
 That be the aungeH led Abacuk to the lake. 826
- Thus morned þis man, thus turned he aboute, 827  
 he looked euery coost thus seekyng his celle,  
 he is falle now sodeynly in ful gret doute;  
 ffor alle his sorwe, soothly for to telle,  
 Was for this lady where she shal dwelle; 831  
 Thus seyde he to hym-self: "she shal wenen, I were  
 A fals disseyuere and noon trewe massagere." 833
- Ca<sup>m</sup>. 19<sup>m</sup>.** Bk. III. Ch. 19.
- T**he queen aspyed be the ermyt's face, 834  
 ffor very vexacyon how he chaunged mood;  
 "Good sir," she seyde, "I pray you of youre grace,  
 haue we ony tydyng's other than good?  
 That ye arn tormented I see be your blood. 838  
 Telle me what doute ye stonde now Inne; <sup>1 overlined.</sup>  
 CounceH haue ye<sup>1</sup> non but me, the more ne þe mynne." 840
- "Madame," he seyde, "heere lefte I myn hous 841  
 Whan I wente for yow, as I was sent,  
 And now the contre to me is merueylous,  
 Al is a-goo, I-drenched or I-brent.  
 I must seeke a newe hous, for myn oold is shent. 845  
 I had neuere though[t] myn herberwe to chaunge:  
 Now mote I nedes, and that shal be straunge." 847
- Adrian looks  
in vain for his  
Cell.
- Katharine  
asks what  
troubles  
Adrian.
- He cannot  
find his Cell.

- Bk. III. Ch. 20. Tho sayd þe wheen to þe man a-gayn: 848  
 “ þat lady þat sent 3ow for to fech me,  
 Sche is so gentyll, so trew, as 3e sayn,  
 Sche wyll not suffyr vs in þis aduersyte  
 To be lost or deuoured in þis straung cuntre. 852  
 Trost we vp-on hyr & hyr gentylnesse,  
 ffor in good hope lyghte sumtyme sykyrnesse.” 854  
 “ Now euyr be 3e wele ! ” seyde þe ermyte, 855  
 “ 3e haue set 3our trost hyer þan my-selue ;  
 Thow 3e be entered in to þe feyth but a<sup>1</sup> lyte, <sup>1 overlined.</sup>  
 3e wyll pace in schort tyme oþer ten or twelue.  
 Beth not a-ferde, of best ne of elue, 859  
 ffor þat same lady whos son 3e chees,  
 Sche schall vs saue, I leue soo douteles. 861  
 “ But all my þowth is now for my celle. 862  
 Schall I now grubbe & mak all newe a-geyn ?  
 Schall I now delue & make me a welle ?  
 My myght is I-goo, sothely for to seyn.  
 To chaunge my dwellyng was I neuyr fayn. 866  
 þis is my grucchyng, lady, þis is my care ;  
 But for 3our counfort well mote 3e fare ! ” 868  
 Godd suffered þis man to falle þus in trauns 869  
 þat he schuld not hym-selfe magnyfye  
 Of so grete sytys & of swech dalyauns  
 Whech þat he had wyth our ladye.  
 It is þe vse of our lord to lede men hyc 873  
 ffro full low degre, as dauid fro þe schepe  
 Was led to þe kyngdam, if we take kepe. 875

Bk. III. Ch. 21.Ca<sup>m</sup>. 21<sup>m</sup>.

- I**N all þis feer whech þe ermyte hadde, 876  
 Euyr was þis qween counfortour to hys age ;  
 þe mor he heuy was, þe mor was sche gladde,  
 And euyr wyth full goodely, full trosty langage  
 Sche seyde on-to hym : “ lete 3our heynnesse swage ! 880

- Tho seyde the queen to the man ageyn : 848 *Bk. III. Ch. 19.*
- “That lady that sente yow for to fetch me,  
She is soo gentyll, soo trewe, as ye seyn,  
She wil not suffre us in this aduersite  
To be loost or deuoured in this straunge contre. 852
- Truste we up-on hir and hir gentillesse,  
ffor in good hope lygth somtyme sekynnesse.” 854 *Katharine  
bids Adrian  
trust in the  
Virgin Mary.*
- “Now euere be ye weel,” seyde the ermyte, 855
- “Ye haue sette yowre trost heyere than my-selue ;  
Thow ye be entred in to the feyth but a lyte,  
Ye wil passe in short tyme other ten or twelue.  
Beth not a-feerd, of beste ne of clue, 859  
ffor that same lady whos sone ye ches  
She shal vs saue, I leete soo douteles. 861
- “But al my thought is now for my celle. 862 *He tells her  
he is too old  
to build a  
new Cell.*
- Shal I now grubbe and make al newe agayn ?  
Shal I now delue and make me a welle ?  
My myght is I-goo, soothly for to sayn.  
To change my dwellynge was I neuere fayn. 866
- This is my grutchyng, lady, this is my care ;  
But for youre comforte weel mote ye fare !” 868
- God suffred þis man to falle thus in trauns 869 *God lets him  
grieve, to pre-  
uent his being  
puft up.*
- That he shulde not hym-self magnyfye  
Of soo grete syghtes and of swiche dalyauns  
Whiche that he had with oure ladye.  
It is the vse of oure lord to leede men hye 873  
ffro ful lowe degree, as dauyd fro the sheep  
Was leed to the kyngdam, if we take keep. 875
- Ca<sup>m</sup>. 20<sup>m</sup>.**
- I**N all this feer whiche the ermyte hade, 876 *Bk. III. Ch. 20.*
- Euere was the queen confortour to his age ;  
The more he heuy was, þe more was she glade,  
And euere with ful goodly and ful trosty langage  
She seyde on-to hym : “lete your heynnesse swage ! 880 *Katharine  
cheers him.*

Bk. III. Ch. 21.

- Lete it be lost þat lost now wyll be !  
 But trewly I telle, a solempe þing I se : 882  
 “ Euene 3ondyr a-boue, ser’, se 3e nowth 883  
 þe woundyrfull wallys schynnyng as sune ?  
 Swech a-mother’ þing was neuyr wrowte,  
 þer was neuyr swech þing in erde be-gune ; 886  
 þe stones ar’ bryght, þe roues<sup>1</sup> ar’ not downn.<sup>2</sup> <sup>1</sup> MS. roues  
<sup>2</sup> r. dunn  
 Loke vp, man, meryly ! se 3e nocht 3on syght,  
 þe castell 3ondyr wech schynnyth so bryght ?” 889  
 The ermyte be-helde, but he sey nowth, 890  
 Neyther’ wall ne 3ates, & þo sorow gan he make ;  
 “ Lady,” he seyde, “ in blessed tyme wer’ 3e browte  
 On-to þis grounde, 3our’ spouse for to take !  
 he hath do now mor’ for 3our’ sake 894  
 þan I hafe felt all my lyffe leuaunde ;  
 3e be mor’ worthy, as I vndyrstande.” 896  
 Tho wept he full sore, & sone þan he say 897  
 þat same vysyon, but sor’ a-stoynd he was :  
 hys chapell was turned all in oþer’ way :  
 ffor þis wech he sethe, is brygter’ þan glas,  
 þe opir was elde, all growyn wyth gras ; 901  
 hys elde hous was lytyll, þis new is large.  
 þan 3afe he þe mayden a full grete charge, 903  
 Thus seyde he to hyr : “ madame, now goo 3e 904  
 On-to 3on castell, on-to 3on toure !  
 Trostyth no lenger’ of þe ledyng of me,  
 ffor I am not worthy to prese to þat boue’.  
 God graunt þat I may be 3our’ successour’, 908  
 þat I may sume-tyme come to þat place !  
 If 3e may, I pray 3ow, aske [3e] me þat grace !” 910  
 Than went þe mayden forth be hyr one, 911  
 Desyryng sor’ to se þis goodely place.  
 But Adryan folowyd, whan sche was gone—

lete it be lost that lost now wil bee!

*Bk. III. Ch. 20.*

But trewly I telle yov,<sup>1</sup> a solenne thyng I see, <sup>1</sup> overl. 882

“Euene yonder aboue, [ser<sup>2</sup>], see ye nought 883

The wonderful walles shynyng as the sonne?

Katharine  
sees the  
Heavenly  
City.

Swiche a-nother thyng was neuere wrought,

There was neuere swiche thyng in erthe be-gunne.

The stones arn bryght, the roues arn not dunne. 887

look vp, man, meryly! see ye not yone sight,

The castel yonder whiche shyneth soo bryght?” 889

The ermyte be-held, but he sey nought, 890

Neyther wal ne yates, and tho sorwe gan he make;

“lady,” he seyde, “in blyssed tyme were ye brought

On-to this ground, youre spouse for to take!

he hath do more now for youre sake 894

Than I haue felt al my lyf lyuande;

Ye be more worthi, as I vndirstunde.” 896

Tho wepte he ful soore, and sone than he say 897

That same auysyon, but soore he astoynd was:

his chapel was turned al in other way:

ffor this whiche he seeth, his brytere þan glas,

The other was olde, growen w<sup>y</sup>th gras; 901

his olde hous was litel, þis newe is large.

Than yaf he the mayden a ful grete charge, 903

Thus seyde he to hir: “madame, now goo yee 904

On-to yone castel, on-to yone toure!

Trosteth no lengere of the leedyng of mee,

ffor I am not worthi to prese to þat boure.

God graunte that I may be youre successoure, 908

That I may somtyme come to þat place!

If ye may, I prey you aske ye that grace!” 910

Than wente the mayden forth be hir oone, 911

Desyryng sore to see this goodly place.

But Adryan folwed, whan she was goone—

She sets out.

Adrian  
follows  
Katharine

- bk. III Ch. 21. Oute of hyr hardynesse he gan hym purchace  
 On-to hys coumfort now a new solace. 915  
 But whan þei wer<sup>1</sup> come at þe 3atys wyde,  
 þer<sup>1</sup> wer<sup>1</sup> þei receyuyd on euery syde <sup>1 MS. wher<sup>1</sup>, h expunged</sup>  
 W<sup>y</sup>th swech<sup>1</sup>-maner<sup>1</sup> persones of face & of clothyng 918  
 We can not speke it. I trow þei told it nowte—  
 ffor þei þat ar<sup>1</sup> lyfte to swech<sup>1</sup> mysty þing,  
 þei telle what þei sey whan þei wer<sup>1</sup> þidy<sup>1</sup>r broute,  
 But þei can not expresse her<sup>1</sup> wyll ne her<sup>1</sup> þowte 922  
 In wech þei hade þat manere solace—  
 It is a-nothyr langage þat longyth to þat place. 924  
 But þese too persones, as many other moo, 925  
 Wer<sup>1</sup> lyft vp in soule swech<sup>1</sup> sytes for to see.  
 Seynt poule hym-selue was on of þoo  
 þat was þus I-raueched; 3et dowted he  
 Wheythyr hys body, or nowte, wer<sup>1</sup> in þat secree. 929  
 But þis doute I not þat þe body of þis mayde  
 Was in þat temple wher<sup>1</sup> sche was arayde 931  
 W<sup>y</sup>th holy baptem & anoy[n]ted eke 932  
 W<sup>y</sup>th holy crisme, as our<sup>1</sup> lord wolde—  
 No man may be baptyzed, if we treuly speke,  
 But þei haue a body, be þei 3ong or olde. 935  
 þus sey<sup>1</sup> þe elde<sup>2</sup> bokes, þer<sup>1</sup>-of ar<sup>1</sup> we bolde: <sup>1 orig. seyth, th  
 expunged.</sup>  
 God may do what-euyr hym lyst, <sup>2 MS. olde?</sup>  
 And dothe mech<sup>1</sup> þing whech<sup>1</sup> is not wyst. 938  
 Thus ar<sup>1</sup> þei receyuyd in þe fyrst warde; 939  
 But aftyr mech<sup>1</sup> bettyr, & of worthyer<sup>1</sup> men,  
 Whan sche to þe secunde cam; whech<sup>1</sup> sauoured [a]s narde,  
 Nay, mech<sup>1</sup> swettyr. þer<sup>1</sup> met sche mo þanz ten  
 Of hundredes I mene, but non can sche ken, 943  
 þei wer<sup>1</sup> other<sup>1</sup>-maner persones þanz sche had seynd.  
 But all þese in-fere on-to hyr gan seynd: 945  
 “ Wolcom, syster<sup>1</sup>, on-to þis holy place! 946  
 Wolcom to our<sup>1</sup> lorde whech<sup>1</sup> hath 3ow chose  
 ffor to be hys spouse, ryght of hys grace!

Oute of hir hardynesse he gan hym purchace		<i>Bk. III. Ch. 20.</i>
On-to his comferte a newe solace.	915	to the Heavenly City.
But whan thei were come at þe yates wyde,		
There were thei receyued on euery syde	917	
With swiche maner persones of face & of clothyng	918	They are welcom'd by Celestial Beings.
We can not speke it. I trowe thei tolde it nought—		
ffor þei þat arn lyfte to swiche mysty thyng,		
Thei telle what þei sey whan thei were thedir brought,		
But þei can not expresse her wil ne her thought	922	
In whiche thei hadde that-maner solace—		
It is a-nother langage þat longeth to þat place.	924	
But these too persones, as many other moo,	925	
Were lyfte vp in soule swiche sight's for to see.		
Seynt poule hym-selue was oon of thoo		
That was thus I-rauysed ; yet <sup>1</sup> douted hee	<sup>1</sup> MS. þat	
Whethir his body, or nought, were in þat secree.	929	
But this doute I not þat the body of this mayde		(Katharine is bodily in the Temple
Was in þat temple where she was arayde	931	)
With holy baptenð and anoy[n]ted eke	932	where afterwards she is baptized and anointed.)
With hooly crysme, as oure lord wolde—		
No man may ben baptised, if we truly speke,		
But thei haue a body, be thei yonge or olde.		
Thus seyn the olde book's, ther-of arn we bolde :	936	
God may doo what-soo-euere hym lyst,		
And dooth meche thyng whiche is not wyst.	938	
Thus arn thei receyued in þe firste warde ;	939	
But after moche better, and of wurthiere men,		Worthier Beings greet them in the Second Ward.
Whan she to the secunde cam ; it sauoured as narde,		
Yaa, <sup>1</sup> meche swetere. there mette she mo than ten	<sup>1</sup> on er.	
Of hundredes I mene, but noon kan she ken) ;	943	
There were other-maner persones þan she had seyn.		
But alle these in-feere on-to hir gan creyn (!) :	945	
“Welcom, suster, on-to þis hooly place !	946	Katharine is welcom'd
Weel-come on-to oure lord whiche hath you chose		
ffor to be his spouse, ryght of his grace !		



<u>Bk. III Ch. 21.</u>	Welcome, of clenness eery swete rose!	
	ffor 3our' virginite, wyth-owte ony glose,	950
	Schal we receyue 3ow," & thus forth þei hyr lede,	
	These gostly folkys in wondyrfull wede,	952
	Tyl þei to þe temple cam. but þer' was a syght!	953
	þer' came kynges, þer' cam emperoures,	
	þer' cam a meny wyth habytes so bryght,	
	It is not possible to erdely successoures	
	To expresse þoo fresch, þoo gay coloures;	957
	Sche sey hem þan in her' goodely aray—	
	We leue in hope to se hem an othyr day.	959
	Thei led hyr þoo forthe a full softe pace	960
	On-to þe barres of þe temple-gate,	
	hyr wolcomyng at þat tyme, swech þoo it was :	
	“ Wolcom our' syster', wolcom our' mate!	
	As 3e be now, wer' we full late,	964
	ffor suntyme had we bothe flesch, fell & bonys;	
	As 3e hafe now, had we all ones.”	966
	Vp-on her' habytes certen tokenes þei ber',	967
	Sum man oo tokyn, sume man an other' bare :	
	Aftyr þe passyones whech þei suffred here	
	So wer' þei merked wyth tokenes full bare;	
	þoo toknes wer' sett [t]her <sup>1</sup> ryght to declare <sup>1 MS. her'</sup>	971
	þat men had þei be & wyth grete distresse	
	Oute of þis herde com to þat holynesse.	973
	But whan þis lady to þe dore was browte,	974
	Sche loked in; hyr leders louted alle.	
	Sche herd þer' melodye, as to hyr thowte	
	Sche herd neuyr swych. þer'-for' is sche falle	
	Down all in traums—þer' was neuyr man, ne schalle,	978
	þat may susteyn in body swech heuynly blysse;	
	ffor who schall it susteyn, must dye fyrst, I-wys.	980
	Oute of hyr traunce whan sche was wakyd,	981
	Sche folowyd forth þan to þat noble place.	

Wolcome, of clenness very swote rose !		<i>Bk. III. Ch. 20.</i>
ffor youre virginite, with-uten ony glose,	950	for her Virginity.
Shal we receyue you," and thus fourth thei hir leede,		
These goodly folk <sup>i</sup> s in wonderful weede,	952	
Til thei to the temple cam. but þere <sup>1</sup> was a syght!	953	
There come kyng <sup>i</sup> s, there come emperour[i]s,	<sup>1</sup> MS. þerre	Holy Martyrs, in kingly attire,
There come a meny with habit <sup>i</sup> s soo bryght		
It is not possible to erthely successourys		
To expresse tho fresh, tho gay coloures ;	957	
She sey hem thanne in her goodly aray—		
We leue in hope to see hem a-nother day.	959	
Thei ledde hir tho fourth a ful soofte paas	960	lead Katha- rine to the Temple gate,
On-to the barres of the temple yate,		
hir weelcomyng at that tyme, swiche tho it waas :		
“ Weelcome oure suster, weelcome oure mate !		welcoming her.
As ye be now, were we ful late,	964	
ffor somtyme hadde we bothe feH, flesh and bones ;		
As 3e haue now, had we alle oones.”	966	
Vp-on her habites certeyn tookenes þei bere,	967	
Som man oo tookne, som man) an other baar :		
Affter the passyons whiche thei suffred heere		
Soo were thei marked w <sup>yth</sup> tooknes ful yaar ;		
Thoo tooknes where sette there ryght to declar	971	
That men had thei been) and with gret distresse		
Oute of this erthe come to that holynesse.	973	
But whan this lady to the dore was brought,	974	
She looked in ; hir leeder <sup>i</sup> s lowted alle.		She looks in and swoons.
She herde there melodye, as hir thought		
She herde neuere swiche. therfore is she falle	977	
Doun) alle in a trauns—there was neuere man, ne shalle,		
That may susteyne in body swiche heuenly blis ;		
ffor ho shal it susteyne, must firste deyn, I-wys.	980	
Oute of hir trauns whan) she was waked,	981	
She folwed fourth þanne to þat noble plaas.		

Bk. III. Ch. 21. þan sey sche our' lord, whech all þing maȳd,  
 Whech had called hyr to þat noble grace,  
 Sittyng full reah—but up-on hys face 985  
 Durst sche not loke for no-maner' þing,  
 So was sche a-ferle at hyr fyrst comyng. 987  
 Than wȳst sche wele it was more þan man 988  
 þat sche had sowte & now sche hath it founde ;  
 ffor wȳth all þe wytt þat sche gadyr kan, <sup>1 MS. hys; r. on hym</sup>  
 Dar' sche noght fyxe hyr' eye in [t]hys<sup>this</sup> stounde,  
 But euyr sche in poynt is to falle on-to þe grounde— 992  
 hyr body is cause, it must be claryfyed,  
 And all þe carnalyte fully purifyed, 994  
 Or sche swech þinges eyther' fele or grope. 995  
 Thus is þis mayden aH in heuynesse  
 left, & leyd in maner' of wan-hope ;  
 ffor þat same lord whech of hys goodenesse  
 lyst for to chese hyr as a speeyall spousesse, 999  
 Now is so straunge sche may noght hafe þat grace  
 To come sumewhat nyher & se hys face. 1001

Bk. III. Ch. 22.Ca. 22<sup>m</sup>.

**T**ho cam our' ladye & left hyr' up sone ; 1002  
 þus sayd sche te hyr : “ be of good comforte !  
 þour' heuynes is pased, þe hafe þour' bone,  
 All þis grete heuynesse schall turne to dysporte.  
 I sent aftyr þow þat þe schuld resorte 1006  
 On-to þis howsölde, for þe schall hafe þis grace,  
 Next me a-forn all women to be<sup>1</sup> in þis place. <sup>1 om. to be ?</sup>  
 “ Therfor' come forthe now, for I wyll þow lede 1009  
 Ryght to my sone, on-to þat mageste.”  
 Both maydes in-fer' þus forthe þei þede.  
 But þis noble adriane, at þat tyme wher' was he ?  
 Myn auctour' telleth noght ; but sekyr may þe be, 1013  
 he had blysse enowe assygned to hys parte,  
 he had so meeñ he was lothe to departe. 1015

Thanne sey she oure lord, whiche al thyng maked,		<i>Bk. III. Ch. 20.</i>
Which had called hir to þat noble graas,		Katharine
Sittyng ful riall—but vp-on his faas	985	sees Christ,
Durst she not looke for no-manner thyng,		but dares not
Soo was she afered at hir first comyng.	987	look on His
		Face,

Thanne wiste she weel it was more than man	988
That she had sought, and now she hath it founde ;	
ffor with al the witte that she gadre canð	
Dar she not fyxen hir eye in this stounde,	
But cuere she in poynt is to falle on-to the grounde—	992
hir body is cause, it muste be claryfyed	
And al the carnalite fully puryfied,	994

Er she swiche thyngis eyther feele or grope.	995
Thus is my mayden al in heynesse	
left, and leyd in maner of wanhope ;	
ffor þat same lord wiche of his goodnesse	
lest for to chese hir as a special spousesse,	999
Now is so straunge she may not haue þat grace	
To come somewhat nyhere and see his blissed face.	1001

Cam. 21m.

*Bk. III. Ch. 21.*

<b>T</b> ho can oure lady and lift hir vp soone ;	1002
Thus seyde she to hir : “ be of good comforte !	
Youre heynesse is passed, ye haue <i>your</i> boone,	
Al this grete heynesse shal turne to disporte.	
I sente after you that ye shuld resorte	1006
On-to this houshold, for ye shul haue þis grace,	
Nexste me a-forð alle women to bee in this place.	1008

The Virgin  
Mary com-  
forts her.

“ Therefore come fourth now, I wil yow leede	1009
Right to my sone, on-to that mageste.”	
Bothe maydenes in-fere thus fourth þei yeede.	
But this noble Adryan, at þat tyme where was hee ?	
Myn auctour telleth not ; but sekyr may ye bee	1013
he had blisse I-now assigned to his part,	
he had so moche he was ful looth thens-wart. <sup>1</sup> <sup>1</sup> ou er.	1015

The Virgin  
Mary takes  
Katharine

<u>Bk. III. Ch. 22.</u>	Thus ar' þese ladyes euen on-to þe trone	1016
	Of our' lord allmyghty walked forthe a-pace,	
	Wyth-outen othyr <sup>1</sup> company, þei went þoo a-loone—	
	Peraumentur' other' folk stood not in þat grace, <sup>1</sup> omit othyr	
	So ny þat mageste, so ny goddys face	1020
	To approach at þat tyme; it was a speecyalte	
	Ordeyned of purpos at þis solemnyte.	1022
	Our' lady had þe wordes whan sche cam þer';	1023
	“Sune,” sche seyth, “& maker' of all-maner þing,	
	I hafe browte [a] mayde her' in full grete fere,	
	þe spouse whech þou louyst, her' I hyr bryng,	
	Sche desyryth þat þou schalt now wyth a ryng	1027
	Despouse hyr' to þi-self for euyr-more—	
	þis is hyr' desyre, & hath be full 3ore.”	1029
	Our' lord spake a-geyn mysty wordes too,	1030
	Whech þat þis mayde full heuy þoo made;	
	“Modyr,” he seyth, “3e know 3our-self, loo,	
	þe cause þat þis company in ioyes þus wade	
	Is þe look of my-selfe, whech dothe hem glade;	1034
	ffor þei þat hafe þat, þei nede noo othyr þing.	
	But þei þat schul hafe þis gracyous syght lestyng,	1036
	“ffull elene must þei be in body & in gooste,	1037
	Washed fro all synnes þat be fowle & derk.	
	Of swech hafe I her', 3e see, a grete hoste,	
	Clensyd wyth my blode & merkyd wyth my merk—	
	All þis was my labour' & my bysy werk	1041
	Whan I in erde was to bye mankynde,	
	Wech þat I fynde full oft to me onkynde.	1043
	“Wherfor, modyr, þus I answer' on-to 3ow :	1044
	þis mayde may not hafe as now þat grace	
	Whech þat 3e aske for hyr sake now,	
	I mene þe vysyon, þe syght of my face;	
	lete hyr goo clense hyr', lete hyr goo purchase	1048
	þe holy baptem, þan hath sche my merke;	
	Bryug hyr þan to me, & I schall hyr merke	1050

Thus are these ladies euen on-to the throne	1016	<u>Bk.III. C<sup>o</sup>. 21.</u>
Of oure lord almyghty walked foorth a-pace :		to Christ's throne,
Wyth-outen other company thei wente tho allone—		
Peraventure other folk stood not in þat grace,		
Soo ny that mageste, soo ny goodis face	1020	
To approche at that tyme ; it was a specialyte <sup>1</sup>	<sup>1</sup> or. specialte	
Ordeyned of purpos at this solenlyte.	1022	
Oure lady had the wordis whan she cam there ;	1023	
“ Sone,” she seyth, “ and makere of al-maner thyng,		and says she brings Him a Bride who wishes to wed Him.
I haue brout a mayde here in ful grete fere,		
Thi spouse whiche þou louest, here I hir bryng,		
She desireth þat þou shalt now wyth a ryng	1027	
Despouse hir to thi-self for euere-more—		
This is hir desire, and hath been ful ȝore.”	1029	
Oure lord spak ageyn mysty woordis thoo,	1030	
Whiche þat this mayde ful heuy tho made ;		
“ Modir,” he seyth, “ ye knowe youre-self, loo,		Christ says
The cause that þis company in ioyes thus wade		
Is the looke of my-self, whiche dooth hem glade ;	1034	that all with Him
ffor þei þat haue that, thei nede noon other thyng.		
But thei þat shul haue this gracyous sight lastyng,	1036	
“ fful clene muste þei bee in body and in goost,	1037	must be pure of sin.
Washed fro alle synmys that been foule and derk.		
Of swiche haue I here, ȝe see, a grete oost,		
Clensyd wyth my blood and merked wyth my merk—		
Al this was my labour and my besy werk	1041	Christ tells
Whan I in erthe was to b <sup>e</sup> ye mankeende,		
Whiche þat I fynde ful ofte to me onkeende.	1043	
“ Wherefore, moder, thus I answere on-to yow :	1044	His Mother that Katharine mustn't see His face
This mayde may not haue as now þat grace		
Whiche þat ye askyn for hir sake now,		
I mene the visyon, the sight of my face ;		
lete hir goo clense hir, lete hir goo purchase	1048	
The holy baptem, than hath she my merk ;		till she's baptized.
Brynge hir þanne to me, and I shal hir caerk (t) <sup>1</sup>	<sup>1</sup> or. er.	

<u>Bk. III. Ch. 22.</u>	Wyth swech̄ a tokne þat neuyr mayde but 3e had it so speecyaly. lete þis þing be doo ; A prest hafe 3e redy & a man, parde, Bothe in flesh̄ & goost : lete hym goo þer-too, Performe he schall þis werk wyth hys handys too. 1055 Myn̄ aungellis wyll I noght occupye wyth þis dede, It longyth to mankynd, wyth-uten drede ; 1057	
	“ And 3et þow 3 we myght of our' hyc power' Graunte on-to aungellis þis specialtee þat þei schuld baptize men in erde here, 3et wyll we noght þat þei occupied schuld bee Wyth swych̄-maner' offyce as to humanyte 1062 longyth, & schal longe, as for most ryght. Go now & baptize þat noble wyght !” 1064	
	Thaz spake our' ladye, to swage hyr heuynesse : 1065 “ Beth not discomfortyd in no-maner' weye Wyth my sones wordes ! for, in sykynesse, 3e must to hys byddyng ful buxumly obeye. It is a goodely vsage, sothely to seye : 1069 Who schal be weddyd on-to duke or kynge, Be-for hyr weddyng to hafe a bathynge, 1071	
	“ ffor to mak hyr swete, for to make hyr elene— 1072 Ellys myght sche renne in ful grete offens. Be þis example on-to 3ow I mene, Do 3e 3our' deuer', do 3our' dylygens ffor to plese 3our' lorde ! a-non goo we hens 1076 In to 3on chapell to 3our' baptistery ; Aftyr 3our' waschyng 3e schal be full mery.” 1078	

Bk. III. Ch. 23.Ca<sup>m</sup>. 23<sup>m</sup>.

<b>T</b> hus ar' þei walked, þe mayden & þe qween, 1079 In to þis chapell on þe mynster' syde. þer' fond þei redy a funt, as I wene, Wyth watyr, & wyth <sup>1</sup> crisme in a vessell wyde. <sup>1</sup> omit wyth Adriane is called fro þe puple a-syde, 1083	
---	--

“With suche a tookne that neuere mayde but yee 1051 *Bk. III. Ch. 21.*  
had it soo speeyaly. lete this thyng be doo ;  
A preest haue ye redy, and a man þat loueth me,  
Bothe in flesh and in goost : lete hym *per-to goo*,<sup>1</sup> *1 on. er.*  
Perfoorme he shal þis werk *wyth* his hand*s* too ; 1055  
Myn aungell*s* wil I not occupye *wyth* þis dede,  
It longeth to mankeende, with-ouen ony<sup>1</sup> drede ; *1 overl.*

“And yet though we myght of oure hy powere 1058  
Graunte on-to aungell*s* this speeyalte  
That thei shulde baptise men in erthe here,  
3et wil we not that thei occupied shul bee  
With swiche-maner offyce as to humanyte 1062  
longeth, and shal longen, as for moost ryght. *is to baptize Katharine.*  
Goo now and baptise that noble whight ! ” 1064

Than spak oure lady, to swage hir heynesse : 1065  
“Beeth not discourtforded in no-maner weye  
With my sones woord*s* ! for, in sekernesse,  
Yee muste doo his byddyng, ful buxomly obeye.  
It is a goodly vsage, soothly to seye : 1069  
ho shal be wedded on-to duke or kyng,  
Be-forn her weddyng to haue a bathyng, 1071  
*As all Brides are bathed before wed- ding,*

“flor to make hir swete, for to make hir clene— 1072  
hell*s* myght she renne in ful grete offens.  
Be this exaample on-to you I mene,  
Doo ye youre deuer, doo *your* diligens  
flor to plese youre lord ! a-noon goo we hens 1076  
In to 3one chapel to youre baptistery ;  
After youre washyng ye shal ben ful mery.” 1078  
*so Katharine must be.*

Ca. m. 22<sup>m</sup>.

*Bk. III. Ch. 22.*

**T**hus arn thei walked, the mayden and the queene, 1079  
In to the chapel on-to the mynstre syde.  
There founde thei redy a font, as I weene,  
With water, and with crysme in a vessel wyde.  
Adryan is called fro the puple a-syde, 1083  
*She and the Virgin go into the Heavenly Münster.*



<u>Bk. III. Ch. 23.</u>	ffor he must do all þis holy seruyse, lych as our lady þe maner' schall deuyse.	1085
	Thus seyð sche to hym : “ go do now þis dede, It longyth to þin ordre cristen folk to make ; A-ray þe a-none in swech-maner' wede Whech I my-self her' þe now take ; þis mayde schal be bathyd for hyr loues sake In þis cold watyr, & crysten schal sche be, My lord my son þus comaundyth he.	1086 1090 1092
	“ I my-selfe schal of hyr clothes strepe And make hyr all naked, redy to þis þing. hyr name Kateryne styll schal þou elepe, Ryght for þis cause & for þis tokenyng þat þei whech knew hyr', eþir eld or 3yng, Schul hafe an euydens sche is styll þe same Whech sche was be-for—þer-for styll hyr name	1093 1097 1099
	“ Schal sche thus kepe, in confirmaeyon þat all þing is trewe whech we do here, No wyles wrowte ar' ne no collusyon— We wyll noght suffyr þat in no maner'.” Tho was Kateryn spoyled—but blynd was þe frere, Bothe in hyr spoylyng & in hyr bapteme. Of þat solempne fest þis was þe theme :	1100 1104 1106
	“ I baptize þe her' in þe blessed name Of þe fadyr & þe sone & þe holygost, In presens & wytenes of our' reuerent dame Modyr vn-to cryst, of all women moste, Godmodyr on-to þe—& þat may þou boost. lok þou be-leue, dowtyr, as I seyð to þe : þat oo god þer is & persones thre ;	1107 1111 1113
	“ Be-leue eke in bapteme, & in holy kyrk, Be-leue in þe passyon of our' lord ihesu, Be-leue þat þe miracles whech he dede werk	1114

ffor he muste doon al this hooly seruyse, lich as oure lady the maner gan) deuyse.		<i>Bk. III. Ch. 22.</i>
	1085	
Thus seyde she to hym : " goo doo now þis dede, It longeth to thyn ordere crysten ffolk to make ; Aray the a-noon) in swiche-maner wede Whiche I my-self here the now take ; This mayde shal ben bathed for hir loues sake In this coolde water, and cristen shal she bee ; My lord my sone thus commaundeth hee.	1086	Adrian is to baptize Katharine.
	1090	
	1092	
" I my-self shal of hir clothis strepe And make hir al naked, redy to þis thyng. hir name Kataryne stille shal þou clepe, Right for this cause and this tookenyng That thei whiche knewe hir, eyther old or ying, Shul haue an euydens she is styлле the same Whiche she was be-fore—therefore stille hir name	1093	The Virgin will strip her naked.
	1097	
	1099	
" Shal she thus kepe, in confirmacyon) That al thyng is trewe whiche we doon here, No wyles wrought are ne no collusyon)— We wil not suffre that in noo manere." Tho was Katarine spoyled—but blynd was þe frere Bothe in hir spoylenge and in hir bapteme. Of that solenne feste þis was the theme :	1100	
	1104	Katharine is stript ; but Adrian is blind.
	1106	
" I baptise the here in the blyssed name Of the fadir and the sone and the holy goost, In presens and wittnesse of oure holy dame, Modir on-to crist, of alle women moost, Godmodir on-to the—and that may þou boost. looke þou beleue, doughter, as I sey to the : That oo god there is and persones thre ;	1107	He baptizes her.
	1111	The Virgin is her God-mother.
	1113	
" Beleue eke in baptem, and in holy kerke, <sup>1</sup> Beleue in the passyon of oure lord Iesu, Beleue that the myracles whiche þat he dede werke	1114	Adrian bids her believe the Articles of the Christian Faith.
	<sup>1</sup> or. kyrke	

- BN. III. Ch. 23. Wer' wyth-oute deceyte, stable & trewe,  
 Be-leue þat of a uirgyne hys manhode grew, 1118  
 And sche ondefouled—for sche is present,  
 Sche can ber' wyttensse of þis testament." 1120
- Kateryne answeyrd on-to þese articles alle : 1121  
 " I be-leue hem, ser', as 3e rehers be-dene ;  
 þer-for on knes<sup>1</sup> as I now down' falle, <sup>1 MS. kneis ?</sup>  
 In þis same funte whech 3e may not sene, '  
 Baptize me *parcharite* & make me elene ! 1125  
 ffor þis is þe wyll of þe soueren lorde a-boue,  
 And my wyll is it eke, ryght for hys loue." 1127
- Thus was sche baptized, & in þis maner' 1128  
 Confermed eke & renuede<sup>1</sup> hyr name. <sup>1 renewed on the margin.</sup>  
 Our' lady hyr-selfe seruau<sup>te</sup> was her',  
 Sche dede of þe clothes of þis swete dame.  
 All þis ilk tyme þer was a hame 1132  
 Of blyndenes be-for' þis ermytes y3e,  
 ffor of all þis werk no-þing he sy3e. 1134
- But sone aftyr þis sacrament is doo, 1135  
 hys lyght receyuyd he newly a-geyn.  
 þe myrth, þe ioye þat þe man made þoo,  
 We can not esyly expresse now ne seyn !  
 fful sekyrly wende he neuyr eft a seynd : 1139  
 Now thanketh he godd of hys hye grace  
 þat euyr he came in to þat holy place. 1141
- Our' lady comau<sup>ded</sup> to dau<sup>n</sup> Adryan 1142  
 þat all þis þing whech he herd & sey doo,  
 Wyth all hys besinesse, ryght so as he can,  
 To wryght it pley<sup>nly</sup> whan he may tend þer-too.  
 And as sche bad, full sekyrly he dyd soo, 1146  
 þis noble ermyte—for on-to our' ere  
 Who schuld it come ellys ? who schuld we it lere ? 1148

Were with-outen deceyte, stable and trew,		<u>Bk III. Ch 22.</u>
Beleue þat of a virgyn his manhood grew,	1118	
And she ondefowled—for she is present,		
She can bere wittnesse of this testament."	1120	
 Kataryne answerde on-to these articules alle :	1121	Katharine does believe the Articles.
“ I be-leue hem, sir, as ye reherce be-deené ;		
Therefore on knes I am now dounð falle		
In this same font whiche ye may not scene,		
Baptise me pur charyte and make me clene !	1125	
ffor this is þe wil of the souereyn lord a-boue,		
And my wil is it eke, right for his loue.”	1127	
 Thus was she baptised, and in this manere	1128	Her baptism is complete.
Confermed eke and renewed hir name.		
Oure lady hir-self seruaunt was heere,		
She dede of the clothis of this swete dame.		
Al this ilke tyme there was an hame	1132	
Of blyndenesse be-foꝛð the ermytis yze,		
ffor of al this werk noo-thing he syze.	1134	
 But soone after þis sacrament is doo,	1135	The blind Adrian receives his sight.
his light receyued he newly ageynð.		
The myrthe, the ioye that the man made tho,		
We can not esyly expresse now ne seynð !		
fful sekerly wende he his syght a leynd (!) :	1139	
Now thanketh he god of this hye grace		
That euere he come in to that holy place.	1141	
 Oure lady commaunded to daun Adryan	1142	
That al þis thyng whiche he herde and sey doo,		
With al his besynesse, ryght soo as he canð,		
To write it pleynly whanð he may tende þer-too.		
And as she bad, ful sekyrly he dede soo,	1146	The Virgin bids Adrian write down the Miracle.
This noble ermyte—for on-to oure cere		
how shuld it come elles ? how shuld we it leere ?	1148	

- N**ow is our lady forth *wyth* þis mayde 1149  
 In to þe temple entred a-gayn.  
 3et in hyr going þus swetly sche sayde :  
 “ Dowtyr myn, Kateryne, loke 3e be glad & fayn !  
 ffor 3our desyr schul 3e haue, certayn, 1153  
 Ere 3e goo hens ; be-leue þis sykyrly ! ”  
 Swech wordes talked þei walkyng sobyrly. 1155  
 Now be þei come euene be-for þe trone 1156  
 Of our lord god, þe mayde[n] & þe qwene.  
 Our lady had þe wordes hyr-self a-lone ;  
 Swech was þe ordre of hyr tale, I weene :  
 “ O kyng of kynges, blyssed mote þou been ! 1160  
 I haue browte her þe<sup>1</sup> þe doghtyr of clemesse, <sup>1 r. þe her</sup>  
 Prayng þe, lorde, *wyth* alle humbylnesse 1162  
 “ That þou schew now þe blysse of þi face 1163  
 On-to þi spouse, on-to þi creature ;  
 Euene as þou grauntyd [hyr]<sup>1</sup> þat grete grace <sup>1 om.</sup>  
 To kepe hyr virginite in clenly trappure,  
 So graunte hyr now þat hye portature 1167  
 Of þi blyssyd ymage to se & be-holde !  
 ffor þan ar' sche & I mech to þe beholde.” 1169  
 Our lorde answerde on-to hys modyr ful fayr' : 1170  
 “ What-so-euyr 3e wyll, modyr, it must be doo ;  
 All heuen & herde to 3ow must repayre  
 ffor help whan hem nedyth, to refresch her woo.  
 I graunte 3our petycyon, I wyll it be soo.” 1174  
 þan fell þat qween down plat to þe grounde,  
 hyr corownd sche toke of þat was ful rownde, 1176  
 Sche leyd it be-for hym & þus sche spake : 1177  
 “ lord of all creatures þat be lyuande,  
 No-þing þat I aske of þi grace I lake,  
 Euyr be þou honowred in heuyn & in lande !  
 I my-selfe am werk of þi hande ; 1181

Ca<sup>m</sup>. 23<sup>m</sup>.Bl. III. Ch. 23.

- N**OW is oure lady fourth with þis mayde 1149 The Virgin  
 In to the temple entred agayn.  
 Yeet in hir gooenge thus sweetly she sayde :  
 “Doughter myn, Kataryne, looke ye be glad and fayn!  
 ffor *your* desyre shul ye haue, certayn, 1153  
 Er ye goo hens ; beleue this, certeynly !”  
 Swiche wordlys talked thei walkyng forby. 1155  
  
 Now be thei come euene be-fore the throne 1156 takes  
Katharine  
to Christ on  
His throne.  
 Of oure lor[*d*] god, the mayden and the queene.  
 Oure lady had the wordys hir-self allone ;  
 Swiche were the wordis of hir tale, I wene :  
 “ O kyng of kyngys, blyssed mote þou bene ! 1160  
 I haue brought here the doughter of elennesse,  
 Praying the, lord, *wyth* alle humblennesse 1162  
  
 “That þou shewe now the blisse of thi face 1163 The Virgin  
asks Christ  
to show  
Katharine  
His face.  
 On-to thi spouse, on-to thi creature ;  
 Euene as þou graunted þat gret grace  
 To kepe hir virginyte in clenly trappure,  
 So graunte hir now þat hie portrature 1167  
 Of thi blissed ymage to see and be-hokk!  
 ffo[r] than and she and I bounde to the many-foolk.” 1169  
  
 Oure lord answerde on-to his moder fulfayre : 1170  
 “What-so-euere ze wil, moder, it must be doo ;  
 Al heuene and erthe to you muste repayre  
 ffor helpe whan hem nedeth, to refresh her woo.  
 I graunte youre petycion, I wil it be soo.” 1174  
 Than fel that queen doun plat to the ground,  
 hir coroun she took of, that was ful round, 1176 She lays her  
  
 She leyde it be-forn hym and thus she spak : 1177 Crown before  
Christ,  
 “lord of alle creaturis that be leuande,  
 No-thing þat I aske of thi grace I lak,  
 Euere be þou honowred in heuene and in lande !  
 I my-self am werk of thy hande ; 1181

- Bk. III. Ch. 21. Thow I þi modyr be, þi seruau<sup>nt</sup> am I :  
þi *grace* I thank, for þi *mercy* I crye." 1183
- Our lord bad hyr ryse, & sche rose sone. 1184  
Sche was coronned a-geyn, or þei wer ware—  
Tho men myght see what is to done  
Of ony creature whan þei come þare.  
þis same exa<sup>mp</sup>le sat þoo full sare 1188  
On Kateryns hert ; sche fell down a-noone  
Plat on-[to] þe gronde, styl as þe stoo<sup>ne</sup>, 1190
- Thus seyde sche in schort, for to tell pley<sup>n</sup> : 1191  
“ I se wele, lorde, þat of all-maner þing  
þou art maker, of erde, eyr & þe reyn,  
All be obedyent to þi comandyng :  
Mercy I craue, lord, at my be-gynnyng ; 1195  
haue I þi *mercy*, I desyr not ellys,  
ffor I haue lernyd of *mercy* her þe welle is.” 1197
- Sche was lyft vp be our lorde hym-selfe ; 1198  
þus seyde he to hyr : “ wolcom, doutyr, to me ! ”  
Aboute hyr stode virgynes ten or twelue,  
Wondyrly arayed & full of bewte—  
Our lady had called hem on-to þat deute 1202  
To comfort þis mayde & do hyr *seruyse*.  
Tho spak þis lorde, þis hyc iustyse : 1204
- “ Ask what 3e wyll, Kateryne, 3e schul it haue 1205  
Of me at þis tyme to 3our wolcomyng ;  
Syth 3e for-sake boþe castell & caue  
ffor loue of me & for my byddyng,  
I will graunte 3ow 3our hertis desyryng, 1209  
ffor I am þat same whom 3e in parlement  
A-geyn all 3our lordes & comon[s]<sup>1</sup> consent <sup>1</sup> MS. comon)
- “ Chosen<sup>1</sup> on-to spowse. who leke 3e now ? <sup>1</sup> MS. Chosen ?  
Wyll 3e now haue me for euyr-more ? ” 1213  
Wyth þese<sup>1</sup> swete wordes sche fel in swow <sup>1</sup> MS. þeses

- Thou I thi moder be, thi seruauent am I :  
 Thi grace I thanke, for thi *mercy* I cry." 1183
- Oure lord bad hir ryse, and she ros sone. 1184
- She was coroune ageyn, her thei wer ware—  
 Tho men myght see what is to done  
 Of ony creature, whan thei come thare.  
 This same exauple sat tho ful sare 1188  
 On Kataryne-is herte ; she fel doun anoond  
 Plat on-to the ground stille as þe stoon), 1190
- Thus seyde she in short, for to telle pleynd : 1191  
 " I see weel, lord, that of al-manner thyng  
 Thou art makere, of erthe, eyr and þe reyn,  
 Alle been obedyent to thy *commaundyng* :  
 Mercy I craue, lord, at my begynnyng ; 1195  
 haue I thy *mercy*, I desyre not ellys,  
 ffor I haue lernel of *mercy* heere þe welle is." 1197
- She was lift vp be oure lord hym-selue ; 1198  
 Thus seyde he to hir : " welcome, doughter, to me !"  
 Abowte hir stood virgynes ten or twelue,  
 Wonderly arayed and ful of beaute—  
 Oure lady had called hem on-to þat dewte 1202  
 To comforte this mayde and doo hir seruyse.  
 Tho spak this lord, this hye Iustyse : 1204
- " Aske what ye wil, Kataryne, ye shul it haue 1205  
 Of me at this tyme to youre wolcomyng ;  
 Sith ye for-sake bothe casteH and caue  
 ffor loue of me and for my byddyng,  
 I wil graunte you *your* hertys desyryng, 1209  
 ffor I am that same whom ye in *parlement*  
 Ageyn alle youre lordys and comouns consent 1211
- " Chosen on-to spouse. how lyke ye now ? 1212  
 Wil ye now haue me for *euere*-more ?"  
 With these swete woordis she fel in swow

*Bk. III. Ch. 23.*and acknow-  
ledges herself  
His servant.Her Crown is  
put on again.Katharine  
begs forChrist's  
mercy.Christ  
welcomes St.  
Katharine.He will grant  
her all she  
wishes.Will she be  
His Bride?



<u>Bk. III. Ch 21.</u>	Plat on-to þe grounde þe good lorde be-for <sup>l</sup> .	
	But whan he hyr wyttes a-geyn <sup>d</sup> gan restore,	1216
	Thus spake sche þan on-to þat kyng :	
	“ O soueren <sup>d</sup> maker <sup>l</sup> of all-maner <sup>l</sup> þing,	1218
	“ Of angeH, of man, of best & of tre,	1219
	If I wer <sup>l</sup> worthy on-to <i>your</i> hyc presence	
	ffor to be couplede <i>wyth</i> solemnyte,	
	þan wold I desyr <sup>l</sup> of <i>your</i> excellens	
	þat 3e for-gefe me aH-maner <sup>l</sup> offens ;	1223
	Make me <i>your</i> seruauant, & not 3our <sup>l</sup> wyffe !	
	I am not worthy to so hyc a lyffe.”	1225
	“ 3ys,” seyð <i>our</i> lorde, “ my modyr wyll here	1226
	þat I schall wed 3ow ; so wyll I sauufayle ;	
	þerfor I ask 3ow 3our <sup>l</sup> wyll for to lere,	
	If 3e consent on-to þis spousayle.	
	<i>Wyth</i> many ioies I wyl 3ow newly rayle :	1230
	Consent 3e, Kateryne ? what sey 3e nowe ?”	
	“ Lord,” sche seyð þoo, “ I wyll as þow. <sup>1</sup> <sup>1</sup> MS. 3ow ; r. as wilt þow.	
	“ I forsake here, lorde, for þi loue	1233
	Crown <sup>d</sup> & londe, castell & town <sup>d</sup> ,	
	Gold & syluyr, bothe hows & rofe,	
	Brochys & ryngys, mantell & gow <sup>d</sup> ;	
	Sullyr me no mor <sup>l</sup> , lord, for to fall down <sup>d</sup>	1237
	In delectacyon <sup>d</sup> of wordly þingys,	
	Kepe me þi-selfe, <sup>1</sup> lorde, kyng of all kyngys ! <sup>1</sup> r. to þi-selfe	
	“ All þat euyr I hafe, þat wote I wele	1240
	I hafe it of þe, lord—of whom hafe I elles	
	My spech, my þowt, my mende euery dele,	
	My bones, my body, my flesch & my felles ?	
	Now, as in þe of plente be þe welles,	1244
	Sullyr me neuyr for to part þe froo ;	
	ffor fro þi presens kepe I neuyr to goo.”	1246
	Than spak our <sup>l</sup> lorde ryght on þis wyse :	1247
	“ long was it ordeynde be-for þis tyme	
	þat 3e schuld come on-to our <sup>l</sup> seruyse.	

- Plat on-to the ground the goode lord be-fore. Bk. III. Ch. 23.  
 But whan he hir wittes ageyn gan restore, 1216  
 Thus spak she thanne on-to that kyng :  
 “ O souereyn makere of alle-mauer thyng, 1218 Katharine  
 “ Of aungeh, of man, of beeste and of tree, 1219 says  
 If I were wurthi on-to *your* hy presens  
 ffor to be coupled with solennte,  
 Thanne wulde I desire of *your* excellens  
 That ye forgeue me al-mauer offens ; 1223  
 Make me *your* seruauant, and not *your* wyff !  
 I am not worthi to so hie a lyf.” 1225 she would  
 rather be  
 His servant.  
 Yet seyde oure lord : “ my moder wil heere 1226  
 That I shal wedde you ; soo wil I saunsfayle ;  
 Therefore I aske *your* wil, for to lere  
 If ye consente on-to this spousayle. Christ asks  
 St. Katharine  
 to wed Him.  
 With many Ioyes I wil you newely rayle : 1230  
 Consente ye, Kataryne ? what sey ye now ?”  
 “ Lord,” she seyde tho, “ I wil as wilt thou. 1232 She consents ;  
 “ I forsake heere, lord, for thi loue 1233  
 Crowne and lond, casteH<sup>1</sup> and towne, <sup>1</sup> r. *castellis* ?  
 Gold and siluer, bothe hous and roue,  
 Broches and ryngis, manteH and gowne ;  
 Suffre me, lord, no more for to falle downe 1237  
 In to delectacyun of werdly thynges,  
 Keepe me thi-self, lord, kyng of aH kynges ! 1239  
 “ Alle þat euere I haue, that wot I weel 1240  
 I haue it of the, lord—of whom haue I it elles ?—  
 My speche, my thought, my mynde euery deel,  
 My boones, my body, my flesh and my felles.  
 Now, as in the of plente been the welles, 1244  
 Suffre me neuere for to parten the froo ;  
 ffor fro thi presens kepe I neuere goo.” 1246 and prays  
 that she may  
 never leave  
 Him.  
 Than spak oure lord ryght on this wise : 1247  
 “ longe was it ordeyned befor this tyme  
 That ye shuld come on-to oure seruyse.

- Bk. III. Ch. 21. A-boue all opir I wyll þat 3e clyme,  
 Saue only my modyr, schortly to ryme ; 1251  
 3e schal be next ioyned to my *presence*,  
 Ryght for 3our chastyte & 3our' obediens. 1253  
 "ffor þow3 all þoo maydenes þat kepe hem clene 1254  
 ffor my sake & for my plesaunce,  
 Be wyues vn-to me, all be-dene,  
 3et is þer' to 3ow schape a hyer' chaunce,  
 Be-for hem all schal 3e go in þe daunce, 1258  
 Next my modyr, ryght for þis cause  
 ffor 3e for-soke, to sey schortly in clause, 1260  
 "Emperour', kyng & duke, for my sake. 1261  
 I receyue 3ow þerfor' be a speecyalte,  
 My wyffe for euyr her' I 3ow make,  
 Be-cause of 3our constans in virginite.  
 And a new *conflycte* in schort tyme schul 3e 1265  
 Be-gyne for my sake—but drede 3ow noght !  
 Who-so offend 3ow, ful der' it schal be bowte !"<sup>1</sup> 1267  
 Tho spak our' lady ryght in þis maner' : 1268  
 "Syth þat þis spousalye mote nedys be doo,  
 þis same mayde, lord, geue I þe here—  
 A mayde 3eueth a mayde, þou seruyd me soo  
 Whan þou commendyd Ihon me vn-too 1272  
 Wher' þat þou hyng on þe bloody tre.  
 her' is þe ryng, lord, & her' is sche." 1274  
 Our' lord tok þat ryng in hys honde, 1275  
 he put it on þe fynger' of þis clene<sup>1</sup> virgyne ; <sup>1</sup> to be on.  
 "þis is a tokne," he seyde, "of þat bonde  
 Whech<sup>1</sup> 3e 3our'-selfe as on of myne <sup>1</sup> r. Be whech ?  
 lyst now 3our' wyll to my wyl enclyne ; 1279  
 þis tokne eke beryth wytnesse full ryffe  
 þat her' I tak 3ow for my weddyd wyffe." 1281  
 Certeyn men þat had seynd þis ryng, 1282  
 As myn auctour' seyth, þei told it pleynd ;  
 þei seyde þat it is a fayr' grauyne þing

- A-boue alle other I wil that ye clyme,  
 Saue oonly my moder, shortly to ryme ; 1251
- Ye shal ben next Ioyned to my presens,  
 Right for youre chastite and youre obedyens. 1253
- “ ffor though alle tho maydenes þat keepe hem clene  
 ffor my sake and for my plesauns,  
 Been wyues on-to me, alle be-deene,  
 3et is there to you shapen an hyere chauns,  
 Be-fore hem alle shul ye goo in the dauns, 1258  
 Next my moder, ryght for this cause  
 ffor ye forsook, to seyn shortly in clause, 1260
- “ Emperour, kyng and duke, for my sake. 1261
- I receyue you therefor be a speecyalyte,  
 My wyf for euere heere I yow make,  
 Be-cause of *your* constauns in virgynite.  
 And a newe conflicte in short tyme shul ye 1265  
 Be-gynne for my sake—but dreede yow nought !  
 hoo-soo offende yow, ful decree it shal be bought.” 1267
- Tho spak oure lady ryght in this manere : 1268  
 “ Sith that þis spousayle muste nede be doo,  
 This same mayde, lord, geue I the heere—  
 A mayde 3eueth a mayde, þou serued me soo  
 Whau þou commended Ionð me onð-too 1272  
 Where that þou heyng on the bldy tree.  
 heere is the ryng, loord, and heere is shee.” 1273-4 transp. in the MS.
- Oure lord took that ryng in his hond, 1275  
 he putte in on the fynger of this virgyne ;  
 “ This is a tookne,” he seyde, “ of that boond  
 Whiche ye *your*-self as oon of myne  
 lyste now youre wil to my wil enclyne ; 1279  
 This token eke bereth wittenesse ful ryf  
 That heer I take 3ow for my wedded wyf.” 1281
- Certeyn men that hadde seen that ryng, 1282  
 As myn auctour seyth, the<sup>t</sup> tolde it pleynd ;  
 They seyde þat it is a fayr grauen thying

*Bk. III. Ch. 23.*Christ says  
she shall be  
next His  
Mother.Christ makes  
St. Katharine  
His wife,and puts on  
her finger a  
ring

- Bk. III. Ch. 24. Oute of a stow whech, as þei eke seyn,  
 It is clepyd a calcedony, lych a clowde of reyn) 1286  
 Or ellys lych þe watyr, swech his colour' is.  
 hys uertues ar' touchyd<sup>1</sup> many, I-wys : <sup>1</sup> r. if touchyd? 1288
- The auctoures sey þat he is gracyous 1289  
 To þe berer of hym ; if þat he wyll trete  
 Of ony materes whech þat be perlyous,  
 he schall haue fortune down) for to bete  
 All þe bate & stryffe in toun or in strete ; 1293  
 he is vertuous eke to ȝeue men a tast'  
 ffor to kepe her' body boþe clene & chast. 1295
- Tho be-gan a song in heuen) all a-bowte, 1296  
 þe [most]<sup>1</sup> wondyrfull notes þat eyr man myght her' ;  
 Wordes sounded þei to þe notes full deuoute, <sup>1</sup> om.  
 ffull well acordyng to her' song þer'.  
 þe song þat þei sungyn, if ȝe wyll [it] ler', 1300  
 Was þis same : Sponsus amat sponsan) ;  
 þe ouert þer'-too : Saluator uisitit illam. 1302
- So semeth it well þis song in heuen be-gan), 1303  
 A-monge aungelles & seyntyng in blysse.  
 Well may it þan be sunge of mane  
 her' in þis vale of wrecchydenesse ;  
 þis chyrcĥ must folow, for sothe I gesse, 1307  
 þe chyrcĥ a-boue in all þat it may.  
 þus endeth þe weddyng of þis may. 1309

Bk. III. Ch. 25.Ca. m. 25<sup>m</sup>.

- T**ho lest our' lorde hys leue to take 1310  
 Of hys new spouse as for a space ;  
 þat same hand whech all þing dede make  
 he lyfte on hye, & of hys goode grace  
 he blessed þis swete boþe hede & face, 1314  
 "ffarwell," he seyth, "my wyffe ful der' !  
 lete no dyscoumfort' ȝow noy ne der' ! 1316

Oute of a stoon), whiche thei eke seyn		<u><i>Bk. III. Ch. 23.</i></u>
It is cleped a Calcedony, liche a cloude of reyn	1286	with a stone of Chalce- dony in it.
Or ellis liche the water, swiche his colour is.		
his vertues arn touched many, I-wis :	1288	
The auctoures seyn þat he is gracyous	1289	
To the berere of hym ; if þat he wil trete		
Of ony materis whiche þat be perilous,		(The virtues of Chalce- dony.)
he shal haue fortune down) for to bete		
Alle debate and stryf, in toun) or in stretc ;	1293	
he is virtuous eke to yeue men) a tast		
ffor to kepe her body bothe clene and chast.	1295	
Tho be-gan) a song in heuene al a-boute,	1296	A Bridal Song is sung in Heaven,
The [most] wonderful notes þat euere men myght here ;		
Woordes souned thei to the notes ful deuoute,		
fful weel a-cordyng to her song theere.		
The soung þat thei sounen), if ye wil lere,	1300	
Was this same : Sponsus amat sponsam ;		
The ouert ther-too : Saluator visitat illam.	1302	
Soo semeth it weel this song in heuene be-gan),	1303	
Amongis aungellis and seyntyngs in blesse.		
Weel may it thanne be sungen) of man)		
heere in this vale of wretchednesse ;		
This chirche muste folwe, forsothe I gesse,	1307	
The chirche a-boue in al that it may.		
Thus endeth this weddyng of this may.	1309	and the Wedding is over.

## Cam. 24m.

*Bk. III. Ch. 24.*

<b>T</b> ho liste oure lord his leue to take	1310	
Of his newe spouse as for a space ;		
The same hand whiche alle thyng dede make		
he lifte vp on hye, and of his good grace		
he blissted that swete bothe heed and face,	1314	Christ blesses His new Wife, St. Katha- rine,
“ ffar weel,” he seyth, “ my wyf ful decre !		
lete no discomforte you noye ne feere !	1316	

<u>Bk III. Ch. 25.</u>	“Thow þat 3e lese 3our londe, 3our welth,	1317
	Thynk it is bettyr þat I 3ow 3eue ;	
	Thow sekenes come <i>in stede</i> of helth,	
	Kep 3e 3our counstans <i>in trewe</i> be-leue !	
	And þe, adryane, make I my refe,	1321
	As <i>in þis</i> mater', þou schall hyr tech	
	Of myn <i>incarnacyon</i> þe maner' spech ;	1323
	“Tech hyr þe feyth eke of þe trinite,	1324
	þe fladyr, [&] þe sune, & þe holy gost,	
	Tech hyr of þe godhede þe vnyte,	
	Truly tech hyr, <i>wyth-outen</i> boste !	
	Of all þis cuntre I trost þe now moste :	1328
	þerfor do truly my comaundement !	
	But if þou do, þou may sone be schent.	1330
	“Thys werk, þis lesson' truly to performe,	1331
	Eyt dayes wyll I sche dwell <i>wyth</i> þe.	
	My modyr schall I sende hyr to enforme	
	Aftyr þat tyme <i>wyth</i> solemnyte	
	Of many other' þinges towchyng hyr' & me.	1335
	But, Kateryne wyffe, þis schall I 3ow 3eue	
	A-boue all women þat now erdely leue :	1337
	“Myn aungellis schul honour' 3ow <i>wyth</i> a seruyse—	1338
	In tokne þat we be wedded <i>in-ferē</i> —	
	þer was neuer sey 3et swech funeral offyse	
	Of no seynt þat <i>in</i> erde deyed here.	
	þis schal I do for 3our' loue, dere.	1342
	ffar-wel now, & þink not longe !”	
	Thus pased our' lorde, <i>wyth</i> myrthe & song.	1344
	And all þoo creatures fayre & bryght,	1345
	Alle are I-passed, þe temple eke is goo,	
	So is þat chapell, þat funt & þat lyght.	
	Of all þis þing þei se now no moo	
	But Adryanes selle, wher' þat þei too	1349
	Ar' left a-lone a-mong trees okle.	
	But þan was it r'uthe for to be-holde,	1351

- "Though that ye lese youre lond and *your* welthe, Br. III. Ch. 24.  
 Thynke þat it is better that I yow ʒene; 1318  
 Though seeknesse come in stede of helthe,  
 Keepe ye *your* constans in trewe beleue!  
 And the, Adryan, make I my reue, 1321 and makes  
 As in the matir, þou shalt hir teeche, Adrian her  
teacher.  
 Of my incarnacyon the maner speche; 1323 Christ bids  
Adrian teach  
St. Katharine  
the Christian  
Faith.  
 "Teche hir þe feyth of the trynyte,<sup>1</sup> 1 on erasure. 1324  
 The fadir, the sone, the hooly goost,  
 Teche hir of the godhed the vnyte,  
 Trewely teche hir, with-outen boost!  
 Of alle this contre I troste the now moost: 1328  
 Therefore do truly my commaundement!  
 But if þou doo, thou mayst soone be shent. 1330  
 "This werk, this lesson truly to *perfoorme*, 1331  
 Eyte dayes wil I she dwelle *wyth* the.  
 My modir shal I sende hir to enfoorme She'll stay  
with him 8  
days. After  
8 days Christ  
will send His  
Mother to  
her.  
 After that tyme with solenmyte 1335  
 Of many other thyingis touchynge hir and me.  
 But, Kataryne wyf, this shal I ʒow yeue  
 A-boue alle women that now erthely leue: 1337  
 "Myn augellis shuln honowre yow with a scruyse— At her death  
she shall be  
buried with  
angels.  
 In tokene that we been wedded in-feere— 1339  
 There was neuere yet seyð swyche funeral offyse  
 Of no seynte that in erthe deyed heere.  
 This shal I doo for youre loue, deere. 1342  
 ffarweel now, and thynke not loonge!"  
 Thus passeth oure lord, with merthe and soonge. 1344 Christ goes;  
 And alle tho creatures fayre and bryght, 1345 the Angels  
and Temple  
vanish.  
 Alle arn I-passed, the temple eke is goo,  
 Soo is þat chapel, that font and that lyght.  
 Of al this thyng thei seen now no moo  
 But Adrian-is celle, where þat thei too 1349 St. Katharine  
is in Adrian's  
cell.  
 Arn left alone a-mongis trees oolde.  
 But than was reuthe for to be-hoolde, 1351



<u>Bk. III. Ch. 25.</u>	To se þis swete, who sche þan felle Down in a swow ; as ded þoo sche lay. Adrianne now is runne to hys welle, Wyth watyr he comyth & grete a-fray, “ A-wake, madame ! ” he gan þoo to say, “ Allas þat eyr 3e come in [to] þis place ! ” he rubbyd hyr chekys, þe nose & þe face, he wept, he prayed, he cryed ful sore, To sche a-woke, sat vp & spake. Adryane sayde to hyr : “ lady, dey no mor ! ffor, & 3e do, hens schal I me pak ; Alle-maner' counfort her' we do lak þat schuld 3ow rere : þer-for' I charge 3ow, ffall no more in swech-maner' swow ! “ Thynkyth, thow 3our loue as for a tyme hath left 3ow her', 3et hath he nowth ffor-sak 3ow, lady, but as a pylgryme he wyl 3e be, in dede & in thowte. I wote full wele 3e neuyr meeñ rowth Of no wordly ne erdely plesauns ; It may 3ow no-þing so hyly auauus “ As may þat lorde to whom þat 3e be Wedded now newly. for goddys sake, Comfort 3our-selue & þink who þat 3e þis same blesse sumetyme schul I-take In swech-maner' sewyrnesse þat schal neuer slake. þerfor' beth glade, & loke on 3our ryng ! It wyll remembyr' 3ow 3our' gloryous weddyng.	1352 1356 1358 1359 1363 1365 1366 1370 1372 1373 1377 1379
-------------------------	--	--

Bk. III. Ch. 26.Ca<sup>m</sup>. 26<sup>m</sup>.

“ <b>B</b> vt now must 3e, myn' own' lady der', 3our' beleue vnderstand ful sykyr & playn) : 3our' swete spouse bad I schuld it 3ow lere, Whom 3e in flesch now full late sayn), In whech he soked & also was slayn) ;	1380 1384
--	--------------

- To see this swete, hough she thanð felle  
 Doun in swon; as deed tho she lay. 1352 *Br. III. Ch. 24.*  
 Adrian is ronne now to his welle, St. Katharine  
 With water he cometh and grete affray, swoons.  
 "A-wake, madame!" he ganð tho to say, Adrian  
 "Allas that euere ye come in [to] þis place!" 1356  
 he rubbed hir cheekys, the nose and þe face, 1358  
 he wepte, he preyed, he cryed ful sore, 1359 *revives her,*  
 Tho<sup>1</sup> she a-wook, satte vp and spak. <sup>1 r. to = till</sup>  
 Adryanð seyde to hir, "lady, deye no more!  
 ffor, and ye doo, hens shal I me pak;  
 Alle-manner comforte here doo we lak 1363  
 That shuld 3ow rere: therfore I charge yow,  
 ffal no more in swiche-manner swow! 1365  
 "Thenketh, though *your* loue as for a tyme 1366  
 hath lefte yow here, yet hath he nought  
 ffor-sake yow, lady, but as a pilgryme  
 he wil 3e been, in dede and in thought.  
 I wot ful weel ye neuere moche rougth 1370  
 Of no worly ner erthely plesavns;  
 It may you no-thing soo hyly avauns 1372  
 "As may that lord to whom þat ye bee 1373  
 Wedded now newly. ffor goddys sake,  
 Comforte *your*-self and thenke how þat yee  
 This saune blysse shal ye take  
 In swiche-manner suernesse þat shal neuere slake. 1377  
 Therfore be glad, and look on *your* ryng!  
 It wil remembre yow youre gloryous weddyng. 1379  
 and tells her  
 that Christ  
 has not for-  
 saken her,  
 and that she  
 will soon be  
 with Him for  
 ever.
- Cam. 25m.** *Br. III. Ch. 25.*
- "**B**vt now must ye, myn owenð lady deere, 1380  
 Youre beleue vndirstonde ful seker and playnð:  
 Your swete spouse bad I shuld it 3ow leere,  
 Whom ye in flessch now ful lat saynð,  
 In whiche he souked and also was slaynð. 1384  
 He teaches  
 her the Chris-  
 tian Faith.

- Bk. III. Ch. 26. But of hys goddedhed, whech is grownd of all,  
ffeythfully þe treuth tell now I schall. 1386
- “Thys must 3e be-leue, as I told 3ow ere 1387  
Whan 3e wer' baptized, if 3e hafe mynde—  
Sette 3our hert þer-to & bysyly it lere :  
Our' lord godd is of swech a kynde  
þat sykyrly, as I of hym wretyn fynde, 1391  
he is on *in* substauzs & *in* nature,  
Thre eke *in* persones, I 3ow ensure ; 1393
- “O god, o lorde, o maker, o mageste, 1394  
þe fadyr & þe sune & þe holygoost,  
Thre persones *in* o godhede—þus be-leue 3e—  
Off whech non is smaller' ne non' is most,  
All ar' of euene power' *in* euery cost ; 1398  
ffor þe pluralyte of persones is no preiudyse  
On-to þe vnyte of godhed, *in* no-maner' wyse. 1400
- “And 3et he þat is þe fadyr, is not þe sone, 1401  
Ne þe sone þe gost, *wyth*-outen' fayle ;  
O wyll hafe þei *in* all þat is don,  
O myght, o power', o lyght, o counsayle—  
þis lesson' must 3e hyde *in* 3our entrayle 1405  
fful sadly, madame, for it is our' grounde,  
On whech to beleue ful sor' are we bounde. 1407
- “Dystynceyon *in* persones, *in* natur' vnite, 1408  
þis is our' scole, it must be our' besynesse.  
þe fader' 3eneth to þe sune, þus be-leue we,  
All substauzs of deite, & he hath neuyr þe lesse ;  
þe fadyr begetyth þe holy sune *in* blesse, 1412  
þe sune is be-gotyð, þe goost fro hem too  
Procedyth, þe thryd persone, þus be-lefe we, loo ! 1414
- “To þe fadyr longyth myght, to þe sune cumnyng, 1415  
Godeness to þe goost—þus couplede be þei, I gesse ;  
And 3et must we sey, for ony-maner' þing,

[<sup>1</sup> But of hys goddhed, whech is grownd of all, Bk. III. Ch. 25.  
 ffeythfully þe treuth tell now I schall.<sup>1</sup>] <sup>1-1</sup> om. in MS. 1386

“ This must ye beleue, as I toolde yow eere 1387 Adrian  
teaches St.  
Katharine  
 Whan ye were baptised, if 3e haue mynde—

Sette youre herte ther-too and besely it leere :  
 Cure lord god is of swiche a kynde  
 That sekerly, as I of hym wreten fynde, 1391

he is on in substauns and in nature,  
 Thre eke in *persones*, I 3ow ensure ; 1393 the Unity  
and Trinity  
of God.

“ Oo god, oo lord, oo makere, oo maicste, 1394

The fadir and the sone and the hooly goost,  
 Thre *persones* in oo godhed—thus beleue yee !—  
 Of whiche noon is smalhere ne noon is most,  
 Alle arn of euene powere in euery coost ; 1398

ffor the pluralite of *persones* is noo preiudise  
 On-to the vnyte of godhed, in no-mauer wyse. 1400

“ And yet he þat is the fadir, is not the sone, 1401 The 3 Persons  
are distinct,  
 Ne the sone the goost, withouten fayle ;

Oo wil haue thei in þat is doone,  
 Oo myght, oo power, oo light, oo consayle—  
 This lesson muste ye hyde in *your* entrayle 1405

fful sadly, madame, for it is oure grovnde,  
 On whiche to beleue ful sore are we bovnde. 1407

“ Distinceyon in *personis*, in nature vnite, 1408 though their  
Nature is one.  
 This is oure scole, it muste ben oure besynesse.

The fadir yeueth to the sone, thus beleue we,  
 AH substance of deyte, and he hath neuere the lesse ;  
 The fadir begeteth the hooly sone in blesse, 1412

The sone is begoten, the goost fro hem too  
 Procedeth, the thredde *persone*, thus beleue we, loo ! 1414

“ To þe fadir longeth myght, to the sone kunnyng, 1415 The Father  
has might ;  
the Son,  
knowledge ;  
the Spirit,  
goodness.  
 Goodnesse to the goost—þus coupled be thei, I gesse ;  
 And 3et muste we sey, for ony-maner thyng,

Bk. III. Ch. 26. O myght, o cunning, & eke oo goodenesse. <sup>1</sup> so all MSS.; r. þow  
 þat<sup>1</sup> þe fadyr is all-myghty, þe sune hath neuer þe les-e;  
 Thow þe sune haue cunning, þe goost hath þe same;  
 Goodenesse haue þei alle, wete 3e wel, madame." 1421

Swech-maner' dalyauns had þese folk<sup>1</sup> þan, <sup>1</sup> r. folkis 1422  
 All þoo eyte dayes, in hye communicacyon.  
 Mech mor' þing was seyð þan, mor' þan I can  
 Reherse at þis tyme—suffyseth 3ow þis lesson);  
 ffor all þoo holy wordes of swech exortacyon 1426  
 May bettyr be þowth þan þei may be spoke;  
 Swech langage in synfull tunge is but brok[e]. 1428

Bk. III. Ch. 27.

Ca<sup>m</sup>. 27<sup>m</sup>.

**A**T þe eyte dayes ende, as was promission), 1429  
 Comth our' lady wyth lyght down fro heuen);  
 Chaunged sodenly is þoo þat mansyon,  
 ffor it semyth now bryter' þan þe leuene.  
 Angellys wer' þer', mo þan sex or seuynd— 1433  
 It longeth on-to hem to do hyr' dew seruyse,  
 To þe emperesse of heuyn, modyr to þe hye iustyse. 1435

Many other' ladyes come þoo wyth þe qwene, 1436  
 Wyth mary I mene; so ded Ihon baptyst;  
 þer' wer' eke virgines full fele, as I ween,  
 he was þer' eke Ihon þe euangelyst.  
 Who had be þer', of ioye he myght a wyst! 1440  
 Our' lady hyr-selfe on-to þis blyssed mayde  
 Swech-maner' wordes at þat tyme sayde: 1442

“ Dowtyr to me, wyffe on-to my sone, 1443  
 My sone gretyth 3ow wyth hys good blessing.  
 As he behestyd 3ow, now am I come,  
 To tell 3ow þe maner' of 3oure endyng.  
 A tyraunt, a wers was neuyr leuyng, 1447  
 Schal distroye 3our' regne, & 3our' body sle.  
 We wyll not 3e repent 3ow, we wyll not 3e fle, 1449

O myght, o konnynge, and eke o goodnesse. 1418 *Bk. III. Ch. 25.*  
 That the fadir is almyghty, the sone hath neuer þe lesse ; Each Person  
 Though þe sone hath connynge, the goost hath þe same ; of the Trinity  
 Goodnesse haue thei alle, wete ye weel, madame ! ” 1421 has the  
 others' quali-  
 ties.

Swiche-maner daliauns hadde þese folkis than 1422 *Adrian's*  
 Alle the eyte dayes in hyc communycacyon). teaching lasts  
 Moche more þing was seyde than, more than I kan 8 days.  
 Reherse at this tyme—suffyseth yow this lesson) ;  
 ffor alle the hooly wordys of swiche exortacyon 1426  
 May better be thought thanne thei may be spoke ;  
 Swiche langage in synful tonge is but broke. 1428

Ca<sup>m</sup>. 26<sup>m</sup>.

*Bk. III. Ch. 26.*

**A**T this eyte dayes ende, as was promysson), 1429 *The 8 days*  
 Cometh oure lady wyth lyght doun) from [he]uene ; ended, the  
 Chaunged sodcylyn is tho that mansyon), *Virgin Mary*  
 ffor it semeth now bryghtere than þe leuene. comes,  
 Aungell's were there, mo þan sexe or seuene— 1433  
 It longeth on-to hem to doo hyr dew seruyse,  
 To the empres of heuene, modir to the hooly Iustise. 1435

Many other ladyes come tho with þe queene, 1436  
 With mary I mene ; so dede Iohn þe baptist ; *with John*  
 There were eke virgyne's ful fele, as I wene, *the Baptist,*  
 he was there eke Iohn þe euaungelyst. *St. John,*  
 hoo had be there, of Ioye he myght a wylt ! 1440 *and others,*  
 Oure lady hir-selue on-to this blissed mayde  
 Swiche-maner word's at þat tyme sayde : 1442

“ Doughter to me, wif on-to my sone, 1443 *to tell St.*  
 My sone gretheth yow now wyth his good blyssyng. *Katharine*  
 As he behested yow, now am I come, *how she shall*  
 To telle yow the maner of youre endyng. die.  
 A tyrant, wers was neuere leuyng, 1447  
 Shal destroye youre reigne, and your body slee.  
 We wil not ye repente, we wil not ye flee, 1449

- Bk. III. Ch. 27. “Abydyth styll ryght in 3our<sup>1</sup> owyn<sup>1</sup> place, 1450  
 Boldly stryue a-geyn<sup>1</sup> hys tyrannye!  
 My sone wyll endew 3ow wyth swech<sup>1</sup> grace,  
 Was neuyr no womanz honoured so hye.  
 But fyrst mote 3e sofyr schame & vylonye, 1454  
 losse of 3our godys, in 3our body passyon,  
 Deth at þe last, þis is þe conclusyon. 1456  
 “I must goo now on-to my sone a-geyn,<sup>1</sup> 1457  
 3e to 3our owne courte schall repaire.  
 All þis tyme þei mysse 3ow not, dar<sup>1</sup> I seyn.  
 ffare-wele, my dowty[r], farewel ye<sup>1</sup> fayre! <sup>1</sup> MS. þe  
 Why<sup>1</sup> 3e wyth<sup>1</sup> my sone wer<sup>1</sup> in þe ayre, 1461  
 A qweend<sup>1</sup> leche to 3ow all þat tyme kept  
 3our<sup>1</sup> grete a-state, sche ete & slept, 1463  
 “Spake & comaunded, bothe dempt & wroto— 1464  
 All þis dyde sche ryght in 3our stede,  
 þer was no man wyth-inne þat mote<sup>1</sup> <sup>1</sup> = palace, court  
 þat cowde a-spye in hyr<sup>1</sup> womanhede  
 Ony-maner<sup>1</sup> differens, sate sche or 3ede— 1468  
 My sone ordeyned þis for 3our<sup>1</sup> sake.  
 Whan 3e ar<sup>1</sup> ded & 3our corownd take, 1470  
 “Than schall 3e know swech<sup>1</sup> preuy þingys,<sup>1</sup> <sup>1</sup> r. þing<sup>1</sup> 1471  
 Who þei ar<sup>1</sup> doo & in what maner<sup>1</sup>.  
 3et of an other<sup>1</sup> matere I 3eue 3ow warnyngys:<sup>1</sup> <sup>1</sup> r. warnyng<sup>1</sup>  
 þe qweend<sup>1</sup> 3our modyr, þe qwyche dyd 3ow bere,  
 Is I-pasyd & ded, leyd low on bere. 1475  
 But beth not dyscoumfortyd! now wyll I be  
 Modyr on-to 3ow, my sones wyffe, parde. 1477  
 “Too 3er<sup>1</sup> in 3our place & sumwhat more 1478  
 Schull 3e dwell, or þis maxencius  
 Come for to spoyle 3our tresore—  
 Of þat same rychesse be 3e not desyrous.  
 Kepyth 3our chambyr<sup>1</sup> wyth leuyng uertuous, 1482  
 Wyth prayr<sup>1</sup>, fastyng, & allmes-dede,  
 3eue to þe por<sup>1</sup> folk botlie mete & wede. 1484

- “Abydeth stille ryght in 3oure owen place, 1450 *Bk III Ch. 26.*  
 Boldely stryue ageyn hys tyrannye!  
 Mi sone wil endewe yow wyth swiche grace,  
 Was neuere woman honowred soo hie.  
 But first mote ye suffre shame and vylonye, 1454  
 losse of youre goodis, in *your* body passyon),  
 Deth at þe laste, this is the conclusyon. 1456  
 The Tyrant  
 Maxentius  
 shall kill  
 Katharine.
- “I must goo now on-to my sone ageyn), 1457  
 Ye to youre owne court shal repayre.  
 Al this tyme thei mysse yow not, dar I seyn.  
 ffarweel, my dowter, farweel, ye fayre!  
 Qwillo<sup>1</sup> 3e with my sone were in the ayre, <sup>1 MS. *I wille* on or.</sup>  
 A queenliche to yow al þis tyme kepte  
 Youre grete astate; she ete and slepte, 1463  
 where her  
 Double has  
 persounated  
 her.
- “Spak and commaunded, bothe dempte and wrot—  
 Al this dede she ryght in youre stede, 1465  
 There was no man *wyth*-Inne that mote  
 That coude asprie in hir womanhede  
 Ony-mane<sup>r</sup> differens, sat she or yede— 1468  
 My sone ordeyned þis for 3oure sake.  
 Whan ye arn ded an[d] *your* crowne take, 1470
- “Thanne shal ye knowe swiche preuy thyngis, 1471  
 how thei arn doo and in what manere.  
 3et of a-nother mater I yeue yow warnyngis:  
 The queen youre modir, whiche bare yow here,  
 Is I-passed and ded, leyd lowe on here. 1475  
 The Queen,  
 her Mother,  
 is dead.
- But beth not discomforted, now wil I bee  
 Moder on-to yow—my sones wyf ar yee. 1477
- “Too yeer in yowre place and somewhat more 1478  
 Shal ye dwelle, er this Maxencyous  
 Come for to destroye youre tresore—  
 Of þat same rychesse be ye not desyrous.  
 Keepeth 3oure chaunbre *wyth* leuyng virtuous, 1482  
 With preying, fastyng, and elmesse-dede,  
 Yeue to the pore folkys bothe mete and wede. 1484



<u>MS. III. Ch. 27.</u> “Aftyр þis tyme be pased & I-goo,	1485
þan shall þis tyraunt mak sone a hende	
Of 3ow, doutyr, & of many moo.	
þis lesson I wyll þat 3e emprende,	
Now & eyр set it in 3our' mende.	1489
ffar <sup>2</sup> -wel now ! fyrst I wyll 3ow kysse.	
I go to my sone, to euerlestyng blysse.”	1491
 Thus is oure lady sodenly I-goo	1492
As now fro þis qween; sche is home eke	
Vn-to Alysaunder, myn auctor seyth soo—	
þei þat wyll rede hym, þei may it seke.	
Wheyther' sche cam þedyр in day or in weke,	1496
I wote nocht now, but þer' now sche is.	
Was non all þat tyme þat dede hyр mys,	1498
 ffor þat tyme whech sche was oute ;	1499
þus was it ordeynyd be our' soueren lord.	
þis same book whech we hafe be long a-boute,	
We wyll now ende, if 3e þer-to acorde.	
God send vs alle of vnite acorde,	1503
To plese hym oonly a-boue all menne—	
þer-to sey we alle wyth oo voys, AmEN.	1505

[For the last Books, the Rawlinson MS. has been  
collected only.]

“ After þis tyme be passed and I-goo,	1485	<i>Bk. III. Ch. 26.</i>
Than shal þis tyraunt make soone an ende		foretells St.
Of you, doughter, and of many moo.		Katharine's
This lesson I wil þat ye emprende,		martyrdom
Now and euere sette it in <i>your</i> mende.	1489	in 2 years.
ffarwel now ! first I wil yow kysse.		
I goo to my sone, to euere-lastyng blisse.”	1491	
Thus is oure lady sodey[n]ly I-goo	1492	
As now fro this queen; she is hom eke		
Vn-to Alisaundre, my auctour seyth soo—		St. Katharine
Thei that wil rede hym, þei may hym seeke.		goes home to
Whether she cam theder in day or in weke,	1496	Alexandria.
I wot not now, but there now she is.		
Was noon al that tyme þat dede hir mys,	1498	
ffor þat tyme whiche she was oute ;	1499	
Thus was it ordeyned be oure souereyn lord.		
This same book whiche we haue be long aboute,		
We wil now ende, if ye ther-to acorþ.		
God sende vs alle, of vnyte þe horþ,	1503	
To plesse hym oonly a-bouen alle men ;		
Ther-too sey we alle <i>wytl</i> oo voys amen.	1505	

## [Liber iiij.] Prologus.

*Bk. IV. Prologus.*

<b>T</b> hese erthely dwelleris whiche lyue now here,	1	Folk are like
Arnd lykened to bees whiche dwellyn in hyue,		bees:
Or ellis to dranes, if that ye list to leere.		
It fareth with men ryght thus in her lyue :		
Some wil laboure, and some wil neuere thryue,	5	some work,
Dyuers conceytes there bee, and eke dyuers <sup>1</sup> degrees.		some don't.
The goode laboureris arnd lykened to the bees, <sup>1</sup> <i>al. dyuers ek</i>		

MS. Rawl. : 1 erdely dwellers 2 are . dwell 4 faryth 5 Sumc .  
 neuyr 6 diuerse eke 7 laboures are

<i>Bk. IV. Prof.</i>	Specialy þei that oute of goddis lawe	8
The Workers suek good out of God's Law.	Of dyuers parties sittynge on the floures Lerne and teche bothe to <sup>1</sup> soke and drawe	<sup>1</sup> <i>at. om.</i>
	Of good examplis of hooly predecessoures Swete conceytes, weel famed sauoures—	12
	Alle these ben bees, whiche to þe houshold brynge Alle her stuf and al her gaderynge.	14
The Drones only eat, waste,	Other there be whiche arn not profitable ; Thei ete and drynke, deuoure eke and waaste, Thei laboure not but it be at the table— ffor on-to werk haue þei noo grete haaste— fille weel her bely and yeue hem good repaaste,	15 19
and sleep,	Thanne wil thei slepen seker with þe beste ; We sey not of hem but “ dranes loue weel reste.”	21
delighting not in God's Law.	Yet to goostly laboure the dranes wil not drawe, ffor that in her thoughtis thei haue noon delectacyon, <sup>1</sup> In the heerynge yet of goddis lawe	22 <sup>1</sup> This v. corrupt ?
	Thei not enercee ne promote her staeyon ; ffor thei hem-selue to goostly occupacyon	26
	Wil not drawe at no mannys requeste, Suffiseth hem her [full] bely and reste.	28
	Thus semeth it to me that holy scripture is In maner of a feelde, with floures faire arayed ;	29
Holy Church is the Hlyve,	And hooly kirke benethe, I-wys, <sup>1</sup>	<sup>1</sup> on erasure ; r. þat is b. l.
in which the good Bees store Honey.	She is the hyue with many stormys afrayed ; The virtuous bees in þis hyve haue portrayed her diuers cellis of hony and of wax.	33
	What al this meneth, if 3e listen to ax,	35
	Ye may it lerne : I sey the grete labour That good men haue to rede examplis olde, It is to hem of solace newe socour	36

10 to om. 13 be . whechc . housolde 15 ar 17 but if it . the  
om. 20 slepe 21 lofe 22 the om. 23 ffor þat þei here thowte .  
noon om. 25 enercee 28 here full bely 31 is be-nethe 35 lyst

her virtuous luyng stable to be-holde		<u>Bk. IV. ProL.</u>
And eke to fighte with corage fresh and bolde	40	
Ageyns wordly <sup>1</sup> disceyuable affluens,		<sup>1</sup> r. þis worldys?
A-geyns the fleshly slughed <sup>1</sup> neþlygens.	42	or. slugged
Oon of these bees was this same queun,	43	Katharine is a Working Bee,
This mayde Kataryne, whiche with besynesse		
Of every floure whiche was fayre to seen		
Souked oute the hony of grete holynesse,		being the honey of Holiness to the Hive.
bare <sup>1</sup> it to the hyue, and þer she gan it dresse—	47	
ffor: it wil doo seruyse bothe to god and man),		<sup>1</sup> MS. And bare
That same likour whiche she gadered than).	49	
This hony gadered she fer and wonder wyde :	50	
In the lawe of nature laboured she first and <sup>1</sup> for:most,		
Where she the vyces lerned to ley a-syde,		<sup>1</sup> first and <i>at. om.</i>
And vertues to chese as a clenly nest,		
To doo to no man), dwelled he Est or West,	54	
Werre than) she <sup>1</sup> wolde he shulde on-to hir <sup>2</sup> doo—		<sup>1</sup> or. he, <sup>2</sup> or. hym)
This lady gadered in this feeld right soo.	56	
In the wreten) lawe she gadered eke moche thyng :	57	She gathers
The x commaundement's to kepe truly in meende ;		
There lerned she the merueylous begynnyng		
Bothe of the world and eke of mankeende ;		
There lerned she the lame and eke þe bleende	61	
To foster, and to clothe bothe oold and yung—		
This was hir labour, this was hir gaderyng.	63	
In the lawe of grace souked she swetter mete	64	
Of ripperer flowr's : feyth, hope, and charyte ;		Faith, Hope, and Charity.
She bar hem, and there she gan hem lete,		
In to þis hyue to hooly cherches secree—		
There ly thei yet as tresour, trust þou me ;	68	

39 leuyng 41 þis werdly dec. 42 ageyne . slukyd 44 wheche  
46 the om. 47 And om. the om. 51 first and om. 52 o syde  
54 dwelle 55 he w. . hym 57 meche 58 mynde 60 mankynde  
61 bynde 62 & clothe . helde 65 ryper 67 chyrches 68 trust

<u>Bk. IV. Prof.</u>	ho that wil labouren), may fro that swetnesse wrynge, Moche beter than) ony galeyce can brynge.	70
	And forth in this swetnesse wil we now procede, Whiche þat she gadered, this lady, here lyuande.	71
May we go to Heaven,	God sende vs part, ryght as we haue neede, In vertuous leuyng stably to stande, And for to come <sup>1</sup> to þat heuently lande	<sup>1 r. comen</sup> 75
where Katharine now is!	Where she is now. for forth to oure processe Vndir hir socoure streit I wil me dresse.	77

Bk. IV. Ch. 1.liber iij<sup>us</sup>.Ca<sup>m</sup>. prim<sup>um</sup>.

Rome has 3 Emperors:	<b>I</b> N the tyme of Costus, as oure bookys telle, Were thre Emperours in rome Citee:	78
I. Maximinus Galerius,	The firste was a man) of herte ful felle, Maximinus galerius, right soo hight he ;	
II. Maximian,	The secunde hight Maximian ; the threde, [parde], <sup>1</sup>	82
III. Diocle- tian.	Was named at that tyme dioclyciane— he was many a cristen mannys bane.	<sup>1 MS. lerne ye</sup> 84
No. I. stops at home ;	The firste emperour, Maximinus galerie, Dwelled stille at rome, and kepthe there þe pees, The domes, the sacryfises dede he tho gye.	85
nos. II. and III. sent out to fight,	The other too men) with-outen) ony lecs Were sent oute with ful grete prees, To brenne and slee, to take and to saue— This was office bothe to knyght and knaue.	89 91
resign to no. I.	But these same too for very werynesse leften here honour and resigned her right ; fful gret excuse had thei, in sekernesse : Thei seyde her grete labour and her fight A-vayle hem right nought now it myght, ffor the more thei dede þe more þei had to doo. Wherfore, in sekernesse, thus thei too	92 96 98

69 laboure 74 lyuyng stably 76 to hyre pr. 82 parde 83 dyoc-  
cliciane 86 dwelt 87 sacryfices . dyd 88 any 93 left

Resigned her right on-to this same <sup>1</sup> man; <sup>1</sup> r. s. first?	99	<i>Bk IV. Ch. 1.</i>
And he vndir hym made thre Emperouris,		The Emperor, Maximinus Galerius,
To helpe his empere al þat thei may and canð,		
In alle bataillis, in alle sharpe shouris,		
To wynne Citees, Castellis, tounes and towris.	103	
The first hight Maximinus, as seyth the gest—		makes Maxi- minus ruler of the East;
he was assigned to gouerne al the Est;	105	
[To] the seconde, whiche hight tho seuere,	106	Severus, ruler of Lombardy, &c.;
Was eke assigned the keypyng of lumbardye,		
Of almayn, Tussy—the story seyth soo heere—		
And many other contrees in that partye		
Vndir his power were trybutarye.	110	
Eke of brytayn, the lond in whiche we dwelle,		and Con- stantine lord of Britain.
Was Constantyne made lord, the sothe to telle.	112	
The first Emperour, Maximinus galerius,	113	
ffor pryde and sorwe and synful lyf		
Was killed in a batayll—the story seith thus;		On Galerius's death,
he had defouled many a mayde and wif,		
And therefore, er he deyed oute of this stryf,	117	
he stank on erthe as euere dede carayn—		
lete hym goo walke on sarysbury playn.	119	
Tho took þe romaynis the zonge maxens,	120	Maxentius is made Emperor of Rome.
Sone on-to the <sup>1</sup> Maximine þat was in þe <sup>1</sup> Est; <sup>1</sup> at. om.		
Thei corouned hym rially with gret expens,		
With moche solennyte and ful grete fest.		
The fame wente oute to more and to lest	124	
Tha[t] <sup>1</sup> he was emperour, and his fadir forsake. <sup>1</sup> MS. Thanne		
This made his fadir, short tale to make,	126	
To leue his conquest and come to rome there.	127	
But er he camð there, his pride was I-cast:		His father, Maximinus, dies in Sicily.
In Cecile he deyede—right soo dede I lere		
Of cronycles whiche [þat] I saugh last—		

101 empyre . or can 102 batayles . schowres 103 wyne . town  
106 And to 111 weche 112 the om. 113 þis 117 or 118 erde  
119 in sarysbury 121 the om. þe om. 122 realy 123 myche  
125 þat 128 or 129 cycile . deyd 130 wheche þat . sey

- Bk. IV. Ch. 1.* There blew he oute his endyng blast ; 131  
 And there leyth<sup>1</sup> he to abyden his chauns, <sup>1 r. lyght = lyth</sup>  
 Whet[h]er it be to weepyng or to dauns. 133
- Severus  
raises an  
army This seuerus eke þat dwelled in lumbardie, 134  
 Gadered vp almayn and al his myght,  
 ffor with þis eleccion had he grete enuye ;  
 Therefore bothe be day and eke be nyght  
 he laboured be wrong and [eke] with right 138  
 To destroye this Maxence, sooth for to sayn,  
 That he myght reigne whan he were slayn. 140
- against  
Maxentius,  
But er he cam fully at this same rome, 141  
 he was slayn of his sowdyouris be the weye.  
 Than was there no more for to doone,  
 But maxence regneth, the sooth for to seye,  
 As now allone—euery man must obeye 145  
 If he wil keepen his lyf on lofte ;  
 But if he doo soo, he slepeth not ellis softe. 147
- but is slain  
by his own  
men.  
Thus regned this Maxence in rome al allone ; 148  
 No man spak to hym what-euere he wil doo ;  
 There was noo mayde, noo wif ne noon matrone,  
 But whan he sente, þei muste come hym too  
 To suffre his lust, to suffre what he wil doo ; 152  
 What husbond letted it he shuld a-noon be deed,  
 Vp-on his zate thei shulde setten his heed. 154
- Maxentius  
turns tyrant  
in Rome.  
he turned the lawe, al wente than be powere ; 155  
 The puple curse the wombe þat hym had born.  
 Was noo man durste<sup>1</sup> in open langage there <sup>1 MS. that d.</sup>  
 Ones sey to hym “ lord, youre lawe is lorn ! ”  
 Of al the senate sette he but a scorn ; 159  
 Pride and power hadden enhaunced hym scoo,  
 Al þat he coueyted he wolde haue it doo. 161
- The people  
curse the  
wombe that  
bore him.

132 lyghte . abyde 133 wheythyr . or ellys 134 dwelt 138  
 laboreth . & eke 139 sothe 141 or 144 the om. 146 kepe . o  
 lofte 147 slepe 149 speke 150 ne no 153 lett 154 sett 156  
 pepyll 157 that om. 160 had enhaunced 161 coueyte . haf

Ca<sup>m</sup>. 2<sup>m</sup>.Bk. IV. Ch. 2.

- T**ho the romaynis,<sup>1</sup> with a comound consente, 162 <sup>1 MS. romaynis</sup>  
 letteris preuly of grete sentens ded wryte  
 And in to bretayn to Constantyn hem sente,  
 In whiche þei preyed hym, as he was knyte, <sup>1 MS. tyrannye</sup>  
 That he com helpe hem ageyn this tyra[unt to fyght]<sup>1</sup>;  
 Thei wolde be-traye hym, thei seyde, he<sup>2</sup> shuld not spede;  
 This was her ende: "come helpe vs at oure nede!" <sup>2 MS. þat he</sup> to help them.
- A-noon þis man dede gadere a grete strengthe 169  
 Bothe of þis lond and of fraunce there-too;  
 Euere gan his ost enerece in brede and lengthe  
 Be euery contree in whiche he gan goo;  
 In Ytyle reysed he up puple many moo 173  
 Thanne euere dede seure, right for þis tyrannye  
 Of this fals Maxence and for his lecherye. 175
- he is at rome; the oostis to-gedir mete. 176 <sup>and reaches</sup>  
 But maxence trusteth<sup>1</sup> oonly in the Citee there;  
 he is deceyued, allone thei hyn lete <sup>1 MS. trusteth</sup>  
 With his hushold, in moche care and fere.  
 Be this exaample wyse men may weel leere 180  
 To truste on the puple; for thei wil faile at nede.  
 Soo dede thei here; for streite fro hym thei yeede 182
- To constantyn, that now cam fro bretayn. 183  
 Thus [is] he fledde, the same Maxcencius, <sup>Maxentius</sup>  
 Deceyued rigtfully thus be her trayn—  
 Right for his leuyng, that was soo vicyous.  
 he fledde to perse, and there as man victorious 187 <sup>flees to</sup>  
 Dede grete thyng's, and many strengthes wan); <sup>Persia,</sup>  
 Soo as for lord, and for he was a man), 189 <sup>where he</sup>  
 fights well,
- Thei crowned hyn there and called hym kyng of pers. <sup>and is made</sup>  
 Thus hath constantyn wonne the feeld this day, 191 <sup>King.</sup>

163 wryght 165 preyd. a knyte 166 tyraunt to fyght 167 þat  
 om. 169 strenght 171 lenght 176 hostys. mette 177 trostyth.  
 on 178 lette 179 howsholde. meche 180 ensaample 181 in  
 182 so streyt 184 is he 186 lyuyng 187 vycetorous 188—263  
 om., as a leaf is torn out.



<u>Bk. IV. Ca. 2.</u>	The other tyrant is put al to the wers.	
	Al this is told to this ende, sooth to say,	
	To knowe how Maxcens with soo grete aray	194
	Cam to Alysandre swiche maystries for to make,	
	Whan he this lady dede arreste and take.	196
	ffor whan he was thus exalted in pers,	197
	Thus set in astate and in his fader's office,	
Maxentius grows wicked in Persia,	The wex he in condicions euere wers and wers,	
	And more enclyned to synne and to vice.	
	he sente oute letter's on-to euery Iustice	201
and orders Christians to be hung.	To serche the cristene, to hange hem and to-drawe ;	
	ffor truly, he seyth, he wil destroye that lawe.	203
	These letter's come to surry al aboute,	204
He goes to Syria.	And he hym-self folwed after hem sone.	
	The Copy of hem I wil with-ouen dowte	
	Write here in english, me thenketh it is to doone.	
	“ The lord of lord's that dwelleth <sup>1</sup> vnder the moone,	208
	Maxcens, the emperour of pers with-ouen peere, <sup>1 at. dwel</sup>	
	Greteth weel oure lyges thurgh-oute oure empere.	210
	“ We wil ye wete, oure fader's here-be-foru),	211
	That wurshiped godd's with her dew seruyse,	
	Were neuere in bataiH neyther conuyete ne lorn :	
	Sweche was the keepynge of godd's tho <sup>1</sup> ben wise	<sup>1 r. bat</sup>
bids his folk turn from Christ's law,	Ouere her puple. therfore we, as Iustise	215
	And as a preest in religyon of saturen,	
	Wil that 3e alle fro alle veyn) lawes turne ;	217
	“ Moost specyal fro cryst whiche heyng on tree ;	218
	That noo man) be soo hardy hym for to name !	
	What-ma <sup>ner</sup> god <sup>1</sup> shuld he now be	<sup>1 r. of god?</sup>
	That was I-brought in to swiche fame	
	To be hanged on a tree with so moche shame ?	222
	Therfore noo man) dwellynge now in oure lond	
	Shal be so hardy, neyther free ne bond,	224
and not even name Him.	“ To name hym oones, or for to sette	225
	his merke in þe forhed, as is the vsage	

Of alle these cristen) ! we wil hem) lette		<i>Bk. IV. Ch. 2.</i>
Of alle her cerymonyes and her pylgrimage ;		Maxentius orders all Christians,
If that thei forfete, <sup>1</sup> thei shul haue wage	<sup>1</sup> MS. forȝete	229
Swiche as thei deserue <sup>1</sup> for to haue ;	<sup>1</sup> r. deseruen	
lordshipe ne richesse shal hem noon <sup>1</sup> sauc.	<sup>1</sup> az. not	231
“ Therefore, what man) oony goddis honoure		232
Other than) we doo now in oure sette,		who will not worship his Gods,
We wil þat thei be take wyth officeris oure		
And led to preson) with-outen) ony lette ;		to be imprisoned
We wil ordeyn for hem swiche a gette		236
Thei shul neuere eft swiche maystries make		
In aH her lyue, and that we vnder-take.”		238 and punish.
This is the sentens of the letteris longe		239
Whiche he sente oute on-to al the Est ;		
Commaundyng lordis and knyghtes stronge		
That thei come in hast, bothe more and leest,		
And in most speeyal on-to that grete feest		243
Whiche he wil make wyth ful grete store		
That ilke same day whiche he was boore.		245
The massangeris arn goon) bothe fer and wyde		246
To bere these copyes in to diuers londe.		
The emperour hym-self, he wil abyde		
On-to that tyme, as I vndirstonde,		
In grete Alisaundre with ful myghty honde ;		250
In whiche Citee eke this noble queen) soo dere		He comes to Alexandria, where Katharine is.
Wyth a preyu mene leued al in preyere.		252
To this Citee cam kyng, and soo ded queen),		253
Theder cam lordis, mo than I can) telle ;		
The Innes arn ful as hyues of becn) ;		His Lords fill the city.
There is now not elles but bye and selle,		
In speeyal mete and drynk—for there was neuere welle		257
More plenteuous of watir than was the cytee of mete,		
Soo were thei stored there, the marchauntis grete.		259
Whanne alle were come whiche shuld be there,		260
The Emperour thre poyntis dede tho declare,		

*Bk. IV. Ch. 2.* Whiche poyntis, he seyde, with-outen dwere,  
 Euere as thei in sentens stood plat and bare,  
 he wulde euery man, what-soo-euere he ware, 264  
 Or in what parti he dwelled of his domynacyon,  
 Shulde keepe hem, in peyne of damnacyon). 266

*Bk. IV. Ch. 3.*

Cam. 3m.

Christians  
to give up  
their Faith, **T**he firste poynt was that Cristen alle and sunn 267  
 Muste leue her feyth and that grete honour  
 Whiche that thei doo to crist, goddis son,  
 Whom eke thei clepe<sup>1</sup> now her saluatur; <sup>1 r. clepen</sup>  
 "his disciples in to ful grete errour 271  
 haue brought alle men) þat wil tende hem too,  
 Right wyth the feyned myrales that thei doo. 273  
 "Therefore wil we that thei come now alle 274  
 To oure presens, for to see and here  
 and take up What-manner decree þat we yeue shalle  
 On-to swiche witches, bothe ferre and nere;  
 We thenke for to make oure lawe ful clere, 278  
 And whanne alle arn) looked, to chese þe beste;  
 his Religion. This is the religion) that we haue keste." 280  
 The seconde poynt whiche he shewed tho, 281  
 Was this: he seyde "thei had remembrauns  
 how that of rome no<sup>t</sup> longe a-goo  
 He was deprived of Rome he helde the honour and al the gouernauns; 284  
 But be-trayed he was with hem of Bretayn) and frans,<sup>1</sup>  
 by Constantine, Whiche oon) Constantyne had brought in-feere, <sup>1 MS. of frans</sup> 287  
 A grete puple and a statly powere.  
 "Thus had this traytour," he seyde, "this constantyn),  
 As a fals intrusore entred in to his lande, 289  
 who had won his city. Wonne his Citee with gones and wyth myn),  
 There myght no wal ne noo tour tho stande"—  
 Thus bar Maxcens the lordis on hande 292

264 wold 265 dwelt 269 sunne 274 come om. 277 wyechys .  
 fere 279 are 280 hafe 282 remembrauns 283 who 285 of 2  
 om. 287 statly 290 gurnes

- Whiche were *wyth* hym at Alisaundre that tyde ; *Bk. IV. Ch. 3.*  
 "Wherfore sekryly," he seyth, "he wil ryde 294  
 "Euene to rome, his right to conquere, 295  
 To venge hym on this tyraunt, on his Constantyn ;"  
 Wherfore he preyed the lordis that ben there  
 That "thei shal be redy *wyth* bowes and engyn ;  
 ffor he wil rewarde hem with yeftes good and fyn, 299  
 With rentes, londes, castellis and toures eke ;  
 If thei wynne rome, rychesse nede hem not seeke." 301  
 The thredde poynt whiche *þat* he purposed there, 302  
 Sittyng hym-selue right in the *parlemente* :  
 he seyde "he wolde renewe with-out[e]n dwere He will  
revive the  
dues of the  
heathen  
Gods.  
 Alle tho scruysez and al that dew rente  
 Whiche to the goddis was ordeyned be comon assent ; 306  
 The goddis," he seyde, "shul[d] be more propieyous,  
 If *þat* here ceremonies were renewed thus." 308  
 A bysshop stood vp tho with myter and *wyth* croos, 309 A heathen  
Bishop  
 Swiche as *þei* vsed tho in her lawe.  
 There was cryed "euery man keepe cloos  
 his mouth and his tunge, and [h]erkene to this sawe !"  
 Whan he had his breth a litel while I-drawe, 313  
 Thus spak he thanne in *maner* of sermonyng : <sup>1</sup> he s. to be om.  
 "I wil 3e weten," he seyth,<sup>1</sup> "*þat* Iupiter, *þat* hey kyng,  
 "hath turned away his good conseruacye<sup>1</sup> <sup>1</sup> MS. conseruatye reproaches  
the Alex-  
andrians, &c.,  
with having  
forsaken  
Jupiter.  
 ffrom al oure nacyon, I telle 3ow shortly why : 317  
 We haue forsaken hym and falle in maumentrye—  
 Many of vs heere, I drede me, ar gylty  
 In this same mater. wherfor Iubyter almyghty, 320  
 And saturne, his fadir, be preuy operacion<sup>1</sup> <sup>1</sup> *at. apparicyon*  
 In sleep youe warnyng be very reuelacion : 322  
 "Thei bode we shulde *þe* puple teche to renewe 323 They must  
renew his  
worship.  
 The olde Cerymonyes and the old rightes<sup>1</sup> <sup>1</sup> *r. rites*

297 be 302 thyrd 304 *wyth*-outen 306 ordeynd 309 crose  
 310 vsed om. 312 herken to hys 315 wetyne . iupiter . hye 316  
 conseruacye 318 forsak . fall 321 apparicyon 324 held . elde  
 rytes

- Bk. IV. Ch. 3.* Whiche oure faderis vsed or we ony thyng knewe,  
 A heathen Bishop And soo vsed many lordes and many knyghtes.  
 ho yeueth<sup>1</sup> us helpe in pees or in fyghtes <sup>1</sup> MS. he youen 327  
 But Iubyter allone? helth euere up-on hym,  
 honcure and seruyse to hym and [to] his kyn. 329
- exalts the great God Jupiter,  
 “Noman may maken so grete maystrye 330  
 As Iubiter dooth whan he *wyth* anger quaketh;  
 The grete thunder whyche he maketh flye, <sup>1</sup> MS. horrible  
 The horrible<sup>1</sup> lightnyngis whiche he maketh,  
 Alle these shewe<sup>2</sup> to vs þat what man hym forsaketh, 334  
 he is ful likly *wyth* vengeauns to be brent. <sup>2</sup> MS. shewed  
 Turne to hym ageyn therefore, lest ȝe be not<sup>1</sup> shent! 336  
<sup>1</sup> corr. to now
- denounces Christ,  
 “Leueth alle these newe thyngis, keepe stille your olde!  
 What shal crist a-mongis goddis? put hym in place! 338  
 The shepherdis and ploughmen in feeld and in foolde,  
 Thei wote weel it stant not in mannys grace  
 O<sup>n</sup>-to al the world saluacyon to purchace, 341  
 As sey<sup>n</sup> these cristen, for crist, as seyth her book,  
 With his blood fro the world alle synnes took. 343
- and bids the people withstand Him.  
 “he muste ben eterne that shal swiche thyngis doo 344  
 That yeue encrece to ilke generacyon—  
 ffor to a god of ryght this it longeth, loo,  
 To haue in his nature euelestyng duracyon).  
 Repelleth fro ȝoure counseyH this cristen nacyon), 348  
 This charge I ȝow in [þe] goddis name;  
 Saue your soules and your bodyes fro blame!” 350
- This was the sentens of this grete sermound 351  
 Whiche þat the bisshop at þat tyme spak;  
 And this was eke his determynacion  
 That no man in that lond, but he wil to þe rak  
 And on the same ly with a broken bak, 355

326 knytes 327 who ȝeueþ . fytys 329 & to 330 make 331  
 hangyr 333 lytenyng eke 334 schew 336 not 337 leue . þis  
 338 among 339 scheperdys . plowmen 340 full well 341 On  
 342 sey þis 344 be 345 þat schall ȝeue 348 counsell 349 þe g.  
 351 in to þe rak 355 þat

Be so hardy in [no]<sup>1</sup> maner of wise 1 corr. to only *Bk. IV. Ch. 3.*  
 Speke ageyn the goddis or her seruyse. 357

Ca<sup>m</sup>. *quartum.**Bk. IV. Ch. 4.*

**T**he Citce of Alisaundre, whiche his ful large, 358 *Alexandria is cram-full.*

It his now replessid *wytl*-oute and *wytl*-Inne  
 With lordes and ladyes<sup>1</sup>—there was many a barge  
 At the princypal poort, for thei lay not thynne. 1 MS. with 1.

Weel his he at ease [*pat* may cacch an Inne],<sup>1</sup> 1 MS. in to the toun  
may wyne

The puple was so gret, the prees was so strong.  
 There is [now] not ellis but trumpynge and soong: 364

ffor [*pe*] nyght was come of that feestful day 365 *On the eve of Maxentius's birthday,*

In whiche Maxcens was bore; therefore he ded crye  
 That every man there shal in his best aray  
 Sercle the Citce with noyse and menstralsye.

he *pat* shal sleepe this nyght, must be ful slyc 369

That he be not perceyued, for indignacyon  
 Whiche he shal haue for he went not his staeyon! 371

There was noyse of trompes and noyse of men, 372

Moche more of beestes that deyed in her blood— many beasts are kild.

ffor al *pat* nyght skirly, ye may ful weel ken,  
 The bocheres laboured as thei had be wod; 1 al. don

The wasshyng of the carkeys down<sup>1</sup> in the flood 376

Shewed the gret moordre of the bestes slayn:

The water was al bloody, sauely dar I sayn. 378

To the temple thei goo the nexte day be-tyme. 379 *Next morning, in the Temple,*

The bisshopes haue arayed hem to do the seruyse—

There was noo matynes seyde, [*seruyse*]<sup>1</sup> ne pryme, 1 MS. heures,  
on eras.

Thei had another [*vsage*]<sup>1</sup> than I can deuyse. 1 MS. seruyse

Thus moche can I sey, the emperour as Iustise 383 *Maxentius is set on high.*

Was set vp-on hy, that he myght al see  
 how the puple honoured that solenlyte. 385

356 no manerz wyse 358 is 360 with<sub>2</sub> om. 361 no th. 362  
 ese *pat* may cacche an Inne 364 now . song 365 *pe* nyte 372  
 trumpys 375 laboured 376 carcays done 378 as . sauely 379  
 tempille 381 matens . seruyse 382 anodyr *vsage* 385 who .  
 solempnite

<i>Bk. IV. Ch. 4.</i>	Thei kneled and thei cried <i>wyth</i> marred deuocyon—	
Maxentius's Gods are	Al this be-held the emperour with sad y3e, ffor euere-more hath he a fals suspecyon That some am) there whiche wil not sacrificye. The firste god of alle, whiche stood moost hye,	390
1. the Sun,	Was the bryght sonne with his hors and cart, Whiche was I-graue of ful sotil art;	392
2. the Moon,	Next was the mone whiche we clepe dyane, With hir wellis nyne and the maydenes eke;	393
3. Saturn,	Next hir was saturne with his bitter bane And his sekel in hande—[many men hym) seke], <sup>1</sup> ffor noon) other cause but whan) þei are seeke,	397
	Thei wene tha[n] <sup>1</sup> it were of his vengeauns— Soo cruel is his planete in his gouernauns!	399
	The auter next hym was ful weel arayed,	400
4. Jupiter, with Juno, Venus, Cupid,	On whiche that Iubiter stood al on hy, With his wyf Iuno, ful weel I-portrayed; Venus the fayre, she stood next by, With hir blynde sone, Cupyde,—soo wene I, Thei calle hym soo þat owe hym seruyse, I owe hym noon), for mawmentrie I despise.	404 406
and others.	Moche more thyng was there, not to purpos now; But thus moche I telle: there were grete offrynges, Thei spared neyther hors, oxe, beer ne kow, But “slee and slec,” these were her crienges.	407
Sacrifices are made,	The bysshoppys and the prestes, thei doo her þinges; The menstrall's faile not, for thei shal haue wage; Euery man maketh noyse after his age.	411 413
rites and songs per- formd.	The olde seyde they seyn neuere in her dayes Swiche a-nother sacryfise as this emperour hath renewed in her temple, in many-maner layes, <sup>1</sup> “The grete godd's alle thei sende hym honour, long lif and stable, make hym a conquerour.”	414 418

389 some om. are 391 brythe sunne 396 many men hym) seke  
398 þan. veniaunce 402 l-porterayed 408 offeryngis 410 cryngis  
412 mynstrelles. shul 414 elde. sey 416 wayes (corr. fr. dayes)

The 3ong men daunced Iolyly on þe<sup>1</sup> ground<sup>1</sup>; <sup>1</sup> MS. þat *Bk. IV. Ch. 4.*  
 There was reuel a-mongis hem, lightly and round<sup>1</sup> 420  
 Traced thei þat tyme at that solenlyte. 421  
 The noyse is herd a-bowte a myle on euery syde.  
 Thus leue I hem in myrthe, [þese seres stoute],<sup>1</sup> <sup>1</sup> MS. with oute  
eunyte  
 Thus arn thei occupyed in ful moche<sup>2</sup> pryde. <sup>2</sup> r. in mechil  
 The emperour hym-self looketh [on euery syde],<sup>3</sup> Maxentius  
closely  
watches  
everything.  
 ho dooth moost reuerens to his goddis there. <sup>3</sup> MS. tho ful wyde,  
on erasure.  
 This made the cristen to haue ful grete fere. 427

Ca<sup>m</sup>. quintum.

*Bk. IV. Ch. 5.*

O wre noble mayde, oure hooly deuote queene 428  
 To whom this story loongeth as now oonly,  
 This hooly virgy<sup>n</sup> Kataryn, hir I<sup>1</sup> meene, <sup>1</sup> MS. I hir Katharine,  
in her study,  
 Was tho in silens syttinge in hir stody  
 Al contemplatyf, spered fro hir meny; 432  
 The wordly welthes arn now fro hir shake,  
 After the tyme that cryst hath hir thus take 434  
 To wyf or spouse—reede lyke as 3e lyst. 435  
 This mayden was there and herd tho þis cry. hears the  
noise,  
 “O ihesu,” seyde she, “I wolde now þat I wist  
 What that it meneth, the noyse that is so hy.”  
 Knyghtis were walkyng thre or foure faste-by, 439  
 Waytyng vp-on hir; thus to hem seyde she:  
 “This grete noyse, seres, what may it bee?” 441  
 “I-wis, madame,” tho seyde an olde seruaunt, 442 and is told  
that it is for  
Maxentius's  
birthday.  
 “The emperour Maxcens, this day was he bore,  
 he hath commaunded to olde man<sup>1</sup> and [to] faunt<sup>2</sup> <sup>1</sup> MS. men  
<sup>2</sup> MS. infaunt  
 The olde rightis, the<sup>3</sup> seruycis to restore <sup>3</sup> MS. and the, and overl.  
 Whiche to<sup>4</sup> the goddis longe<sup>5</sup> and [haue] doo yoore. 446  
 This is the cri, if 3e wil wete al-gate. <sup>4</sup> MS. haue to  
<sup>5</sup> longet, orig. longoth  
 No man on lyue, pouere ne of astate, 448

419 iolyly. þe 420 amonge 423 þese seres stoute 424 ar .  
 ful om. mechil 425 lokyth on euery syde 426 who do 430 hire  
 I m. 432 sperde 433 are 435 ryth inst. of lyke 436 mayd 442  
 a elde 444 eld. & to faunt 445 elde rythes. and om. scruires  
 446 haue om. long. haue do 448 of l. . pore



- Bk. IV. Ch. 5.* "Is [not]<sup>1</sup> so hardy this mater to disobeye; 449  
Thei shal be ded that ageyns it speke. <sup>1</sup> so all other MSS.
- Katharine is told to keep in her closet, Keepe stille youre closet, there is no more to seye—  
It is<sup>1</sup> not oure power his wil [for]<sup>2</sup> to broke; <sup>1</sup> overlined, <sup>2</sup> so all other MSS.  
lete hem<sup>1</sup> calle, lady, lete hem<sup>1</sup> crye and creke, <sup>1</sup> MS. hym 453  
suffyseth<sup>1</sup> you if ye may leue in pees. <sup>1</sup> MS. it s.  
The man is comerous, with-out[e][n] ony lees: 455
- as Maxentius "ffor he hath made, if 3e wil leue me, 456  
A strong decree, whiche he wil we keepe :  
That alle sectys of his secte now shul bee,  
The child, anoon as he gynneth to kreppe,  
Shal be taught vp-on the goddis to cleepe, 460  
In peyne of deth the faderis shal hem teeche—  
This herde I this day the grete bysshop preeche. 462
- " Wherefore, madame, now is come that hour 463  
That was dred tho<sup>1</sup> of youre freendes alle <sup>1</sup> *at.* tho dred  
Whan that ye wolde receyue no counsellour,  
ffor no thyng that men myght on-to<sup>1</sup> [you] calle. <sup>1</sup> *at.* on, vppon  
I amful soory, for now are<sup>2</sup> lykiy to falle <sup>2</sup> MS. are 3e <sup>3</sup> MS. And all 467  
ah<sup>3</sup> tho myshappes whiche that<sup>4</sup> were seyde before. <sup>4</sup> *at.* om.  
Avyue 3ow weel what ye wil doo [perfore]<sup>5</sup>!" <sup>5</sup> MS. now more, on erasure.
- She remembers Whan the mayden had herd these wordis alle, 470  
She gan remembre hough oure lady sayde,  
Whan she passed fro hir, what shuld be-falle—  
She spak thus : " to you I telle, my mayde,  
Yee shal heer-after been ful soore afrayde 474  
Off an enmye bothe to my sone and to<sup>1</sup> me"— <sup>1</sup> *at.* om.  
At hir leue-takyng swiche woordis seyde she, 476
- Oure byssed lady mary, to this queen). 477  
Therefore the queen thought : " now is the hour

449 Is not 452 forto 453 hem . hem 454 It om. Suffisith .  
lyue 455 comorows . wyth-outen 456 haue 458 settis 461 shul  
464 þoo drede 465 concelloure 466 on yow 467 3e om. 468 And  
om. that om. 469 þerfore 470 þis mayd . þeis 471 how 474  
be 475 a . & me 478 þis

Whiche she behested, now is it weel I-scen) Bk. IV. Ch. 5.  
 Right be þe booldnesse of this emperour  
 Whiche ageyn) oure makere and creatour 481  
 Thus boldly ryseth in destruccion) of his name,  
 Whoos wyf I am and seruaunt to his dame." 483

Tho she remembred what conuenaunt [þat] she made Katharine  
remembers  
her Baptis-  
mal Pledge.  
 Right in hir baptem whan she washed was, 485  
 Eke in hir weddyng, with beheestes ful sade :  
 That she shulde neuere, for more ne for las,  
 Though she were throwe in hote cawdron) of bras, 488  
 fforsake hir loue whyche she hadde oonly chose.  
 Tho wex she ruddy and fayre as the rose, 490

Right in remembrauns of þat swete spousayle 491  
 Whiche þat she caught be leedyng of Adryane ;  
 It is so emprended with-inne hir entrayle,  
 Of werdly lustes there shal no fekyll fane  
 Blowe it away ; neyther Iuno, Venus ne Dyane, 495  
 ffrom) hir herte this loue thei shul not race.  
 Thus walked she fourth softly than) a-pace, 497

fful sore astoynd what hir is beste for to doo. 498  
 If she holde silens, þan) is she not truwe She cannot be  
silent.  
 Of hir beheestes—right soo thought she, loo.  
 The fair ryng whiche was somewhat blewe,<sup>1</sup> <sup>1</sup> MS. blowe ?  
 Whiche was eke youe hir at hir weddyng newe, 502  
 She tho beheld, and seyde thus be hir oone :  
 " ffy on) the world, fy on) crowne and trone ! 504

"I shal keepe that truthe whiche þat I [made]<sup>1</sup> 505 She will keep  
her truth to  
Christ.  
 On-to myn) husbond, though I shulde be ded— <sup>1</sup> MS. dede make  
 I shal the sonnere come to hym) that [me made]<sup>2</sup> ;  
 ffor in this world is nought but sleep and dreed. 508  
 Allas, that euere ony lord or hed <sup>2</sup> MS. deyed for my sake, on eras.

484 cōnaunt þat 485 baptem 490 a rose 496 ffro in 498 for  
 om. 499 trewe 501 blewe 505 made 506 my 507 soner . me  
 made 508 brede

*Br. IV. Ch. 5.* Shulde thus bodyly<sup>1</sup> men dragge and drawe 1 r. boldly  
Ageyns aȝ truthe, ageyns a ryghtful lawe! 511

Why does Christ let the Heathen rage?  
“Why sufferyth my spouse now swiche cursed men 512  
To breke his cherches, his seruantes for to kylle?

Oo cause there is oonly, þat weel I ken :  
his seruantes here shul not haue her wylle—  
hoo-so loue this woord,<sup>1</sup> þat loue [will]<sup>2</sup> hym spyllē ; 516

His servants must suffer tribulation here.  
Tribulacion is ordeyned for his seruantys here, 1 on eras.  
2 MS. shal  
Whiche to heuene shul, streyt fro the beere.” 518

*Br. IV. Ch. 6.*

Ca<sup>m</sup>. sextum.

Katharine walks out,  
Thus walketh she fourth soberly a-paas 519

Thurgh hir paleys, she hath forgote al thyng.

Thei folwe hir eke, the seruantis of þat plas,

Not many, but some, for thei goo to the kyng ;

Thei wot not eke what she in hir goyng 523

Purposeth to doo—for be-twix loue and fere

Staker the seruantis alle tho<sup>1</sup> she hath there. <sup>1</sup> *at. that* 525

The temple-gatis soo ful of puple now bee, 526

Soo ful repleshed no man may entre there ;

And euere on-to the porteres thus seyde shee :

“lete us entre, lete vs oure erande bere

On-to the emperour! for and he wist what we were, 530

he wolde not suffre vs no while stonde with-oute.

We wil hym lerne soone wylh-ouen dowte 532

“These solennytes better for to make, 533

Not to no vanyte, to<sup>1</sup> noon presumption), 1 MS. ne to

But to his wurshipe that al thyng dede [make].”<sup>1</sup> 1 MS. shape

This was at þat tyme hir peroracyon.

Tho mette she lordis of ful straunge nacyon), 537

Whiche had parfoormed her offryngis and I-doo,

ffoorth to her Innes thei dresse[d] hem to goo ; 539

Foreign  
Lords meet  
her.

510 boldly 511 trength 512 sufferth 513 chirchis 516 who  
loueth . world . will hem 520 pales . forgote 525 alle þat 529 late  
533 Theis 534 ne om. no 535 wirchip . make 539 dressyd

- The emperour's sone cam with these lordis in-feere. 540 Bk. IV. Ch. 6.
- But whan thei seyð this lady soo bryght and shene,  
Thei turned her Iornay, and with ful mery chere  
Thus spoken thei alle ful goodly to the queene :  
"Madame," thei seyden, "the grete puple that 3e seene  
Arn come fro ferre with grete deuocyon ;  
Blame hem nought though þei wolde haue doon ! 546  
" But we shal, lady, right for youre reuerens 547  
Turne with yow on-to the temple ageyn ;  
We shal make space with strengthe and resistens,  
That 3e shal entre, shortly for to seyð."  
With mace and manace thei made bare the pleyñ, 551  
Til she was entred right to the<sup>1</sup> hye autere. <sup>1</sup> MS. that way to the high Altar.  
Than seyde she suche woordes, liche as ye shal heere ;  
Thus she be-gan and thus she spak to hym : 554  
"Bothe keende and curtesye wolde teche us this  
To honoure thi crowne, be-cause of thi kyn,  
And 3et for thi degree moche more, I-wys ;  
Alle this shulde excite vs the for to blis 558  
And for to loute with reuerens, ne were oon thyng  
Whiche þou hast doo ageyns the grete[s]t<sup>1</sup> kyng, <sup>1</sup> MS. gretet, at. grete  
"Lord of alle lordys, ihesu crist I mene : 561 the Emperor for paying to Idols the honour due to Christ,  
Thou takest here fro hym his hy honour,  
And yeuest it to maumentys, as is weel seene,  
Whiche may neyther helpe the ne eke socour  
In noon of thi causes, in no-manner dolour. 565  
But if þou woldest<sup>1</sup> leue this cursed ydolatrie <sup>1</sup> r. wold  
And knowe thy god that sitte a-boue ful hye, 567  
"Whiche made the sonne, þe sterris and the mone, 568 who made the Heavens.  
Thanne wolde we honoure the w<sup>y</sup>th dew seruyse,  
Knele douñ on-to the and oure homage ful soone  
ffor to brynge on-to the as oure Iustise.  
But be-cause ageyn crist þou makyst men ryse 572

541 sey 543 spake 544 seyde 545 Are 547 right om. 552  
þe 553 shulle 558 þese 559 o 560 grete 566 wold 567 sitt  
568 þe om. 572 to ryse

<i>Mk. IV. Ch. 6.</i>	And worshepe swiche deuces as ben) in helle,	
Katharine refuses to honour Maxentius,	Therefore shortly, syr, I wil the telle :	574
	“Oure seruyse wil we for a tyme <i>wytl</i> -drawe	575
	Right fro thi <i>persone</i> , til þou þe amende.	
unless he turn from Idolatry;	Turne fro this cursednesse, fro this wikked lawe, Knowe now thi makere that aȝ þing can) sende, On-to his byddyngge looke þou condescende !	579
	Than shal þou haue <sup>1</sup> more prosperyte	<sup>1</sup> r. hauen ?
	Than) euere þou hadde yet, truste vp-on) me !	581
	“These cristen men) <sup>1</sup> here whiche are I-drawe	<sup>1</sup> r. folkis ?
	To offere to þin ydoles magre <sup>1</sup> her hed,	<sup>1</sup> MS. m. in
	A-geyns aȝ reson, ageyn) al the lawe Thou threstest hem with turment and <i>wytl</i> ded, With bath) of picȝ and beuerych of leed.	586
	I sorwe for her sake, thei dar non other doo ; If thei were stable, þei shulde not werke soo.	588
his Gods are Deuils,	“Thi godd <i>is</i> arm) deuell <i>is</i> , and thi preest <i>is</i> eke	589
	Disceyuour <i>is</i> of þe puple, right for couetyse ; Thei wote as weel as I, though men) hem seke, These maument <i>is</i> I mene, þei can) not sitte ne ryse ; Thei ete not, [þei] <sup>1</sup> drynke not in no maner of wise ;	593
senseless Idols.	Mouth <i>wytl</i> -oute speche, foot that may not goo, handes eke haue thei and may noo werk doo.	<sup>1</sup> MS. ne 595
He must give them up,	“Wherfore turne thyn) herte fro thys illusyon), Knowe thy god that made þe and alle þing for the, Be not vnkeende in thi condicyon) Ageyn) thi makere, ageyn) the trynpte ! But if þou be amended, thou shalt leue me	596 600
or be punisht everlastingly.	Grete peynes god shal the sende, Whiche peynes shul neuere haue [an] cende.”	602

573 þat be 574 sothly 580 þou . more 582 þeis 583 in om.  
584 agens . ageyns 589 are 593 þei drynke . of om. 599 Ageyns  
602 a ende

Ca<sup>m</sup>. 7<sup>m</sup>.

Bk. IV. Ch. 7.

**T**he emperour be-held hir woord<sup>is</sup> and hir chere, 603 The Emperor  
Maxentius  
 Wonderynge sore hough she durste be soo boolde  
 Be-fore swiche puple right in his presens there,  
 And not considerynge the feste whiche he had holde—  
 ffor that same tale whiche she hath now toolde 607  
 Durste noo man telle, but if he wolde be deed.  
 hir fair colour be-twixe<sup>1</sup> whight and reed, <sup>1 r. betwixen?</sup>  
 Whiche shone ful bryght, he gan to be-hoolde, 610  
 Astoynd with [hir] bewte, party wyth hir plesauns.  
 fful sobyrly his armes thoo gan he foolde,  
 And thus he seyde wyth angri contenauns :  
 “ Be war, good woman, of þat gret grevauns 614 rebukes  
Katharine,  
 Whicheoure goddis on her ennyes take !  
 Many a prowde man ful lowe haue þei shake. 616  
 “ ffor but [her] mercy were more than her Iustise, 617  
 3e shulde soone falle in that sory trappe  
 Whiche þei haue ordeyned to tho that hem despise—  
 A wooful chauns haue thei and a soory happe. 620  
 Beth war, suster, that þei yow not clappe <sup>1 MS. of thoundir and  
leuene, on erasure.</sup> and warns  
her of the  
vengeance of  
his Gods.  
 With her vengeauns right [for 3our<sup>1</sup> blasphemel]<sup>1</sup> !  
 Yee speke of helle, 3e speke also of heuene : 623  
 “ And thei may graunte yow bothe to 3our wage. 624  
 Keepe 3our tonge clos, kepe your lyf on lofte !  
 Ne were the reuerens of youre gret lynage,  
 Yee shulde not this nyght slepe, I trowe, ryght softe !  
 3e were [wel] worthi to [be lyft on lofte]<sup>1</sup> 628 She ought to  
be hangd.  
 Ryght on a gebet, for your bitter speche <sup>1 MS. suffre grete  
peynis ofte</sup>  
 Whith the whiche 3e now ageynoure goddis preche.” 630

Ca<sup>m</sup>. 8<sup>m</sup>.

Bk. IV. Ch. 8.

**T**ho seyde the mayden wyth ful sad visage : 631  
 “ how be thei goddis, these mawmentis þat we see ?

604 who 609 qwite 611 here b. 612 harmes 614 veniauns  
 615 hath take 617 here mercy 620 hafe 621 Be. systre 622  
 for 3oure blasphemel 628 wel. be lyft on lofte 629 gybbet 630  
 the om. 631 mayde 632 who

<i>Bk. IV. Ch. 8.</i>	Reede in youre book, <sup>1</sup> loke in her lynage,	<sup>1</sup> r. bookis
Katharine says:	Than <sup>d</sup> shal þou knowe that erthely as we be	<sup>2</sup> MS. weete weel 3e
Saturn was King of Crete;	Were thei somtyme. for 3oure saturne, [parde], <sup>2</sup>	635
	Was somtyme kyng, as bookys telle, of crete,	
	And so was Iubiter—thus seyth youre poete.	637
	“Be-cause thei myght not bothe in þat lond accoord,	638
and his son Jupiter drove him to Italy,	Iubiter the sone made saturne, his fadir, to fle Right in to Ytaile, youre bookis wil it reoord;	
	In wiche <sup>1</sup> tyme there tho regned hee,	<sup>1</sup> MS. swiche
where double- faced Janus ruled.	Ianus 3e calle, with double face [parde], <sup>2</sup>	<sup>2</sup> MS. as rede we
	Be-cause he looketh to the olde 3eer and the newe.	642
	Thanne is this sooth, thanne is this tale trewe	644
They were not Gods,	“That men thei were, and arn not eterne—	645
	hough shuld thei be goddis <sup>1</sup> whan thei were made?	
	It longeth to a god for to be sempiterne.	<sup>1</sup> MS. gooddis
	fful falsly the puple 3e disceyue and glade.	
	he is a god that may neuere fayle ne fade,	649
	he is a god þat made al thyng of nought,	
but made by God.	he is a god of whom 3oure goddis were wrought.”	651

*Bk. IV. Ch. 9.*Ca<sup>m</sup>. 9<sup>m</sup>.

	<b>T</b> he emperour thought tho besyly in his meende,	652
	In worshipe and strengthe of his beleue Bothe with exaamples of craft and of keende his secte wil he true and stable preue;	
The Emperor says he'll	“Mayde,” he seyth, “I trowe I shal 3ou meue ffro þat ground that ye haue newly take.	656
	lete 3oure wordis [as] for a while now slake.	658
prove that the Christian sect must fall.	“ffor I wil preue now openly fyrst of alle That your secte, whiche 3e crysten clepe, May not stande, for it muste ned[is] <sup>1</sup> falle,	<sup>1</sup> MS. nede
	Right for þe impossibles whiche þer-inne 3e hepe.	659
	Al þat I sey now, looke þat 3e sadly repe!	663

635 parde 636 telles 639 sun 640 ytale 641 wheche 642  
parde 643 elde 645 are noght 646 who 647 for om. 648  
deceyue 652 mynde 654 ensamples . kynde 655 strenght 658  
as for 661 mut nedis

- how shulde a mayde in hir wombe bere  
 A childe, and she mayden as she was cere? 665 *Bk. IV. Ch. 9.*  
 How can a Mother be a Maid?  
 “This þing is contrarye, ye may see, to nature, 666  
 This þing is impossible on-to scoles alle.  
 Remeueth *þour* herte; for I you ensure,  
 In swiche errour *þe* may soo deepe doun) falle  
 That, though ye after *mercy* crye and calle, 670  
 We may not graunte yow, be-cause þat oure lawe  
 Wil condemne *þow* to ben hange and drawe. 672  
 “Therefore chaunge *þoure* feyth, I reede, [&]<sup>1</sup> forsake 673  
 Swiche-maner oppynyons that ilke man) on lyue <sup>1 MS. *þow* on erasure.</sup>  
 As for heresies euere-more hath take.<sup>2</sup> <sup>2 MS. be take.</sup>  
*þe*<sup>3</sup> sey a childes blood with woundes fyue <sup>3 MS. *þor* *þe*</sup> How can a Child's blood  
 Shuld washe fro euery man) and euery wyue, 677 cleanse folk from sin?  
 from euery chyld, her synnes iche oon):  
 These fonned conseytes, reson) haue thei noon).” 679
- Ca<sup>m</sup>. 10<sup>m</sup>. *Bk. IV. Ch. 10.*
- O**N-to these wordis, whiche sempte soo wyse, 680  
 Answerde the queen) with ful gret constauns:  
 “Sir' emperour,” she seyde, “I wolde now<sup>1</sup> deuyce  
 To proue on-to *þow* with grete circumstauns— <sup>1 MS. *you* now, on erasure.</sup> Katharine tells the Emperor that  
 But that the tyme letteth us of swiche daliauns— 684  
 That *þoure* groundes arn) noo-thing true  
 Off *þoure* beleue, neyther the olde ne the newe. 686  
 “Ye taken) the bark whiche is open to þe ye, 687 he takes the outside bark,  
 Ther-on ye fede yow ryght in *þour* dotage;  
 The swete frute whiche with-Inne dooth lye,  
*þe* desire it not—loo, swliche is the wood rage  
 Of *þoure* customes in al *þoure* age, 691  
 The leues ye take, the frute leue ye stille.  
 More openly my sentens declare now I wille. 693 and leaves the inside fruit.

664 who 665 mayde 672 be 673 & inst. of *þow* 674 opiniones.  
 olyue 675 be om. 676 *þor* om. 678 eche 679 þeis. thei om.  
 682 sere. you now om. 685 are. trewe 686 neþir. elde 687 take  
 690 nought 693 now om.



<u>Be. IV. Ch. 10.</u>	“Who seketh roses there noo rose[s] growe ?	694
	Who seketh grapes oute of the brere ?	
God is not visible on earth.	The hye very god, this may 3e weel knowe, Is not now visible a-mong <sup>i</sup> s vs here ; he is feer above, <i>wyth</i> -outen ony dwere,	698
	Dwellynge in blis with his scravauntes alle. Therefore I seye 3ou : though ye crye and calle	700
	“Vp-on these stookes to sende <sup>1</sup> you good grace,	701
	To sende 3ou of myschef relef and socour,	<sup>1</sup> r. senden ?
Stocks cannot give help.	leueth [bis] <sup>1</sup> weel, ye shal it neuere purchase,	<sup>1</sup> MS. it
	Be-cause ye forsake youre creatour, Wurshipe creatur <sup>i</sup> s and geue hem honour	705
	To whom 3e shulde noon swiche honour 3eue. Be this exauple I may than weel preve	707
	“The roten bark of thyng <sup>i</sup> s visible heere	708
	Whiche 3e [se] outward, this byte [3e] and gnawe, The swete frute, the solace eke soo deere Whiche shulde be [be] parfytnesse of youre lawe, ffro þat swetnesse ye <i>your</i> -self withdrawe	712
The heathen are obstinate,	With ful grete herte of cursed obstynacye, Whiche hath you brought in ful grete heeresye.	714
	“And as longe as 3e thus dulled bee	715
	In this same rudenesse of oppynyon), Shul ye neuere, sekyrly, leue now me, Of very truthe haue the possessyon).	719
and will never gain Truth till they repent.	Therefor repente 3ow of youre transgressyon), Than are ye able to receyue the feyth. This is the truthe, what-euere ony man scyth.”	721

Be. IV. Ch. 11.Ca<sup>m</sup>. 11<sup>m</sup>.

**T**ho[u]<sup>1</sup> myght a seyn at this tales ende <sup>1</sup> u erased 722  
Many man there [al] other-wyse [I]-chered

694 no rose 696 will k. 697 amonge 698 abouen . *wythout*  
any 701 stokkes 703 bis wele 706 no 709 3e se . byte 3e .  
knaue 711 þe parfytnes 722 Thou 723 al opir . I-cheride

Than thei were ere ; some her browes gonne bende		<i>Bk.IV. Ch.11.</i>
Right on tho ydoles whiche he had rered.		Many of the
ffor peyne of deth had hem soo I-fered	726	bystanders
Be-fore this tyme, that in al her obseruauns		
On-to the goddis thei made but feyned plesauns ;	728	
But now this lady with hir woordis swete	729	
A newe light of grace on-to her hertis alle,		
Whiche be-fore her feyth thus had leete,		
hath brought in. for now thei gonne to calle :		
“ Mercy, ihesu, graunte us noo more to falle	733	cry to Christ
In to swiche errour, to swichie apostacye !”		for mercy.
This was her noyse and thus thei gonne to crye.	735	
This sey the <i>emperour</i> and wyth ful heuy chere	736	The Emperor
he gan to chaunge his colour and his face ;		sees his mis-
“ In euele tyme,” he thought, “ I graunted heere		take in letting
On-to þis mayde, whan she cam to this place,		Katharine
To sey this sermon with a sory grace !	740	speak.
Myn owen men, me thenketh, thei gynne despise		
Alle my goddis and alle my sacryfise ;	742	
“ The other syde whiche thei cristen calle,	743	
Thei han caught boldnesse, and that <i>merueilously</i> ,		
ffor in my <i>presens</i> þei haue now late down falle		
Alle her offerynges, and that sodeynly.”		
Thus thought this man ; and eke ful besyly	747	
he thanne be-heelde the beaute of þis mayde,		
And thanne right thus on-to hir he sayde :	749	
“ Mayden,” he seyth, “ heere haue we newly gonne	750	
A blessed sacryfise on-to oure goddis to make,		
And 3e ful onreucrently ageyn oure god, the sonne,		
Whiche <i>euery</i> man for a god hath take,		
Spende 3oure speche. but now I rede 3e slake,	754	He bids her
Til that oure seruyse eended be this tyde,		wait till his
That tyme we wyl ye drawe you asyde.	756	sacrifice to
		the Sun is
		eended.

724 þan þer were here . summe . gune 726 & deth 732 gun 735  
gune þei 741 gyne 743 seyde 744 hane 745 now om. 750  
mayde . gune 751 nake 752 3e om. . sunne

*Bk. IV. Ch. 11.* " Appollo graunte that ye no vengeauns haue 757  
 May Apollo ffor 3our blasfeme, neve[ly] heere<sup>1</sup> I-sowe ! <sup>1</sup> MS. heere newe  
 not take he may yow damne and eke he may 3ow saue,  
 vengeance on her ! Ye 3oure-selue, I wote weel, this ye knowe.  
 Right for *your* beaute aughte 3e stoupe ful lowe 761  
 To, thanke hym ther-of, though there were not ellis ;  
 Now are 3e most, I trowe, of his rebellis." 763

*Bk. IV. Ch. 12.*Cam. 12<sup>m</sup>.

Katharine " Whi shulde appollo bere ony deyte," 764  
 says the Sun Seyde the mayde, that alle men myght here,  
 " And is but seruaunt to goddes mageste,  
 With his bemes shynynge fayre and clere ?  
 he walketh noo cours, neither ferre ne nere, 768  
 moves only as God orders it. But at the byddyng of his makere aboue,  
 Whom we arn bounde oonly to drede and loue. 770  
 " But traytours arn we [be] most part, dar I seyn. 771  
 And 3et he suspendeth his grete vengeauns.  
 An open exauple be-fore yow wil I leynd :  
 Ye ben a lord of ful grete puissauns,  
 There is noon swiche be-twyxe this and frauns— 775  
 ffor, as I haue lerned of al the orient,  
 Youre meny calle yow kyng omnyotent. 777  
 " I sette caas now, þat ageyn 3our regalye 778  
 Certeynd of youre men wyth treson wolde ryse,  
 Despysse 3our degree, youre persone defye :  
 Shulde 3e not thanne as [a] true Iustise  
 3oure grete power fully excersyse, 782  
 he'd kill them. To kille tho traitoures, that thei leue no more ?  
 But ye dede thus, 3e shulde repente it soore ! 784  
 " Right thus it semeth be oure creatour, 785  
 God of heuene, that al made of nought :  
 Ye take away fro hym that dewe honour

757 veniauns 758 newly here 764 any 768 cors . farre 77  
 are 771 þe most 773-A 774 be . pusaunce 775 no 781 as a

That he shulde haue, whiche he ful deere bought		<u>Bk.IV. Ch.12.</u>
Whanne that in erthe oure helthe besyly <sup>1</sup> he sought ;	789	
This same honour zeue ye to deuelis ymages,		<sup>1</sup> <i>al. besyly oure helth</i>
Whiche ye haue sette heere solemnely on stages.	791	
“ Looke now <i>your</i> -self in what ye are falle :	792	
Traitoures are ze, and as traitoures shul[d] ze brenne—		The Emperor is a traitor to God.
ffor other name wil I <i>zow</i> non calle		
On-to the tyme <i>pat</i> ze youre lord kenne.		
lete alle these vanytes fro youre breestes renne,	796	
Good sir emperour, and turne to <i>your</i> loord !		He should turn to him.
Than shul ye and I ful sone accoord.” <sup>1</sup>	798	<sup>1</sup> MS. be ac.

Cam. 13<sup>m</sup>.

Bk.IV. Ch.13.

<b>N</b> OW is the emperour [stoynd] <sup>1</sup> more and more ;	799	
Al her seruyse as for that day is doone—		
This tormenteth hym in his herte ful sore,		<sup>1</sup> MS. tormented
ffor neither to sonne, to venus, ne to moone		
Wil no man lowte now, and passed is the noone.	803	
Therefore he penketh right thus in his herte :		The Emperor
“ Though that I puneshe <i>pis</i> lady <i>wyth</i> peynes smerte,	805	
“ Though <i>pat</i> I sle hir, strangel or <i>ellis</i> brenne,	806	
Yet shal hir doctryne therby no-thing <sup>1</sup> cees.		<sup>1</sup> <i>al. no-thing therby</i>
Wherefore I thenke a slyere weye to renne,		
That hir purpos shal not thus encrees.		
Ageyn oure goddis is she, and ageyn oure pees ;	810	
Therefore with resons wil we hir oppresse—		
This holde I beste ageyn hir sotilnesse.”	812	
Therefore hath he now, and that in grete hast,	813	
Cleped his counseil in to a preuy place.		asks his Council
With ful grete sadnesse tho gan he tast <sup>1</sup>		<sup>1</sup> MS. cast ?
how <i>pat</i> he may fro this lady race		how to convict Katharine.
hir newe oppynyon) ; whether <i>wyth</i> solace	817	

789 besyly oure helthe 793 shuld 795 *pat* tyme 796 brest  
 797 sere 798 be om. 799 stoynd 800 hir 805 ponysh 806  
 strangille 807 no-þing herby 814 counselle 815 tast 816 who

	<i>Bk. IV. Ch. 13.</i>	Or ellis wyth peyne be beste to procede.	
		his counseH seyde thus right <sup>1</sup> in þat stede	<sup>1</sup> <i>at.</i> right thus 819
The Council advise the Emperor to send for great Clerks.		That he shal sende after grete clerkis,	820
		lerned in gramer, rethorik and philosophie,	
		wiche <sup>1</sup> haue in sciens soo sekyr merkes	<sup>1</sup> MS. Swiche
		That no man ageyn hem [may] <sup>2</sup> repleye ;	<sup>2</sup> MS. can, overlined
		Thei shal sonnest destroyen this heresy	824
		Of this same lady—thus seyde thei alle.	
		A-noon the emperour dede foorth I-calle	826
He does so, from Cyprus and Syria,		Many massangeris, for letteris wil he sende	827
		Thurgh-oute the londe of Cypre and surre :	
		Alle tho clerkys tho <sup>1</sup> wil her lyfloodde amende	<sup>1</sup> <i>at.</i> that
		Thei must come now to this palustre,	
		On-to this place where þis conflicte shal bee.	831
		The letteris arn wrete now, and seeled iche oon ;	
		The massangeris in haste for these men arn goon.	833
by letters seald with his ring.		The emperour hym-self as of a specyalte	834
		Seeled these letteris wyth a precyous ryng,	
		Whiche was I-graue with ful grete sotylte.	
		The sentens of these letteris whiche þat this kyng	
		Wrote at þat tyme, if youre desiryng	838
		Bee for to liste it, 3e may heere it soone :	
How the let- ters run.		“ Maxcens the lord, saue sonne and moone	840
		“ Moost grettest in erthe, whiche hath I-bee	841
		Thre tymes Consul in rome, that Citee hy,	
		ffader of the puple, and on-to the deite	
		Of Iubiter the kyng of kynrede ful ny,	
		Sendeth loue and helthe to al [þe] clergy	845
	Of surre and Cypre and other prounce alle		
	Whiche to his lordshepe newly arn falle.	847	
	“ We wil 3e wete, we sende at this tyme	848	
	On-to 3oure prouydens counseH to haue ;		

819 rith þus 822 wheche 823 may 824 sonest destroy 827  
massageris 829 þat will . lynclode 832 are wryte . seald . yche  
833 are 837 of þe 843 on om. 844 kynrode 845 alle þe clargye  
847 are 848 wyte

We axe [not] of you neyther taske ne dyme, Bk. IV. Ch. 13.  
 But oonly youre feyth and oure secte to sauc. The Emperor  
 ffor these cristen folke<sup>1</sup> make oure puple to raue 852 asks the  
 With sotil suasyons whiche that thei vse, <sup>1 r. folkis</sup> learned  
 On whiche sotiltees we oure-selue muse. 854 Heathlens to

“ But moost specyaly a lady haue we newe [I]-caught,  
 Enforced with eloquens merueilously ; 856  
 Mekel of oure puple soo hath she taught  
 That fro oure feith flee they sodeynly ;  
 Thus party with witte, party w<sup>yt</sup>h nygramauncy 859  
 She peruerteth oure lond in wonder wise.  
 Therefore we bydde, ye that are wyse, 861

“ Ye haste you now<sup>1</sup> to Alysandre for this same cause, come and  
 To looke if 3e may this woman) oppresse. <sup>1 MS. you now, you overl.</sup> answer  
 ffor this I telle you shortly in clause, 864 Katharine,

But she be ouercome with 3oure besynesse,  
 Alle shul be cristen, the more and the lesse. 866 or all his  
 And if 3e conuycte hir, avaunced shul 3e bee folk will turn  
 With plente of richesse, if ye troste me.” 868 Christians.

Thus arn) the letter<sup>is</sup> wretten) and I-goo. 869

The emperour is walked foorth with the mayde  
 On-to the paleys, with lordes many moo, He takes  
 Whiche w[as]<sup>1</sup> at that tyme ful weel arayd. <sup>1 MS. were</sup> Katharine to  
 Many plesaunt woord<sup>is</sup> on-to hir he sayd, 873 his palace,

And many grete behestes tho he be-hyght,  
 To turne hir oppynyon), if þat he myght. 875

he hight hir : if she wolde to hym consent, 876 and offers  
 To haue ful power of al maner of thyng,  
 More than) ony lord of his parlement ;  
 ffor alle men) shulde bowe on-to hyr byddyng,  
 She shulde be queen) as he was kyng, 880 to make her  
 hir ymage wolde he sette in the market-place, Queen,  
 Whiche shulde be lyke hir in body and in face, 882

850 ax not . nethir 851 oure . and om. 853 suasiones 855  
 haf . I-caut 857 meche 859 w<sup>yt</sup>h om. 862 you om. 868 ryches  
 869 are 871 pales 872 was 873 on om. 874 behyte 875 mythe  
 876 hite 877 of om.

<i>Bk. IV. Ch. 13.</i>	And alle maner [of] men shulde wurship yeue	883
and have her image worshipt,	On-to þat ymage as on-to a goddesse ; Thei shal not chese if that þei wil leue, Wurship shul thei hir bothe more and lesse. That was his promys that with swiche worthinesse	887
if she'll forsake the Christian faith.	he wil hir auauunce, oonly if she wil forsake hir cristen feyth and his feith now take.	889
She refuses.	But alle these promyses set she at nought, This blyssed lady, ryght for crystes sake ; This same vers was tho in hir thought Whiche oure lady hir-self gan make :	890
	“Thei that are proude, god wil hem forsake ; Mecke he wil lifte vp right for her meckenesse.”	894
	Thanne seyde she to the emperour <i>wyth</i> sadnesse :	896
She has given up this world for Christ's love.	“Al this world haue I for my lordis loue, Ihesu I mene, forsaken) for euere-more ; There shal no mene of dred ne of [loue] <sup>1</sup> putte myn herte fro that grete tresore ; <sup>1</sup> MS. other be-houe, on eras. It shal ly ful stille there as a good store, Til þat I deye and yelde up my goost On-to þat lord whom I loue moost.	897  901 903
Let the Heathen Gods take vengeance on her if they can.	“But sith that thyne <sup>1</sup> goddis of swiche myghtis bee As þou hast pronounced heere in this place, <sup>1</sup> r. þi lete hem take vengeavnce now vp-on me, If that thei may ; lete hem my body race ! her myght is right nought, ne nought is her grace. Therefore I despise hem as thei stonde on rowe, ffor feendes ar) thei, ful weel þat I knowe.	905  908 910
	“And, sir, to 3ow I wil touche another thyng— I wil 3e shul enclyne al youre entent To herken) my woordis and myn) talkyng :	911

883 of men . shulle 890 promissis 895 vp right om. 898 forsake  
899 other om. loue 904 þi . mythe 905 pronounced 906 late  
907 that om. 908 right om. 909 stand a-rowe 910 ar 911 serc  
912 vole 913 my

It is not onknown to al the orient		<i>Bk IV. Ch. 13.</i>
That bothe be descens and be testament	915	Katharine says Alexandria is hers;
This citee is myn, as for myn crytage,		
To whiche ye haue maad now this pilgrymage.	917	
“ Sith 3e arn kyng, and rightwisnesse shulde keepe,	918	
Whi make ye swiche maystries in other mennes londe,		
Compelle my tenauntes, though þei soore wepe,		the Emperor wrongly oppresses her tenants.
To goo with her offeryng's ryght in her honde,		
With trompes and tabouris be-fornd you to stonde,	922	
With-oute my leue, wyth <sup>1</sup> -oute <sup>1</sup> my licens ?		<sup>1</sup> r. wyth-outen
This is wrong to me, and to god offens.	924	
“ If youre goddis teche 3ow to do this synne,	925	
Thanne are thei onrightful in her commaundement ;		
If 3e ageyn her bydyng thus wil be-gynne,		
Thanne doo ye wrong ageyn <sup>1</sup> her entent.		<sup>1</sup> r. ageynis?
On what-maner wise 3e make your weent,—	929	
I wil not tarie 3ow wyth no tales longe,		
But thus I conclude, that ye doo me wronge.”	931	
Tho was the emperour so ful of malencolye	932	The Emperor
he myght no lengere suffre hir in his presens ;		
To a knyght he commavnded þat stood faste bye,		
he shal taken this lady and leede hir thens,		orders Katharine to prison,
Put hir in preson for hir grete offens ;	936	
“ look ye keepe hir soo she <sup>1</sup> goo not aweye ;		<sup>1</sup> MS. that she
ffor if þat she doo, ful horrybyly shal ye deye.”	938	
Gladly and iocundely with the knyght she gooth	939	and she goes gladly.
As a spouse to chaumbre, for hir lordis loue ;		
No-thing dismayde, no-thing is she wrooth—		
Thus can oure lord the pacyens proue		
Of hem þat arn chosen to dwelle al aboute	943	
In heuene in his presens. but thus I lete hir ly,		
And fourth I shal telle of this story.	945	

916 myn 2 om. 918 are 919 mastries. otheris mezis 921 hondis 922 taburs. befor 925 for to 926 hydr 928 Intent 929 went 932 so om. 935 take 936 grete om. 937 he. that om. 938 shall he 939 goo 943 are



	<b>W</b> hil Katarine is in preson thus I-closed,	946
The Emperor	The emperour is ryden in to the lond, ffor certeyn causes—but as it is supposed, It was for brekyn[g of] <sup>1</sup> a certeyn bond <sup>1</sup> MS. corr.: for to brekyn; of erased.	
	Be-twyxe too citees, as I vndirstond : <sup>3</sup> MS. corr.: beg. there	950
makes peace between 2 cities,	he rood to cece <sup>2</sup> the sysme that was [new] begon <sup>3</sup> — <sup>2</sup> or. cesse Eche of hem on <sup>4</sup> other had spent many a [gonne], <sup>5</sup>	952
	But he hath maad pees, and his iornay is sped,	953
and returns to Alexandria.	he is come hom now to Alisaundre ageyn. The massangeris that he sent, eke thei haue led Alle these clerkys to Alisaundre, certeyn. Thus be thei come bothe, shortly to sey <sup>n</sup> , <sup>1</sup> MS. arn)	957
	The emperour and the clerkis, [þus] <sup>1</sup> mette in-feere. A counseH is set now of lordis þat were there.	959
The Philoso- phers he has sent for	The philysophres ar <sup>n</sup> entred in to the same counsayH, To wete whi the emperour hath for hem <sup>1</sup> sent. <sup>1</sup> <i>al.</i> for hem hath	
	There was a faire sight, withouten <sup>n</sup> ony fayH : ffor oute of the coostes of al the oryent Are these maysteris chose, right for this entent	964
to argue with Katharine,	To conquere this lady be philosophie. The noubre of hem, if I shal not lye,	966
are 50 very learned men.	Myn auctour seith, was fyfty euene, lerned men in art and in arsmetrik, In retorik, gramer, in alle þe seyens seuene, In al this world were hem noon <sup>1</sup> like, <sup>1</sup> <i>al.</i> noon hem	967
	Thei had stodied the groundes of alle musike.	971
The Emperor tells them why he sent for them:	The emperour is ful glad now of her comynge ; Thus seide he to hem at her enterying :	973
	“Maisteris, we sente for yow for this matere : We haue heere a mayde whiche with obstinaeye	974

948 but om. 949 for brekyng of . certen 951 sesse . new begun ;  
there om. 952 Iche of them of o . gonne 953 pece 954 cum  
955 massengers . hafe 956 eke certeyn 957 cum 958 arn om.  
thus mete. 960 philosoferis are . cowneelle 961 for hem hath 966  
shuld 969 and alle 970 the . nou them 971 grownde 972 hyr  
cummyng 973 hyr 975 hafe

Ren[e]yeth oure lawes, swiche as we vsen heere,		<i>Bk. IV. Ch. 11.</i>
ffor she is fallen in to <sup>1</sup> that cursed heresie	<sup>1</sup> om. to	Katharine has turned Christian;
Whiche the <sup>1</sup> cristen clepe, ful of ypocris[i]e;	<sup>1</sup> r. thei	978
She eke so deepe in to this errour is falle		
That alle oure goddis "deuceles" doth she calle.		980
" And I suppose verily 3e teeche but truthe,		981
Be-cause that 3e been soo grete lerned men.		
To sle so yonge a lady me thenketh ruthe ;		
Therefore the right weye I wil 3e hir ken,		she must be converted to Hethenism.
To conuerte hir to oure lawe—ellis I must hir bren.		985
This is þe cause whi I sent for 3ow.		
Goo cast <i>your</i> wittis in the best maner now		987
" how ye wil procede, for she shal come anoon ;		988
hir answeris arn) sly, grete is hir lernyng.		
I make yow seker 3e shal not hens goon)		
On-to the tyme that 3e hir bryng		
In to the same feith whiche hir fadir þe kyng		992
leued al his lyue, and hir modir also.		
This is the matere whiche I wil haue doo."		994
Oon answerde for alle, and thus spak he :		995
" We weene heere is gadered swyche a companye,		The Philosophers are the wisest in the world.
In al this world shulde not a man) fynde thre		
So <sup>1</sup> wise, so stodyous in philosophic.	<sup>1</sup> MS. Sho	
But ouere alle these Maister Arioth is moost worthy ;		999
he nedeth not his labour on a woman) spende,		
he shal on-to hir but his discipulis sende.		1001
" And if she conlude hem be auctoryte		1002
Or ellis be reson, <sup>1</sup> leue me ful weel,	<sup>1</sup> MS. resons	If Katharine poses them, she is a Goddess.
I wil sey thanne that a goddesse is she,		
And moost worthi to be sette on the wheel		
Of natural sciens. but I can) not feel		1006

976 reneyhithe. whyche ; as om. vse 977 falle 978 clepeth  
 979 is In-to 980 goodis 982 be 987 To cast 988 who . cum  
 989 are 991 that t. 993 lyued . lyfe 994 haue 996 companye  
 999 maysteres . Ariott 1001 vnto . discipules 1003 reson 1004  
 goddes 1006 kannot

Bk. IV. Ch. 14. In no maner that a woman shul[d] come per-too,  
 I haue not herd speke that ony woman dede soo." 1008  
 After this sermonyng on-til the nexte day 1009  
 The Philoso- The emperour commaunded knyghtis hem to cheere,  
 phers are housd. To leede hem to her Innes with ful good aray  
 In sencyaH<sup>1</sup> of bookis and swiche other gere <sup>1 at. speeyall</sup>  
 As longeth on-to men that swiche sciens lere. 1013  
 Thus leue I hem stille in thoughtful besynesse, <sup>1 MS. and in</sup>  
 Katharine is And Katarine, oure mayden, in presun and<sup>1</sup> distresse.  
 in prison.

Bk. IV. Ch. 15.Ca<sup>m</sup>. 15<sup>m</sup>.

The Emperor in Council, **T**he other day is come. but the emperour thought 1016  
 To asaye hym-selue with his preuy counsayH  
 ffor to conquere hir—but it avayleth nought ;  
 ffor whan moost nede is, his resons wil quayH—  
 Soo weel can oure mayden hir proporsyons rayH. 1020  
 lordes were there many tho in presens,  
 Statly, manful and of grete expens : 1022  
 and the Kings The kyng of Armenye was tho in þat place 1023  
 of Armenia, Where she was apposed of hir beleue ;  
 Soo was þe kyng of Mede, a faire man of face ;  
 Macedon, &c., The kyng eke of Macedoyne, whiche made many a proue  
 Ageyns this lady, but he coude hir not meue ; 1027  
 The prouost of perse was there also,  
 Wyth bishopes and lordes many mo. 1029  
 argue with Thei made her resons, but þei avayled nought. 1030  
 Katharine in vain. first<sup>1</sup> seyde þe emperour right thus to þe may :  
 “Myn owne suster,<sup>2</sup> hedir I haue yow brought <sup>1 MS. fyrst tho</sup>  
 Be-fornd my special frendes this day, <sup>2 MS. o. s. on erasure.</sup>  
 To see whether ye wil stille in your olde lay 1034  
 helde 3oure perseuerauns or ellis consente<sup>1</sup> to vs  
 And ren[c]ye for euere that traytour Iesus, <sup>1 MS. ye wille</sup> 1036

1007 shuld cum 1008 haue . hard . dyde 1012 In speeyall  
 1016 cum 1017 couneelee 1018 it om. 1019 resonys . whayle  
 1020 mayde 1023 Ermenye 1024 opposed 1026 macedon 1027  
 A-geyn . mend 1030 hyr 1031 tho om. thys may 1032 syster .  
 hafe 1033 Befor 1034 whedyr . eld 1035 3e wil om. 1036 reney

- “To turne to appollo, venus and mynerue— 1037 *Bk. IV. Ch. 15.*  
 ffor 3oure preson shulde cause yow, I suppose, The Emperor  
 urges Katharine to change  
 her Faith.  
 To chaunge 3our lyf, lest þat ye sterue.  
 ffor of alle maydenes ye be the rose,  
 And to maydenes it longeth to be led wyth glose. 1041  
 lete see now, telle how 3e avysed bee!”  
 On-to these woordis thus answerde shee : 1043
- “A loue haue I, sere, whiche liketh me soo 1044 She declares  
 That wordly<sup>1</sup> delite to me is but peyne  
 And wordly<sup>1</sup> Ioye to me is but woo, <sup>1</sup> *at. all worldly*  
 If I very truthe to yow shulde now seyne.  
 Therefore knoweth this for a certeyne : 1048  
 I wil neuere chaunge, whil I haue lyf,  
 I shal been euere to hym truwe spouse and wyf.” 1050 she never  
 will.
- Tho seyde the emperour : “th[an]<sup>1</sup> is al nought <sup>1</sup> *ms. this*  
 That we with oure wittis haue laboured 3ow to saue !  
 Turne 3oure woordis, turne eke 3our thought, 1053  
 Or ellis swiche ende muste ye now haue  
 As longeth to traitouris that wil thus<sup>1</sup> raue. <sup>1</sup> *at. thus wil*  
 Advise 3ow of too thyngis whiche ye wil take : He says she  
 must, or die.  
 Eyther shal 3e deye, or youre lawe forsake.” 1057
- And eke the grete kyng of Armenye, 1058  
 Eem on-to Kataryne he was, as I wene,  
 “Cosyn,” he seyde, “leueth this heresyce,  
 Thenke on 3oure kenerede, bothe kyng and queene,  
 Was noon<sup>1</sup> of hem swiche thyng wolde sustene. 1062  
 Allas, woman, why despise 3e saturne ? <sup>1</sup> *at. neuer noon*  
 he may, and he wil, in to a ston 3ou turne.” 1064  
 The kyng of Mede, whiche sat tho be-syde, 1065  
 In oure lord ihesu he gan putte swiche blame :

1042 lat. who 1044 haue. syr 1045 alle worldly 1046 alle w.  
 1047 now om. . sayn 1048 know. a certen 1049 haue 1050 be.  
 trewe 1051 than is 1052 haue. safe 1054 haue 1055 thus wyll  
 raffe 1057 Etyr. dye 1058 Armony 1059 on om. 1060 leve  
 1061 Thynk of. kynrede 1062 was neuer non of them. susteyn  
 1066 gan om. put

- Bk. IV. Ch. 15. "3oure god crist," he seyde, "is knowe ful wyde  
That he was a whiche, and soo was his dame,  
And grottest in whitchcraft, as is the fame. 1069  
ffy on swiche wisdom, fy on swiche feyth!  
This same recorde al the world seyth." 1071
- The King of Media says Christ was a witch.
- Another king says no one shares her belief.
- An other kyng was there, and thus he hir repræued:  
She stood in this mater, he seyde, but allone,  
There is noon but she þat in crist leued;  
"looke now," he seyde, "whether oon persone  
Is more wurthi to be leued þan we iche oone; 1076  
Reson wil conclude þat where multitude is, <sup>1 r. not but?</sup>  
There is the truthe, a man may not<sup>1</sup> mys." 1078
- King Caspanus says
- The kyng of Macedoyne, sir caspanus, 1079  
On-to þe lady ful sobirly thus seyde:  
"Youre god, youre lord whiche ye calle Iesus,  
As 3e sey, he was bore of a mayde;  
But why suffred he to be soo arayde 1083  
Of his owne seruau<sup>t</sup>s, soo as he was?  
And a wyse lord had stonde in that cas, 1085  
"he wolde haue hangen hem of very Iustise." 1086  
Thus seyde the bishopes, þus seyde thei alle  
On-to this lady in her best wyse, 1088  
And with besynesse soore on hir [they]<sup>1</sup> calle, <sup>1 MS. to</sup>  
That she fro this vanyte must nedes<sup>1</sup> falle <sup>1 at. nedes must</sup>  
And make of hir enmyes hir frendes decre.  
Than spak this lady right as 3e shal heere: 1092
- Bk. IV. Ch. 16. **Ca<sup>m</sup>. 16<sup>m</sup>.**
- Katharine answers her objectors.
- "Sir emperour," seyde she, "I haue or this 1093  
On-to youre reuerens declared ful weel  
Whi my lord Ihesu of seruau<sup>t</sup>s his  
Wolde suffre al this peyne<sup>1</sup> euery deel; <sup>1 r. peynes?</sup>  
But of my feyth no-þing ye feel, 1097
- 1068 wyche 1069 the gr. 1072 Anoder thyng. he hir thus  
1075 wheder o 1078 but om. 1082 sayd 1083 soo om. 1086  
hanged 1088 hyr 1089 they e. 1090 And she . ned<sup>t</sup>s muste  
1091 her enmes 1093 haue 1096 peyn

- Soo ar 3e harled with obstinaeye. *Bk. IV. Ch. 16.*
- Therefore hold I now [but] a grete folye 1099
- “ Youre demonstracyons for to declare. 1100 Katharine says that Mahound will not save them from Hell.
- But thus moche I seye on-to you euerychon) :
- 3oure mahound of whom ye make swiche fare,
- Shal not saue yow whan) ye shul goon)
- Doun) in to peynis, heuy as a stoon) ; 1104
- he may not delyuere hym-self fro þat peyne,
- Where he is bounde with many a cheyne. 1106
- “ But witche was he neuere, Ihesu, my lord, 1107 Christ and Mary are not witches.
- Ne his blysse[d] modir mary, þat may ;
- he was god and man), as bookis record,
- And alle tho myracles were put in asay
- Be his mortal enmyes with ful grete afray 1111
- And euere were thei founde truwe and stedfast.
- Therefore ley doun) that horrible blast 1113
- “ Of youre cursed tounge, 3e lordes, I 3ou pray ; 1114 Let the Kings stop their barking!
- Berke now no more ageyn) that hooly name,
- ffor ye shal somtyme see that day
- Ye shal for þis berkyng be put on-to blame.
- Alas, þat euere ony wretchis shulde defame 1118
- Soo hy a lord, soo grete of dygnyte,
- To whom mote nedes bowe<sup>1</sup> euery kne !” <sup>1 r. bowen</sup> 1120
- Than spak the prouost of perse ful sone : 1121 The Provost of Persia calls for the Philosophers.
- “ Sende after these cle[r]kys, sir, and lete hem seye ;
- Thei can oure feith, thei wote what is to done.
- lete hir beleue hem or ellis shal she deye,
- She shal chese oon), there is noon) other weye. 1125
- With this longe claterynge, tyme lese we heere ;
- Thei wil appose hir in an other manere.” 1127
- 1098 abstinacye 1099 but a 1101 myche . on om. 1102 of whyche 1103 shall 1104 a om. 1105 deleuer . from 1107 Ihesu om. 1108 Be . blyssed 1110 myrakyls 1111 mortaylle enmes 1112 trew 1113 orible 1114 tungis 1117 barkyng 1118 euere om. 1119 hyghe . grete a d. 1120 nede 1122 them 1124 lat 1125 chese om. 1127 oppose . an om.

Bk. IV. Ch. 17.

Ca<sup>m</sup>. 17<sup>m</sup>.The Emperor  
appeals to the  
Philosophers  
to answer  
Katharine.

The philosophres arnd entred to the counsayH. 1128  
 The emperour seyde: “sir<sup>is</sup>, this is the houre  
 In whiche we shal see if connyng wil avayle.  
 Therfore, maistres, dooth now zoure laboure,  
 ffor ye muste defende vs fro this sharpe shoure 1132  
 With the whiche we arnd heyled now on euery syde;  
 But if ye spede, oure feyth wil sone slyde.” 1134

Thei answerde ageyn, thei seyde thei had scorn 1135  
 That soo many<sup>1</sup> ageyn a mayden z yng <sup>1 at. many men</sup>  
 Shulde now dispute; for he is not born  
 In erthe as yet that durste stere ony thyng  
 Ageyn her conclusyons, neither duke ne kyng— 1139  
 Swhiche grete roos was made þan<sup>1</sup> in þat place. <sup>1 at. þo</sup>  
 “lete hir come,” thei seyde, “lete vs see hir face!” 1141

But whil thei were carpyng in this matere, 1142

A knight  
warns her in  
prison of her  
coming trial.

A knyght is goo to hir in preson in hast,  
 Warnyng hir as a genteH officere  
 In what maner the emperour wil hir a-taast.  
 What nedeth now mo woord<sup>is</sup> for to waast? 1146  
 The lady seyde that it was glad tydyng,  
 There coude no man gladdere to hir bryng. 1148

Tho fel she down plat al in a traunce, 1149

She prays to  
God for help.

Commendynge hir cause right on-to god allone,  
 “Graunte me, lord,” she seyde, “perseueraunce,  
 To serue thi godhed whiche sitteth in trone;  
 Of whiche godhed thi sone, the secunde persone, 1153  
 Deyed in erthe for synne of al man-kynde,<sup>1</sup> <sup>1 corr.: keende</sup>  
 Whiche on-to hym ful ofte [he fynt onkynde].<sup>1</sup> 1155  
<sup>1 MS. corr.: onstable is in meende.</sup>  
 “Thou graunte me, lord, this day eloquens, 1156  
 To saue thi feith, right as þou best can);

1128 are . councele 1130 conyng 1131 do 1132 from 1133  
 the om. are haylyd 1136 many men 1138 erde 1139 hyr .  
 neþer 1140 rowse . þo 1141 cum 1143 gon . in preson om.  
 1145 a-taste 1151 sche sayde lord 1153 sune 1154 kynde 1155  
 he fynt onkynde

Suffre not these clerkis to make resistens		<i>Bk. IV. Ch. 17.</i>
Ageyn þat doctrine whiche þou, god and man,		
here in this world with woundes blewe and wand	1160	
Confermed thus ; geue me, lord, that goost		Katharine prays for the Spirit
Whiche can put down soone al wordly boost !	1162	
“ And as þou graunted to thyne Aposteles heere,	1163	
Whan thei shulde stonde be-fore prynce or kyng,		
Thou seyde to hem thei shulde not be in dwere		
What thei shulde speke, neither to olde ne ȝyng,		
ffor thou shulde graunte hem witte in answeyng,	1167	
Ageyn whiche there shulde noo man replie,		
Neither of the secte of hethen ne of heresy :	1169	
“ Right soo graunte now to me, þi seruaunt, heere,	1170	
That I haue strengthe thi cause [for] to defende,		to defend Christ's cause.
That I may proue be resons sharpe and clere		
Thi cherches feyth, for whiche þou gan descende		
Euene fro heuene oure maneris to a-mende.	1174	
This prey I the, put this in my brest,		
As þou art god and man, bothe kyng and preest.	1176	
“ Thou art my connyng, þou art myn hardynesse,	1177	
Thou art al in whom oonly I trost ;		In Him only does she trust.
There cometh noo vertu but of thi worthinesse :		
Lete not thi power at this day be loost !		
Thou makest al thyng, bothe þe hete and the frost ;	1181	
Wherfore I prey, lord, <sup>1</sup> thoug I a woman be,		<sup>1</sup> MS. the, lord
Yet for thi wurshipe ȝet soo enforce me	1183	
“ That I may speke wordis to thi plesauns.	1184	May He strengthen her to speak aright !
As þou graunted hester to plesce hir assuere,		
To leue his stately solenne countenauns		
And speke to hir wordis of goodly cheere :		
Soo graunte me now, lord, thi seruaunt heere,	1188	

1158 suffyr 1164 stande 1166 elde 1171 hafe . forto 1172  
 proue 1173 chyrches . kan 1174 maners 1177 conyng . my  
 1179 comth . verteve 1180 as þis d. 1182 the om. . thow 1185  
 ester



Bk. IV. Ch. 17. That I may plesse and plete in thi cause.  
This is the sentens that I prey in clause." 1190

Bk. IV. Ch. 18.

Ca<sup>m</sup>. 18<sup>m</sup>.

An Angel  
comes from  
Heaven,

When that this lady had made hir oryson), 1191  
Ther cam an aungel glidyng down from heuene ;

With merueylous noyse cam he þat tyme doun),  
As bright he semed as it were the leuene.

Alle th[e]<sup>1</sup> preson whiche had vowtes seuene, 1195

Was light that tyme right of his presens ; <sup>1</sup> MS. tho in

The derke corneres cowde make no resistens. 1197

And she myght not susteyn that vysyon), 1198

Soo was she rauyshed with th[at]<sup>1</sup> newe light ; <sup>1</sup> MS. the

Right with his comynge she fel soone doun.

and comforts  
Katharine  
in prison.

The aungel comforted hir and bad hir be [l]yght ; <sup>1</sup> <sup>1</sup> MS. wyght

“Drede not,” he seyth, “though þat I be bryght ! 1202

I am a seruauant bothe on-to god and yow,

And for 3oure comfort fro heuene cam I now. 1204

Christ greets  
her,

“ My lord youre spouse be me greteth 3ow weel ; 1205

ffor very loue this message now he sent :

and bids her  
not fear.

he commaunded 3ou to drede neuere a deel,

Of these clerkis 3e shal not be circumuent ;

Ye shal conceyue ful clerkly<sup>1</sup> her entent, <sup>1</sup> *at. clerely* 1209

And 3et moreouere thei shul haue noo powere

ffor to conclude 3ou now in noo manere. 1211

She shall  
convert her  
opponents,

“ But 3oure power shal be ouere hem more large, 1212

ffor 3e shal conuicte hem with gret auctorite ;

Ye shal leden hem on-to peteres barge,

Whiche fygureth oure feyth, as seyth dyuynite.

And not oonly thus, but soo deuoute shul þei bee 1216

and they  
shall die for  
Christ.

That as martirs for crist thei shul deye—

This same prophecye whiche I to 3ou seye 1218

1192 fro 1194 bryth 1195 alle þe preson 1199 þat 1201 lyght  
1202 noght . bryte 1203 & to 1206 lofe . message 1208 þeyse  
1209 clerly 1210 hafe 1211 leden om. þe peteres b. 1217 martyres

“ Is determyned a-boue be goddis prouydens.	1219	<i>Bk. IV. Ch. 18.</i>
These clerkes shul than <sup>1</sup> despise her bookis alle	<sup>1</sup> az. now	The Philosophers shall despise their heathen books.
In whiche thei haue had a ful grete confidens ;		
Al her gret trost now shal fro hem falle		
With þe whiche thei haunted her goddis for to calle.	1223	
This shaloure lord doo, lady, be þoure labour :		
Rise vp now and thanke <i>your</i> sauyour !	1225	
“ And þe youre-self, after that thei be dede,	1226	
Shul suffre for hym moche more thyng		
Than I haue leysur to telle now in this stede.		
But of thus moche I geue you ful warnyng :		
þe shal make the queen <sup>2</sup> for to forsake hir kyng	1230	Katharine shall make the Queen forsake her King.
ffor cristis loue, and deye soo in hir blood ;		
þe shul be cause, lady, of alle these werkis good.	1232	
“ Yeue credens to me as to a truwe massagere,	1233	
And as noo feyned spyrite with doubilnesse ;		
My name is mychael, if þe wil it heere,		
Archaungel of heuene, whiche hath þat besynesse		The Arch-angel Michael tells her this.
That alle soules, the more and eke þe lesse,	1237	
That shal to blisse, I peyse hem alle be wyte		
Whether in goodnesse thei ben <sup>3</sup> heuy or lyghte.	1239	
“ This is myn <sup>4</sup> office, leue me, lady, weel !	1240	
There is a sete ordeyned in heuene aboue		She shall sit in Heaven after her martyrdom.
ffor yow, lady, after youre sharpe wheel		
Whiche þe shal suffre for youre spouses loue ;		
Was neuere no mayde to swiche sete myght proue	1244	
Sauē Mary allone, cristes moder deere.		
ffarweel now, lady, and beth of ryght good cheere !”	1246	
Thus was she comforthed, and left al þat nyght	1247	Katharine is comforted.
In prēson stille, in swete orison <sup>5</sup> allone ;		
The sauour abode and somewhat of þe light		
After the tyme þat the Aungel was goone.		
he hath made hir hardy and stable as þe stoone,	1251	

1219 determynēde 1220 now inst. of than 1221 hafe 1223 þe om.  
 1227 mech 1229 myche. you om. 1233 trew mess. 1234 not f.  
 1238 hem om. . wyght 1239 wheythyre . be 1247 comforthed

Bk. IV. Ch. 18. There shal noo peyne hir herte now remeue  
ffro the feyth ne fro hir beleue. 1253

Bk. IV. Ch. 19.

Ca<sup>m</sup>. 19<sup>m</sup>.

All Alexandria gathers  
to hear the  
Discussion.

**N**OW is the Citee, for to see this mayde, 1254  
Gadered in-feere with noyse and rumo[u]r ;

Euery man there after his counnyng sayde :

“ Now is come the day and eke the hour

In whiche there shal falle ful grete honour 1258

On som party, or elles ful grete shame.”

And be-cause this lady was of soo grete fame, 1260

Euery man is besy to stoonde that tyme ny, 1261

That he myght heere and see al þat was doo.

The Emperor The emperour is sette, the lordes sitte faste by,

The cle[r]k's eke were sette be too and too ;

The may is sette in a sete also 1265

Right be hir-self, for she is lefte allone.

The emperour, sittynge al hy<sup>1</sup> in his trone, <sup>1</sup> MS. on hy 1267

exhorts the  
Philosophers

Thus exhorted<sup>1</sup> these noble clerk's alle : <sup>1</sup> MS. ex. he, he overl.

“ Maistres,” he seyth, “ heere is the concionatrix, 1269

heere is the mayde on whom we dede soo calle,

heere is the newe dyuynour, heere is þe newe Vlix,

heere is she whos error is soo fyx 1272

And soo sore glewed she wil not fro it remeue ; <sup>1</sup> al. schaftes

to prove their  
skill on  
Katharine.

Therefor 3oure craftes<sup>1</sup> on hir now must 3e preue.” 1274

Than made the mayde on-to the emperour 1275

A ful strong<sup>1</sup> chalange, seyenge on this wyse : <sup>1</sup> al. strange

She asks him

“ On-to these clerkys, whiche are heere in this hour

Gaddered to-gedir be-fore you as Iustise,

3e haue graunted a guerdon of grete apryse 1279

If that thei conuicte me ; to me graunte ye noon :

Wherefore me thenketh al wrong haue 3e goon. 1281

1256 *cunnyng* 1261 *stand* 1267 *on om.* 1268 *he om.* 1269  
*þis c.* 1273 *glewyd* 1274 *schaflys* 1276 *strauinge* 1277 *in om.*  
1279 *hafe* 1280 *3e inst. of thei* 1281 *hafe*

- “ But wolde 3e graunte<sup>1</sup> now to my guerdon) <sup>1 r. graunten</sup> *Bk. IV. Ch. 19.*  
 That, if I spede and conuicte hem alle on rowe, 1283 whether, if  
 That 3e shul leue 3owre maumentrye ful soon, she wins,  
 And my lord Ihesu as for 3oure god knowe, he'll take  
 Than wolde I seye with woordis meke and lowe 1286 Jesus as his  
 That ye were iuge, iuste man) and<sup>1</sup> truwe.” <sup>1 Ar. 20 tr. and man</sup> God.  
 With these woordis the emperour chaunged hewe. 1288
- he seyde on-to hir *wyth* ful stoute countenance : 1289
- “ What hast þou to doo of oure reward now ? <sup>The Emperor</sup>  
 Defende thi feith with al the circumstance bidis her  
 That þou can thenke, it shal be litel [enow].<sup>1</sup> <sup>1 MS. corr. : to defend her</sup>  
 lete be, damysele, make it not soo tough ! 1293 litel to 3ow. Faith.  
 Entermete<sup>1</sup> the where thou hast too doone ; <sup>1 MS. Entermente</sup>  
 If þou haue witte it [wil]<sup>2</sup> be seene [ful] soone.” <sup>2 MS. shal</sup>
- Tho spak the mayde on-to the clerkes alle : 1296
- “ Sith 3e be gadered now in to this place <sup>Katharine</sup>  
 Vp-on me oonly for to crye and calle, calls on the  
 With 3oure argumentis to loke if ye may chace Philosophers  
 My witte, my meende fro that newe purchace 1300  
 Whiche I haue wonne, I mene fro cristen feyth,  
 lete see what ony of yow to me seyth !” 1302 to begin.
- Tho spak a philosophre of ful grete age, 1303
- An honourable man, Amphos of Athene :
- “ We are come,” he seith, “ at the emperouris wage <sup>Amphos says</sup>  
 ffor a mayden, he wrote, of yeeris eytene :  
 That same is 3e, pleynty as I wene. 1307  
 But wherfore we come, as yet we knowe<sup>1</sup> not now ;  
 Of that mater the answeere lith in 3ow. <sup>1 at. know we</sup> 1309
- “ Sith ye be causere thanne of this affray, 1310
- Sey ye 3oure groundes, and we shul puruay <sup>she must</sup>  
 Answeris ther-too. or we goo [hens] this day, state her case.  
 We caste us sekыр newly you to conuay

1283 o rowe 1284 schall 1285 to know 1287 trewe 1289  
 vn-to 1292 to om. lytyll enow 1293 towe 1294 Entermet 1295  
 hafe . wilbe . ful sone 1300 mynde 1301 hafe wunne 1306  
 mayde 1308 know we 1311 purueye 1312 goo hens 1313 conueye

Bk. IV. Ch. 19. On-to that feyth whiche 3e dede reneye 1314  
 Be wykked counsail. therfore first shal yee  
 Speke in this mater, and than answeere wee." 1316

Bk. IV. Ch. 20.Ca<sup>m</sup>. 20<sup>m</sup>.

Katharine  
crosses her-  
self,  
and speaks.  
"The mayde stood up, and wyth ful good chere 1317  
 She crossed hir hed, hir mowth and hir brest ;  
 Thanne spak she to hem right as 3e shal here :  
 " In me it lith at the begynnyng of this fest  
 To pronounce first, though þat I be lest 1321  
 And moost onwurdy, but oure lord Ihesu,  
 Blissed be he syth tyme that I hym knew. 1323  
 " I haue lefte alle myn auctouris olde, 1324  
 I fond noo frute in hem but eloquens ;  
 My bookis ben goo, 3ouen) or ellis solde.  
 Aristotle, ffarweel, Aristotil ! for ful grete expens  
 Made my fadyr and had ful grete diligens 1328  
 To lerne<sup>1</sup> me thi<sup>2</sup> sotyl bookys alle <sup>1 r. lerneu ?</sup> <sup>2 MS. the</sup>  
 Of dyuers names as thou dede hem calle. 1330  
 Homer, " Of omere eke haue I take my leue, 1331  
 With his faire termes in vers and eke in prose—  
 fful erly sat I and eke ful late at eue  
 To lerne the texte and to lerne the glose ;  
 I haue chose better, truly, I not suppose 1335  
 Ouid, But wote ful weel. farweel eke, ouyde !  
 Thou loued ful weel blynde Venus and Cupide. 1337  
 Esculapius, " I haue take leue of esculape and Galiene 1338  
 And of alle her preuy sergyng of nature—  
 I haue a lessou) moche truere to sustene  
 And more directe to knowe<sup>1</sup> creature. <sup>1 r. knowen</sup>  
 Plato, &c. 3e plato bookis eke, I you ensure, 1342  
 We haue doo now, we shal neuere more meete ;  
 Ne hym phillistion, bothe philosophre and poete. 1344

1318 breeste 1320 lyghte 1321 pronounns . leest 1324 hafe .  
 my 1326 be 1329 ji 1340 meche trewere . susteyne

“Be-helde ye, maistres, alle these mennes werkes	1345	<i>Bk. IV. Ch. 20.</i>
haue I stodyed and lerned ful besyly ;		These Pagans’ works
Thei were red me of ful sotil clerkes,		
There lyue noon better at this day, hardly :		
And in these bookes noon other thyng fond I	1349	
But vanyte or thyng that shal not leste,		were vanyte.
And euere me thoughte that swiche lernyng was beste	1351	
“That treeteth of thyng whiche shal euere <sup>1</sup> endure.	1352	Christ is eternal,
Swiche thyng lerne I now, turned to crist Ihesu ;		
I lerne how god is lord of creature,	<sup>1 at. euere shal</sup>	Lord of all creation,
I learne hough he the heuene white and blew,		
The water, the feyr, the erthe, eer þat it grew,	1356	
Made al of nought—this is now my lernyng.		
I lerne also that he a childe ful ying	1358	
“Was bore in erthe of Mary, and she a mayde,	1359	bore on earth of Mary,
Grew to <sup>1</sup> manhod, to thretty wynter and thre,	<sup>1 at. on to</sup>	
And thanne wilfully, as the prophetes sayde,		
ffor synne of man) heyng <sup>1</sup> vp-on a tree ;	<sup>1 at. hyng</sup>	hangd on a tree.
Many myracles in erthe tho dede hee	1363	
Whil he wente here—this I 3ow ensure.		
Be dyuers werkys knowe was sondry nature :	1365	
“That he was god, he shewed be werkes grete,	1366	He is God
ffor alle the elementis obeyed his commaundement ;		
That he was man, ful esy is to trete :		and man.
Thei sey and felte hym that with hym were present.		
I telle you pleynty [now] al my[n] entent,	1370	
This is my scole, þis is my philosophie,		
This is þe scyens I hope shal neuere lye ;	1372	
“This is my feyth, this is my victorie.	1373	This is Katharine’s Faith.
What-euere men sey, a god muste we haue,		
Aboue alle men that euere regned erthely		
Most souereyn lord, whos power may al saue.		

1348 noo 1349 no 1352 eyr shall 1354 who 1355 who .  
 whyght 1356 fyyre . erde or 1360 on-to m. 1362 hyng 1363 dyd  
 1366 obeyd 1370 now all myne 1374 hafe 1375 reygned erdely  
 1376 sofrenc . safe

- Bk. IV. Ch. 20. looke on your goddis how þei touble and waue 1377  
 Right whan men swepe hem—so litil is her myght! <sup>1 at. ye</sup>  
 Wype away<sup>1</sup> þat blyndenesse whiche hath hilled *your* sight!
- Christ said  
 that those  
 who see shall  
 be blind.
- “ffor crist seyde soo, whan he the gospel sew: 1380  
 ‘Thei that see,’ he seyth, ‘shul be ful blynde,  
 And thei þat neuere of my vertu knew,  
 fful truly wil thei ha me<sup>1</sup> in her mynde.’ <sup>1 MS. haue</sup>  
 But pulle we the frute oute of the rynde, 1384  
 To telle *you* platly what þis sentens is:  
 The seeynge men be-tokene *you*, I-wis, 1386  
 “ffor *ye* can see alle thyng þat to nature 1387  
 Perteyneth, be craft whiche ye of bookis haue:  
 But *youre* saluacion, that I *you* ensure,  
 Considere *ye* nought, ne how *ye* may be saue.  
 Yowre blasynge sciens maket[h]<sup>1</sup> *you* soo to raue 1391  
 That endeles truthe can *ye* neuere-more fynde; <sup>1 r. make?  
 Ar. 168 make  
 Ar. 20 makis</sup>  
 This same errour is þat maketh *you* blynde.  
 “But in his name whom I now rehers, 1394  
 I shal be strong alle materis to conclude;  
 There shal no man haue myght me to reuers,  
 Though *ye* brynge a grettere multitude. <sup>1 MS. gyse, on eras.</sup>  
 he can make wittis that been ful dul and rude, 1398  
 To shyne wyth scyens on the freshest [w]yse,<sup>1</sup>  
 My lord ihesu, and fooles ofte maketh he wyse.” 1400

Bk. IV. Ch. 21.

## Ca. 21m.

- Whan this mayde<sup>1</sup> of this fair processe <sup>1 r. mayden</sup>  
 had made an ende, there stod vp tho a man)  
 Of fers corage, though<sup>1</sup> it were wodnesse— <sup>1 Ar. 20 os þowe</sup>  
 Maister astenes, soo thei called hym than);  
 ffor very anger of colour was he wan); 1405  
 with cryenge voys he filled tho the place,  
 Thus spak he than): “allas, what is oure grace? 1407
- Master  
 Astenes
- speaks  
 angrily:

1377 who . tumbyll . wafe 1379 *ye* inst. of away . hyllyd 1380  
 seew 1381 schall . ful om. 1383 hafe me 1388 hafe 1389 sau-  
 cyon 1390 who . safe 1391 make . rafe 1398 be 1399 wyse  
 1400 he make 1402 a hende

“Ye of rome, lordes and cites[e]ines alle,	1408	<i>Bk. IV. Ch. 21.</i>
3e blood ryal, ye men of nobelnesse,		“Men of royal blood,
What cause shul men) haue, you to calle		
Wysemen) endued with sobyrnesse ?		
If wysdam were wyt <sup>h</sup> 3ow, than wolde I gesse	1412	
3e shulde not suffren pis cristen foolk <sup>1</sup> here	<sup>1</sup> r. folkis	why do you let Christians abuse your Gods ?
Repreue oure goddis with swiche veniable manere.	1414	
“ffor we were called be oure emperour,	1415	
ffader and kepere ful gracyous of this lond,		
To conuicte, he seyde, here a newe errour.		
Whiche is not newe, 3e may weel vndirstond ;		
Many of hem haue I brent with brond	1419	I have burnt many of these Christians.
Of these cristen, right for this entent,		
That thei calle feith, we calle delirament.	1421	
“Oure goddis may seyn that we been) on-keende,	1422	
ffor alle the benefetes that thei to vs sende		
We to suffre the 3ongthe <sup>1</sup> of woman-[k]eende <sup>2</sup>	<sup>1</sup> Ar. 3ynkith <sup>2</sup> corr.: leende	
Thus openly crist for to commende		
And al his treson) with colouris to defende,	1426	
Oure goddis eke deuceles for to calle—		
This suffre we, and that is werst of alle.	1428	
“Wherefore, sir kyng, be war of hir offens,	1429	
Suffre no[w] <sup>1</sup> this lady [no] lengere [for] to spoke ;	<sup>1</sup> MS. no3t	Stop this Katharine,
These lewde foolkis that listen with grete silens,		
With apparent resons she shal soone I-cheke,		
That fro her feith she shal soone hem breke—	1433	or she'll per- vert our folk
Thei come neuere hom), though) we wolde hem drawe.		
To suffre swiche prechouris it is agayn) oure lawe.	1435	
“We cam now heder to heere som nouelte,	1436	
And she be-gynneth with Ihesu of Nazareth !		with her Jesus of Nazareth.
Cryst thei calle hym, and prophete of galyle,		
She calleth hym lord of wynd and of breth,		
Of erthe, of watyr, of lond[e] and of heth.	1440	

1408 ceteseyns 1411 endewyd 1413 suffyre pese 1422 sey. be .  
onkynde 1424 3yngth . woman-kynde 1430 now . no lengere for  
to 1431 lewyd folk 1435 suffyre 1437 of om. 1440 erde . londe



<i>Bk. IV. Ch. 21.</i>	This olde errorr knowe we weel I-nough, <sup>1</sup>	<sup>1</sup> r. enow
	I haue my-selue conuicted many of yow,	1442
How could Christ's mother be a maid?	“Of [3]oure secte I mene. how may 3e for shame Reherse of Ihesu that grete doubelnesse? Some men seynd that he had a dame Whiche was a mayde, in very soothfastnesse, After the tyme that she had suffred distresse	1443 1447
It is a lie.	Of childe-birthe—this knowe alle men) a lye, This leude doctryne is no3t wurth a flye.	1449
	“Ye magnyfie hym for this cause also : 3e seye he roos fro deeth to lyue ageyn).	1450
As to His rising from death,	But of his discyples in sekernesse weere there too Whiche wente to the graue, as I herde Iues seynd :	
2 of His dis- ciples only stole His body.”	Thei stoole the body ful preuyly in a reyn), And thanne seyde thei, her maister was I-go Be very myracle, and thus seyde many moo.”	1454 1456

*Bk. IV. Ch. 22.*Ca<sup>m</sup>. 22<sup>m</sup>.

	<b>O</b> N-to these wordes, on-to this blasphem <sup>e</sup> <sup>1</sup> <i>al. om.</i>	1457
Katharine says	She <sup>1</sup> answerde, þe mayde, with moost goodly chere, She seyde thus : “at my lord of heuene Tooke I be-gynnyng <sup>e</sup> <sup>1</sup> of mynd conflicte heere : <sup>1</sup> <i>MS. my beg.</i> A makere is there withouten ony dwere <sup>2</sup> <i>overlined; r. or</i> Ouere al thys world, whiche was er <sup>2</sup> it be-gan).	1459
Jupiter	ffor, as I haue proued, Iubiter was but a man,	1463
and Saturn were but men.	“No more was saturne, whiche was fadir his. <sup>1</sup> Thanne sith thei were men) and took her begynnyng <sup>e</sup> , Than muste we ferther procede, I-wis, <sup>1</sup> <i>al. his fadir is</i> To seeke hym whiche be-forn this þinge Was euere in heuene eternal <sup>1</sup> regnyng <sup>e</sup> . <sup>1</sup> r. eternally? <i>al. eterne</i> This same is god of whom now I preche, Ageyn alle synnes moost souereyn) noted leche ;	1464 1467 1470

1441 elde . enow 1442 conuicte 1443 3our . who 1449 lewyd .  
not worth 1451 lyffe 1453 iewys 1458 She om. 1460 my om.  
my 1462 or 1464 hys fadyr is 1466 procede now 1467 befor  
1468 eterne

“Spryng of aH þingē þat euere be-gynnyng hadde 1471 *Bk. IV. Ch. 22.*  
 Soo is he called ; in whom alle þing is eke,  
 Of whom aH good þing, and no thyng badde,  
 Proceedeth, truly,<sup>1</sup> bothe be day and be weke, <sup>1 at. newly</sup>  
 Be whom alle creatur<sup>is</sup>, be þei wylde or meke, 1475 the preseruer  
 Are conserued—at hym thus I began) ; of all  
 But if I dede, I were no wys woman). 1477 creatures.  
 “ Make no comparyson be-twyx þour god and myn) ! No heathen  
 ffor my god hath made<sup>1</sup> al þing of nought, <sup>1 h. m. on eras.</sup> god can be  
 Eke *your* godd<sup>is</sup> arn) not soo goode as swyn)— 1480 compared to  
 Thei can) nozt grunten) whan) hem eyleth ought. Him.  
 As fer as ye in this mater haue I sought, 1482  
 I fond noo truthe : therfore fro þou I fledde ;  
 In truere weyes ful seker am I ledde.” 1484  
 This man) was tho of these resons grete 1485  
 Soo troubled, he qwok be-twyxe ire and drede.  
 Iete other men) now in this mater trete,  
 ffor he hath doon), he hath sowe his seede—  
 A seker help whan) ther cometh grete neede ! 1489  
 But god wulde haue hym) turned in this manere—  
 his merueilous menes shul we neuere lere. 1491  
 Astenes is  
 silenst and  
 angry.

Ca<sup>m</sup>. 23<sup>m</sup>.

*Bk. IV. Ch. 23*

Another clerk stood vp tho in haste, 1492 Another  
 On-to the mayden) he made swiche euidens : Philosopher  
 “ Alle yowre word<sup>is</sup> haue ye not spent in waste,  
 I vndirstonde ful weel þowre grete eloquens.  
 Ageyn oure godd<sup>is</sup> þe maken) this defens : 1496  
 Ye sey, her ymages whiche we worship heere  
 May nozt feele ne haue noon) powere. 1498  
 “ This wote I weel, thei ben) but figures, 1499  
 Representyngē other-maner thyng,  
 Liche to these fayre riche sepultures  
 only re-  
 present

1474 newly 1479 nowte 1480 are 1481 not grunten . ayleth  
 owte 1482 sowte 1483 fiede 1484 trewer . lede 1485 resones  
 1493 mayde 1495 undyrstand 1496 make 1498 not . hafe . no  
 1499 be

	<i>Bk. IV. Ch. 23.</i>	Whiche be-tokene in her representyng That there is beryed duke or ellis kyng—	1503
the Gods themselves,		Soo arn these [ymages] <sup>1</sup> tooknes of goddis oure. <sup>1</sup> MS. thyngis To whom we 3eue with herte grete honore,	1505
		“Not for her cause, but for signifycacion) Of the worthy whom thei represent. Therefore I answeere to 3oure replicacion), Seruyng somewhat now 3oure entent :	1506
and are but set up to stir men to devotion.		Thei þat made hem, neuere otherwyse ment To sette hem up, but for this cause oonly, That to hyere deuocion men shuld goo therby.”	1510 1512

*Bk. IV. Ch. 24.*Ca<sup>m</sup>. 24<sup>m</sup>.Katharine  
denounces

**T**hanne seyde the mayden: “I wold 3e shulde now shewe  
of alle these goddis whiche þat wurthiest bee. 1514  
ffor as thei stonde in 3oure temple on rewe,  
I can perceyuen in hem noo dyuynyte 1516  
More in oon than other.<sup>1</sup> for 3our saturne, [parde],<sup>2</sup>  
Whil that he leued was a fals traytour,  
homicide cruel, debater and robbour. 1519

Saturn as a  
man-killer,<sup>1</sup> MS. in an other.  
<sup>2</sup> corr.: hardilehis wife as  
a chider;

“his wyf was woman ny of the same vice, 1520  
Vengeable, dispitous, a<sup>1</sup> chidere euery tyde, <sup>1</sup> *al. om.*  
Of hir condicion onstable, and ful nyce—  
There myght no man wyth hir no while abyde ;  
hir owne children kylled she be hir syde. 1524

Jupiter as

Iubiter was gelt of his fadir saturne eke,  
Banyshed his lond, his herberghe gan he seke. 1526

incestuous,  
and a  
banisher of  
his Father.

“his owne suster Iubiter defouled tho, 1527  
his fadir after banyshed he oute of londe—  
These arn the dedes of youre goddis, loo !  
how may 3oure lawe eternally thus stonde  
Whan it is biled on soo brethel bonde ? 1531

1503 byryed 1504 are . ymages 1513 no new chapt. mayde  
1515 stande . o rewe 1516 perceyue 1517 in an om. parde 1518  
lyued 1520 a woman . þat 1521 a om. 1526 Banychide . her-  
borow 1527 systere 1529 are 1530 who 1531 bylyd . brythyll

Pluto was rauyshere of maydenes ful violent,		<i>Bk. IV, Ch. 24.</i>
Venus was lecherous and also vynolent,	1533	Pluto, Venus,
“ Vulcane was cruel and 3et was he cokhold—	1534	Vulcan,
how shulde swiche personys to ony godhed proue?		
Some arn 3onge, some of hem arn old.		
Cupyde enereseth in men that onclene loue—		Cupid,
These grete velanyes can 3e neuere shoue. <sup>1</sup> <sup>1</sup> <i>al. fro hem shoue.</i>		
Of wytheecraft noted was 3oure god Mercurie,		Mercury,
Maister of charmes and of swiche so[r]cerye.	1540	
“ Youre god appollo, whan he was drunken of wyn,		Apollo,
Thanne wulde he iangel in maner of prophecie,		
iful sotil lesyng's wolde he tho dnyyne		
To hem that knewe not his tretcherye,		
Somtyme soothsawed, somtyme dede he lyc.	1545	
These are 3oure goddys wiche þat ye honoure!		heathen Gods, were all vicious.
Alle to vices set was her labour.	1547	
“ 3oure offerynges eke, thei be abhomynable :	1548	Offerings to them abominable.
To some goddes offre 3e swynnes dunge ;		
There cometh no mete be-fore you at the table		
Til 3our god hath away the tunge.		
If al 3oure harlotrye thus openly were I-runge,	1552	
It wolde shame 3ow. therefore 3e þat ben wyse,		
file this foly, drede the hye Iustise !”	1554	
The stood the man afrayed as oute of mynde,	1555	The second Philosopher is silent, and con- verted.
he coude no3t speke to hir oon woord moo.		
Oure blissed lord his herte gan tho bynde		
On-to his seruyse—therfore lete hym goo,		
Sitte and reste as for that tyme with wo !	1559	
Thus shul thei stynte whan god wil sey pees ;		
Of alle wysdam he can <sup>1</sup> soone relees. <sup>2</sup> <sup>1</sup> <i>MS. gau</i> <sup>2</sup> <i>al. make relees.</i>		

1534 Wulcane 1535 who 1536 are 1538 vylonyes . neuyr fro  
hem 1541 drunk 1542 wold . iangyll 1544 tresceyre 1549  
offyr . swynys 1550 comth 1553 be 1556 o 1561 can . make  
relees

Bk. IV. Ch. 25.Ca<sup>m</sup>. 25<sup>m.1</sup><sup>1</sup> = Rawl. 24<sup>m</sup>.A third  
Philosopher  
explains

**A**nother clerk thought deppere to procede, 1562  
 he stood vp tho, and this was his sentens :

“Of oure godd<sup>is</sup> ze shewe the shameful dede,  
 No-thing speke ze of her good prouydens.

We haue in this mater ful mysty intelligens, 1566

Whiche may nozt be comou to euery man ;

to Katharine But to you, lady, soo now as I can), 1568

“Wil I þat comon, right for this entent, 1569

Be-cause youre-selue of wit sotil bee,

And for these lordes eke þat be present—

These same motiues at this tyme meuc<sup>1</sup> me. <sup>1</sup> MS. meueth 1573

ffor I wil telle now the moste preuy secrec

Whiche þat we haue in oure philosophie

Touchynge the godd<sup>is</sup> and her progenye. 1575

that Saturn is  
Tims,

“Saturne, þe firste whom ye soo dispreue, 1576

hym take we for tyme, be-cause he is oold,

And tyme, [parde]<sup>1</sup>, after oure beleue <sup>1</sup> MS. weteth weel ze

As for a god among<sup>is</sup> us is hoolde.

Jupiter, Fire, Iubiter the kyng, as the truthe is toolde, 1580

he is take for fyre,<sup>1</sup> and [Iuno] eke, his wyf, <sup>1</sup> MS. the f.

Juno, Air. She is take for eyr that vs zeueth lyf. 1582

These Gods  
are an  
Allegory

“Thus are oure godd<sup>is</sup> in maner of Allegorye, 1583

Resemble to natures whiche that be eterne.

Than is oure feyth grounded on noo lye,

of things  
eternal.

But on swliche thyng whiche is sempiterno.

Myn owne lady, ye soughte nozt weel this herne, 1587

Whan ze blasphemed oure godd<sup>is</sup> alle on rowe.

I telle you this ; I wolde alle men it knowe.” 1589

Bk. IV. Ch. 26.Ca<sup>m</sup>. 26<sup>m</sup>.Katharine  
says

**T**he lady answerde with sad auisement, 1590  
 She seyde she knewe his circumlocucion),

1562 þouth 1566 hafe 1567 not . comyne 1569 comowne 1572  
 meue 1578 parde 1579 now is 1581 the om. and Iuno . wyffe  
 1582 lyffe 1587 sowt not 1588 o rowe 1590 no new chapt.

**MS. Arundel.] Katharine ridicules the Planets being Men. 313**

The kyng of Thebes a book had <sup>1</sup> hir sent	<sup>1</sup> MS. hir had	<i>Bk. IV. Ch. 26.</i>
In whiche she fonde swiche exposicion ;		she has seen this explanation before.
But she halt it now but for abvsyon.	1594	
Yet these resons whiche the man had shewed,		
Be very reson she wil proue hem lewed.	1596	
ffor at this tale whiche this man had told	1597	
Gladlyng <sup>1</sup> the emperour, tremelyng euene for ioye,		The Emperor
To speke than was he waxe ful bold ;	<sup>1</sup> at. Gladed	
“ Clerke,” he seyde, “ saturne keepe the fro noye !		
I troste this lady wil now bere hir <sup>1</sup> more coye.	1601	
What sey ze, mayde ? where is zoure answer ?		challenges Katharine to answer.
If ze can ought, lete us now it lere !”	<sup>1</sup> at. bere hir now	1603
The mayde seyde tho on-to that maister soone :	1604	
“ Zoure shameful doctryne wolde ze ful fayn hyde		
With figures and colouris, as ze are wont to doone ;		
But ze muste leyn these exposicions asyde.		
Arn not these planetes knowen wonder wyde ?	1608	She asks, How can the Planets,
May we <sup>1</sup> not seen hem whan thei shyne soo clere ?	<sup>1</sup> MS. ze	
The sonne, the mone, whiche shyne <sup>1</sup> on vs here,	<sup>1</sup> r. shyne	Sun and Moon,
“ This wote we weel that these been noo men).	1611	be men ?
Why arn thei grauen thus of stoon and of tree ?		
This errour is ful esy for to keen		
That men arn thei nozt, ne neuere-[more] shal bee.		They are not.
In these fyguris thanne ful foule erre zee ;	1615	Their images are shams.
Ye wurshep the shadwe and leue the substauns,		
here is in zow a ful grete varyauns.	1617	
“ Eke the planetes whiche shyne thus aboue,	1618	The Planets can't be proved eternal.
Though thei shul stonden euere and be eterne,		
Yet can ze not with zoure bookys proue		
That þei haue euere be-fore be sempiterne.		
If philosophie were looked in his preuy herne,	1622	

1592 had hir 1595 resones 1598 gladed 1601 bere hyre now .  
koye 1604 tho om. þe 1606 fygure . coloure . wone 1607 ley  
1608 Are . knowynz 1609 we . se 1610 sune . on-to 1611 þei be  
1612 are . graue 1613 ken 1614 are . neuer more 1616 schadow  
1619 schuld stand 1621 hafz 1622 phylophye

<i>Bk. IV. Ch. 26.</i>	Ye shulde fynde pere þat planetis alle ben) made.	
The Planets	What wil 3e ferthere in this mater wade ?	1624
are made by their Creator, God.	“ If thei be made, than) arn) þei creatures, And he that made hem), [he] is god allone. ley hem in water, alle youre mysty figures, ffor no3t arn) thei, neither þe stok ne the stooene.	1625
Pray to Him!	On-to that hye god loke 3e make <i>your</i> moone, Prey hym to sende 3ou of errorr repentauns ! Thanne haue 3e of treuthe the very assurauns.”	1629 1631
<i>Bk. IV. Ch. 27.</i>	<b>Cam. 27<sup>m.1</sup></b>	<sup>1</sup> = Rawl. 25 <sup>m.</sup>
The Philosophers marvel at Katharine.	<b>T</b> he philosophres merueyled of this answere, Of hir wit and of hir eloquens ; Thei that now in presens arn) there herde neuere be-fore swiche-maner sentens. She can) alle thyng of very experiens.	1632 1636
One Master	A maister stod vp and spak tho to hem alle : “ I wolde a supposed,” he seyð, “ þat the heuene shuld falle,	
exhorts the others to	“ Rather than woman swiche sciens shulde attame. lete vs leue, felawes, now oure olde scole, Yeue attendauns at þis tyme to this dame ! ffor in þis word <sup>1</sup> in cunnyng stant she soole. <sup>1</sup> = world Alle oure lernynge wil turne vs to doole But if we folwe, as meche as we may, To lerne the trewth the whiche shal lasten) ay.	1639 1643 1645
learn the Truth from Katharine.	“ Therefore lete vs lerne now of þis mayde What þat god is whiche made thus alle þing. With this mater haue I ben ofte dismayde, ffor I coude neuere with natu[r]al arguyng Diuyne so ferre, and euere oure stodyng hath ben therto ful directe, as me semeth.	1646 1650
He believes her doctrine.	I wil beleue now as þis lady demeth.”	1652

1623 be 1625 are 1626 he is 1628 nowt are . the om. 1631  
hafe 1634 are 1640 elde 1641 entendauns 1642 worlde . stand  
1645 lestyne 1648 hafe . be 1650 stodyng 1651 be

Thus is consented now alle þe companye ; 1653 *Bk. IV. Ch. 27.*  
 Thei wil lere of hir, þei sey plat and pleynd,  
 ffor it is aboute al her phylosophie,  
 What lord he is þat made the wynd and reyn).  
 That there is swiche on), can thei weel [I]-seynd), 1657  
 But what he is, or what is his name,  
 This desire thei to lerne now of this dame. 1659

The mayde eke was as glad as thei, 1660  
 To enforme hem in this same matere ;  
 On-to these men) ful sadly gan she sey :  
 “Sith that 3e take the foorme now of scolere, She says  
 Ye arn) the rediere these mysteries for to lere. 1664  
 But we wil leue this godhed for a tyme,  
 And of the manhod a while wil we<sup>1</sup> ryme. <sup>1</sup> MS. we wil 1666

“ Ye shal knowe first, þat oo god is in heuene, 1667 One God is  
 Distynct in persones, as we beleue,<sup>1</sup> thre, <sup>1</sup> r. beleuen in 3 persons.  
 ffadir and sone and holygoost ful euene :  
 These same persones oonly oo god [be].<sup>1</sup> <sup>1</sup> MS. arn hee.  
 Oure auctouris seynd) that if god had bee 1671  
 Oonly oo persone, than) shulde not his hooly blys  
 Be comound to other soo parfytly as it is, 1673

“ ffor creature noon) myght receyue [no]<sup>1</sup> swiche ; 1674  
 Therfore he ordeyned be his eterne counsyle <sup>1</sup> MS. corr.: ony  
 That thre persones in myght and nature lich These 3 form  
 In oo godhed—to vs ful gret meruayle— <sup>1</sup> MS. considered 1 Godhead.  
 Shuld be con[fe]dered<sup>1</sup> to mannes grete avayle, 1678  
 And iche of other his substauns shulde thus take,  
 Noon lesse, noon more—thus oure feith we make 1680

“ Of [þe] thre persones the secunde, whiche is the sone, The Second  
 Cam doun) to erthe, here he took [mankynde],<sup>1</sup> took man's  
 ffor man had lost al þat euere was done <sup>1</sup> MS. corr.: mannes keende nature,  
 Whan he [to]<sup>2</sup> god was falle [so vnkynde]<sup>3</sup> <sup>2</sup> MS. fro to redeem  
<sup>3</sup> MS. to the feende man.

1657 I-seyne 1664 are 1666 wyll we 1670 be 1671 sey 1674  
 no sweche 1678 confederyd 1679 eche 1681 þe thre . qweche .  
 sune 1682 erde . mankynde 1684 to god . fall so vnkynde



Bk. IV. Ch. 28. he brak þe precepte with whiche he ganð hem b[y]nde<sup>1</sup>  
 A-mongis the trees in the place of delice, <sup>1 MS. beende</sup>  
 Whiche þat we clepe in bookis paradise. 1687

Christ came  
 to unite God  
 and man. “And for there was no man able in erthe ther-too 1688  
 To make vnyte be-twix god and man),  
 This was the cause that þat lord dede soo.

He was born  
 of a Virgin,  
 and died for  
 us. he light to erthe and in a 3ong woman),  
 A clene mayde[n], flesh and blood he nam); 1692  
 There-in he deyed to slee oure synnes alle.  
 This is the god on whom we cristen calle.” 1694

Bk. IV. Ch. 28.

Cam. 28<sup>m.1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> = Rawl. 26<sup>m.</sup>

The chief  
 Philosopher

**T**he maister princypal, whiche the woordys hadde 1695  
 ffor hem alle at that same day and tyme,  
 Of hir doctryne was ful Ioyeful and gladdre ;  
 ffor god had poynted in hym a newe pryme,  
 Oure lord ihesu had purged hym of his cryme, 1699  
 Made hym disposed to his conuersion).  
 But he merueyleth soore of this informacion). 1701

asks how the

he scyde to the lady in ful faire manere : 1702

“Oo thyng there is heere in youre techyng  
 Whiche I can nozt conceyue it zet ful clere :

natures of  
 God and Man  
 can join in  
 1 person.

ffor god and man) in her coupelyng  
 Been ful diuers, and zet sey ze this thyng 1706  
 That bothe natures ben) ioyned in oo persone ;  
 There was neuere swiche but if it be he alloue. 1708

God is  
 eternal,  
 man is  
 mortal.

“ffor if he be god, than) muste he be eterne ; 1709  
 If he be man), þan) is he corruptible.

[A]<sup>1</sup> nature [or]<sup>2</sup> persone whiche is sempiternre,  
 To sey of it that it is passyble, <sup>1 MS. corr.: Of</sup> <sup>2 MS. a</sup>  
 Semeth to me a ful gret insolible. 1713  
 This is the mocyon), lady, ze muste declare,  
 ffor in þis mater oure wittis been) ful bare.” 1715

1685 bynde 1692 maydyne . of flesche 1693 deyed 1698 hath  
 1701 meruelyth 1706 Be 1707 be 1711 A n. or p. 1715 be . but

Ca<sup>m</sup>. 29<sup>m</sup>.

Bk. IV. Ch. 29.

- Thus to this moeyon) answerde tho þe mayde : 1716 Katharine  
 “Ye muste conceyue,” she seyde, “in 3oure mynde says  
 That these too natures in oure lord ihesu were layde  
 And coupled to-geder ageyn) vsed kynde.  
 Thus we of hym in solenne bookis fynde ; 1720  
 But the very proue of his werkis grete  
 Is right I-now this mater for to trete. 1722  
 “ffor he þat reysed lazarus fro the graue 1723 that Christ’s  
 Where he had loyn foure dayes euene, raising  
 he that petir in the see dede saue Lazarus,  
 And walked there as men) doon on a grene, making Peter  
 he þat commaunded the wynd þat was soo kene 1727 walk on the  
 That it shulde cese and blowe noo more þat tyde, sea,  
 he þat so merueylously on-to heuene gan) glyde 1729 and His  
 “Body and al : he was more þan) man), bodily ascen-  
 ffor be his godhed wrought he this meruayles. sion into  
 Moche more þing now reherce I can), heaven, .  
 But I passe ouere, 3euyng to 3our assayles prove His  
 Tyme and space. I prey god þat 3our entrayles 1734 Godhead :  
 he endewe with grace, that 3e may knowe the truthe—  
 Of 3our damnacyon haue I ful grete ruthe. 1736  
 “But alle these werkes whiche were soo grete 1737  
 Shewe be reson) that more than man) was hee.  
 Whan he the Lewes mette right in þe streete,  
 There shewed he thanne his diuynyte :  
 Thei durste nozt looke, but fel down) at his kne. 1741 that He was  
 There myghte noo creature be reson) doo these werkys, more than  
 But he were god—thus proue oure clerkys. 1743 man,  
 “And that he ete his mete, slepe and wente, 1744 though also  
 Spak and drank, rested, and very was eke, man.  
 This scrueeth ful pleyuly to youre argument

1716 no new chapter 1722 enow 1723 lazare 1724 loy fourti (!)  
 1726 do 1728 he 1730 a man 1731 wrowt. þese 1732 meche  
 1734 pase 1735 treuth 1736 reuth 1741 not

<u>Bk. IV. Ch. 29.</u>	In whiche 3e gan ful sotylly for to seeke. 3owre answeare haue 3e, if it may 3ow leke :	1748
Christ's 2 natures workt diversely here.	That these too natures whiche in hym were, Diuers werkyngis had, whil he was heere.	1750
	“Yet of [3]oure auctoris may we take witesse.	1751
Even the heathen Sybil said that God should be hangd like a thief:	Sibille seyde merueylously in pis matere : That holy god, she seyde, euere be in blesse Whiche shal <sup>1</sup> be hangd liche a thef heere	<sup>1</sup> MS. shulde
	Right on a tree, and after leyd on beere.	1755
	What wil 3e more ? what shulde I to 3ou say ? On-to this auctrix 3e may neuere seye nay.	1757
and her authority is unquestion- able.	“ffor as an auctour a[d]mitted in 3oure lawe Is she receyued, and pleyndly to oure feyth Bereth she wytnesse in hir mysty sawe, ffor these too natures in oure lord she leyth :	1758
	God, he his fullyssed, as she seyth,	1762
	And manhod <sup>1</sup> it is that heyng vp-on the tree.	<sup>1</sup> MS. mandhode
	Oute of 3owre lawe cometh this auctoryte.”	1764
<u>Bk. IV. Ch. 30.</u>	<b>Ca<sup>m</sup>. 30<sup>m</sup>. 1</b>	<sup>1</sup> = Rawl. 27 <sup>m</sup> .
Another Philosopher	<b>A</b> Nother maister, euene ful of eloquens, Of curtesye eke, and a ful seemly man), Spak to this lady with ful grete reuerens ; he seyde hir [wytt] <sup>1</sup> be-fore her wyttys ran)	1765 <sup>1</sup> MS. wordis
	Soo grete a paas it can) not be ouer-tan) ;	1769
asks Katha- rine	But 3et he preyed hir that he myght seye, In his <sup>1</sup> arguyng ful naturally he <sup>2</sup> took the weye.	<sup>1</sup> r. hir ? <sup>2</sup> r. sche ? 1771
to prove her doctrine by Nature.	“ffor nature,” he seyde, “be swiche influens Was soo confermed that it myght not faile ; Euery thyng therfore that maketh resistens Ageyn) nature, ful soone wil it quayle ; With-oute nature may no thyng auayle.”	1772 1776

1751 3our 1754 schallbe hankynd leche 1758 admittede 1762  
is . byssyd 1763 hyng 1768 wytt inst. of wordis 1776 wyth-  
outyn

Wherefore he wolde, swiche thyng as she shal preche,		<i>Bk. IV. Ch. 30.</i>
Be natural resons hir thyngis shulde she teche.	1778	
“ ffor hard it is to constreyne a mannes wil	1779	Proof is necessary for belief.
To trowe a þing whiche he can) not proue.		
hoo shal beleue good thyngis or ellis il, <sup>1</sup>	<sup>1</sup> orig. ille	
That same beleue muste come of very loue	1782	
And very trost whiche is on-to his be-houe.” <sup>1</sup>	<sup>1</sup> az. houe	
Therefore this man) desyreth that naturally		Prove Christ's two natures, naturally.
hir conclusyons she proue now openly.	1785	

**Cam. 31m.**

*Bk. IV. Ch. 31.*

<b>S</b> he seyde, she wolde with good entent	1786	Katharine quotes the
Soo as hir wit <sup>1</sup> wolde serue hir for þis tyme, <sup>1</sup> MS. with		
And soo as god of his grace hath sent		
On-to hir knowleche at þat day to dyuyne,		
fful fayn wulde she this mayster to enclyne—	1790	
ffor she to crist cast hir hym to drawe,		
he shal no more troste now on is lawe.	1792	
This same exaample putte she to hym tho,	1793	analogy of man's body and soul.
Of body and soule whiche we bere aboute,		
how thei arn) <sup>1</sup> Ioyned in on þus, these too,	<sup>1</sup> MS. arn) thei	
And oon is hyd, the other is seen) with-oute.		
She seyde, “ to alle men) it is ful grete dowte	1797	
how þat the soule whiche þat [m]euere is		How does the Soul come to the Body?
Cam to the body, whan) he can) fro blys ;	1799	
“ What weye he cam, or ellis in what hour	1800	
Whan) to the body he can) it for to queke ;		
It is but foly to spende ony labour		It's folly to search into such hidden things.
Swiche preuy thyngis for to serge and seeke.		
þe may leue these thyngis, <sup>1</sup> if ye leeke, <sup>1</sup> r. this thyng	1804	
That soule and body arn) ioyned now in-feere		
In what persone þat þe see walken) heere ;	1806	

1778 resonis 1781 þing 1783 houe inst. of behoue 1786 no new chapt. 1787 wit 1790 wold she now. to om. 1792 his 1794 abouthe 1795 who . are 1796 his hyd. wyth-outh 1797 douthe 1798 who . meure 1802 oure l. 1804 þis þinge . like 1805 are 1806 walke

	<i>Bk. IV. Ch. 31.</i>	“ And if ye liste not to be-leue this thyng,	1807
	If then men know nothing	Ye may leue—but 3e shal it neuere I-knowe, The maner or <sup>1</sup> tyme of [pis] preuy werkyng, Youre scole therto is 3et ouer-lowe.	<sup>1</sup> MS. of
		Ye may weel booste of 3our connyng and blowe, But 3e shal faile whanne 3e come to the poynt ; Oure lord [god] hath hyd fro yow that ioynt.	1811 1813
	of their own souls and bodies,	“ Thanne, sith 3e may be no natural weye haue the knowleche of these creatures heere, how shulde we of 3ow now þat seye That 3e shulde knowe þing aboute ful clere?	1814 1817
	how can they know about Christ's being?	how shulde 3e knowe þe <sup>1</sup> lord þat hath powere Ouere alle thyng? how shulde ye to hym gesse, Whanne þat 3e may not knowe moche þing lesse?”	<sup>1</sup> <i>at. þat</i> 1820

*Bk. IV. Ch. 32.*Ca<sup>m</sup>. 32<sup>m</sup>. 1<sup>1</sup> = Rawl. 28<sup>m</sup>.

		<b>W</b> hanne this answer was youe thus to pis man,	1821
		Eche man be-syde þat stood tho aboute fful merueylously chaunge <sup>1</sup> thei be-gan). ffor thei þat cristen were, with-oute[n] doute, Whiche to the maumentis before-tyme dede loute,	<sup>1</sup> <i>r. chaungen</i> 1825
	The Christians who've bowd to idols,	Now wayle þei soore with ful grete repentauns, Demyng hem-self ful worthli grete penauns ;	1827
	repent and lament		
		Thei haue remembred her god moost of myght, And where that a woman preecheth him <sup>1</sup> constantly, There thei forsake hym ; “ this thyng gooth not right, That [þe] frelere kynde shal soo stab[y]ly Confesse oure feyth, where þat <sup>1</sup> more myghty helde her pees and dar speke ryght nought”— Of the cristen this was bothe cry and thought.	<sup>1</sup> MS. hem 1829 1831 <sup>1</sup> <i>r. þat þe</i> 1834
	at Katharine's last answer.		
		The other syde, tho that paynemes were, Thei sey hir resons and hir grete euydens Whiche stoynd the clerkis alle tho <sup>1</sup> ben there ;	1835 <sup>1</sup> <i>r. that</i>
	The Pagans see their Philosophers silenst.		

1809 or tyme of þ's 1813 lord god 1816 who 1817 ful om.  
1818 þat 1819 who 1820 moche 1821 Whan þat þis 1824 with-  
outen 1826 ful om. 1828 hir . myht 1829 hem om. 1830 no  
ryth 1831 þe freler . stablyly 1832 myty 1837 that be

This putte þe puple in conceytes [ful] suspens.		<i>Bk. IV. Ch. 32.</i>
ffor al her labour and al her grete expens	1839	
ffor thys þing her reward shal be woo.		
Grete murmur was there, and some be-gunne to goo.	1841	
Ouer al this þe emperour he his now wood,	1842	The Emperor
On-to the clerkis with ful angry face		
he cried, “ be armes, bones, and be blood,		abuses the
It was a shame and a soory grace		Philosophers
That soo fele clerkis gadered in a place	1846	
Shulde be astoynd sodeynly of a mayde ;”	<sup>1</sup> MS. cowardis	for being put down by
“ Coward <sup>1</sup> churles !” right thus to hem he seyde,	1848	Katharine.
“ Pluk vp ʒoure hertis, lete noʒt oure lawe thus falle,		
lete not oure goddys suffre thus this wrong !	1850	
But if ʒe doo, the moost part of yow shalle		Unless they
Er longe tyme be the nekke shul be hong.		answer her,
Speke, men, for shame ! the tyme is not long,	1853	he'll hang
It paseth faste and we doo no note ;		'em.
Me thenketh ye stoonde euene as men that dote.”	1855	

Ca<sup>m</sup>. 33<sup>m</sup>.1<sup>1</sup> MS. 32<sup>m</sup>. — Rawl. 29<sup>m</sup>.*Bk. IV. Ch. 33.*

<b>T</b> ho stood up with a newe motyf	1856	
A fressh clerk, mayster appollymas—		Appollymas
Soo aferd was he neuere in al his lyf		
Of no mater ne of no diuers cas		
Soo as of this mater now he fesed was ;	1860	
But thus seyde he þan softly to the mayde :		objects that
“ In ʒoure declaryng, lady, me thought ʒe sayde	1862	Katharine
“ Too sundry thyngis, if we considere weel ;	1863	
Contradiceyon ful soone in hem shal be founde.		
Youre lord ihesu, whiche is knowe ful weel,		said Jesus
As ʒe sey he made this world soo rounde,		made the
Adam and Eue he foormed fro the grounde,	1867	World,
And al other thyng whyche that hath substauns		Adam and
It was made, ʒe sey, be his ordynauns.	1869	Eve, &c.

1838 ful suspens 1846 soo om. 1848 coward 1849 not 1854  
passith 1855 stand 1857 apollinas 1868 hauc

- Bk. IV. Ch. 33. “Ageyn) 3ou now thus I wil replie, 1870  
 Prouynge on-treuthe in youre marred feyth.  
 I haue made rek[e]nyngge, whiche may not lye,  
 A-mong<sup>i</sup>s oure storyes, what<sup>1</sup> ony man) seyth : <sup>1 r. what so?</sup>  
 The berthe of ihesu ful truly oure book leyth, 1874  
 ffor he was bore<sup>1</sup> vnder octauyane <sup>1 r. boren</sup>  
 At lytel bethleem in a l[e]wde<sup>1</sup> lane ; <sup>1 MS. lowe</sup> 1876
- Whereas  
 Jesus was, in  
 fact, born
- “It is not 3et fully<sup>1</sup> thre hundret 3eere <sup>1 ut. not fully 3et</sup>  
 Sith þat 3oure ihesu of his modyr was<sup>2</sup> bore. 1: 78  
 how dar 3e thanne in swliche presens here  
 Afferne of thyng þat was soo longe before, <sup>2 ut. was of his modyr</sup>  
 That he this [worlde] shulde make or restore? 1881  
 how myghte he make thyng whyche thowsend<sup>i</sup>s fyue  
 had her duracyoon er than<sup>1</sup> he took lyue? <sup>1 ut. that</sup> 1883
- not 300 years  
 ago.
- How could  
 He then haue  
 made the  
 world?
- “This is my motyf, an<sup>1</sup> answeye I desyre <sup>1 MS. and</sup> 1884  
 In pleyn langage with-oute distynctyon).  
 This symple puple haue 3e set on fyre  
 Wyth youre crafty circumlocucion).  
 Answere in short to this conclusyon), 1888  
 Than) shal I sey that 3e be þat mayde  
 Swiche another no man) hath assayde.” 1890
- Let Katha-  
 rine answer  
 plainly.
- Bk. IV. Ch. 34. **Cam. 34<sup>m.1</sup>** <sup>1 MS. 33<sup>m</sup>.</sup>
- She says  
 Appollymas
- T**hus spak the lady on-to the clerk ageyn) : 1891  
 “Alle 3oure groundes, sere, in youre arguyng  
 haue take oo partye and, shortly for to sey),  
 lefte the other ; wherefore the concludyng  
 ffayleth ful foule now in 3our rekkenyng. 1895  
 his manhod counte 3e, and his birthe temporaH,  
 And not that birthe whiche is eternaH. 1897  
 “ ffor this temporal birthe, as 3e seyde late, 1898  
 Was now before us not many 3eeres goo—
- has thought  
 only of  
 Christ's tem-  
 poral birth,  
 not His  
 eternal.

1871 marethe 1873 stores 1875 borne 1876 bethlem . lewde  
 lane 1877 fully 3ete 1878 was of his m. 1879 who 1881 þis  
 worlde 1882 who . thousand<sup>i</sup>s 1883 er þat 1884 an 1888 a folio  
 is missing in the MS. to v. 1963.

- As to *comparison* of the largere date *Bk. IV. Ch. 31.*  
 It may be counted but for a 3eer or too.  
 But of this mater the mistery wil I on-doo, 1902 Katharine explains  
 ffor of this same haue 3e grete *meruay*H,  
 As me semeth right be 3oure assayH. 1904
- “ At the gynnyng first shul 3e vndirstande, 1905 that *Jesus* was *God* from eternity,  
 That god eternally hath cuere oure *ihesu* bee ;  
 Makere and shapere of aH thyng þat is leuande,  
 Thus is he called, and thus beleue we.  
 But now in<sup>1</sup> late dayes of his charite <sup>1 at. of</sup> 1909 but lately took man's nature, to redeem him.  
 he took oure keende to oure redempcyon),  
 In whyche keende he suffred his<sup>1</sup> passyon). <sup>1 at. om.</sup> 1911
- “ ffor the manhod was not able to doo this thyng, 1912  
 And the godhed myght not suffre swiche disese ;  
 Wherefore of these too he made a coupelyng,  
 The faderes offens thus for to plesse,<sup>1</sup> <sup>1 r. pese?</sup> 1916 He coupled His Divine Nature with human.  
 The deuceles power thus for to fese.  
 In godhed and manhed he took this batayH,  
 ffor manhed alone myght not awayH. 1918
- “ Thus, for his godhed hath be eternally, 1919  
 Therefore sey we that he made al thyng  
 Thurgh power of the same, and eke þat body  
 Whiche was conceyued of a mayde[n] yinge ;  
 That same body on the crosse hyng, 1923 The body born at Bethlehem hung on the cross.  
 That same body at bethleem was bore— 1925 The Godhead was eternal.  
 ffor the godhed hath be eternally before.”
- Whan she had sayde this glorious vers, 1926  
 The man stood stoynd and marred in meende ;  
 Noon of hir woordes coude he reuers,  
 Thei passed of his lernyng al the keende ;  
 Resons ageyn hir coude he noon fynde, 1930  
 But thus seyde he tho openly with cry :  
 “ As 3e beleue, lady, soo beleue I.” 1932 Her opponent believes in Christ.



*Bk. IV. Ch. 35.*Ca. 35<sup>m.1</sup>1 MS. 31<sup>m.</sup>Another  
Philosopher  
asks why

A Nother mayster made hir thys motyf : 1933  
 “ 3e preche of crist,” he seith, “ and of his dede,  
 how he for man thus freely lost his lyf  
 ffor to brynge hym to þat heueneley mede ;  
 his deth, 3e sey, away tho gan lede 1937  
 Alle-maner synne, the power eke of helle  
 With his deth that lord gan than felle. 1939

Christ didn't  
send an Angel  
to fight the  
Devil,

“ Might not þat lord with his real power 1940  
 A maistred the deucl and putte hym soo to flyght?  
 Might he not a sente an aungel or a massager?

instead of  
doing it  
Himself?

What was the cause that he hym-self wolde fight,  
 Suffre swiche passyon and lese soo his right? 1944  
 If he was myghty, whi suffred he that wrong?  
 Answere my tale, for it is noȝt long. 1946

“ If he hym-selue myght not redresse þis thyng, 1947  
 Than was it foly to take[n] it on hande ;  
 And if he were, as 3e seye, soo myghty a kyng,  
 There myght no powere þan ageyn hym stande.  
 Yowre prophete seyde that he with ym wande 1951  
 Alle his enemyes shulde bothe bete and bynde.  
 In swiche sufferauce me thenketh he was blynde.” 1953

*Bk. IV. Ch. 36.*Cam. 36<sup>m.1</sup>1 MS. 35<sup>m.</sup>Katharine  
answers,

“ Youre motyf, sir,” seyde the noble queen, 1954  
 “ hath grete colour, but 3et I voyde it thus,  
 A[s]<sup>1</sup> I haue lerned in bookes that I haue seen. 1 MS. And  
 Oure lord crist, oure sauour Iesus,  
 list for to feyten with the deucl for vs 1958  
 And ouere-come hym in swiche keende as he took,  
 ffor the synne of Adam, if we wil look, 1960  
 “ Muste been redressed oonly be mankeende ; 1961  
 And be-cause ther were a-mongis men non able—  
 ffor in al erthe myght he than noon fynde

“ because  
Adam's sin  
had to be  
redrest by  
man.”

Man soo elene, soo parflight, soo profytable		<i>Bk. IV. Ch. 36.</i>
As Adam was whyl that he was stable	1965	As Adam
In blissed paradys er he dede offens,		
Therefore oure lord with his fleshly presens	1967	
" Took þis iornay and deyed on [a] tree,	1968	
That, euene as synne in the tree was doo,		sind by a tree,
Right soo on the tree deth suffred hee.		so Christ died on a tree.
It was conuenyent he shulde feyte soo :		
In tree <sup>1</sup> was ioye bore, and in the tree woo ; <sup>1</sup> <i>al. þe tre</i>	1972	
Woo be sathan, Ioye be oure lord Ihesu ;		
Oute of the tree a blissed frute grew."	1974	

Cam. 37m.1

<sup>1</sup> MS. 36m. = Rawl. 31m.*Bk. IV. Ch. 37.*

<b>T</b> here stood vp thanne with a [full] boold face	1975	
A grete clerk, thei called Alfragan ;		Alfragan objects
he thoughte to haue worship in þat place,		
his apposayle right thus he be-gan) :		
" Youre ihesu crist, he is bothe god and man),	1979	
As 3e seye, lady. but ley that a-syde,		
As for a space lete that mater abyde !	1981	
" Ye cristen putte euere in 3oure posycion)	1982	that though there is but one Christian God,
That there be noo moo godd'is but oon) ;		
But if youre owne booke come to reuoluc'ion),		
I trowe oo god shal not be founde there allow).		
I rede in a cristen) prophete not longe a-gon)—	1986	a Prophet says,
I wot not 3et veryly <sup>1</sup> what 3e hyn) calle—	<sup>1</sup> <i>al. not veryly 3et</i>	
Thus speketh he that 3e be godd'is alle.	1988	"Ye are all Gods."
" Whom mente he heere in this pluralite	1989	
But god, whiche 3e syngulere confesse ?		
Be-twyxe these too is noon) n[cut]ralite. <sup>1</sup>	<sup>1</sup> MS. naturalite	How can this be ?
But, be thei more godd'is or be thei lesse,		
Yourre owne book'is of hem bere wetenesse	1993	

1964 parfyth . profitthable 1966 or . 1968 on a . 1971 fyte  
 1972 þe tre . in 2 om. 1974 þat tre . 1975 w<sup>y</sup>th full hold 1980  
 o syde 1987 ueryly 3it 1991 no neutralite 1993 witnesse

<u>Bk. IV. Ch. 37.</u>	That many be there and moo than) oon). lete see what weye that 3e wil now good)!	1995
Christians say there is one God, with a son Jesus;	“Ye putte to vs here a grete god of heuene Whiche hath a sone, 3e sey hight Ihesu : And in 3owre bookis fynde we ful euene Of a-nother god, bothe iuste and true, Thei calle hym) baal—I trowe 3e hym knewe ; Thei hundret prophetes on-to his seruyse Were endued there, ful sad men and wise.	1996 2000 2002
yet their books speak of the god Baal.	“How may 3e sey thanne þat god is but on)? hough may 3e for-barre oure oppynyon)? If þat 3oure god be regnande thus allow), Why speke 3oure bookis of swiche dyuysyon)? Why may not Iubiter make his coniuncycon) With Iuno, his wif, syth there been) goddis fele? Youre resons, lady, awayle not a rake-stele.”	2003 2007 2009
This is con- tradictory.		

Bk. IV. Ch. 38.Ca<sup>m</sup>. 38<sup>m.1</sup>1 MS. 37<sup>m</sup>.Katharine  
says the  
Scriptures  
use figurative  
language.

“**Y**E muste conceyue, sir,” seyde the mayde, 2010  
 “That oure scripture in his mysti speche  
 hath many fygures if thei ben) asayde :  
 Oure lord god is somtyme called a leche,  
 Somtyme a Iustyse and ful of wreche, 2014  
 Somtyme a fadir al ful of loue ;  
 Swiche sondry predicates in hym wil) prone 1 MS. wil I

“The sondry effectes that in hym bee. 2017  
 Wherefore I telle you, sir, if 3e wil here,—  
 Of oure feyth a ful grete verite  
 Ye may consydere now, and 3e wil lere :  
 Goddis are there noon), ne [neuer]-more were, 2021  
 But on) allone whiche made erthe and heuene,  
 hayl, reyn, wynd, thounder and leuene, 2023

But there is  
only One God,  
the Creator of  
all things.

1997 sun . hith 2002 endewid 2003 who 2004 who 2008 be  
 2010 no new chapt. serē 2012 be 2016 sundry . I om. 2018 ser  
 2021 ne neuer more 2022 erde 2023 þundir

- “ And be nature he is god regnyng thus allone ; 2024 *Bk. IV. Ch. 38.*  
 But yet of his goodnesse he hath to hym chose This One God  
has chosen  
folk to dwell  
with Him.  
 Certeyn *per*sones to dwelle in his woone :  
 Tho calleth he goddis, as I suppose.  
 This þat I seye now, is noo fals glose, 2028  
 But folweth of the texte, if 3e take hed ; These, the  
Scripture  
calls Gods,  
 ffor there that ye now on this wyse gan) red 2030  
 “ I sey 3e be goddis, there folweth<sup>1</sup> thus <sup>1 r. it c.</sup> 2031  
 ‘ And sones of hym that sytteth hyst.’  
 This is a gret distynceyon, sir, amongis vs  
 Of nature and adopeyon, whiche is the best.  
 Adopeyon, we seye, is but as a gest, 2035  
 ffor he is chosen in right be fre with ;  
 B[ut] natural regnyng hath an hyer skiH.<sup>1</sup> <sup>1 MS. Be</sup> 2037  
 “ ffor who-so regneth naturally in ony place, 2038  
 he may not be putte oute but he haue wrong ;  
 And he þat chosen is, he cometh in be grace. <sup>1 MS. bryng</sup>  
 Myn answer wil I br[egge]<sup>1</sup> and make not longe ; 2041  
 ffor<sup>2</sup> catche now this conceyte and in 3our wit it fonge  
 That naturally god regneth al allone ; <sup>2 MS. ffor to</sup>  
 Whiche of his goodnesse hath called to his trone 2044  
 “ Certeyn folkys right of his good grace, 2045 The folk thus  
cald Gods  
are with God,  
see His face,  
and are Sons  
by adoption.  
 Whiche goddis we calle be-cause thei haue blis.  
 Thus are thei with hym euere and see his face,  
 Regne there in Ioye whiche may neuere mys ;  
 There arn) thei trected ryght as children) his. 2049  
 This is the entent of that auctoryte.—  
 A-nother thynge ofte allegge yee 2051  
 “ Of baal the god<sup>1</sup> and of his seruauentes alle ; 2052 As to Baal,  
the Scripture  
only says that  
false prophetes  
cald him God,  
 But noo-thing to purpos is<sup>1</sup> that 3e conclude. <sup>1 MS. if</sup>  
 Oure scripture reherseth thei dede hym) soo calle,  
 Tho same prophetes, of his simylytude.

2024 is he 2029 folowith 2036 chose in, rith 2037 But . a  
 2040 chosyn . comth 2041 bregge 2042 to om. 2049 are 2052  
 þat god ; prophete om. 2053 is

*Mk. IV. Ch. 38.* Recede better þat book of tho dyuynours rude, 2056  
 and that they  
 were clamd  
 for it. ffor there shal 3e fynde that thei damned were  
 ffor heer fals beleue, alle þat were there." 2058

*Bk. IV. Ch. 39.*

Cam. 39m.1

1 MS. 38m. = Rawl. 32m.

Alfagan  
 confesses that  
 Katharine

**T**he maister avysed hym) and than cryed loude: 2059  
 "Thys mayde wil ouere-leede us, sirs, we are caught

In oure artes, be we neuere so proude;

A newe maistresse sekerly haue we laught,

has beaten

Alle oure lemyng as now awayleth naught. 2063

him.

He gives up.

Therefore I sey, as for me, I 3eue it vp,

This lady hath drunken) of an hyer cup, 2065

"Of preuyere secretis<sup>1</sup> þan) euere we coude fynde; 2066

She passeth plato, she passeth philosophic,

1 r. serces

She speketh of hym) þat auctour is of kynde.

That she seyth, I wote weel is noo lye.

Wherefore of herte entierly thus I crye: 2070

He turns to  
 her Faith,

I can noo more, I wil turne to hyr feyth

And leue myn) olde, what<sup>1</sup> ony man) seyth. 1 Ar. 20 what so

"Ye shul doo soo eke be myn) consent. 2073

and acknow-  
 ledges One  
 God, and Him  
 alone.

ffor oo god I knowleche and noon) but hym) allone—

Though I seyde nowht, euere haue I soo ment.

lete vs submytte vs therefore to hys trone!

I am conuerted, I sey, for my persone, 2077

I shal neuere berke ageyn) that deyte.

In this mater, sirs, what sey 3eo?" 2079

All the others do  
 so too.

Thei cryed alle concoursly<sup>1</sup> with oo voys 1 MS. comoursly

That thei consenten) to his conclusyon),

Oo god confesse thei whiche þei calle noys;

What he commaundeth, of nede it muste be doon).

But 3et her conseytis wil thei vtter soon) 2084

Of other thyngis longynge to this crede.—

To telle the rumour, I trowe it is noo nede, 2086

2056 dyuynouris 2060 seris. caut 2062 laut 2063 naut 2065  
 drunke. a. cupp 2066 serces 2068 autor 2070 enterly 2072  
 elde 2073 my 2079 seres 2081 consent 2084 uttyr soune

Whiche in the puple is encesed this tyde.	2087	<i>Bk. IV. Ch. 39.</i>
"Allas!" þei sey, "what lif haue þei ledde,		The people rail at the Philosophers.
Oure grete clerkis whiche arn knowe soo wyde?		
It were as good thei had loyn <sup>1</sup> in bedde,	<sup>1 at. loy</sup>	
Whan thei teeche thyng whiche must be fledde,	2091	
Whiche thyng is holde but for vanyte."		
The lordes eke there after her degree	2093	The Lords
Disputed þis mater, and bete it up and doune;	2094	
"Noo god but oon?" þei seyde, "thanne what is <sup>1</sup> saturen?"		
Eche to other ful preuely thus dede rowne:	<sup>1 at. what is thanne</sup>	
"ffro these maumentis good is that we turne;		
lete vs despyse hem and with oure feet hem spurne,	2098	propose to spurn their idols.
ffor this falshed haue we folwed to longe"—	<sup>1 at. thanne there</sup>	
This was the noyse there thanne <sup>1</sup> hem amonge.	2100	
The emperour looketh, but I trowe he is wrooth;	2101	The Emperor is angry
"ffy on feynte harlottis that thus ren[c]yeth oure lawe!"		
Thus seyde he þanne, he thought his lyf ful looth;		
That ony mayden clerkis shulde thus drawe,		that a Maiden beats his wise men.
That she shuld be wysehere <sup>1</sup> in hir saughe,	<sup>1 = wysère</sup>	
This greueth hym sore. but 3et in his greuauns		
Stood vp a clerk whiche with his dalyauns	2107	
Seyde he wolde proue be reson naturall	2108	One Philosopher undertakes to prove Katharine's doctrine false.
That moche thyng touched was ful outrewe;		
Oo persone eterne an[d] eke mortall,	<sup>1 MS. is</sup>	
This doctryne, he seyde, [was] <sup>1</sup> come on [þe] <sup>2</sup> newe.		
But the same resons that other dede sewe	<sup>2 MS. on-to vs, on eras.</sup>	
Reherseth my[n] auctour, as he dooth ful ofte.		I leave that out,
I suffer tho leuys to ly[c]n stille ful softe,	2114	
lete other men here hem that loue nugacyon);	2115	
ffor other many materis must come on hande.		
I wil reherse first the grete disputaeyon		and pass over to Ariot's dispute.
In whiche that þis lady feythfully gan stande		

2088 hafe 2089 are 2090 loy 2092 for a 2094 beet 2095 what  
 is þan 2100 þan þere 2102 rencyth 2104 schul 2105 wysere.  
 sawe 2108 naturale 2109 mych 2110 & . mortale 2111 was  
 come on þe newe 2112 resones 2113 myn 2114 lye 2116 most

<i>Bk. IV. Ch. 39.</i>	With maister Aryot, thorgh-oute that lande	2119
	Most famous man) noysed in þat tyme;	
	Of þis mater wil we now ryme.	2121
<i>Bk. IV. Ch. 40.</i>	<b>Cam. 40<sup>m.1</sup></b>	<sup>1</sup> MS. 39 <sup>m.</sup> = Rawl. 33 <sup>m.</sup>
Aryot disputes with Katharine.	<b>T</b> his Aryot was chose be comon) assent	2122
	To dispute with hir, to looke if þat he may	
	Destroyen) hir feith and alle hir fundament;	
	On hym haue thei put now al this affray.	
	Now shal be seene hoo shal haue the day;	2126
	If he be conuyete, thei wil zelde hem alle,	
	If he be victour, than) wil the reuers falle—	2128
	ffor victour <sup>s</sup> be thei thanne be his conquest.	2129
	he stood vp ful solemnely with ful sober chere,	
	Commendynge the lady as he though[t] best;	
	Thanne seyde he to hir in this manere:	
	“Many thyng <sup>s</sup> haue ben) rehersed heere,	2133
	I herd aH, and zet I helde me in <sup>1</sup> pees.	<sup>1</sup> at. my
	But now is the mater soo sette, dovtetes,	2135
	“It is put in vs too al þis thyng to treete.	2136
	Oure lord god sende us good speede!	
If he converts her,	If it soo be-falle þat I, with argument <sup>s</sup> grete	
	Or ell <sup>s</sup> with auctoryte, þat I may 3ow leede	
	ffrom alle 3oure feyth and fro 3oure fekel crede,	2140
he wins.	Than) haue we wonne; and if that 3e lede me,	
	Thanne haue we doo, for victour <sup>1</sup> are 3e.”	<sup>1</sup> r. v. þan 2142
He first objects to Christ's two natures. But this we've before treated.	His first question), as I vnderstande,	2143
	Was of too natures whiche we in cryst reede;	
	Whiche mater be-forn) hath ben) in haunde,	<sup>1</sup> MS. it is; it overl.
	And for that cause me thenketh it <sup>1</sup> noo neede	
	With swiche prolixite oure book ferthere to leede.	2147
	Turne, and rede 3e that [wyll] <sup>1</sup> it renewe.	<sup>1</sup> MS. and
	An other mater this philosophre gan) pursue,	2149

2124 dystroy 2125 hafe 2126 who 2130 ful 2 om. 2131 h<sup>y</sup>re  
thowt 2133 hafe be 2134 my pees 2135 þis. m. þus 2138 it om.  
2141 wune 2142 victoure þoo 2145 before haue be 2146 is om.  
2148 þat wyll it r. 2149 pursewe

Of crist <sup>s</sup> incarnacion), hough that it myght be,	2150	<i>Bk. IV. Ch. 40.</i>
And hough he in bethleem thus born) was.		Aryot then doubts Christ's Incarnation.
Eke al this mater, as thenketh me,		
A-form) in his werk þis man dede it tras ;		
Wherfore fro alle these þus shortly I pas,	2154	This too we've dealt with before.
Supposynge that þis same prolyxite		
Wulde make men) wery of reedyng to be.	2156	
Yet a-nother mater touched he to the mayde :	2157	
Of oure ladyes clenness e in hir concepcion)		He also objects to Mary's purity,
he had ful grete meruayle, as he sayde ;		
Sith the synne of Adam in his progressyon)		
Was 3oue to mannys flessþ as possessyon),	2161	
hough myght she haue clenness e [æ] <sup>1</sup> maydenhed	<sup>1</sup> MS. in	as she was of Adam's corruption.
Whan she cam of that corrupte seed ?	2163	

Cam. 41<sup>m.1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> MS. 40<sup>m.</sup>

*Bk. IV. Ch. 11.*

<b>T</b> he mayde answerde right thus to his tale :	2164	Katharine
“Thyng that is foule, oure lord may make clene,		
he is very medicyn) ageyn) al oure bale.		
his wondyrful werk <sup>s</sup> are harde for to scene,		
But be exaumples we may proue, I wene,	2168	
That this coniunceyon) of mayden) and of man)		
With-outen ony synne þis lord thus be-gan).	2170	
“ffro the seed first of al mankende,	2171	says that God preservd Mary from hereditary corruption.
That was soo corrupte, he preserued this mayde—		
It had ell <sup>s</sup> ful moche been) ageyn kynde,		
But if hir soule had ben) arayde		
With vertues grete and no-tyng afrayde	2175	
With no vice of synne or vyllonye—		
Thus dede this lord þat sitteth soo hye.	2177	
“fferthermore, whan) he cam to þat herburgage,	2178	
his comynge was liche the sonne shynynge bryght ;		

2150 who 2154 for 2156 wolde 2162 whoo . & m. 2164 no new chapt. 2168 ensaumples 2169 mayde 2170 with-oute 2171 man-kynde 2173 be 2174 be 2176 velenye 2177 þus hye 2179 suue . brythe



<i>Bk. IV. Ch. 41.</i>	lyche to the glas I lykne that maydenes kage,	
Mary's womb was like glass,	The sonne shyneth ther-on with bemes lyght And thurght it gooth, as we see in sight,	2182
	Yet is the glas perced in noo manere—	
and God past through it like light.	Soo ferle that lord, whan he camd down heere.	2184
	“Thus was she clene in hir concepeyon),	2185
	Thus hath she receyued the godhed of blis,	
She was pure in Christ's incarnation.	Yet was she clenere in his incarnacyon) <sup>1</sup> —	<sup>1</sup> <i>at. carnacion</i>
	Of whiche cleunesse shal she not <sup>1</sup> mys.	<sup>1</sup> <i>at. neuer</i>
	This muste 3e beleue, sir, if 3e wil ben his,	2189
	Thand shul 3e knowe þat 3e neuere knewe—	
	In my behestes 3e found me neuere ontrue.”	2191

*Bk. IV. Ch. 42.*Cam. 42<sup>m.1</sup><sup>1</sup> = Rawl. 31.

	<b>A</b> Nother questyon meued this man) that tyme,	2192
	Replyenge sore ageyn) hir declaracyon).	
	It is ful hard swiche þing's for to ryme,	
	To vtter pleynly in langage of oure naeyon)	
	Swliche straunge doutes þat longe to the incarnacion),	2196
	But that myn) auctour took swiche þing on hande,	
	And yet his langage vnnethe I vnderstande;	2198
	Wherfore with other auctour's I enforce hym thus,	2199
	Whiche spoke more prenauntly as in this matere.	
Ayot objects	ffor ageyn) the birthe of oure lord Ihesus	
	And his concepeyon) argued tho this sere.	
	“3oure oppynyon) set 3e alle in mere,”	2203
	This <sup>1</sup> seyde this man) on-to this lady mylde,	<sup>1</sup> <i>at. Thus</i>
	“ffor ye rehers hough that god and chyld,	2205
	“Bothe to-gedyr coupled in oon) persone,	2206
that Christ's union of God with Man	Was 3oure ihesu, and eke 3e thus confesse	
	That this myracle dede he not allone,	
	But it was doo be alle thre, I gesse—	
	This is 3oure feyth, to this 3e you professe—	2210
	2182 thorow 2187 carnacion <sup>1</sup> 2189 sere . be 2191 vntrewe	
	2193 Replynge 2201 Thus 2205 who 2206 oo	

That be the fadir, the goost, and eke þe sone		<i>Bk. IV. Ch. 42.</i>
Wrought was thus this incarnacyone.	2212	was wrought by all three Persons of the Trinity.
Whi shal we not thanne of 3oure woordis conclude	2213	
That fadir, and sone, and hoolygoost in-feere,		
Sith that thei been alle of oo symilitude,		
That eche of hem flesh and blood took heere?		So they all took flesh.
Thre sundry men þan) arn) thei, with-oute[u] dwere,	2217	and were 3 distinct men, yet 1 God.
And eke oo god—hough acordeth this tale?		
Al a wrong, me thenketh, wriheth the male.	2219	
“ffor 3e sey eke þat but oon) was incarnat,	2220	
Oon and no mo, and that was ihesu, 3our lord;		
Therto the fadir put 3e in that astat		
That he dede this—hough may this accord?		How can this be?
Sith that he wrought this of 3oure owne record,	2224	
Thanne was he Ioynd on-to that same werk—		
That it <sup>1</sup> thus folwoth, perceyu[eth] <sup>2</sup> every clerk.”	2226	
		<sup>1</sup> MS. it is <sup>2</sup> MS. perceyunge
<b>Cam. 43<sup>m.1</sup></b>		
	<sup>1</sup> MS. 42 <sup>m.</sup>	<i>Bk. IV. Ch. 43.</i>
<b>T</b> his motyf preyed the queen) wit[h] the beste,	2227	Katharine praises Aryot for his skill;
She seyde on-to hym: “sir, 3e lakke no þing		
That longeth of vertu to 3oure soules reste		
But feyth alone; I prey that heuenly kyng		
That he may touche yow with som preyuy merkyng,	2231	
That ye may knowe whiche is the very truthe;		
But if ye dede, it were ellis grete ruthe.	2233	
“As moche as nature may, she hath 3ou taught,	2234	
She coude noo ferthere in hir weye procede;		
But the wisdam of god, þat <sup>1</sup> may naught	<sup>1</sup> r. yt?	but he lacks God's wisdom.
Be caught be nature, leue this as youre creede.		
Yet as I can, I wil 3ow mekely leede	2238	
On-to oure seole, and telle of this matere		
The exposycion, if 3e wil it leere.	2240	

2211 sune    2215 be    2217 are . *wyth*-outen    2218 whoo    2219  
wryhith    2223 did . whoo    2225 to om.    2226 þat it þus folowyth  
perceyueth every clerke.    2227 no new chapt. *wyth*    2228 scre  
2230 heyn    2232 he    2235 coude om.    farder    2237 Be cause of  
n. lerne

*Bk. IV. Ch. 43.*God the  
Father has  
power;  
the Son,  
wisdom;the Holy  
Ghost, good-  
ness.To the Son  
the Incarna-  
tion was due;the message  
and provi-  
dence, to the  
Trinity in  
one God.3 Princes  
fetch David  
water from  
Bethlehem,but only one  
bare it.

“ Thus seyn) oure bookis : on-to the faderis astat 2241

Longeth powere, with whom<sup>1</sup> he gouerne<sup>2</sup> may alle,  
 And to the sone longeth this appropriat <sup>1</sup> Ar. whech <sup>2</sup> om. in Ar.  
 Whiche we calle wysdam—the workk, round as a balle,  
 And heuene eke, whiche may not falle, 2245

Were made in hym ; to the goost longeth goodnesse—  
 This is oure scole, wyth-oute[n] more or lesse. 2247

“ Thanne folweth thus that, sith the fadir alle thyng 2248  
 Made in this wysdam, it was ful conuenyent

That be that same [pat]<sup>1</sup> grete refoormyng <sup>1</sup> erased, or þe?  
 Of al mankende, whiche with synne was shent,  
 Shuld be redressed. loo, this is her entent 2252

That prou<sup>1</sup> be feyth and demonstracion) <sup>1</sup> MS. pr. we, we overl.  
 That mooste to the sone perteyneth þis incarnacion), 2254

“ As in praktyk ; but the soonde and the prouydens,  
 As the menes of mercy whiche were tho I-doo,  
 Tho longe to the trynpte, oo god in existens,  
 Thre persones,<sup>1</sup> oure god we deseryue hynd) soo. <sup>1</sup> al. in p.  
 Exaample, sir, may we putte ther-too, 2259  
 As putte oure clerkis in her bookis wyse,  
 Whiche write there in this maner of [w]yse<sup>1</sup> : <sup>1</sup> MS. gyse

“ ‘ Daudid,’ thei seyn), ‘ whanne he thristed sore, [On the  
 he desyred to drynke of that fresh welle he secunde  
 Whiche stood in bethleem where he was bore : book of  
 kyngis, 23  
 chapetre]

he sente thre pryncys, the sothe for to telle,  
 Thurgh al the oost of philestees<sup>1</sup> soo felle, <sup>1</sup> MS. þe ph. 2266  
 Thei brought this watir wyth) pereH on-to þe kyng,  
 On of hem in a basenet bar this þing.’ 2268

“ Alle had thei labour egal, as I wene, 2269  
 And yet oon) bar the veseH, and noo mo.

2241 on om. 2242 powere wheche we beleuyn) alle 2243 þus  
 a parte 2244 callen wisdom 2245 eke also 2247 wyth)-outen  
 2248 sith om. 2249 his w. 2250 pat om. 2251 mankynde 2253  
 prouyth be f. & be 2254 þe inc. 2256 þer doo 2257 longen 2258  
 in p. . oure god om. hem 2260 putten . wysse 2261 Wheche were  
 wretyn wyth) ful good avysse 2262 he seyð 2263 desyred sore.  
 fresh om. 2265 the om. 2266 hoost. þe om. philestis 2237  
 palle. on om. 2268 basnet 2270 vesselle

This same figure oure clerkis thus remene,<sup>1</sup> <sup>1 = interpret (Wycliffe).</sup> *Bk. IV. Ch. 43.*  
 That, though the fadyr and the goost bothe-too *The Father and Holy Ghost plaud the Incarnation, Jesus carri'd it out.*  
 Wrought this thyng and ordeyned it shulde be soo, 2273  
 Yet was the byrdene on oure lord allone,  
 Ihesu I mene, the sone, the secunde persone. 2275

**Ca. 44m. 1** <sup>1 = Rawl. 35.</sup> *Bk. IV. Ch. 44.*

**A**fter this had thei ful grete communycacyon) 2276 *Katharine and Aryot discuss Adam's sin;*  
 Of the synne of Adam) and of the serpent,  
 Enterfered with speches; but this dilatacyon),  
 As me thyneketh, longeth not to this lyf present, *but that I'll leave out.*  
 It occupieth ny al the newe testament, 2280  
 That men myght plod in her,<sup>1</sup> if þat hem lyst. <sup>1 MS. hir</sup>  
 Wherefore myn) entent I wolde that 3e wyst: 2282  
 I loue no longe tale, euere hangynge in oon). 2283 *I don't like a long tale!*  
 Wherefore as of this book I wil make an ende  
 Right in this Chapetre—me thenketh it longe a-noon)  
 Sith that I be-gan) this book for to bende  
 Oon)-to youre eres and on-to youre mende. 2287 *I'll end this 4th Book.*  
 Knoweth thys first, þat þis noble queen)  
 hath concluded these maysteris thus be-dene, 2289

And in especyall Aryot; for al that he cowde repley  
 Avayleth as nought, his witte is but boost, *Aryot is at his wits' end.*  
 he stant al<sup>1</sup> mased, no-thing now hardlye <sup>1 orig. as</sup>  
 To speken oon) woord. thus can)<sup>1</sup> the goode goost <sup>1 = gan</sup>  
 Gadere to hym) alle thys wyse oost 2294  
 And make[n] hem) to trowe as the mayde[n] taught;  
 ffor al her philosophie thus arn) thei caught. 2296 *He is caught.*  
 ffor after thei had spoken) of the filiacion) 2297  
 of crist, oure lord, whether there be too or oon),  
 And eke of the hooly goost and his procession)—

2273 ordeyn 2274 bordeyn in 2278 this om. delectacion) 2276 this om. 2281 þat myth it here if. 2285 this om. 2286 Sithen I 2288 weel inst. of thys 2290 speciall al om. 2291 It av. 2292 standith a-masid, & noþing. now om. 2293 spekyn o 2294 hoost 2295 makyn. mayden 2296 are 2297 spokyn 2298 þer were 2299 of om. wylt) inst. of and

	<i>Bk. IV, Ch. 11.</i>	Where that this lady fayled answer <sup>1</sup> noon),	<sup>1</sup> MS. answered
	Aryot confesses	This same Aryot stood stille as ony ston);	2301
		ffor the hooly trynhte she proued hym be kynde,	
		he cowde <sup>1</sup> fro the resons no weye fynde.	<sup>1</sup> Ar. 168 c. not. 2303
		On-to his felawes thus ful loude he sayde :	2304
that he and his fellows are wrong;		“ We haue gon) wrong euer on)-to this day ;	
		Blissed be god and this holy mayde	
		That to us hath taught a truere way !	
		Sey 3e as ye like, I can) nozt sey nay ;	2308
		ffor on oo god I beleue whiche is in blis,	
he now be- lieves in God the Father, Son, and		I beleue on) Ihesu eke whiche is sone his, <sup>1</sup>	<sup>1</sup> at. his s. is 2310
Holy Ghost,		“ I leue in the goost, knettere of hem too ;	2311
		I leue that þis Ihesu deyed for my sake,	
		Thus were oure synnes be hym clensed soo.	
and commits his soule to Christ.		On-to his handis my soule I be-take,	
		Preyng hym hertely that fro þe feendis blake	2315
		he now defende me, þat I nozt damned bee.	
		This is my crede ; felawes, what sey 3ee !”	2317
His fellows do so too,		Thei answerden) alle þat thei had now founde	2318
		Thyng þat thei [had] sought <sup>1</sup> alle her lif-dayes ;	
		This wil thei kepen now as a true grounde,	<sup>1</sup> MS. soughten
		ffor thei haue walked many perillous wayes,	
		With veyne argumentis iangelynge [euer] as Iayes ;	2322
and turn to Christ.		Now wil thei leue it and to crist hem turne,	
		With Aristotil or plato wil thei no more soirne,	2324
		But put hem in the mercy of oure lord Ihesu,	2325
		Preyenge this mayde that she be her <sup>1</sup> mene	<sup>1</sup> MS. hir
		To purchace hem pardon) of her feith ontrew,	
		That thei so longe shulde it sustene ;	
		Thei felle on knees, the[se] clerkis alle be-deene,	2329

2300 lady om. answer was non. 2301 a stone. 2305 into  
2307 haue . trew 2308 leke 2309 on om. 2310 I leue . his sone is  
2311 And I l. on . knyte 2315 prayng . hertily 2318 answerd  
2319 þat om. had south 2320 kepyn . now om. 2321 had . per-  
lous 2322 euer as Iayes 2323 leuyn . hem om. 2324 Ar. non  
Ovide 2326 her om. 2327 hem om. 2328 susteyne 2329 fellen .  
þese

Cryenge loude with grete deuocyon):

“ O<sup>1</sup> Ihesu cryst, for thy swete passyon) <sup>1 MS. On</sup> 2331

*Bk. IV. Ch. 11.*

The converted pagan Philosophers pray for Christ's forgiveness.

“ Haue mercy up-on us, forgeue vs oure trespas ! 2332

Demene vs [not],<sup>1</sup> lord, after oure mysdede ! <sup>1 MS. Deme ne vs, on eras.</sup>

As þou art pytous,<sup>2</sup> soo þou graunte us gras, <sup>2 MS. pytousful</sup>

Of thi protecyon) haue we ful grete neede. 2335

We wil do oure diligens for to lerne [our]<sup>1</sup> crede, <sup>1 corr.: this</sup>

To meynten) it and susteyn) with al oure myght ;

There shal neuere man) brynge us in other plight.” 2338

[1 vv. 2339—2345 follow in MS. Ar. 20 after V, 329.]

Book IV is finishit.

<sup>1</sup> Thus are thei conuerted ; this conflicte is I-doo ; 2339

Oure book is at an ende, a newe we wil be-gynne—

It is ful conuenient that we shul[d] do soo.

God and seynt Kataryne kepe us oute of synne,

We'll start Book V.

Sende us the weyes heuene-blisse to wynne, 2343

Where we may dwelle and looke[n] on his face, <sup>1 at. men</sup>

Whiche gladeth alle creaturis<sup>1</sup> that been) in þat place ! 2345

## Liber quintus

*Bk. V. Prol.*

### Prologus.

[vv. 1—63 are wanting in Ar. 20.]

**N**OW is it come, oure leyser and oure space,  
In whiche we may, after oure grete labour

1 Now we'll turn

Of other maters, now, whil we haue grace,

Turne ageyn) and taaste the swete sauour

Of this clene virgyne, of this weel sauoured flour, 5

to the sweet savour of the pure Virghin Katharine.

Whiche with fyue braunches grew thus here in erthe.

The firste, the secoude, the thredde, and<sup>1</sup> the ferde 7

haue 3e perceyued, if 3e haue red alle ; <sup>1 Ar. & eke</sup> 8

Now shal the fyfte be shewed on-to 3oure sight.

ffor now we<sup>1</sup> lyste this lady a rose to calle, <sup>1 at. me</sup>

Of fyue braunches ful precyously I-dyght.

The rede colour, that shon in hir so bryght, 12

2330 Cryenge long . ful grete 2331 O 2333 Deme us not 2334  
petous (ful om.) soo þou om. of þi g. 2336 don . 3oure c. 2338  
bryngen 2339 counselle 2311 shuld 2343 And send . þe he y  
weyes 2344 dwellyn . lokyn . þat face 2345 alle men 1 it om.  
3 materis . whil om. 6 erde 7 thrid . ferde 9 vnto 10 me lyst

<i>Bk. V. Prof.</i>	That was hir martirdam); the fyue leues grene	
We shall now tell of Katharine's martyrdom.	Be-tokne hir lyf, thus distincte, I wene,	14
	In diuers book's, liche as we haue dyuyسد	15
	Be-fore this tyme, and now this is the last.	
	These fyue leues, right thus are þei sysed	
	That on the stalk thei cleue[n] wonder fast,	
	The reed flowres kepe thei fro the blast	19
	Er thei hem-selue dilate <sup>1</sup> thus a-brood,	<sup>1</sup> r. dilaten
	And after that thei make than her a-bood	21
	Euene vndir tho same swete reed floures ;	22
	Be-tokenynge that al hir lyf was spred	
	With martirdam) and wyth tho sharp shoures	
	Whiche she for crist bothe suffred and ded.	
	ffor in diuers book's as I ofte haue red,	26
Martyrdom is the greatest of all virtues.	Martirdam hath a souereyn) dygnyte,	
	A-boue alle vertues whyche that goostly bee.	28
	Thus grew this rose oute of the thorny brere	29
	Whan) that this martir of hethen folk was bore.	
	I wil declare 3et ferthere, if ye wil here,	
	Whi that these leues that cleue so sore,	
	Thre of hem arn) berded, and no more,	33
	And too stande naked with-oute[n] dagge or berke—	
	Thus arn) thei wonet <sup>1</sup> to growe[n] in oure 3erke.	<sup>1</sup> r. wone 35
	These fyue leues, as I seyde wol late,	36
	Be-tokne these book's whyche we haue in hande ;	
Our first 2 Books	Too of hem expresse the tyme and the date	
	In whiche this lady, as I vndirstande,	
spoke of Katharine's heathen life.	leued as hethen, as dede tho al hir lande—	40
	Therefore are thei naked in her kynde,	
	Expressynge thus this ladyes leuyng blynde.	42

15 like 16 Before 18 cleuez 20 Or . þus lateth hem 21 here þan abode 22 þe. reed om. 23 Betokynyth. al om. 24 tho om. 25 she om. . suffered 26 haue oftyen 27 suffereyn 30 folk om. 31 ferthere om. 32 þeis. that om. cleuyn 33 are 34 wyth-ouen 35 are . wont . growen 36 wolate 37 Betokenes . hauen 40 and so dede al

Blynd I calle hir whil she was in that lyf, 43 *Bk. V. Prot.*  
 Knewe not crist, baptem had noon I-take,  
 Of heuently thyngis litel inquisityf  
 hir olde oppynyons had she noȝt forsake.  
 ffro this blyndenesse cryst made hir a-wake, 47  
 In oure thredde book ryght as we seyde before—  
 It nedeth not as now reherce it no more. 49 *Our last 3  
Books deal*

The other thre with berd<sup>is</sup> are soo I-growe 50  
 That leues of vertu we may hem alle calle ;  
 To al the world openly thus is it knowe  
 That she hath graces whiche may not falle.  
 Soo are her leues endewed, and euer shalle, 54  
 Euere am<sup>o</sup> thei grene, and euere-more wil bee,  
 Regnyng with crist in very felicyte. 56

And in hir honour now I wil procede 57  
 To my fyfte book, in whiche I wil speke  
 Of hir martirdam, so as the story wil lede ;  
 hough god the wheles for hir cause gan<sup>o</sup> breke  
 And on the puple tho took<sup>1</sup> ful grete wreke : <sup>1</sup> Ar. toke þo 61  
 This shal be translated now newe fro latyn,  
 To the wurshyp of god and of sey<sup>o</sup> Kataryn. 63 *I'll now  
english from  
Latin.*

Ca<sup>m</sup>. 1<sup>m</sup>.

*Bk. V. Ch. 1.*

**W**hanne the clerk<sup>is</sup> had mad thus her compleynt 64  
 Of alle her errour and wrong credulite,  
 The emperour<sup>is</sup> herte for sorwe gan<sup>o</sup> feynt. *The Emperor*  
 ffor now is noon<sup>o</sup> that dar spekyn<sup>o</sup> but he—  
 In al this mater conuicte is this mene. 68  
 Wherefore with cheer ful angry and dispytous *looks angry.*  
 Thus seyde he to hem as he stood in the hous : 70

44 baptem ne had non. I om. 46 her elde 49 it rehers 51 men  
 may . alle om. 52 it is 53 grace 55 are . shalle bee 58 myn 60  
 quelys . his c. dede 61 puple to full 62 Thus sh. it be translate.  
 lateyne 64 þeis c. 65 crudelyte 66 to feynt 67 speke 68 þeis  
 materis 69 ffor wyt<sup>h</sup> angry chere & wordys full dispytous 70 in þat



340 *The Emperor reproaches his Philosophers.* [MS. Arundel.

		“ffy on youre scoole! we had a ful gret trost	71
The Emperor says his converted Philosophers have deprived him of all bliss.		3e shuld a made weel al þat went amys :	
		Alle oure expens, <sup>1</sup> al oure counsel is lost,	<sup>1</sup> MS. expenss
		3e haue reued me of al this wordly blis,—	
		Not wordli, but goostly—for I seyde amys,	75
		It is goostly ioye that longeth on-to oure feyth.	
		heere 3e nozt now what the puple seyth ?	77
		“Thei seyn), a mayde hath conuicte in this place	78
		fifty clerkis, in this world noon) liche ;	
His folk will turn Christians.		Thei sey thei wil the same feyth purchase ;	
		Thus sey thei alle, bothe þe pore and þe ryche.	
		God wolde <sup>1</sup> ye hadde be beryed in a dychē	<sup>1</sup> r. Wold god
		Whanne 3e cam) heder ! for now al is lost,	82
		Labour and connynge, rydyng and mekel cost.	84
		“ [Lete] <sup>1</sup> now 3oure prudens make you a newe corage,	
Let them take heart again,		That 3e lese not youre konnyngē & 3our fame !	<sup>1</sup> MS. fette
		þenke what I hight 3ou, wurshype & eke wage !	
		Beth nozt a-ferde, for þanne 3e lese <i>your</i> name,	
		Left vp youre hertis, men), for very shame !	89
and argue down Katharine.		Speke to þis woman), <i>wyth</i> reson) bere hir doun) !	
		Thanne are ye worthi in sciens to [b]ere <sup>1</sup> þe crown).	91
		<sup>1</sup> MS. were	
		“ 3e stonde as herteles ! where is 3our connyngē goo,	92
		That ben) astoynd with nature femynne ?	
		Be hooly saturne, I wolde a supposed soo	
One of them ought to be worth 9 women.		That oon of 3ou, myghty had be for nyne !	
		Ye fare[n] as though 3e were bounde with lyne ;	96
		What answeere wil 3e yeue of youre connyngē,	
		Whan that at nede it awayleth no-thingē ?”	98

71 a om. 72 was amysse 73 expens . consayle 74 al om. 75  
noth 76 & longith to 77 what þat þe 78 maydyn 80 wollyne  
81 bothe om. 82 Wold god . byryed 84 coost 85 Lete 87 hyth.  
eke om. 88 & 89 transposed 88 lesen 89 Lyft 91 bere 92  
stand alle h. 95 myth a ben for sweche n. 96 faren. though om.  
97 3eyn 98 Whech (corr. from what). it om.

Ca<sup>m</sup>. secundum.Bk. V. Ch. 2.

- T**he grettest of hem, maister and ledere eke, 99  
 This same Ariot of whiche I spak before,  
 To the emperour thus he gan to speke :  
 " On-to thi court come we, lesse and more,  
 Thi goddis seruyse to renewe and restore ; 103  
 And as I wene, of alle the est-syde  
 Of al this world, to seke ferre and wyde, 105  
 " Shulde pou not fynde soo pyked a company 106  
 In gramer, rethorike, and tho artes alle ;  
 But specially in natural philosophi  
 Are we endowed. but to þe<sup>1</sup> sciens whiche þei calle <sup>1 at. om.</sup>  
 Theologye, [to þat] cowde we noȝt falle, 110  
 Tyl that þis lady made vs an Introduceyon—  
 Euere blessed be she for hir instruceyon ! 112  
 " What-maner man þat wolde er this tyme 113  
 Dispute with vs be reson or be auctoryte,  
 his demonstracyons coude vs not trappe ne lyme,  
 But he w[as]<sup>1</sup> caughte for al his sotilte ; <sup>1 MS. were</sup>  
 he passed not from vs wyt<sup>h</sup>-oute a vylone— 117  
 This was oure vsage<sup>1</sup> right thanne for victorye, <sup>1 at. wage</sup>  
 Soo loued we tho this wordlys veynglorye. 119  
 " Now it is turned, oure fortune & oure chauns, 120  
 Oure appetite eke, I not hough it is went ;  
 This mayde[n] maketh that we falle in trauns,  
 Oure connyng now it semeth þat it is spent ;  
 She speketh of god whiche was hangen & rent, 124  
 A goostly speche hath she brought to place, <sup>1 MS. in maner</sup>  
 Natural scyens hath in [þis] ma[t]er<sup>1</sup> noo space. 126

Aryot tells  
the Emperorthat tho'  
the Philoso-  
phers knew  
Arts,they didn't  
know The-  
ology till  
Katharine  
taught 'em  
it.She speaks  
of God on the  
Cross.

99 maister om. 101 On-to 103 3efe inst. of renewe 106  
 Shuldist, þou om. sweche a pykyd 108 speciall 109 þe om. 110  
 Th. to þat coud we. 111 bryngyth us to induction 112 hir good  
 113 or 114 & auctorite 115 neythere t. 116 was caute. sotelte  
 117 passed. fro. velanye 119 tho om. þese wordes of v. 121 wote  
 neuer how 122 mayden 124 wheche þat 125 And inst. of A 126  
 in þis matere

		“ Therefore can we as in this soleynte	127
<u>Bk. V. Ch. 2.</u>	Aryot	Speke right nought ; but reasons maketh she grete, hir prechyng passeth al oure carnalite ; ffor whan I firste thus mystyly herde hir trete, In my body myne bowayles <sup>1</sup> sore gonne bete,	131
		ffor very rebuke that I hir langage <sup>1 at. my bowels</sup>	
		Coude not conceyue. wherfore, sir, al <i>your</i> wage	133
	refuses the Emperor's fees,	“ And youre rewardis whiche ye profered vs, We refuse it ; <i>your</i> goddis and <i>your</i> lawe	134
	renounces his faith,	We renunce, for the loue of oure lord <i>Ihesus</i> . Shewe ze som reson openly that we may knawe If þat <i>your</i> goddis wyth the <sup>1</sup> rough pauwe <sup>1 at. her</sup>	138
		haue other cuydens þan we <sup>1</sup> can proue þis tyde ! <sup>1 at. ze</sup>	140
		ffor in this errour we wil noo lengere a-byde.	
	and confesses Christ.	“ Cryst, goddis sone, that with his passion Boughte al mankende, heere we now confesse ; On-to his <i>mercy</i> with good deuocyon We now <i>commende</i> vs, the more and eke the lesse. Slee and flee, brenne & put in distresse :	145
		Other feyth shalt þou neuere-more plante In to oure hertis ; for noo thyng now we wante	147
		“ But of baptem the hooly sacrament.	148
		God, as he boute vs, on vs haue mercy ! ” Thus seyde his felawes alle <i>wyth</i> oon entent :	
		“ There is noo god but he þat sit on hy ; On alle these maumentis euere sey we fy !	152
	All the philo- sophers will die rather than give up the Christian faith.	We wil deye rather þan we shulde forsake The cristen feyth whiche we haue now take.”	154

Bk. V. Ch. 3.

Cam. 3m.

**N**OW was the emperour ny wod and<sup>1</sup> oute of mynde,  
his eyne rolled as thei wolde falle oute. 156

127 solenlyte 128 make 130 mystly 131 my bowelles. gunc  
134 Alle 135 refusen. it om. 137 pleyntly 138 here rowe pawe  
139 þat inst. of þan . ze . preue 141 hys blyssyd p. 142 kynde  
143 ryght *wyth* 146 schall. *neuer* in oure hert plant(!) 147 hert  
150 seyden 151 syttyth 153 schuld dey 155 wax

“ffy on you,” he seyde, “cherles kynde, *Bk. V. Ch. 3.*  
 Now is oure feyth for 3ou in more<sup>1</sup> doute <sup>1</sup> *al.* more in The Emperor  
 Than euere it was.” and to hem that stood aboute 159  
 he tho commaunded in ful hasty wyse : orders  
 “I wil,” he seith, “her deth 3e thus deuysel : 161  
 “A fyre I wil þat 3e now hastily make 162 a fire to be  
made in the  
city,  
 Right in the myddes of this grete Cytee ;  
 Spare no wode, for hooly saturnes sake,  
 Spede you faste, these renegates þat we may see  
 ffrye in her grees ! for be þat deyte 166  
 Of swete appollo, I shal not ete ne drynke  
 Til that I se hem bothe brenne and stynke. 168  
 “Put in roseyn, pych and other gere, 169  
 Spare noo cost, for in this doo ye seruyse  
 On-to oure godd<sup>is</sup> with-outen ony feere.  
 Thus shal thei deyen that oure godd<sup>is</sup> despise ; to burne the  
Christian  
converts.  
 I shal be there my-self as very<sup>1</sup> Iustise <sup>1</sup> *al.* om. 173  
 And see this Iugement be<sup>1</sup> doon in dede. <sup>1</sup> *Ar.* Iewesse that it be  
 Whan 3e haue ended,<sup>2</sup> ye shul haue 3our mede. <sup>2</sup> *al.* don 175  
 “I wil 3e hynde hem bothe in foote and hande, 176  
 Drawe hem foorth as dogg<sup>is</sup> on-to the place,  
 Looke youre ropys be myghty, and 3our bande,  
 Spare neyther bodyes, heed<sup>is</sup> ne her face ! <sup>1</sup> om. in *Ar.*  
 God geue hem<sup>1</sup> alle swiche a sory velenous grace, 180  
 That thus forsake oure godd<sup>is</sup> þat ben eterne !  
 Looke noon of hem scape<sup>1</sup> 3ou in noon herne ! <sup>1</sup> *r.* *ascap*? 182  
 “Thei shal be dede right as I haue sayde, 183  
 Brent in to ashes—they gete noo remedye.  
 lete hem crye now on-to<sup>1</sup> this wilful mayde <sup>1</sup> *al.* on Let them cry  
to Katharine!  
 Whiche hath brought hem in to this heresie.

157 charles vnkynde 158 more in 159 and om. stonden 161  
 he seith om. her d. þat 3e þus. 162 now om. hastily 163 of þe  
 164 saturne 165 þat renegatys þat 3e see 166 ffrye hem . grece 169  
 rosyn' 172 schul. dey 173 very om. 174 se þese Iwes don 175  
 haue done . schall h. . ryght goode m. 176 in om. 178 3oure ropes  
 loke þei 179 body . nync (inst. of ne) 180 3efe. velenous om. 181  
 be 182 hyrne 183 be brent d. 181 askes 185 to om. 186 þat h.

344 *The Christians rejoice in their Death-sentence.* [MS. Arundel.]

Bk. V. Ch. 3. I wil no woordis as now more<sup>1</sup> multiplye, <sup>1</sup> at. om. 187  
 Goo now fourth in hast and doo your dede!  
 Whan it is doon, 3e shul haue 3oure mede." 189

Bk. V. Ch. 4.

Ca<sup>m</sup>. 4<sup>m</sup>.

**T**hus are thei drawe<sup>1</sup> with grete velonye <sup>1</sup> r. drawn? 190  
 On-to her doom; thei wrestlen nought ageyn.  
 Men myght see theree many a wepyng y3e,  
 But for feer no man now dar<sup>1</sup> seynd; <sup>1</sup> r. dar no3t? 194  
 Glad are these meny alle of her peyn.  
 The mayster of hem, thus he cryed at þat tyme:  
 "God be thanked, that for noo synne ne cryme 196  
 "Be we appeched, but oonly for trewe feyth! 197  
 Therefore, felawes in crist, 3our-selue confort;  
 What-euere þis tyraunt or ony of his seyth,  
 Thanke oure lord, for we are in the port  
 Whiche þat ledeth to þe<sup>1</sup> blessed counfort <sup>1</sup> at. þat 201  
 Where alle seyntis arn gadered right be grace,  
 In an heuently Ioyeful blissed place. 203  
 "Oure lord hath called vs fro oure olde errour 204  
 On-to þis ende; thanke we hym therefore,  
 Whiche to the beute of his fayre merrour  
 Wolde of hys goodnesse newely us restore.  
 In this world, as for me, I wil no more, 208  
 But that we shulde be baptised or we deye:  
 Than were we redy to walke th[at]<sup>1</sup> goodly weye. <sup>1</sup> MS. the  
 "ffor þat same baptem is an hooly werke, 211  
 It causeth grace, feyth eke it endeweth;  
 Be-twixe god and man it is a very merke,  
 That who-soo-euere cristis steppis seweth,  
 Al his luyng soothly he reneweth 215

The Chris-  
 tians do not  
 contest their  
 doom.

They thank  
 God that they  
 are going to  
 bliss.

They desire  
 only to be  
 baptised.

187 more om. 189 treuly schall 3e 190 vylony 191 wrestyll  
 not 192 eye 193 dare now 194 þeis meny. of very p. 195 at om.  
 196 To god be it þat 199 tyraunt dothe or seyth 200 hys port 201  
 l. vs to þat 202 are gadered to-gedyr be g. 206 on-to. fayre om.  
 208 werde 209 ben 210 forto. þat goode 212 gr. & feyth & eke.  
 it om. 213 Be-twys 214 crysten 215 luyng

Whan that he wasshet[h] in this water his synne. *Bk. V. Ch. 4.*  
 Oure lord hym-selue, he was wasshe ther-Inne, 217

“ Right for this cause þat noo man shulde dysdeyne 218  
 To vse the same whiche þat this lord vsed.  
 Of my conseyte I wil noo more now feyne, Aryot has  
 ffor in this mater ofte-tyme haue I mused ;  
 Many a 3eer this sacrament I refused : 222 long refused  
 That I repente now, and euere I shal it rue Baptism,  
 That I soo longe lyued a lyf on-true. 224

“ Wherefor my care now is this oonly, 225  
 That sith we shal and nedes muste we deye,  
 Off alle oure synnes mercy for to cry,  
 Alle oure defautes vndir foote for<sup>1</sup> to leye, 1 at. om. now he  
 To trede hem down) ; thanne sauely may we seye 229 desires it.  
 Th[at]<sup>1</sup> we arn) purged and of hem alle made clene.  
 Thus muste 3e trowe, felawes, alle be-dene.” 1 MS. Thus

[Rawl. Ca<sup>m</sup>. 5<sup>m</sup>]  
**A**nd to the mayde he turned hym with his voys : 232  
 “ lady,” he seyde, “ for god that sitteth aboue, He appells to  
 And for the passion that cryst had on the croys, Katharine  
 Prey for vs to hym—he<sup>1</sup> is thi loue ! 1 at. þat  
 Thou seest ful weel we may no lengere shoue 236  
 Oure leuyng dayes, for thei arn) at an ende :  
 Prey that lord he wil his merçi sende 238

“ On-to his seruauntis and spare vs at þis tyme, 239  
 Suffre vs eke that we may washed bee to baptise  
 With hooly baptem, that we may better clyme him and his  
 On-to that place of grete felicite. fellows.  
 And if this preyere plese not hym), but he 243  
 Wil algates that we shal wante þis thyng,  
 We wold desire thanne of þat blyssed kyng 245

217 he om. wasched 222 a om. 223 rewe 224 leued. vntrewe  
 226 we 2 om. 228 And all. for om. 229 treden) 230 þat. are  
 hem om. 231 we beleuen) 232 onto. maydene 234 on crosse 235  
 þat is 236 seyst 237 lyuyng. are nye at ende 238 lord om. 239  
 hem inst. of vs 240 Suffryng eke 241 þe bettyre 242 On om.  
 245 of þis

<i>Bk. V. Ch. 1.</i>	“ he wolde with us make dispensacyon)—	246
But if God will dispense with their Baptism,	ffor al <sup>1</sup> may he, he is omnyopotent, <sup>1 at. al bis</sup>	
	he loueth alle men), he loueth iche naeyon)	
	Egaly, 3e sey—this is oure fundament.	
	If he dispense with vs of this sacrament,	250
	That for the wantyng we may bere no blame,	
they'll die gladly.	Than shal oure deth ben) to us but game.”	252

*Bk. V. Ch. 5.*

**Cam. 5m.**

Katharine says	<b>T</b> hanne seyde the mayde [on]-to hem alle in-fere : 253	
	“ fiere you <sup>1</sup> right nought though 3e wante þis thyng !	
	Soo as I can) now wil I 3ow lere. <sup>1 at. 3e</sup>	
that those who die for Christ are borne to Bliss by Angels.	Tho men) that deye for loue of cryst, oure kyng,	
	Whiche wante [of] baptem) þat hooly washyng,	257
	Thei shul to blysse, for Aungellis shul hem cary ;	
	The feendes power noo-þing may hem tary.	259
	“ In stede of baptem) serueth her passyon),	260
	Not onoly blood whiche thei for hym) blede,	
	But al other deth whyche with deuocyon)	
	Thus thei suffre on-to her grete mede.	
	leue this doctryne hardyly as 3oure crede !	264
Their suffering is reckond as Baptism.	The grete peyne whiche þat is dempt to 3ou,	
	In stede of baptem) shal it be as now.	266
	“ God may with feer <sup>1</sup> purge[n] mannes synne,	267
	With water eke, right as hym lest demene ; <sup>1 at. fyre (2 syl.)</sup>	
	Somme men) arn) baptised heuene for to wyne	
	With that water whiche in þe fount is scene,	
They are purged by their blood.	Somme arn) purged in her blood, I wene,	271
	Thei deye as martirs, this is oure decree ;	
	Somme men) arn) baptised eke, as leue <sup>1</sup> wee, <sup>1 r. leuen</sup>	273

247 all þis 248 every n. 251 þan for wantyng may we 252 be tyl 253 no new chapt. vntyll 254 3e 256 deye om. 257 wante of 258 schall 260 hys p. 262 wheche þat he for hem dyd blede 263 suffred . hem 264 leue 3e wel þ. d. trostly 265 þe wheche is 266 it om. 267 fyre purgen) 268 right om. lyst 269 are 270 fonte 271 wyth 272 deyn . marteres 273 men om. . are

“ Right in her feyth, that stedfastly trost	274	<i>Bk. V. Ch. 5.</i>
In goddis mercy and deyn) oute of synne—		
This calle oure cle[r]k <sup>i</sup> s baptem) of the goost.		Martyrdom is spiritual Baptism.
Therefore, 3e knyght <sup>i</sup> s of crist, now be-gynne		
To cleyme 3oure herytage, þat 3e were ther-Inne ;	278	
Beth not a-ferde, but suffre the peyne mekely,		
Than) are 3e baptised, troste me now, truly ! ”	280	

Ca<sup>m</sup>. 6<sup>m</sup>.*Bk. V. Ch. 6.*

<b>W</b> hanne that thei were of this hooly mayde	281	
Thus recomforted, the officer <sup>i</sup> s come anon) ;		
Thei bynde her hand <sup>i</sup> s, right euene as I sayde,		The Christian Converts are bound,
Thei lede hem fourth, as fast as thei may goon),		
On-to a strete whiche was pathed with stoon).	285	
Weel is hym that may a fagot bere		
To brenne the cler <sup>k</sup> i <sup>s</sup> ! the <i>emperour</i> tho was there,	287	
Sette in a stage, for he wolde see the cende.	288	
The fyre is made, blokk <sup>i</sup> s arn) leyde on hepe,		the Fire is made,
ffagott <sup>i</sup> s gonne they among <sup>i</sup> s the clogg <sup>i</sup> s bende,		
There is not ellis but fette, <sup>1</sup> renne and lepe, <sup>1 at. feche</sup>		
Blowe now faste, the fower <sup>i</sup> s shal not slepe.	292	
Thei bynde her feet and through <sup>h</sup> 1 hem in the fere.		they are cast in it,
But thei arn) glad, ful mery eke of chere, <sup>1 at. throw</sup>	294	
Thankynge god that al thyng made of nought,	295	
That thei may deye for swiche a lord <sup>i</sup> s sake ;		
Thei prey to hym), right as he hem bought		
her soules now fro hem þat he wil take.		
What shulde I now lengere this tale make ?	299	
Thus are thei dede, her soules gon) to blis.		and burnt to death.
Eke to her bodyes oure blessed lord graunted this :	301	
Skyn) ne flessh was noon) of hem brent,	302	
Ne hood ne cloth, ne her on) berd ne heed ;		

274-7 out of order (b c a d) 277 begune 281 weren 282 com-  
forted . offycers comene 283 bondyn). euene om. 284 leden. as om.  
287 tho om. 289 are 290 gan . amouge 291 feche 292 shuld  
293 and om. þei throw 294 are . & full. eke om. 298 tyll hym  
now þat he wold 300 on inst. of gon 301 tyll 303 of berde ne of



<p><i>Bk. V. Ch. 6.</i> Yet the fire only kills them,  doesn't dis- colour them.</p>	<p>Thei lay there ded with browes fayre I-bent, With fayre faces coloured white and reed. ffor right as fyre maketh þe rusty leed Bryght and shene, so made the fyre these men); hoo knewe hem be-forn), yet he myght hem<sup>1</sup> ken).</p>	<p>306 308</p>
<p>They are martyrd on Nov. 13,  and lie as if alive.</p>	<p>Thus deyed these men) in Nouembre þe xiiij. day. After her deth, semyng not to be ded, As slepyng men) in fayre coloure thei lay, In handes, bodies,<sup>1</sup> legges eke and hed With colour fressh, lyuely and also red. This<sup>1</sup> þe puple sey<sup>2</sup> and merueyled wonder sore; ) God thei preysed for now and euere-more.</p>	<p>316 316 320 322</p>
<p>Many are converted by this miracle.</p>	<p>ffor be this myracle conuerted was that day Meehe folkis<sup>1</sup> to cryst, and for deuocyon) Bothe of the clerkis and eke of the may Thei took the bodies with solenne oryson), Beried hem there in dyuers mansion), Trostyng to spede the betere for her cause. Thus endeth her martirdam right in this clause.<sup>1</sup></p>	<p>323 324 327 329</p>
<p>[1] Here fol- lows in MS. Ar. 20 the last stanza of Book IV. and ends Book IV. V. 330— 420 are want- ing.]</p>	<p><i>Bk. V. Ch. 7.</i></p>	<p><b>Ca<sup>m</sup>. 7<sup>m</sup>.</b></p>

**T**ho sey the emperour there is noon) other spede 330  
On-to this mayden) whiche is soo stedfast,

304 I om. 305 face . bothe whyght 306 ffor lyk as þe f. 307  
makyth . þis mene 308 who so . before. yet om. myth ken hem  
& see 312 of þis t. 313 for to 314 myrth 315 gan 316 þis mene  
317 þei semed not to a be dede 319 body 320 louely 321 þis see  
þe puple 322 for þan 324 niche folke 326 token 327 And beried  
þem 328 the om. 330 oþir botte

**MS. Arundel.]** *The Emperor tries to win Katharine's love.* 349

But fayre wordes, whiche drawe womanhede		<i>Bk. V. Ch. 7.</i>
And maketh hem often) other thyng to tast		The Emperor
Thanne thei shulde doo if thei wolde be chast.	334	tries fair
Therefore this mayde[n] right thus tho he gloseth :		words to win
“Kataryn),” he seyth, “ther is no man) supposeth,	336	Katharine.
“Not 3e 3oure-selue, þat I wolde but good	337	
On-to 3oure persone ; but this grete distresse		
To whiche I putte 3ou, spillynge as 3et noo blood,		
Was for to chace you fro þat fykelnesse		
Whiche 3e haue caught of fonned hoolynesse	341	
And lefte þe ryghtes þat oure <sup>1</sup> olderis be-fore	<sup>1</sup> orig. 3oure	
Receyued and honoured as for souereyn) lore.	343	
“This was the cause whi I distressed 3ow soo ;	344	
But loue haue I on)to 3ow, sekirly,		He declares
As to best of alle saue oon) and no moo.		he loves her,
[&] whi I doo soo if 3e wil wete why :		
Yowre beute it causeth, 3oure connyng eke, þat I	348	her beauty
loue 3ow so weel that, if 3e wil consent		and clever-
And thuryfye to Iupiter omnypotent,	350	ness.
“3e shul haue honoure, no woman) shal be lich.	351	
O swete virgyne, enclyne 3our wil to me !		He prays her
O fayre visage of beute now most rich,		to love him.
O woman) wurthi to Imperial degree,		
O very merour of parfighte felicite,	355	
Wolde god 3e knewe what care I haue for yow,		
And what behestes I made in myn) avow !	357	
“Whi wolde 3e despise oure goddis immortal ?	358	
Whi wolde 3e calle hem soo villenous a name ?		Why will she
Why seyde 3e thei were feendes infernal ?		abuse his
Whi slaundre 3e soo her hooly endued fame ?		Gods ?

332 womanhooode 333 thingis 335 mayden 337 nothe 339  
 putte 3ou om. spellyng 3et as 340 chast. sekenes 341 Wheche þat  
 342 riches. elderes 344 whi þat 346 þe best 347 And why 348  
 & inst. of þat 349 lyke to consent 350 Iupiter þat is 351 shalle.  
 3ou liehe 352 your) loue 354 most worthy of 355 merueyle 356  
 knewen 357 beheest I haue made 359 unenemous 360 þat þei are  
 deuceles. 361 hooly om.

350 *The Emperor tempts Katharine to be Pagan.* [MS. Arundel.]

<i>Bk. V. Ch. 7.</i>	ffor this blasphemē, I-wys, 3e be to blame—	362
	Disceyuours thei be of puple, as 3e sayde.	
	Chaunge 3oure langage, o noble goodly mayde,	364
The Emperor urges Katharine to propitiate his Gods.	“ Chaunge be-tyme! for though thei suffre longe,	365
	At the last thei smyght and [taken hy veniaunce] <sup>1</sup>	
	Tender 3oure thought, speke hem no more wronge :	
	Thus shal 3e best her grete Ire aswage. <sup>1</sup> MS. corr.: pay ful hard wage	
	Take 3oure offerynge 3et, in short langage,	369
	And plesē hem soo, thei may ben 3our freendes!	
	[&] sey neuere more that thei been feendes!	371
	“ If 3e wil doo as I 3ow now counsayle,	372
She shall be next his Queen,	This shal 3e haue : next after the queen	
	Shal 3e be to us, with-outen faile ;	
	To 3oure commaundement alle [men] shul been	
her frends shall be his,	Obey <sup>n</sup> ge for euere ; whom 3e wil susteen,	376
	he shal be fauoured with al myght & mayne,	
her unfrends his foes.	And whom 3e hate, compendiously to sayne,	378
	“ That man shal lyue[n] in ful grete distresse.	379
	Comforte 3oure-self, despise not good counsayle,	
	Make not 3oure freend <sup>is</sup> to lyue in heynesse ;	
	Lete my woord <sup>is</sup> synke in 3oure entrayle,	
	flee swiche thyng <sup>1</sup> that may not awayle! <sup>1</sup> r. thyngis?	383
	With-inne my kyngdam may 3e haue this right :	
	What þat ye wil, shal be fulfilled as tight.	385
	“ If that 3e wil exile[n] oony man,	386
	That man shal goo, þer shal no good hym saue;	
In all, her will shall be done.	More plesauns to 3ow noon graunte I can	
	But suffre youre wil, al þat 3e wil haue.	
	ffro this decree shal I neuere-more waue.	390

362 are 363 deceyvoures . thei be om. of þe p. 364 3e noble  
366 smyten & taken hey veniaunce 367 hem om. 368 grete om.  
swage 370 plesith . be 371 And sey . be 372 don 375 alle men  
shalle 376 Obeynge but whom þat . susteyne 378 whom þat 379  
leyn 380 Coumforthe 381 makith . leyn 382 myn . siuken  
383 thyng om. 385 tythe 386 exilen 388 noon om. I ne 390 ffor

hond þat 3e liste of grace to avaunce,		<i>Bk. V. Ch. 7.</i>
In ioyeful dayes that same man may daunce.	392	
“ Be-twixe the queen and you shal be no distaunce	393	The Emperor promises Katharine
But only this, be-cause of oure spousayle :		
She must of me haue more dewe plesaunce ;		
The loue be-twixe vs, I trowe, shal neuere fayle.		
But to 3ou shal longe bothe lawe and counsayle	397	
Thurgh al oure reem, to gouerne at 3oure wille ;		absolute power,
Right as 3e bydde alle men shul fulfille.	399	
“ Yet shal I make right in the market-place	400	
A solenne ymage like an emperesse ;		and the setting-up of her image
As liche as craft wil countirfete 3our face		
It shal be made : ilke man, more and lesse,		
Shal honoure þat <sup>1</sup> with ful grete besynesse, <sup>1 r. yt?</sup>	404	
Whan thei come forby shul falle on kne anoon.		to be worshipt,
This ymage shal not only be made of stoon,	406	
“ But of clene metal, gilt ful bryght & shene.	407	
Who-so come forby, be sufficient euydens		
Shal knowe ful weel þat she was a queen		
Whos ymage stant there, and in grete offens		
Shal he falle that dooth noo reuerens	411	
To þat same ymage, and ho-soo flee ther-too,		
What-maner offens that he hath doo	413	
“ Shal be for3oue, for reuerens of yow, mayde.	414	
Thus may 3e ben deifyed, if 3e wil it take.”		if she will turn Heathen.
Swiche-maner woordis on-to hir he sayde,		
he wolde a temple al of marbil make		
Of ful grete cost, right for hir sake,	418	
Wenyng cuere with swyche feyned plesauns		
To bryng this mayde fro hir perseuerauns.	420	

391 whom . forto 393 non 394 youre 399 shall 400 right  
om. 401 solempne . liche a 402 As man of craft 405 comen .  
fallen . knes 408 comyth . wyth 409 knowen 410 & þat 412  
same om. soo om. 413 þat euer 414 for3oue at þe r. 415 be  
416 vntill 417 marbelle 420 oute of hir good p.

Bk. V. Ch. 8.

Cam. 8m.

Katharine is amused at the Emperor's offer	<p><b>S</b>he low a lityl whan she herde al this, 421          And thanne she spak with mery countenance :          "fful happy am I," she seyde, "on-to blys          Whanne þat the emperour wil me thus avaunce          To rere an ymage of soo grete plesaunce 425          In wurshep of me, and of so grete prys!          Somme men wolde sey þat I were ful nys 427          " If I refused it, for of goold it shal bee 428          If I commaunde, but 3et at the lest          Of siluer he wil it make, and of swiche quantite,          The chaungeouris shul stryue and be in on-rest          To brynge so moche tresour out of the nest 432          To make a memoryal to Kataryn the mayde"—          [S]whiche-maner woordis at that tyme she sayde. 434          " And though this ymage be made of marbil grey, 435          Suffiseth it that to my laude eterne          Euery man that shal come be that wey          Where þat it shal be sette in an herne,          On bothe knees he muste falle 3erne 439          An[d] doo his homage, ellis muste he deye.          What-maner woordis hope 3e thei shal seye?: 441          " ' heyl ymage, made right in memorial 442          Of a lady ful wys and ful prudent,          heyl statue that art now as eternal,          heyl signe made right to þis entent,          The grete beute of Kataryn to present.' 446          Wil not þis noyse ben ful grete plesauns          To hem þat loue this wordly lusti dauns? 448          " But this wolde I knowe[n], er we þis thing make,          Of what mater shal my leggis bee?</p>
to set up her Statue	
of gold or silver,	
to be knelt to.	
She asks what her legs are to be made of.	

421 had hard 423 vn-to 425 reren a 427 seyne. ful om. 429 last 431 chaungours. in no rest 432 bregyne 433 of 434 Sweche 437 that om. be þe 438 a 439 hym muste 440 omage. must hym 447 noyse om. be 448 Tyl. louen'. worldly 449 knowyne. or

What-manner werkman) is he that dar vndirtake		<i>Bl. V. Ch. 8.</i>
To make hem meve and walke in her degree ?		Katharine
Myn) hand's eke I wolde wete hough that hee	453	asks who'll
Shul[d] make to fele, <sup>1</sup> and of what matere ?	<sup>1</sup> r. felen	make her
Er we goo ferthere, this thyng wolde I lere.	455	statue's legs
" The cyne eke whiche þis ymage shal hauc,	456	and hands
If it <sup>1</sup> shul looke right as I doo in dede,	<sup>1</sup> at. þei	move,
Where is that werkman) that swiche þing's can) graue ?		
he were ful worthy to haue ful grete mede !		
I leue neuere þat this werke shal spede ;	460	
This cristallyn) matere thus sotilly to congele		
There is no werkman) in erthe that can) it welle.	462	
" A tounge eke, if he shul[d] to it make,	463	and its tounge
On-to th[is] <sup>1</sup> ymage to <sup>2</sup> speke and for to crye,	<sup>1</sup> MS. the <sup>2</sup> MS. for to	speak.
Where is he that dar this vndirtake ?		
If he doo thus, he werketh a grete maystrye !		
But for this cause that there is noo man) so slye,	467	
Therefore I conclude thus in short sentens :		
Whan ye haue wared þoure wyt and [your] expens	469	
" To make this ymage, it shal be insensible,	470	The statue
Stonde liche a ston), and byrdes flye rounde aboute, <sup>1</sup>		must be
As I suppose it shal be right possible	<sup>1</sup> at. þat flye ab.	senseless.
That þei shal come somtyme a ful grete route,		
her on-clene dunge shul thei there putte oute	474	Birds 'll
And lete it falle right on the ymagis face.		dung on it.
loo whiche a reward <sup>1</sup> I may now purchase,	<sup>1</sup> at. sw. a gwerdon)	
" That men) shul[d] drede and birdes shulde defyle ;	477	
But whan) deth hath shake on vs his blast		
And þat oure mynde is passed a litel whyle,		
I am a-ferd this werk shal not last.		It can't last.
Wherfore to make it me thenketh but [a] wast ;	481	

451 is he om. 452 to meue 453 my. who 454 shul'd 455 Or. thyng om. 457 þei schul 459 wel w. 460 shuld wel sp. 461 cristallyne om. 462 it fulfyll 463 shuld it 464 þis. for om. (twice) 468 in a 469 & þoure 470 vnsensible 471 lyke. þat flies ther abowthe 473 That om. comyne. rowthe 474 shall 475 ymage 476 sweche a gwerdon) 477 shuld dredyn). foules 479 be p. 481 a wast

<u>Bk. V. Ch. 8.</u>	To truste in fame and fonned veynglorye, It is but feyned <sup>1</sup> and fykel flaterye. <sup>1</sup> Ar. feynyng	483
Katharine says dogs 'nil defile her Statue.	“ And though thei make it as fayre as þei can), 3et shul dogges defyle it euery day ; ffor þough it be honoured of euery man), The smale childern þat come be þe way Shul somtyme make there [ful] foule aray. 488 Shal I for this leue my god for euere And fro his frenshipe my soule now dissenere,	484 490
	“ To wurshipe deuces þat stande in temple here Kepte as beres? do wey, it shal not bee, There shal noo Loye ne peyne me [n]euere <sup>1</sup> stere <sup>1</sup> corr. : euere ; To leue my lord, to leue my felicyte, <sup>al. neuer.</sup>	491 494
She will never leave her Lord Jesus.	To renne in Apostasie, fy ! [it will not be]. <sup>1</sup> <sup>1</sup> MS. 3e shal it neuere Lete be 3oure labour, sir, lete be 3oure promysse ! Thei shal not make me [n]euere <sup>1</sup> to doo amysse. <sup>1</sup> al. neuer	499 497
What would be the good of a Statue to her soul?	“ What, shuld my lyf better ben) in ese ffor swiche a statue? what shulde it profyte On-to my soule? me thenketh, it coude not plesse No good man); for though it were to the sight fful delectable, with colouris shynyng bryght, On-to oure dayes it shulde 3eue noon) encrees, On-to oure siknesse it shulde be no reles,	498 502 504
How could it comfort her at death?	“ On-to oure lyf it shulde be noo myrthe, On-to oure deth it shulde noo comforte bee, N[o]n <sup>1</sup> avayle to ende ne to birthe. <sup>1</sup> MS. Ne To what parte longeth it of felicyte? If it myght kepe my flesh) in swiche degree It shulde not rote, I wolde it neuere weyue, <sup>1</sup> on eras., al. om. But as profytable thyng <sup>1</sup> I wolde [it] thanne receyue.	505 509 511

482 trosten . & in . fonned om. 483 feynyng a fekyl 485 shallc .  
defylen 486 honoured be 487 childeryn 488 a ful fowle 490  
frenchip . deseuyr 491 standen 493 neuer 495 fye it wille not be  
496 sere 497 maken . neuer 499 profythe 501 sythe 502 brythe  
503 3eue om. 504 be om. non 506 non coumforthe 507 None  
avayle 509 mowte 510 I shuld . weyuen 511 thyng om. it þan  
rescyuen

“ I haue a promys, made of a grettere lord, 512 *Bk. V. Ch. 8.*  
 Of a<sup>1</sup> grettere fame þan I wil now expresse, <sup>1 om. in Ar. 20.</sup> Katharine  
 And made a-fore persones of record, has  
 In whiche is graunted, truly, w<sup>y</sup>th-oute[n] gesse,  
 A memoryal of parflicht stabilnesse, 516  
 As 3e shal knowe, many that here bee.  
 Leueth 3oure besynesse as now on-to me ! 518  
 “ Laboure no more to wynne me to 3our part, 519  
 It shal not be, I wil be as I am ;  
 It wil no3t awayle, 3oure sotilte ne your art.  
 he is my spouse whiche is bothe god & man),  
 I am his mayde, and wil doo that I can) 523 *Christ, God-  
 man, for her  
 spouse.  
 She is His.*  
 To haue his loue ; he is al my swetnesse,  
 he is my Ioye, he is my gentilnesse.” 525

Ca<sup>m</sup>. 9<sup>m</sup>.

*Bk. V. Ch. 9.*

**T**ho chaunged the emperour bothe word and chere, 526 *The Emperor*  
 And on-to the mayde he seyde as I rehers :  
 “ The more benyngnely that we trete 3ow heere,  
 As me semeth, þe more 3e reuers.  
 This shul 3e haue, shortly in a vers : 530 *offers her  
 Death, or Joy*  
 Deth or Ioye ; chese now whiche you<sup>1</sup> lest ! <sup>1 Ar. 3e</sup>  
 If ye wil lyue in solace and in rest, 532  
 “ Thanne shul ye now w<sup>y</sup>th hy deuocyon) 533  
 Thuryfie on-to that mageste  
 Of grete appollo—his exaltacion), *if she'll offer  
 incense to  
 Apollo.*  
 As 3e knowe weel, for it is noo secree,  
 Redresseth þis world with hete whiche þat hee 537  
 Spredeth vp-on it. mayde, obeye her<sup>1</sup>-too ! <sup>1 MS. hir</sup>  
 There is noo choys, this thyng muste nedes be doo. 539  
 “ ffayre speche awayleth not [to] 3ou in noo wyse— 540  
 I wolde with solace a led 3oure gentilnesse,

513 a om. 514 aforne 516 (stabyl parfyttesse expunged) 523  
 I inst. of and 524 hauen. al om. 527 on om. mayden 528 The  
 benyngglyer. treten 530 shalle 531 chese now om. leuest 532  
 leue 533 shal. hey 534 on om. 537 werd 538 upon iche. þer-  
 too 540 to 3ou. wysse 541 wold wele. salas



*Bk. V. Ch. 9.* But alle<sup>1</sup> my promyses ye sette at<sup>2</sup> lytel pryse; <sup>1 at. at</sup> <sup>2 at. om.</sup>

The Emperor  
Utrechts  
Katharine  
with Death  
by Fire,

Ye shul repente it sothly, as I gesse.

There is the fire; dispose you to hoolynesse, 544

Doo it with good wyl: ye shal the sonnere purchace<sup>1</sup>

Pardon) of synne<sup>2</sup> and encrece of grace. <sup>1 This v. on erasure.</sup> <sup>2 r. synnes?</sup> 546

“If 3e doo not, in short tyme 3e shul be ded, 547

as an example  
to deter  
others.

Right in exauple of [þe] puple that is heere.

here hertes ar) hangynge heuy as the leed;

A<sup>1</sup> man) may perceyue right be her cheere <sup>1 all MS. A, r. As?</sup>

It may no3t passe[n] lyghtly, swiche matere, 551

It muste be punysshed right for fer of other;

he shulde ben) ded th[o]ugh he were my brother.” 553

*Bk. V. Ch. 10.*

Ca<sup>m</sup>. 10<sup>m</sup>.

Katharine  
welcomes  
Death.

“Peyne is weelcome to me,” seyde she thanne, 554  
“And deth eke, I wil it no3t forsake;

ffor þough 3e smyghte, sle, curse and banne,

It skilleth me nought for my [lordis sake]<sup>1</sup> <sup>1 MS. sonereyn) make,  
on erasure.</sup>

Swiche myschefis for his loue to take; 558

he tooke for me meche more wretchednesse,

Whil he leued here in this wyldernesse. 560

As Christ  
suffred for  
her,

“Pouerte he suffred, that lord, ful buxomly, 561

Whanne that he myghte haue had richesse at his wylle—

This same myschef 3et suffred neuere I,

so will she  
suffer for  
Him.

But if it come, I wil obeye per-tille.

Ageyn) bla[s]phemours stood [þat lord]<sup>1</sup> ful stille, 565

Yeuyng exauple to us of paeyens— <sup>1 MS. he stood, he overl.</sup>

Why shulde his seruauntis make ony resistens 567

“Whanne þat the wykked purpos<sup>1</sup> to doo hem wrong?

ffor his cause, his feyth, or his loue <sup>1 MS. purpos<sup>is</sup>, Ar. purpos</sup>

542 But at my promyse. at om. pryse 543 shalle 545 3e schon(!)  
547 in syght inst. of in short tyme. shal 548 of þe 549 arne. the  
om. 550 perceyuen 551 passen 552 ponched 553 be. thou 556  
snyth fle sle or banne 557 rithe nothe. my lordis sake 558 mys-  
cheys 559 myche 560 lyned. þis werldly wyldernes 561 þan  
inst. of that lord 562 an had riches 563 þe 565 he om.; stod  
þæt lord 566 til 567 shulden. maken 568 þæt om. purposyd.  
don hym

Am I now redy, be it short or long,		<i>Bk. V. Ch. 10.</i>
To suffre despyte, peyne <sup>1</sup> or <sup>2</sup> reprove.	<sup>1</sup> r. peynes <sup>2</sup> ut. &	
I wote ful weel it wil <sup>1</sup> falle to my behoue	<sup>1</sup> MS. wel	572
Whan I am gon; the more we suffre heere,		
The more Ioye [shal we hauen] <sup>1</sup> ellis-where.	<sup>1</sup> MS. haue we	574
“ he offred hym-selue on-to the fadyr of blis		575
An oste ful clene, ondefiled with synne ;		
And I wil offre my body, for it is his,		
On-to his plesauns whiche I wolde wynne.		
looke 3e 3oure-self whan 3e wil be-gynne,		579
flor I am redy, in body and in goost ;		
Slee or fle, frye or ellis roost !		581
“ There shal come tyme <sup>1</sup> þou shalt repente ful sore		582
Of cruel domes whiche þou vset heere ;	<sup>1</sup> MS. the t., the overl.	
Of thi powere settest þou ful grete store,		
Whiche shal rewe the ful soone after þi beere ;		
Cristis seruauntis hast thou brente in-feere,		586
In tyme comynge therfore þou shalt be shent,		
Whan þat with feendis in helle þou shalt be brent.		588
“ The more þou threstest, the more glad am I ;		589
The moo peynes þou aplyest to me,		
The more my Ioye encreaseth, sekyrly !		
I go not alone whan þat I parte fro the,		
ffor whan I deye, many of thi mene,		593
Of thyñ housholde shul folwe me ful soone ;		
Of crist my lord haue I asked þat boone		595
“ That of thy mene right a ful grete part		596
Shul trowe in hym & leue her ydolatrye—		
Wayte a-boute with al thi sotil art,		
Thou shalt fynde[n] that I make noo lye.		
her soules fro peyne frely shul thus flye		600
570 I am 571 & r. 572 ful om. willc. myn 573 I suffyr 574		
shal I hauen 575 on om. 576 And host 582 the om. 583		
domus 585 sore 587 shalbe 588 þat þou wytþ. shalbe 591 Ioyes		
eneres 594 shal folow 596 meny 597 leuyne hire 598 þin 599		
shalle fynd 600 þus shal		

As Christ  
offerd Him-  
self as a  
sacrifice,  
so will  
Katharine  
offer herself.

But the  
Emperor  
shall burn  
in Hell.

Her death  
will turn  
many of his  
men to  
Christ.

Bk. V. Ch. 10. Streyte to heuene, & þou shalt brenne in helle.  
This thyng is sooth that I now the telle." 602

Bk. V. Ch. 11.

Ca<sup>m</sup>. XI<sup>m</sup>.

**T**hanne was þe emperour ny wood for Ire; <sup>1 r. stoden</sup> 603  
 The Emperor orders men he commaunded his men þat stood<sup>1</sup> there aboute,  
 To gete[n] ʒerdes of ful setiþ wyre; <sup>2 MS. þat were eke</sup>  
 he chase men eke<sup>2</sup> þat were of body ful stoute,  
 To hem he seyde right thus, with-outen doute: 607  
 to strip Katharine naked, "Take this mayden and strype hir modir-naked—  
 I trowe, she shal soone of [hir] sleep be waked. 609  
 "Bete hir weel, right for hir blaspheme, 610  
 To fese hem alle that troste in hir doctryne!  
 lete hir no more speken of that bethleeme,  
 Ne of that galyle shal she no more dyuyne.  
 I trowe that peyne shal hir rathere enclyne 614  
 On-to oure wil, than may besy plesauns:  
 and flog her. Doo ʒe ʒoure dedis, though that she falle in trauns." 616  
 The tormentouris haue take hir now a-syde, 617  
 Made hir naked, bak and armes ther-too,  
 They do so till her blood flows. With yern rodde as faste as thei myght<sup>1</sup> glyde <sup>1 at. may</sup>  
 Thei beten hir body, the blood gan oute goo.  
 Whanne thei were very, than cam fresh [men] moo. 621  
 Thus is she beten for hir spouses loue,  
 She trosteth on comforte þat cometh fro aboute. 623  
 She prays to God. These were hir woordis: "lord, sende me pacyens, 624  
 Make me strong to suffre þis penauns;  
 If þat I haue ronne in thyn offens,  
 lete it be purget be this same grevauns!  
 Thankynge be euere on-to thi purueauns, 628

602 trew . þe now 604 comaund, stodym hem a. 605 To fecchen  
 606 eke om. stouthre 607 Tille . hei . wylhout douthre 609 hire sl . þe  
 610 feryne . alle om. trostynne. 612 lere . spekyng 613 that om. 614  
 rether 615 þat may be oure pl. 616 deuer 617 taken . now om.  
 on syde 619 Wylth eyrend wandes . may 620 cam fast hir froo  
 621 fresh men 622 betyn 624 betyn 626 þe 627 purged  
 628 vnto . puruayns

Eternal lord, makere of man) and beeste ; Bk. V. Ch. 11.  
 Of thy seruaut<sup>is</sup> I that am the leeste, 630

“ Thanke the more for this same betyngē 631 Katharine  
thinks God  
for letting  
her suffer.  
 Than) for the welthes þat þou sent me before ;

ffor weel wot I that this tormentyngē  
 It is to me [as] a gret<sup>1</sup> tresore. 1 or. grete

ffarweel the world now for eueremore ! 635

Stele and robbe the<sup>1</sup> goodes that I haue, 1 MS. tho

I care not now neyther for tour ne caue.” 637

The tyraunt asked a-mong<sup>is</sup> this bitter peyne, 638

Whan al was blood, and [þe] bete<sup>ris</sup> wery alle :

“ What sey ye, mayde[n], wil 3e yet susteyne The Emperor  
offers to stop  
her flogging  
 Youre olde heresyē in whiche þat 3e be falle ?

If ye wyl mercy of oure godd<sup>is</sup> calle, 642 if she'll ask  
mercy of his  
Gods.

Ye shul it haue ; and ell<sup>is</sup> alle-newe game.

Er þat ye goo, I trowe 3e shal be tame.” 644

She answerde thus :<sup>1</sup> “ sir, knowe þis weel, 645

That I am strengere in body & in goost 1 Ar. 20 þus ageyn She says she  
is strong to  
suffer,

Than) [euer] I was, to suffren) euery deel,

Al-maner torment, wheder þou frye or roost.

But þou mysshaf<sup>[m]</sup>ful<sup>1</sup> dogge ful of boost, 1 Ar. 168 shameful  
Ar. 20 vnshafull ;  
r. mysshapful ?

Doo what þou wilt, for I shal strengere bee

In my sufferauns than) þou in thi cruelte. 651

“ Be-thenke þe weel on ylke-maner syde 652

how þou may slee and bryngē<sup>1</sup> now of dawē 1 r. bryngen

The crysten) puple that knowen) is so wyde,

Whiche doo no wrong but kepen) a ful true lawe :

I shal deyn) and passe this wordly wawe, 656 and to die.

ffolwen my lord and dwelle with hym in blys,

Where noo thyng is thought ne doo amys. 658 She will  
dwell with  
Christ in  
bliss.

632 sett 634 as a 635 werd 636 þe 638 amonge 639 þe beters  
 very were a. 640 mayden 641 elde. þat om. 643 shallē . alle om.  
 644 Or 645 sere 647 euer . sufferne 648 wheyther þou wolt fry  
 649 myshafull 653 Whom . or . now om. on d. 655 kepyne 656  
 dey . passene . wordes 657 folow 658 wher þat

- Bk. V. Ch. 11.* "There shal I dwelle in Ioye and al solace, 659  
 Katharine tells the Emperor he shall be in Hell,  
 Whan þou thi-self shal be in horry[b]le peyne.  
 Thou shalt desyre, but þou shalt haue noo grace,  
 Thou shalt be bounde[n] with þat wooful cheyne  
 Of obstynacye; þou shalt repente, and seyne 663  
 'Allas þat euere I wrought swiche torment  
 On-to 3on heuene[y] blessed heygh couent!' 665
- while she is in bliss in Heaven.  
 "Thus shalt þou wayle whan þou seest us<sup>1</sup> in blis, 666  
 And þou in sorwe with-oute[n] remedie, <sup>1</sup> Ar. 20 we are  
 Lyenge in peynes whiche shul neuere mys—  
 This shalt þou knowe vp hap ful hastylie.  
 Therefore fulfillle now of ire al thi malencolye, 670  
 And I shal suffren for the loue of heuene."  
 Thus scyde this lady with [a] ful boold steuene. 672

*Bk. V. Ch. 12.*Cap<sup>m</sup>. 12<sup>m</sup>.

The Emperor orders Katharine to be put in prison,

and left 12 days without food,

drink, or light.

- The emperour commaunded on-to his seruau<sup>t</sup>s an-noon)  
 They<sup>1</sup> take this mayden) and to preson) lede. <sup>1</sup> so Ar. 168;  
 he wil thei putten) hir in the depe caue of stoon),  
 Noo man) soo hardy hir for to feede.  
 "I wil," he seyth, "3e fulfyllle this in dede; 677  
 Alle these twelue<sup>1</sup> dayes whiche I shal ryde. <sup>1</sup> so Ar. 168 and 20.  
 Lete hir no mete haue, to slake hir pryde, 679  
 "Geue hir noo drynke, ne lete hir noo light haue! 680  
 ho-soo-euere trespace a-geyn) my commaundement,  
 Sco hooly Iubiter mote my soule saue,  
 Whan I come hom, he shal be brent!  
 I wyl [þat] 3e fulfillle al myn) entent 684  
 Euene streytly, with-outen) dispensacion),  
 Noo man) soo hardy of noo-maner nacion) 686

659 & in s. 660 sehalt. crybylle 661 sehalt þan d. 662 bounden  
 665 3oure. heygh om. 666 qwan 667 wyth-outen 669 ful om.  
 670 al om. 671 suffyr. of god of h. 672 þe. a ful bold 673  
 commaunde. anon 674 3e take. mayd. into p. hire 675 I wille 3e  
 put 676 in no maner hire to f. 677 þat þis be done in d. 678  
 þeis fourty. wheche þat 679 slake þerwithe h. p. 680 3eue.  
 drynke inst. of light 681 Who so oþerwyse do a. n. c. 683 some  
 shall he be b. 684 þat 3e 685 wyth-oute delacione

“Bere <sup>1</sup> hir mete or drynk or ony lyght.”	<sup>1</sup> r. To b.	687	<u>Bk. V. Ch. 12.</u>
This cruel maundement and this same decree			
Made the emperour thus ageyn) lawe & right,			
And he is ryden) forth with his mene			
Vp in to the lond, for causes whiche that hee		691	The Emperor rides into the country.
had for to doo, as potestates haue.			
Thus is this mayde allone in the caue,		693	
With-outen) comforte, with-outen solace.		694	
But crist hath not for-ge ten) his wyf			But Christ
Alle these xij. dayes of his good grace,			
he wold not leue[n] hir liche a caytyf,			
he sente doun) seruau <sup>t</sup> is fro the hous of lyf,		698	sends his Angels to comfort Katharine in prison
his Aungell <sup>i</sup> s I mene, to counforte this mayde.			
Swiche maner of woord <sup>i</sup> s thei to hir sayde :		700	
“Oure lord commaunded <sup>1</sup> that 3e shuld be glad,		701	
Suffre this disese with sobre pacyens ;	<sup>1</sup> r. commaundeth		
Mete shul 3e haue 3e neuere swhiche had,			
light hath he sent now with oure presens.			
The emperour for youre cause renneth in offens,		705	
Whiche he shal somtyme ful soore repent.”			
Thus was she comforted in hir torment		707	
With light of heuene and with heuenly mete,		708	with heavenly light and food.
With presens of Aungell <sup>i</sup> s—for thei þat hir keepe,			
Thei myght heere <sup>1</sup> noyse hough thei hir trete,	<sup>1</sup> r. heere her ?		
Thei myght see light <sup>2</sup> as it gan) creepe	<sup>2</sup> r. þe l.		
Thurgh-oute the scarres ; thei myght not sleepe,		712	
Soo haue thei meruayle of al this thyng.			
But ryght nowght tolde thei on-to þe kyng.		714	
But to other folk in the court there		715	
Sprang this woord soore hough that þis mayde			This becomes known.
Was kepte fro light, in ful grete fere,			

689 þe law of r. 690 he om. redyn 691 cause 692 don) 693  
 And þus . left alone in caue 694 ony comforthe or ony s. 696 fourty  
 697 leuyn . like 698 his s. 700 of om. þoo til hir þei 701 comaund  
 703 shalle . sweche 704 lithe . 3ow inst. of now 707 torneament  
 709 kepte 710 þe n. 711 sene . strepe 712 oute om. skarrys  
 714 nothe 716 spronge . þer inst. of soore . how.

*Bk. V. Ch. 12.* And fro mete eke, right as I sayde,  
 Katharine's And hough the gayler's were sore afrayde 719  
 miraculous help gets known. Of certeyn light at the dongeon-doore—  
 This woord in the court abouten gooth soore. 721

*Bk. V. Ch. 13.*Cap<sup>m</sup>. 13<sup>m</sup>.

The Queen hears of her cruel sentence,  
**T**he tydyng's are come to the queenes cere<sup>1</sup> or. heere 722  
 Of the cruel sentens, of the light eke,  
 hough that the mayden with-outen ony feere  
 had answered the clerks this other weke,  
 hough þat the mayde[n] with woord's meke 726  
 had turned hem to crist and hough thei were brent,  
 And she for that cause in preson was ny shent. 728

The emperour was absent, as I seyde be-fore, 729  
 fforth in to þe lond ryden in haste.

Thei toold the queen that he commaunded soore  
 That she neither mete ne drynk shul[d] taste,  
 But for pure hunger she muste deye & waste, 733  
 “These laste woord's seyde he<sup>1</sup> on the heth<sup>1</sup> <sup>1 MS. he seyde</sup>  
 No man) 3oue hir mete in peyne of deth!” 735

and pities her.  
 This meued the queen of very womanly pete 736  
 To haue compassyon of these peynes alle  
 Whiche þat this lady be very cruelte

Of the kyng had suffred; thus is she falle,  
 The Queen The queen, al in stody, walkyng in the halle, 740  
 Thenkyng besyly euere on this mayde;  
 On-to<sup>1</sup> hir-selue ful preuyly thus she sayde: <sup>1 a7.</sup> And to 742

says the Christians do no man wrong.  
 “These cristen folk's,<sup>1</sup> thei doo noo man) wrong; 743  
 Alle that thei beye, truly therfore they pay, <sup>1 a7.</sup> folke  
 On-to her god thei synge ful good[ly] song,

718 right om. as I ere 719 iaylours. so 720 dongon 721  
 gothe aboute 722 tydens. onto 723 & of 724 wjth-out 725 in  
 þat tothir 726 And how þat þe mayden) 728 is 730 redyne 732  
 shuld 734 þeis. seyd he 735 3efe. mete ne drynke ne lyght 741  
 euere om. vpon 742 And til. ful om. 743 Theis. folke 744  
 bye 745 syngyne. goodly

Newe and newe as men) seyn) euery day ; *Bk. V. Ch. 13.*  
 Wastful are thei nought in [no]<sup>1</sup> maner of aray, <sup>1</sup> MS. only 747  
 Glotones ne drunkelewe wil thei neuere bee—  
 This same lyf, ful weel it pleseth mee. 749

“ And oon of hem) had I be or now, 750  
 had not oure lawe [for]fended<sup>1</sup> us that scoole ; <sup>1</sup> MS. defended  
 If it were seyn) that I to hem drow,  
 Men shuld seyn) that I were a foole ; The Queen  
says she  
would have  
been a Chris-  
tian but for  
the Pagan  
law.  
 It myght turne me eke to mekel doole, 754  
 If that my lord myght this chaungynge knowe.  
 But in myn) herte euere there gynneth growe 756

“ A grete desyre for to see this mayde. 757  
 Allas, hough shal I fu[l]fille myn) entent ? ” She wants  
to see  
Katharine.  
 Thus be hir-selue this lady thought & sayde.  
 But in this stody ryght euene as she went,  
 happed to come, as though god hym) had<sup>1</sup> sent, 761  
 A noble knyght, a wyse man) in al thyng, <sup>1</sup> *at.* had hym A wise  
knight,  
 preuy in counsayl, right speeyal with the kyng, 763

Gouernour of knyghtis, ledere to hem alle, 764  
 A very fadir to 3ynge folkis<sup>1</sup> that shulde lere— <sup>1</sup> *at.* folke  
 Porphiry, the storyes right thus thei hym calle ; Porphiry,  
 On-to the queen) he kneled with ful sad cheere. comes to her.  
 “ I am glad, porphiry,” she seyde,<sup>1</sup> “ þat 3e been) here ; 768  
 Ye ben) a man) that may meche auayle : <sup>1</sup> *at.* she seyde, porphiry.  
 To 3ou I wil telle now my preuy counsayle. 770

“ I am so troubled newly with the<sup>1</sup> cristen) lawe, 771  
 I can) not slepe, I may not ete ne drynke ; 1 at. om.  
 Euery day, er it be-gynneth to dawe,  
 And eke al nyght on) þis mater I thynke ;  
 I trowe I am ful ny my lyues brynke, 775

747 in no. ray 748 In gloteny ne drunkchip 750 ben 751  
 forfend 752 sene 756 But 3ete. my. euere om. begynnythe to  
 757 An. sene 759 þe 760 ryght om. 761 hym. had hir  
 763 pryuy of 764 leder of 765 3onge folke 766 porphery 768  
 she seyde porphery. be 769 myche 770 now I wille tellen) 771  
 trobbled. the om. 772 neythir ete 773 or



	<i>Bk. V. Ch. 13.</i>	But I haue comfort"—right thus tho she sayde ;	
	The Queen begs Por- phyry to let	“Goode porphiry, I muste nede see 3one mayde.	777
		“Ordeyne ye the mene ryght as 3e can),	778
		Geue the gayler's golde and syluer I-nough,	
	her, with him,	Ordeyne soo þat I and ye, my man),	
		May speke this lady. to god I make a vough,	
		Looke my lord neuere soo wroth ne row,	782
	speak to Katharine.	I muste nedes speke hir, or I shal be ded ;	
		ffor in this mater myn) herte is [h]euy as led.”	784
		Porphyry seyde, “madame, it shal be doo,	785
		I shal parfoorme this thyng, trost in me !	
		In swyche degree the doores shul be [on-doo], <sup>1</sup> MS. be ordeyned for soo	
		There shal noo man) be preuy but we thre,	
		That is to sey the gayler, I, and 3e.	789
	He promises he will manage it.	Drede 3ow nought, 3e shul haue your entent.	
		With this mater haue I ben) sore torment ;	791
	Katharine has sufferd great wrong.	“Me thenketh, grete wrong this lady suffreth heere, 792	
		Soo horrybely bete[n], kepte fro mete and drynk,	
		And she noon) harm) dooth in noo manere !	
		fful ofte[n]-tyme she made me on hir thynk,	
		Sith that I herde hir the noble argument's clynk	796
		With the clerk's, whan) she conuycte hem alle.	
		Therefore, madame, falle what may be-falle,	798
	The Queen and he will see her this night.	“We wil see hir, and that with good leysur,	799
		And speke wyl) hir this same nyght fol[o]wyng.	
		Grete 3eftes wil I 3eue on-to the gaylere	
		To holde his pees and speke of this noo-thing.	
		Go 3e to chaunbre, & whane I 3eue you <sup>1</sup> warnyng,	803
		Come foorth the alone, lete your women slepe ;	<sup>1</sup> <i>at. om.</i>
		Looke ye be redy whan) I shal yow cleepe.”	805

777 me muste nedes 779 3efe. gaylere. enowe 780 3e & I may  
than 781 May om. vowe 782 & rowe 784 heuy 785 seyde om.  
787 þe dorys shalbe ondoo 788 pryuey 789 seyde 790 schal  
791 sore be 792 þat þis l. 793 horribily. beten) 794 no 795  
oftene. to thynke 796 Sithin, that om. hir herde 798 what so ;  
may om. 799 that om. 800 nyte 801 shalle. on om. 802 To  
kepe counsaile & 803 you om. 804 Comyth. & lete

Cap<sup>m</sup>. 14<sup>m</sup>.*Bk. V. Ch. 14.*

- T**hus be consent the queen) and porphirye, 806 The Queen  
 whanne alle men) slepte, to preson) are thei goo and Porphyry  
 Al alone, right soo seyth oure storie. rine's prison,
- Whanne thei too come there<sup>1</sup> and no moo, <sup>1</sup> Ar. 178 þei come  
 So grete light in preson) sey<sup>2</sup> thei thoo <sup>2</sup> Ar. 168 se 810  
 That thei falle [doun] with-oute[n] speche or breth—  
 Thei supposed neuere to<sup>1</sup> haue be so ny her deth. <sup>1</sup> om. in Ar.
- ffor that brightnesse was lyke a lyghtenyng 813 and see so  
 Whiche thei seyn) thanne, soo wonderful & soo bright bright a light  
 her witte is goo and doun) in stamerynge that they fall  
 Are thei falle now for feer of that sight. down.
- There was a sauour also with that light, 817  
 Thei felten neuere swiche, the story seyth, certeyn),  
 ffor with that sauour her comfort cam) ageyn). 819
- Tho spak the mayde swiche woord<sup>is</sup> on-to hem): 820  
 " Ryse up, sister, ryse up, brother, in-feere !  
 Crist that was bore in þe Citee of bethleem, Katharine  
 he hath called you to his scruyse here. welcomes  
 them
- Beth glad and mery, be of right good chere, 824  
 Oure lord hath chosen 3ou newly of his grace ;  
 ffor that cause he sente 3ou to this place." 826 as chosen by  
 Christ.
- Thei behelde the mayden) at that tyde 827  
 how þat she satte on knees ful mekely,  
 Many Aungell<sup>is</sup> seyn) thei on euery syde  
 With swete gumm<sup>e</sup>s anoy[n]tyng hir softly ; Angels anoint  
 Katharine's  
 wounds,
- Euere as thei touched with hand<sup>is</sup>, by & by 831  
 The flesh was heeled, þe skyn) closed ageyn),  
 Wyth meche more beute, soothly for to seyn), 833 and heal  
 them.
- Than) euere it was whil [þat] it was hole. 834  
 Thus can oure lord redresse<sup>1</sup> al doloure <sup>1</sup> r. redressen

807 slepyne 808 soo om. 809 too om. comen þer þei too &. 810  
 lithe . sow 811 fallene downe . wyth-outene 812 hopyd . a ben . hir  
 813 brytnes . lyche 814 sey . soo 2 om. 816 fallen . nowom. 817  
 þe l. 818 felt 820 maydene . on om. 823 onto 824 Be 825 chose .  
 to 827 beheldene . mayde 828 sate 829 sey . 834 whyle þat

<u>Bk. V. Ch. 14.</u>	Whiche men) suffre, be it in heed or sole, he can) in lesse tyme than an houre heleoure soores, comforteoure labour. 838 These folke, I trowe, thei had a blessed sight, full of comforte, full of heuently delight. 840
Nine or ten old men also comfort Katharine.	There sat be-syde eke sundry olde men), 841 Ycuyng comforte on-to hir heuynesse— Were thei nyne or ellys were they ten), Of her nombre haue I no sekernesse ; Thei were sente thedyr, soothly, as I gesse, 845 Be-cause this woman) was with-oute solace, hir to comforte with som heuently grace. 847
From one she takes a 5-brancht crown,	On of hem held in his hand a crowne, 848 flayre <sup>1</sup> and ryal, we can) it nozt diseryue ; <sup>1 r. So f.?</sup> Right fro his hand Kataryn) tooke it doune, To the queen) thus she seyde belyue :
and says the Queen shall wear it after death.	“ This crowne, suster, with his braunches fyue 852 Shul 3e haue and were it on youre heed, As for assay, but after that 3e ben) deed, 854 “ Thanne shul ye haue it for a <sup>1</sup> reward euerelestyng.” On-to the olde men) tho turned the mayde <sup>1 at. om.</sup> 856 Whil she helde the crowne, in þe settinge, Thus to hem with meke voys she sayde : “ ffor these persones to my lord I prayde, 859 Thei shul be wreten in the book of lyf : Therefore, sirs, as I am crist's wyf 861
The names of her and Porphyry are in the Book of Life.	“ Graunted be patent, soo wil I that 3e wryte 862 These too names in þat book for euere, Clense her synnes, make þat heuy wighte ifro my lord no more hem disseuere.

837 in halfe a houre 839 þeis . I trowe om. þere haddn . blysfull  
840 delyte 841 s. ful elde 842 on-tyll 843 þere were in cumpanye  
no mo þan nyne or tene 844 hyr nowmbre 849 reall . not 851  
Onto 852 syste . þeis 853 shall . hauene . weryne . it om. up-on  
854 after whan . be 855 shall . a om. 856 þat mayde 857 Wille .  
elde 858 tyl 859 þeis 861 seres . am om. 862 wrythe 863  
Theis 864 make so . withe 865 deseuyre

I pray to god that now falle thei neuere	866	<u>Bk. V. Ch. 14.</u>
After þat tyme that thei receyued the feyth."		
Oon) of the olderes ageyn) on-to hir seyth :	868	An Elder
" O precyous spouse of god that sitteth aboue,	869	assures Katharine that
O gemme ryal shynynge in chastyte !		
What-soo-euere þou aske of cryst þat is thi loue,		
Thou can) not fayle it, soo propicyous is hee		
On-to thi persone. therefore, trost þou me,	873	
This lady shal proue to grote perfeccion) ;		the Queen shall reach perfection,
The knyght shal haue eke swiche progressyon)	875	
" In vertuous lyf, þat thurgh his good counsayle	876	and that Porphyry shall turn 200 Pagans to Christ.
Too hundred and mo fro her fals beleue		
Shul turne to cryst, and ful soore wayle		
her false feyth whiche thei can) not proue."		
Thus haue this folk <i>'s</i> at Kataryn) taken) her leue,	880	
Walkyng to chaunbre with hertes ful suspens ;		
keepyng this mater al clos in sylens.	882	

Cap<sup>m</sup>. 15<sup>m</sup>.

Bk. V. Ch. 15.

<b>T</b> he mayde is kepte in preson) euere stille,	883	Katharine
with swiche comfort as 3e herde[n] heere ;		
Of mannes comfort hath she neyther letter ne bille,		
Noo man) dar doo it, swiche is now her feere ;		
Twelue dayes ful thus was she kepte there,	887	is fed for 12 days in prison with heavenly food.
With-oute[n] mete, but be alle these dayes		
Of heuently mete had she swete asayes.	889	
ffor he þat fedde Danyel in the lake,	890	
And caryed Abacuc soo fer oute of Iude		
To brynge hyn) vytayff, that same lord myght make		
That in preson) this mayde soo feed shuld bee.		
In storyes redde I deuers too or thre,	894	

866 now mote þei falle 867 þe . reseyyuene 868 eldest 870 realle .  
shynyst 871 soo om. 872 It can not fayle so precyous to 3ou is he  
873 to me 874 proue onto 875 þis knyte 878 shall . & ful sore  
for here synne wayle 880 þeis folke of . take 881 ful om. 883  
This maydene 884 haue herdyne 887 flourty . kepyd 888 wyth-  
outene . in . þeis 889 metis 890 D. þe prophete 891 abouthe (!)  
893 maydene . þat þus inst. of soo feed 894 þat I rede in dyuers

<i>Bk. V. Ch. 15.</i>	A fayre dowe fro heuene brought hir mete—	<sup>1</sup> overlined.
A Dove brings Katharine food from Heaven.	Whether bodyly or goostly it <sup>1</sup> is hard for to trete, ffor as Austyn <sup>d</sup> seith, þat same seed	896 897
	Whiche oure faderis receyued in wyldernesse, Whiche serued hem thanne in stede of bred, This doctour seyth in very soothfastnesse That possyble it is swiche seedes mo and lesse	901
	Shul[d] be noryshed in the eyr, be supposicyon <sup>d</sup> In the lowere part whiche hath disposycon <sup>d</sup>	903
	Somwhat to erthe acordynge in nature—	904
	This is his sentens, hoo-[so] wil it reede, In his book whiche treteth þe merueile of scripture. I trowe this same was doo heere in dede :	
The Holy Ghost feeds her with heavenly food.	The holy goost this goodly mayde gan <sup>d</sup> feede With heuenly thyng whiche had erthely kynde— Thus wene I, [but] I wil no man <sup>d</sup> bynde	908 910
	But if he <sup>1</sup> wil, for to leue my tale.	<sup>1</sup> MS. 3e 911
	She was fed—that haue we of treuthe ; If god had lefte hir in soo bitter bale With-ouen comfort, it had ben <sup>d</sup> grete reuthe. In that preson <sup>d</sup> thus leued she with-ouen <sup>d</sup> slewthe	915
On the 12th day	Alle these xij dayes. but in the last of alle, As she in preyer ful besyly gan <sup>d</sup> calle	917
	On-to crist, she saugh an heuenly syght :	918
Christ comes to her in prison,	Oure lord hym <sup>d</sup> -selue to preson <sup>d</sup> is come doun), With many Aungell <sup>s</sup> shynynge wonder bryght, With many maydenes, noon <sup>d</sup> swyche in this toun). ffor very Ioye kataryn <sup>d</sup> is falle in swoun <sup>d</sup> ;	922
and comforts her.	Oure lord comforted hir with goodly cheere, “Doughter,” he seyth, “look up whom 3e see heere !	924

896 wheythir 897 Austene 899 hyme 900 þis very doctir. very  
om. 901 more or 902 shuld. eyzere 904 to þe erde 905 who  
so 906 þe merueile om. . in se. 907 don 908 mayden 909 erdly  
910 but I wil 911 he . leuyn<sup>d</sup> 915 pryson<sup>e</sup> . thus om. she lyued .  
sleuth 916 these om. forty 918 saw 921 maydenes of ful grete  
renowne 922 felle (is om.) 923 counforth . ful goodly 924 he  
seyth om. lokyth

- “ Knowe youre makere, for whom al þis disece 925 *Bk. V. Ch. 15.*  
 3e haue suffred. take it in paciens !  
 The more 3e suffre, the more 3e me plese ;  
 keepe 3oure constauens, drede noo wordly offens,  
 Thenke not longe, lyue not with herte suspens ! 929  
 I am with 3ow, I shal you neuere forsake.  
 Many an herte ful redy shul ye make 931  
 He will never forsake her.
- “ On-to my scruyse, er 3e departe<sup>1</sup> fro this lyf ; 932 She shall  
 Grete noumbre of puple shul 3e tourne, <sup>1</sup> *al. part* turn many  
 Many an husbonde, mayde, wydewe and wyf folk to Him.  
 ff[ro]<sup>1</sup> here maumetrye shal 3e [hem tourne]<sup>2</sup> <sup>1</sup> MS. corr. : ffor  
 And to my feyth lede hem to soiourne.” <sup>2</sup> corr. : make mourne ;  
 Whan this was seyde, oure lord is up to heuene, *Ar. 168* returne.  
 With grete brightnesse, as it were a leuene. 938 He goes up to  
 Heaven.
- Shee looked<sup>1</sup> after til she seeth no more, <sup>1</sup> *Ar. 168* lokith 939  
 Returned<sup>2</sup> to prayere, as tho was hir vsage ; <sup>2</sup> returneth She prays.  
 It was to hir a ful grete tresore  
 That ihesu lest to make þat pilgrimage  
 hir hertly sorwe soo goodly for to swage 943  
 With his presens—blessed euere he bee !  
 And be this mayden, commended to hym be we ! 945

Ca<sup>m</sup>. 16<sup>m</sup>.*Bk. V. Ch. 16.*

- <sup>1</sup> *al. his*  
 W hanne these<sup>1</sup> causes arn brought fully to ende 946  
 whiche that he rood fore, Maxens now I mene,  
 he is come hom. a-noon he gan to sende  
 ffor þis mayde be sexe knyghtis, I wene ;  
 If thei ben fals, soone it shal be seene, 950  
 Thei þat kepte hir, thei shul it ouere-thynke <sup>1</sup> MS. eyther mete  
 If it be proued thei 3oue hir mete<sup>1</sup> or drynke. 952

When the  
 Emperor  
 Maxentius  
 comes home,  
 he sends 6  
 knights for  
 Katharine.

926 t. it euer 928 worldly 931 hart 932 or 3e part 933 shalle  
 3e returne 934 a . widow 935 & 6 transp. 935 ffor hire m. shalle  
 3e hem returne 936 Onto . ledyne 937 do . went up 939 sey 940  
 Returnyth . as euer was 942 lyst 943 goodly om. 945 comend  
 946 his c. arne . to þe c. 947 W yth þat . forthe 948 comyne 949  
 ffor hir . rithe as I w. 950 be 951 it shalle hem o. 952 3ouen .  
 eyther om.

<i>Bk. V. Ch. 16.</i>	Al the Citee is gadered to see þis sighte,	953
	A grete puple, some for cruelnesse,	
	Som <sup>e</sup> arn there that han ful grete despite	
The Emperor	On-to the emperor for his wykkydnesse,	
	Thei thenke this lady is put to grete distresse	957
	ffor noo cause oonly but for good.	
	The emperor seyde with ful sturdy mood :	959
	“ Brynge foorth this woman), brynge þis concyonatrix,	
orders Katharine to be brought forth.	Brynge that wytche ! noo man may turne hir herte ;	961
	In hir error is she made soo fix	
	That fro it noo man may make hir to sterte.	
	But if she doo, ful soore shal she smerte ! ”	964
	Thus is she brought be-fore <sup>1</sup> his presens.	<sup>1</sup> r. beforen
	he supposed veryly that for <sup>1</sup> abstynens	<sup>1</sup> al. for hir 966
	She had be peyned euene to the det̄h :	967
	Now looketh she fresh, [wyth] white and rody colour.	
He is furious to find her fairer than ever,	Very anger his herte now ny sleth,	
	ffor she is fayrere than she was that hour	
	Whiche he commaunded to lede hir to the tour.	971
	“ Tretoures,” he sayde, “ ȝe shul deye ilke oon,	
	But if ye telle me in this place anoon	973
	“ hoo hath fedde, a-geyn oure commaundement,	974
	This froward caytif that no man may ouerlede.	
and swears he'll find out who has fed her.	I swere be Iubiter, whiche is omnyotent,	
	It shal be wist hoo þat dede this dede !	
	There shulde <sup>1</sup> noo man for noo-maner nede	<sup>1</sup> al. shal 978
	Doo this thyng whiche we [for]fende <sup>2</sup> soo.”	<sup>2</sup> Ar. forfeuded
	he dede hem byndyn wit Iern be too and too.	980
	Thanne the mayde[n], to excuse hem alle,	981
	Seyde to the kyng swhyche-[maner] woordis, certeyn :	

953 sene . sythe 955 are . despythe 956 At the 959 stordy 960  
2 bryng forthe 961 Br. forthe ; that wytche om. 966 for hire 967  
pynyd . the om. 968 freshe wyth colour (white and rody om.)  
969 ffor very a. now om. ny it. 971 Whan . comaunde . ledyne .  
þat 972 Traytours . shal 973 if om. 978 shalle . mede 979  
forfend 980 bynd wyth eyrne 981 maydene . excusen 982 sweche  
maner

"Thou art a lord, an emperour men) the calle,		<i>Bk. V. Ch. 16.</i>
Thou art ordeyned al treuthe to susteyn);		Katharine
Thei that doo ageyn) the lawe or seyn),	985	begs the Emperor
hem shuldest <sup>1</sup> þou punyssh; but innocentis noone; <sup>1</sup> r. shuld		not to punish
If thou doo, þou doost ageyn) thi trone.	987	
"for these men) whiche had keepynge of me,	988	the jailers,
Brought me no mete ne drynke, þou vnderstande;		for they
I was susteyned al in other degree:		didn't feed
Be my lord whiche is al-weeldande;		her.
ffor be his massageris sente he me to hande	992	
Al my sustenauns—no dore myght hem lette		Christ fed her
To spere hem) oute.—sir, þou can) noo iette.	994	
"Therefore these Innocentes, do hem no torment,	995	
Thei be not worthi, sir kyng, I sey the why:		
Be hooly Aungellis my lord this mete sent,		by His
Noon) erthely creature was ther-to preuy;		Angels.
ffor hunger he wolde not suffre me to dy.	999	
he is my loue, I am his for euere,		He is her
Ioye ne sorwe shal us not disseuere."	1001	Love.

Ca<sup>m</sup>. 17<sup>m</sup>.

*Bk. V. Ch. 17.*

<b>T</b> o these woordis the tyraunt with doubelnesse	1002	The Emperor
Answerede ful faire, that thei whiche stood aboute		answers her
Shulde not suppose in hym) suche cruelnesse;		with fair-
The sturdy herte in hym whiche was soo stoute,		seeming
Was hid with langage as venyn) in a cloute;	1006	words at first.
fful fayre woordis at that tyme he sayde:		
"I am for you ful sory, most goodly mayde,	1008	
"Ye born) of kyngis, douter to kyng and queen),	1009	
Cosyn) to lordis many þat serue[n] me,		
The [best] bore woman) of this contre 3e been)—		

985 done . þi 986 shuld . ponyshe 987 dost 988 þeis 989  
 neythire m. 990 a-nothir 992 massangeres 994 sir om. caust  
 not gette 996 sere 997 me mete 999 dey 1002 Tho þeis . dobyl-  
 nesse 1003 þei þat stodync abouthe 1005 stouthe 1006 hid om.  
 venync . c'outh 1009 a kynges dowter of k. & of 1010 seruyne  
 1011 The best borne



*Bk. V. Ch. 17.*The Emperor  
tells KatharineThus arn) ye named : and al þis with sotylte  
Of certeyn) witches—cursed eueure thei bee !— 1013Is turned and lost ; for other Ioye haue ye noon)  
But Ihesu crist, mary, petir & Ion), 1015“ Whiche arn) tretoures proued be þe senat,  
And damned to deth for treson) & heresy.

Why wil 3e lese thus youre honourable astat

she has turned  
to witchcraft  
and lying.And yeue attendauns to wytcheecrafte & to lye ?  
It had ben) beter to haue kepte the same sophie 1020

Whiche þat youre maysteris lerned you first in scole !

This-maner lernynge wil proue<sup>1</sup> you a foole. <sup>1</sup> r. prouen? 1022

“ Eke ageyn) oure holy goddis seruyse 1023

Ye speke &amp; crie, and that soo malycyously,

With woordis<sup>1</sup> and cheer on)-goodly hend) despise : <sup>1</sup> at. wordeThis causeth me, I sey you suerly, <sup>2</sup> or. not-wythstand (so Ar. 168).That, not-wythstandyng,<sup>2</sup> so mote I haue mercy, 1027He must  
punish her,  
to protect his  
people.That I wolde saue you, I muste<sup>1</sup> nedes punyssh) þis pride,  
Right for my puple þat standeth heere be-syde. <sup>1</sup> at. mut 1029

She must die,

“ Therefore chese now whether þat ye wil deye 1030

Whith suche deth as lawe wil damne you too,

or deny  
Christ.

Or ellis youre feith if ye wil reneye ;

Thanne shal ye haue mercy &amp; worship eke alsoo.

Come of a-noon), lete see what ye wil doo, 1034

Offre to Iubiter, 3oure god omnyotent ;

Yourre tendre body with yern) shal ellis be brent.” 1036

*Bk. V. Ch. 18.*Ca<sup>m</sup>. 18<sup>m</sup>.Katharine  
says she**T**he mayde answerde to the emperour agayn) : 1037

“ Though that my lyf bee ful swete to me,

Yet had I leuere with a swerd be slayn)

will die  
rather than  
offend Christ.

Than) that my lyf in ony-maner degree

Shulde offende the blessed mageste 1041

1012 are 1014 is *per none* 1016 are 1017 to þe 1018 lesse  
 1019 3euyne. to 2 om. 1020 to a k. 1021 youre maysteris om. ; 3e  
 lerned fyrst 1022 I wille preue 1025 word 1026 sewirly 1027  
 not wyth-stand 1028 mut nede 1029 stand 1030 wheyde<sup>r</sup> 1031  
 sweche 1036 yrne 1038 Thou

Of my lord god. I sey the, cryst is my lyf,		<u>Be. V. Ch. 18.</u>
And grete eneres, though I deye on <sup>1</sup> knyf,	<sup>1 at. on a</sup> 1043	
" Soo that I deye in charyte and for his sake.	1044	
Therefore, thou deth come to me this hour,		Katharine welcomes death for Christ's sake.
ffor his loue ful mekely I wil it take,		
I shal neuere with myght ne with labour		
Grutche ageyn) my lord, my saueour ;	1048	
Death shal auance me with grete emolume[n]t,		Death will
Death is a chaungeour—fro this lyf present	1050	
" To beter he leedeth us, this is oure beleue ;	1051	lead her to a better Life.
Oure dedly bodyes whiche arn) corruptible,		
Whan) that he cometh he bryngeth hem to þis preue		
That thei shal reste and rote, as seith oure bible ;		
After þat restyng, yet it is possible	1055	
On-to oure lord tho bodyes to rere ageyn),		Her body will rise again.
In fayrere foorme than) eueure thei were seyn).	1057	
" Therefore, þou tyraunt with thi feyned langage,	1058	" So, Tyrant,
Doo what þou wilt, put me to torment,		
Brenne me with brondes thyn Ire for to swage !		burn me!
I wolde offre to cryst, whiche is omnipotent,		
Som plesaunt offryng, som delectable present ;	1062	
Keen) and caluern) or sheep I al forsake,		
Myn) owen) body to offeryng wil I take.	1064	I offer up my body,
" But for I may not leeffully do it my-selue,	1065	
As make this offeryng, therefore thi cruelte		
Shal bydde thi seruantes other ten or twelue		
With vengeable herte to make an ende of me.		
To hym that was offred in caluerye on a tree,	1069	to Him that died on Calvary.
To hym I offre my flesh, my blood & felle.		
But for thi cruelnesse yet efte I the telle,	1071	
" Thou shalt ful soore heer-after this thyng repent,	1072	But you shall not only go to Hell here- after;
Nought oonly in helle whiche þou shalt be Inne,		

1043 one a k. 1046 lufe 1051 ledyth 1052 are corruptible 1057  
fayrere 1058 teraunt 1063 kyin. calueryne 1064 owe 1065  
lefully 1067 eythere 1068 a hende 1070 & my felle 1073 Not.  
shalbe

374 *Katharine foretells disasters to the Emperour.* [MS. Arundel.]

	<i>Bk. V. Ch. 18.</i>	But here in eerthe shalt thou fayle thyn e[n]tent;	
	on earth you	ffor thyne <sup>1</sup> deedes, whiche arn <sup>2</sup> ful of synne,	<sup>1</sup> r. thi
		God shal rere a lord whiche <sup>2</sup> shal wynne	<sup>2</sup> r. þe whech <sup>?</sup> 1076
	shall lose your land,	Alle thi londes fro þe, and make the pore,	
		Take away thi worshiþe and thi tresore;	1078
		“Yet shal he sleyn <sup>2</sup> the, as þou art wurthi,	1079
	and your wicked head.	This wykked heed he shal make of smyte,	
		This blood shal ben <sup>2</sup> offred thanne ful solemnelly	
		On-to thi godd <sup>is</sup> right for despyte.	
		Looke my woord <sup>is</sup> that þou note & write!	1083
		This man <sup>2</sup> that shal brynge the thus of <sup>1</sup> dawe,	<sup>1</sup> at. a d.
		Shal be a lord of the cristen lawe.	1085
		“Yet may þou skape <sup>1</sup> al this grete myschauns,	1086
	Still, you may escape if you'll repent.”	If þou wilt turne the and aske god mercy,	<sup>1</sup> r. skapen <sup>?</sup>
		Of thi wikkednesse if þou haue repentauns	
		And forsake these maument <sup>is</sup> whiche stande on hy.”	
		These were the woord <sup>is</sup> whiche that þis lady	1090
		Seyde at that tyme this man <sup>2</sup> to conuerte;	
		But alle hir woord <sup>is</sup> sette he not at herte.	1092
		So semeth it weel, this lady for hoolynesse	1093
	Katharine is thus made a Prophetess;	Was soo avauuced, whil she was lyuande,	
		That god made hir as a prophetesse	
		To telle þinges þat were after comande.	
	for the ill end she foretold	ffor this same deeth, as I vnderstande,	1097
		had this same Maxcens as she seyde, truly:	
		ffor in storyes [I] am weel avysed that I	1099
		haue red of hyn <sup>2</sup> , that he wente to rome	1100
		To feyghte with oon <sup>2</sup> whiche had gouernaunce	
	befell Maxentius.	Of alle þat Citee and oonly to <sup>1</sup> his dome	<sup>1</sup> at. on-to
		Stood al þat contre with al here puissaunce,	
		Bothe Ytalie and almayn <sup>2</sup> , engelond, spayne & fraunce—	

1074 erde . schal 1075 þi . are 1076 þe wheche 1078 tresore  
1079 slee 1081 be . solennly 1083 noote 1084 a dawe 1087  
wyll 1089 þe m. 1090 are 1093 Tho 1094 lyuande 1096  
comaunde 1099 I am 1101 fyght 1102 on-to 1103 pusauns  
1104 ytayle . ynglond

Constantyn) he hyght, whiche tho baptised was Bk. V. Ch. 18.  
 Of seynt syluestre be a ful speeyal gras. 1106 The Christian  
Constantine

This same constantyn) discoumfyted in batayle 1107 conquerd  
Maxentius.

This forseide maxceus, for al his pompe & pride,  
 As this lady in prophecye, whyche myght not fayle,  
 had seyde be-fore. the fame was bore ful wyde,  
 And merked ful weel the day & eke the tyde 1111

Of sundry men), whiche afterward ful weel knewe  
 Al þat she seyde was ful stable and true. 1113

Ca<sup>m</sup>. 19<sup>m</sup>.

Bk. V. Ch. 19.

**B**vt whanne the[s] woordes were seyde of þis mayde,  
 he cryed loude to the puple a-boute— 1115 The Emperor

Soo was he with hir woordis now afrayde,  
 What he shal doo now is he fallen) in doute—

Swiche was his cry : “ fy on swiche a route, 1118 calls on his  
men

That shal suffre here a woman) þus defame  
 Oure hye goddes, her seruyse and her name ! 1120

“ hough longe shal we this witche thus susteyne? 1121  
 hough longe shal we suffre this cursdnesse ?

To alle goode leucres it shul[d] be very peyne

To here a woman) with suche sturdynesse <sup>1 MS. he cryed, he overl;  
Ar. 20 cryed he.</sup> 1125

A-geyn) alle men), the more and eke the lesse,

Thus euere-more crye<sup>1</sup>. ley on handes, for shame ! to seize

Ye stande as men), me thenketh, þat were lame !” 1127

Thus cryed this tyraunt with ful loude voys, 1128

Thus berked this dogge ageyn) th[at]<sup>1</sup> heuently name, <sup>1 MS. the</sup>  
 Ageyn) ihesu that was hanged on a cros ;

his men) a-boute hym) thus he gan) to blame ;

“ Come foorth a-noon), looke ye take þis dame, 1132

Bete hir and reende hir with Iern) and plummes of leed ! and send  
Katharine  
to death.

leue not youre labour til that she be deed !” 1134

1107 discoumfetyd 1114 þese 1116 now om. 1117 fall 1119  
 þus suffyr a w. here d. 1121 who . whyche 1123 schuld 1126 he  
 om. ; crye . hondys 1127 þat om. 1129 bergyd. þat h. 1130 a  
 om. 1131 gan he 1132 Comforthe 1133 yrne . plumbyz

*Bk. V. Ch. 19.* She was beten<sup>d</sup> newe [þan] be-form<sup>d</sup> his face, 1135  
 Katharine is cruelly  
 beaten, Soo dispitously that shame it was to see.  
 for many man<sup>d</sup> that stood tho in þat place,  
 Might not looke on hir for reuthe & pytee.  
 The tyraunt wolde neuere seyn<sup>d</sup> “now leue yee,” 1139  
 But euere he cryed: “of hir make an eende!  
 ffor if she lyue, oure puple wil she shende.” 1141

*Bk. V. Ch. 20.*Cap<sup>m</sup>. 20<sup>m</sup>.

<sup>1 on eras.; Ar. to, into</sup>  
 and led into  
 the town. **T**hus is she bounde & ledde foorth in<sup>1</sup> the toun. 1142  
 The puple that folwed, on hir thus gunne thei crye:  
 “O noble mayde, whi wil ye not falle doun  
 On-to the emperour and of hym aske mereye?  
 We are ful sory þat youre fayre bodye 1146  
 It is soo reent, 3oure skyn<sup>d</sup> is al to-tore;  
 But ye asken<sup>d</sup> mercy, ye arn<sup>d</sup> lost for euere more. 1148  
 “What woman are ye that soo despyse youre age, 1149  
 Youre body, youre beute þat ye sette at nought?  
 Ye may haue wurship, ye may be sette in stage  
 Ryght as a goddesse—where-on is your thought?  
 And al the world for beute shulde be bought, 1153  
 here myght thei fynde yt,<sup>1</sup> thei nede no ferthere seeke.  
 Sith ye be wys, sith ye be hoolde soo meke, <sup>1 MS. þt. at. it</sup> 1155  
 “Whi wil ye not obeye on-to the kyng? 1156  
 Beter it is to bowe, than<sup>d</sup> velenously<sup>1</sup> to be dede. <sup>1 at. vylensly</sup>  
 In youre bokis, I trowe, ye lernel this thyng:  
 The grete dignyte may ye not doun<sup>d</sup> trede,  
 It longeth to you to obeye on-to youre hede. 1160  
 Sith it is right, [why] wil ye not it doo?  
 We wolde doo thus, if ye counseilden<sup>d</sup> us soo. 1162  
 “Ye lese the flour of youre virginyte, 1163  
 Ye lesen þat god plenteuously in you sette,

The people  
sorrow for  
her,and urge her  
to give way to  
the Emperor.

1135 bete new þan befor 1137 many a 1139 sey 1140 an hende  
 1143 thei om. 1147 It om. 1148 aske. are 1153 werde 1154  
 it inst. of þat 1157 vylensly 1161 why wyll 1162 councelled  
 1164 lese

Ye lese youre herytage, ye lesen) your degree, Bk. V. Ch. 20.  
 Al for on) woord whiche that is youre dette. <sup>1</sup> MS. knette The  
 Ouere-soleynly thenke we that youre herte is [s]ette<sup>1</sup> 1167 Alexandrians  
 Whan) that [no] counseiH may you reden)<sup>2</sup> ne rayle,  
 Most speccyaly whan) it is youre awayle — ” <sup>2</sup> *at. lede* 1169  
 Swiche word*s* spak the puple there-about. 1170  
 “ Remembre yow, mayde, what ye shal now lese, still urge  
 Al for youre herte, for it is soo stoute. Katharine  
 ffeyneth som plesauns, sith ye may not chese ! to feign  
 Bothe body and bones with betyng [wyll 3e lese] ;<sup>1</sup> 1174 compliance,  
 Oones mercy may avoyde al this — <sup>1</sup> MS. he wil you fese  
 This is oure counseyl, it may 3ou bryng to blis. 1176  
 “ Youre white skyn) þat shyneth as the svnne,<sup>1</sup> 1177 and save her  
 Ye wil shende it, and make it pale and wan), <sup>1</sup> corr. : *sonne* skin.  
 ffor very betyng it wil ben) al dvnne ;<sup>2</sup> <sup>2</sup> corr. : *donne*  
 Youre blood ryal, whiche now þat<sup>3</sup> no man) <sup>3</sup> *Ar. 20 wh. þat now*  
 In these dayes remembre noon) hyere can), 1181  
 This wil 3e spyll right vp-on [þe] grounde.  
 Youre counseiH in this is neyther saue ne sounde.” 1183

Cam. 21m.

Bk. V. Ch. 21.

“ O wycked counsel ! ” seyde the mayde ageyn), 1184 She  
 “ Go to youre werk*s*, and thenke no more on me ! reproaches  
 ffly on beute, that wil with wynde and reyn) them.  
 Be steyned ful sone ! my fayrenesse whiche þat 3e Her beauty  
 Compleyne soo sore, though [þat] I lyue [parde]<sup>1</sup> 1188 will fade ;  
 And falle in age, yet wil it [þan] apeyre ; <sup>1</sup> MS. so longe as it may be  
 Thanne for my flesh falle ye not in dyspeyre ! 1190  
 “ But troste ye this as for a sekernesse : 1191  
 Alle oure bodyes, be thei neuere so bryght, her body will  
 Shal deye and rote<sup>1</sup> in her wretchednesse — <sup>1</sup> r. *roten* die and rot.  
 ffor this same deth longeth on-to vs be<sup>2</sup> right, <sup>2</sup> *at. of*

1165 lese 1166 a w. 1167 solenly. sette 1168 no c. . lede ne  
 1174 he om. wyll 3e lese 1176 consell 1177 whyght. sune 1179  
 wylbe. dunne 1180 reall 1181 no 1182 þe gr. 1183 counsell  
 1188 þow; þat I lyue parde 1189 it þan 1194 of ryght

<i>Bk. V. Ch. 21.</i>	Condemned for synne be the prouydens & the sight	1195
Katharine says that	Of god oure lord. what shal we thanne soo wayle ffor fykel beute that soo sone wyl quayle?	1197
every man must rote,	“Euery man) muste thus, as of necessitye, Deye and rote, but if that speecial grace Be graunted to some of that deite—	1198
save those pure folk	ffor somme with clenness ben <sup>1</sup> there þat purchace Swiche dispensacyon) þat in what-manner place	1202
	Thei be leyde, thei shal neuere rote, fflessħ ne senewe[s], voynes, sheete ne cote.	1204
to whom exemption is granted.	“This speecyalte is to hem graunted heere That keepe here bodyes fro al onclennesse Of lust and filthe, and fro that loue on-clere Whiche þei calle letcherie—it is no loue, I gesse, I calle it rathere a wylde rage of wodenesse.	1209
	But now to purpos : thei þat keepe hem clene, Thei haue this pardon) graunted, as I wene ;	1211
	“And if my lord my loue wil graunte it me That after my deeth my flesħ shal not rote, Thanne am I more bounde on-to his deyte Thanne euere I was, & <sup>1</sup> this I hym be-hote,	1212
	There shal neuere man) make me soo to doote That I shal leue his loue or his plesanns.	1216
The people	Therefore ye puple, leue this obseruauans,	1218
	“ffolweth noo lengere, gooth hond) to your werke, Weepe not for me, but for your-self ye wayle !	1219
are to wail for themselves, not for her.	I shal deye bodyly, but be-cause I haue the merke Of crystes baptem), I shal skape that grete asayle Of alle the feendes whiche with grete trauayle	1223
She will escape the Devil,	Are ful besy oure soules for to gete On-to her preson) where thei shal hem bete.	1225
and rise fairer than ever.	“This shal I escape, and ofte <sup>1</sup> ryse ageyn), In fayrere foorme than) euere ye seyñ) in me—	1226
	1197 fekyllē 1199 but of 1201 b <sub>3</sub> 1204 senowis 1208 it is om. 1215 & þis 1225 persone 1227 sey	

<sup>1</sup> MS. byen<sup>1</sup> MS. in<sup>1</sup> Ar. 20 after

I beleue and troste this thyng as for certeyn). Bk. V. Ch. 21.  
 Therefore, seres, for youre-selue weepe yee,  
 ffor youre errour that ye in derkenesse bee ! 1230  
 ffor if ye deye[n] in this same errour, <sup>1 Ar. rysyng</sup>  
 Youre rerynge<sup>1</sup> ageyn) shal cause you grete dolour." 1232  
 Many of hem þat herde[n] hir thus speke, 1233 Many who  
hear Katha-  
rine, turn to  
Christ.  
 Were conuerted to crist, oure saueour ;  
 fful preuily her maumentis dede thei breke  
 Whiche þat thei hadde in ful grete honour ;  
 With-drowe hem fro synne and wayled her errour, 1237  
 Al preuily, soole, heuy as oony leed,  
 ffor natural fer, that thei shulde not be deed. 1239

**Cap. 22<sup>m</sup>.**

Bk. V. Ch. 22.

**T**here was a man) in Alisaundre at þat tyme, 1240  
 Meyer and leedere of alle the puple there The Mayor of  
Alexandria  
 Vnder the emperour, punyshere of alle cryme ;  
 Of whom the cytee had ful meche[!] fere,  
 Venemous in anger was he as a<sup>1</sup> bere, <sup>1 at. any</sup> 1244 is a bad man,  
 Dispetous, vengeable, with-oute discrecyon)—  
 Cursates thei called hym thurgh-oute þe toun. 1246 Cursates.  
 he sey the emperour in anger and wodnesse, 1247 He advises  
the Emperor  
 And of pure malice sette hym more on feere ;  
 “ O emperour,” he seyde, “ thy wysdam), as I gesse,  
 Shulde make the ashamed of this matere heere,  
 That oon wenche shulde brynge the thus in dwere ; 1251  
 Thou standest stoyued as though þou were bounde.  
 listen) my counseyl therfore now a stounde. 1253  
 “ This mayde Kataryn) sey yet noo torment 1254  
 Whiche shulde fese hir, to make hir afrayed ;  
 Therefore, sir, I telle you myn) entent :  
 We shal make thyng soo horrybely arayed to make a  
horrible  
engine of  
torture for  
Katharine.

1231 deye 1233 herde 1238 And pr. 1241 ledyr (!) 1242  
 puncherz 1243 mechille 1244 venemous . oony bere 1245 dis-  
 pitous ueniabill 1249 wisdom) 1251 o 1254 Katereyne 1255  
 hir 2 om. 1256 ser 1257 a þing (a overlined)



<u>Bk. V. Ch. 22.</u>	It shal be dred or it be fully assayed ;	1258
	lete hir sec oony's this thyng I shal deuynse,	
	She shal leue sone thanne, I trowe, al this gyse.	1260
The Emperor's workmen are	“ Commaunde werkmen) for to obeye to me,	1261
	I shal be mayster, thei shal doo her werke ;	
	ffor I haue conceyued now a newe cruelte,	
	fful sekirly therof haue I take my merke.	
	In this mater bothe counterollere and clerke	1265
	Wil I bee, and noo man) but my-selue,	
	Werkemen) wil I haue with me ten) or twelue.	1267
	“ Thus haue I deuynsed in my besy thought :	1268
to make 4 great Wheels	ffoure grete qwhcles thus shul we make,	
	In swiche-maner wyse shal thei be wrought,	
	What-maner thyng that euere thei take	
	Anoon) in pecis thei shul it reende & shake	1272
	With her sharpenesse whiche þei shul haue ;	
	ffor alle the spokes that come fro the naue,	1274
with sharp nails on their spokes,	“ Shul haue nayles sharpe as a knyf,	1275
	I-fastned to the sercles rounde al-aboute.	
	There is no man) now that bereth lyf,	
	Be his herte neuere soo styf and stoute,	
	And he be oony's In, hee cometh not oute	1279
	Or he be decd and al) to pecces drawe—	
	Right be experiens þis thing shal ye knawe.	1281
and saws on their tethes, hookt,	“ Sharpe sawes shul thei haue somewhat coked,	1282
	Nayled on-to the wheles on þe vtter syde ;	
	In swiche-maner foorme thus shul þei be hooked,	
	Eche of hem) be other fful sotilly shal glyde,	
some up, some down, that will tear everything between them to bits.	Somme shul come vpward with her cours wyde,	1286
	Somme shul goo downward, & þus shal þei rende	<sup>1</sup> MS. and
	Alle thyng be-twyx hem) & thereof maken) an <sup>1</sup> ende.	1288
	“ Therefore lete these wheles be made now in hast ;	1289
	Sette the mayde right be-[twyx] <sup>2</sup> hem whan) þat thei goo,	
	<sup>2</sup> M.S. be, Ar. 20 be-twene	
	1259 þat I 1265 controllere 1276 I-fastned 1279 com 1281 we	
	1283 qwelys 1286 shallc 1288 make 1289 qwcles. now om. 1290 be	

She shal ben) afrayed, or she hem taast—		<i>Bk. V. Ch. 22.</i>
There is noo man) lyuenge hath seen) swiche wheles moo.		Katharine will be afraid of these awful Wheels.
This same deuyse shal plesse youre lordshipe soo,"	1293	
Seyde this Cursates, "ye shuln) cun) me thanke ;		
Yonder wil we make hem) right on the banke."	1295	
The emperour commaunded, & þat in hasty wyse,	1296	The Emperor orders Cursates's Wheels.
These wheles shul[d] be made, & þat an-noon),		
Right as Cursates thus can <sup>1</sup> deuyse.	<sup>1</sup> = gan	
Thei arn) called foorthi, bothe robyn) and Iohn),		
Carpenters and smyghtes, as faste as þei may goon) ;	1300	
Thei hewe and thei blewe ful soore, leueth me !		
The wheeles musten) be redy with-inne dayes thre.	1302	

Cap<sup>m</sup>. 23<sup>m</sup>.

*Bk. V. Ch. 23.*

Now it is come, the same thredde day ;	1303	On the 3rd day the Wheels are ready,
The wheeles arn) redy sette as thei shal bee ;		
She is brought forth, Kataryn) þis same may,		
Right betwyx hem sette now is she ;	<sup>1</sup> MS. before seyde we	and Katharine is set between them.
Too wheeles goo downward, as [we seyde, <i>parde</i> ], <sup>1</sup>	1307	
And too reende vpward—there is noon) that it seeth		
But for feer he gruggeth with his teeth.	1309	
O noble mayde, hough shalt þou scape this thyng?	1310	
This Irous emperour, he is noot thi frende,		
The meyer is cruel in his ymagynyng,		
fior he hath stodied with al herte and meende		
Thi virgynal body to destroye and shende ;	1314	
There is noo comforte but fro the courte aboute—		She has no comforte but Jesus.
he wil not fayle the, Ihesu that is thi loue.	1316	

Thus is she sette, and likly to be reent,	1317
With al her labour the seruaunt's dresse her gere ;	
Thei tarye somewhat [be-cause] that hir entent	
Thei wene to chaunge[n] right for very fere.	

1291 be . he 1292 sey 1294 shulle 1297 shuld . anone 1298  
gan 1299 are 1300 Carpenteres . smythes 1302 must 1303 is  
it . þat s. thrid 1304 are 1307 as we seyde *parde* 1308 seythe  
1310 who shall 1311 nothe 1312 meyhir 1313 hir 1319 be-cause  
þat 1320 chaunge

- Bk. V. Ch. 23.* hir eyne and handes ful mekely gan<sup>d</sup> she rere 1321  
 Vp on-to heuene, swiche was hir oryson<sup>d</sup> : <sup>1</sup> *al. om.*  
 Katharine "Lord god," she seyde, "that made bothe<sup>1</sup> sonne & mon),  
 prays to God  
 "Lord that art al-mygthy in mageste, 1324  
 Thou can<sup>d</sup> alle thyng and may fulfille in dede ;  
 Lord that neuere hydest thy grete pytee  
 ffro tho folke that cry[n]e on-to the at nede,  
 O lord of lord<sup>is</sup>, my prayere þou may spede : 1328  
 I prey the, lord, with ful besy entent  
 That þou destroye this horryble newe torment ; 1330  
 "Make thi thunder descende now with the leuene, 1331  
 Brenne it, breke it, lord ; this tyme, I praye,  
 to strike the **Torture-**  
**Wheels with**  
**lightning,**  
 Shewe thi power, open now thyn<sup>d</sup> heuene,  
 That men<sup>d</sup> may knowe þi lordshype at this daye—  
 It is ful esy to the to make heere swiche afraye, 1335  
 And to the puple it is ful merueylous.  
 Goode blyssed lord, þat art soo gracyous, 1337  
 "This aske I not for ony fere of deeth, 1338  
 not because **she fears**  
**Death,**  
 But for thi<sup>1</sup> puple that standeth<sup>2</sup> here-about ; <sup>1</sup> *r. the ?*  
<sup>2</sup> *al. stand*  
 Me thenketh, lord, her langage myn<sup>n</sup> hert sleeth,  
 That þei with toung<sup>is</sup> and woord<sup>is</sup> proude and stoute  
 Shuld blaspheme thy name, and putte in doute 1342  
 Thi true feyth. this is, lord, my cause,  
 To shryue me shortly to the in a clause, 1344  
 "That thei shulde troste thi myght & þi powere 1345  
 And honoure thi name, [&] be conuerted eke,  
 Be turned fro maument<sup>is</sup> whiche þei wurshipe heere,  
 and turn to **God,**  
 The, lord, onoly her god for to seeke.  
 This prey I the with herte lowe and meke ; 1349  
 Graunte me this as thou art omnypotent,  
 Suffre not thi seruau<sup>nt</sup>is with maument<sup>is</sup> be circumuent !"

1321 yne 1323 bothe om. . sune 1325 & myn f. 1327 cryne  
 1331 þi l. 1332 lord om. I the 1333 thy 1335 to 2 om. 1339  
 stand 1346 & be 1348 þe lord godd only forto s.

Cap<sup>m</sup>. 24<sup>m</sup>.

Bk. V. Ch. 24.

- W**hanne þat this lady had ended hir orison, 1352 At Katharine's prayer  
 A-noon) and) aungel was sent down fro heuene ;  
 With wynde and thunder tho can) he down),  
 There can) with hym) eke an horryble leuene—  
 The houre of the day, thei sey, it was but seuene, 1356  
 But er eyte ; he with wynd and feere  
 Brake alle the wheles, thei fleyn) heere and there, 1358 the Torture-  
 Wheels fly in  
 pieces,  
 Thei spryngyn) aboute be pecys in the place. 1359  
 Somme haue<sup>1</sup> harm) on legges and on) knes, <sup>1</sup> Sum man hath  
 Somme men)<sup>2</sup> am) hurt on handes and on) face. <sup>2</sup> at. om.  
 The feer flei [ful] wundryrly with the trees.  
 Meche of the puple haue take there her fees : 1363  
 Thei that blasphemed oure god with cruel herte,  
 ffro this vengeauns thei may not lightly sterte ; 1365 and kill the  
 blasphemers,  
 The lady sat stille, for she felt noo grevauns, 1366  
 Makyng hir preyer with gret deuocyon).  
 Thus can) oure lord for hese make purueauns,  
 Thus can) he shape hem her sauacyon).  
 Thus dede he somtyme in the calde nacyon) 1370  
 Whan) that his seruaunt/s in the ouene were sette,  
 Where that þe feer of his myght was lette ; 1372  
 ffor thei in the ouene were noo-thing brent, 1373  
 But þei a-boute it, thei took the harm).  
 This lady is lyke hem in this myracle present :  
 The fyre flei aboute hir, and in hir barn)  
 It rested ofte-tyme, but she was not warm), 1377 though  
 Katharine  
 is unhurt.  
 Ne hurt ne harmed in no-manner degree.  
 Yet was this fyre soo horryble that hee 1379  
 Brente the wheles and threw hem) alle-aboute,<sup>1</sup> 1380 4000 Pagans  
 are burnt.  
 Brent men eke, and tho were not fewe<sup>2</sup>— <sup>1</sup> This v. follows 1383 in  
 the MS. <sup>2</sup> r. a fewe ?

1353 a 1357 or 1358 breke . qweyls . flei 1359 spryng 1360  
 Summe man hathe 1361 men om. are 1362 þere flei feze ful w.  
 1368 his 1375 lyche 1377 of tyme 1379 fere 1380 alle om.

<u>Bk. V. Ch. 24.</u>	ffoure thousand, sey[th] oure story with-oute[n] dowte, Were ded with the blast, leyde alle on) rewē Of hethen) caytyues, [shrew rith be shrewe], <sup>1</sup> 1384 herowdes noumbred hem) for thei can) best. <sup>1</sup> MS. right a shrewe rowte
Katharine sits still.	The lady sat stille in hir holy nest, 1386 Knelande deuoutely in sobyr prayere. 1387
The Angel and Fire go back to Heaven.	The AungeH and feer bothe thei took her weye To place thei can) fro—for <sup>1</sup> men) myght hem here <sup>1</sup> <i>at. om.</i> Bothe in her comyng and goynge, thei seye. Mechel fook <sup>1</sup> for feere were in poynt to deye, 1391 Sauē þat the comforte of this swete may <sup>1</sup> <i>at. folke</i> Lefte hem) a-geyn) <sup>2</sup> fro þat a fray. <sup>2</sup> Ar. 20 vp ageyn 1393 This is the ende of al this costful werke. 1394
The Heathen are sad,	hoo arn) now woo but hethen men) there? hoo arn) now mery, hoo gonne her frontes merke
the Christians glad.	But crysten) folkys, whiche han) skaped this feere? 1397 Somme <sup>1</sup> for vengeauns may not goo ne stere. <sup>1</sup> <i>at. Sum men</i> Thus oon) syde is in Ioye, the other in sorwe & care. Of swliche-maner vengeauns lete euery man) be ware! 1400

Bk. V. Ch. 25.Ca<sup>m</sup>. 25<sup>m</sup>.

The Emperor is wild,	<b>N</b> ow is the emperour oute of mesure wood, 1401 ffor alle fayleth and falleth þat now shul[d] <sup>1</sup> stande; ffor very anger he rente habyte and hood, <sup>1</sup> <i>at. shuld now</i>
and reproaches Saturn	“Saturne,” he seyde, “why take ye not on hande Youre owen) cause <sup>1</sup> ? for, as I vndirstande, <sup>1</sup> MS. causes 1405 This vengeauns is repugnynge to your deyte. Where is now youre myght? where is now hee, 1407
and Jupiter.	“Iubiter, youre sone, that hath the gouernauns 1408 Ouere these ciclopes, smethes I mene, Whiche with her thunder make the erthe to dauns, Soo it is aferd of the strokes keene?

1382 seythe . wyth-outen<sup>1</sup> 1383 on rowe 1384 shrew rith be  
shrewe 1385 heraudes . coud 1389 for om. 1391 Meche folke  
1393 lyft 1394 al om. 1395 who are n. who 1396 gunc . frutes  
1397 folke . hathē 1398 Sume mene 1399 o 1402 shuld now  
1405 cause 1409 smythis 1410 erde

But ye defende yow, youre offerynge wil be lene. 1412 Ms. V. Ch. 25.  
 Rise vp ye godd<sup>is</sup>, and suffre not þis wrong! <sup>1</sup> Ar. 168 wondir  
 Me thenketh, ye abyde now wondyrly<sup>1</sup> long." 1414

In al this care the queen, that stood aboue 1415 The Queen,  
who has seen  
all,  
 hy in a tour for to be-holde this sight,  
 Whiche on-to that tyme had bore the loue  
 fful preuily in hir herte of god al-myght,  
 Now wil she pleyndly [rith] be-forn) hy[s s]ight<sup>1</sup> 1419 resolves to  
speak out.  
 Vtter hir herte, falle there-of what falle; <sup>1</sup> MS. hym right  
 She is come doun), and hir seruaunt<sup>is</sup> alle, 1421

To the presens of hir lord; thus thanne she sayde: 1422  
 "Thou wretched husbonde, what [h]ast þou I-doo?  
 Whi tormentest þou soo wrongly this goodly mayde?  
 A-geyn the grete god whi wrestillest þou soo?  
 What woodenesse maketh the with care & woo 1426  
 To pursue godd<sup>is</sup> seruaunt<sup>is</sup> with peyne & deeth?  
 O cruel best, whan) þou shalt yelde thi breth, 1428

"Wh[i]dir<sup>1</sup> wylt þou sende thi wretchede goost? 1429  
 Thou fyghtest ageyn) the prykke, þat shalt þou fynde;  
 ffor whan thou art hiest and in pryde most, <sup>1</sup> MS. whedir and tells him  
that God will  
abuse his  
pride.  
 Oure lord god ful soore shal the bynde.  
 Turne thyn) bestialte to mannys mynde! 1433  
 knowe the grete power of thi god aboue,  
 Whiche werketh soo wonderly for hem þat hym) loue! 1435

"The grete myghty god of crysten men), 1436  
 See what he dede this ilke same day:  
 With oon) thunder-clap, of thi lord<sup>is</sup>, ten)  
 Smet he to deth—þou thi-self it say;  
 ffoure thousand of [þe] comouns in her aray 1440 and 4000 of  
his commons.  
 Thei lyn) yonder ded—hoo shal hem reyse?  
 If appollo doo it, I wil than hym<sup>1</sup> preyse. <sup>1</sup> *at.* hym than 1442

1414 now om. 1416 hey 1417 to om. 1418 hir om. 1419  
 ryth before his syth 1421 now come 1422 the om. 1423 hast  
 1425 wrestyllist 1429 whidir 1430 fytyst. shalle 1433 þi 1434  
 þi, grete om. 1436 myty 1438 a 1439 þe deth 1440 þe comonys  
 1441 ly. who. 1442 hym þan

*Bk. V. Ch. 25.*

The Queen bids the Emperor forsake his Idols and turn to God.

“ he that with oon strook may swyche thyng make,  
 he is a lord : I counseyl,<sup>1</sup> knowe hym for thi kyng! 1444  
 Thi false maumentrye I reede thou forsake, <sup>1</sup> I c. at. om.  
 Turne the to that lord that made al thyng!  
 The synnes that we dede w[h]il we were ying, 1447  
 he wil forgeue vs, if we *mercy* craue ;  
 Aske *mercy* of hym and thou shal it haue.” 1449

Whan the tiraunt herde what the queen sayde, 1450  
 “ Woman,” seyde he, “ wote ye what ye say ?

I am ful seker ye haue spoken<sup>1</sup> with the mayde <sup>1</sup> at. 3e spoke  
 Whan I was oute on the<sup>2</sup> other day. <sup>2</sup> at. on om.; þis 1453

A-vyse yow<sup>3</sup> som-what beter [or 3e asay]<sup>4</sup> <sup>3</sup> MS. yow weel  
<sup>4</sup> MS. of this affray, on eras.

The horryble peynes whiche þat ye shal haue,  
 Your freendes ne youre kynrede shal you not saue. 1456

“ ffor be the hye mageste of oure godd<sup>is</sup> alle, <sup>1</sup> at. om.  
 And be the gracyous<sup>1</sup> pr[o]uydens<sup>2</sup> of Iubiter, oure<sup>3</sup> kyng,  
 But 3e fro these fonnes,<sup>4</sup> and that in hast, falle, <sup>3</sup> at. þe

Dame, ye shal haue as foule an endyng <sup>4</sup> at. þis fonnednes  
 As euere had woman, eyther old or ying, 1461

In youre dayes. therefore avyse you weel!  
 ffor, thou youre god hath broken oure whel 1463

“ [Be]<sup>1</sup> wytche-craft or [be] nygromauney, <sup>1</sup> MS. In 1464

Troste me in this, we shal ordeyne a mene  
 ffor to destroye the<sup>1</sup> fals tretcherye. <sup>1</sup> at. 3omr

What, art thou [now], dame, led on that rene ?

Thi witte<sup>1</sup> counte I not worth a beene <sup>1</sup> MS. with 1468

Whan þou forsakest þi godd<sup>is</sup> protectyon  
 And as a fool takest the crysten illusyon.” 1470

*Bk. V. Ch. 26.*Cp. 26<sup>m</sup>.

He orders her to be seized.

**T**hus in his anger and in his grete Ire 1471  
 he byddeth his mynystres to take the queene,

1443 a 1444 I counseyl om. 1452 3e spoke 1453 on om. þis  
 1454 weel om. sumwhat or þat 3e asay 1455 shul 1456 kynrod  
 1457 be þat. of þe 1458 be þat. gracyous om. prouydens. þe  
 kyng 1459 þis fonnednes 1460 an om. 1461 eld 1464 Be. or be  
 1466 3oure f. 1467 þou now 1468 witte. I om. w. to a 1469 þe g.

With sotil launces made of Iern) wyre	1473	<i>Bk. V. Ch. 26.</i>
Thei shul <sup>1</sup> rende hir tetes right a-noun) be-deene; <sup>1</sup> MS. shuld		The Emperor
In his presens it shal be doo, <sup>2</sup> for he wil it scene; <sup>2</sup> <i>al.</i> þei shal		orders his
longe peyne and woo <sup>3</sup> he wil his wyf shal haue, <sup>3</sup> <i>al.</i> Long sorow		Queen's teats
"lete see," he seyth, "if crist shal hir now saue!"	1477	to be torn
After this is doon), he wil thei hir take,	1478	out,
leede hir to the feeld there tretours alle		
han) as thei haue deserued; <sup>1</sup> tey hir to a stake,		
Smyte of hir hed & lete it doun) falle; <sup>1</sup> <i>al.</i> deserue, haue om.		and her head
lete it lyn) there, hungry dogg's shalle	1482	struck off,
Ete it and deuoure in despyte of Ihesu. <sup>1</sup> <i>al.</i> men		for dogs to
As the tiraunt bad, his seruaunt's <sup>1</sup> dede pursue:	1484	eat.
Thei pulled hir tetes in ful horryble wyse	1485	His men pull
Right fro hir brest—pitee it was to <sup>1</sup> see <sup>1</sup> MS. te		her teats out.
Th[e] <sup>2</sup> blood in the veynes with the mylke ryse; <sup>2</sup> MS. That		
Al rent and ragged and <sup>3</sup> blody was shee. <sup>3</sup> <i>al.</i> all		
Yet on-to Kataryn) she fel doun) on knee,	1489	She kneels,
preyng ful doolfully, and ryght thus she sayde:		and begs
"O crysten p[eler], <sup>1</sup> o moost holy mayde, <sup>1</sup> MS. puple	1491	Katharine
'Prey now for me on-to thi lord aboue,	1492	to pray that
That this peyne whiche I suffre heere		
Oonly for his wurshipe, his feyth & his loue,		
May ben) to my soule a suffieynt cheere		
Whan) I shal come to that blis ful cleere	1496	she may go
Whiche thou be-hight me not longe agoo.		to heaven,
Prey eke for me that I may kepe alsoo	1498	
"The same good purpos whiche I am Inne,	1499	
That this peyne horryble make me not reneye <sup>1</sup> <i>al.</i> þis holy lyfe, to		and not deny
The lawe of you cristen, for more ne for mynne; <sup>1</sup>		the Christian
I am soore <sup>2</sup> a-ferde my flesh, er þat I deye, <sup>2</sup> MS. ful s.		faith.
ffor very dred the contrarie shuld seye:	1503	

1473 yruue 1474 shul 1475 þei shall do it 1476 longe sorow  
and woo om. þat his 1479 tretoures 1480 haue. haue om.;  
deserue 1482 lye . it schulle 1483 it om. 1484 hys men 1486  
from 1487 þe 1488 all bl. 1490 euyr inst. of ryght 1491  
pelere 1495 be . sufficyaunt 1501 þis holy lyffe to turne ageyne  
to synne 1502 ful om. . or 1503 þe c. of þis



Bk. V. Ch. 26. Wherefor, lady,—al this lyth in the,—  
prey thou to god that he may kepe me!" 1505

The mayde<sup>1</sup> seyde on-to the queene ageyn): <sup>1 r. mayden</sup> 1506

Katharine assures the Queen that  
"O blyssed lady, þat hast forsake al thyng,  
Croune and Loye, shortly for to seyn),

she has won Christ.  
And wonne the therefore oure heuene kyng,<sup>1</sup> <sup>1 at. þe lufe þerfore of oure k.</sup>  
Crist I mene; make now noo stakeryng 1510

As in this mater, for he shal make the strong  
ffor whoos loue þow sufferest [now þis]<sup>1</sup> wrong. <sup>1 MS. meche</sup>

She will please Him by her suffering,  
"Suffre<sup>1</sup> hertely al this grete disese, <sup>1 MS. Suffre now</sup> 1513

It shal not lesten) but a lytil space;

Cryst youre lord her-with shal ye plesse,

Whiche hath graunted of his speycal grace

and will see His face this day.  
That this same day shal ye seen) his face. 1517

A meruelous chaunge, lady, shal it bee,

Whanne þat ye come be-forn the trinite: 1519

"ffor temporal lond, ye shal<sup>1</sup> haue heuene[ly] blys; 1520  
<sup>1 MS. shal ye</sup>

ffor erthely husbonde, y[our]<sup>1</sup> spouse shal bec he<sup>2</sup> <sup>1 MS. ye 2 MS. he bec</sup>

That may alle thyng a-mende<sup>3</sup> þat is a-mys, <sup>2 at. am. all þing</sup>

A lord þat dwelleth euere in felicyte,

A lord þat hath neuere [non]<sup>1</sup> aduersite; <sup>1 MS. ony</sup> 1524

Thus shal ye chaunge, lady, on-to the beste.

Katharine will soon join her.  
I shal not long ben) absent fro þat reste."<sup>1</sup> <sup>1 at. nest</sup> 1526

Thus is she comforted, this noble cristen) queene,<sup>1</sup> 1527

Thus is she stabled myghtyly in oure feyth, <sup>1 In the MS. v. 1527 and 9 are transposed.</sup>

Thus is she led with knyghtis, as I wene,

The Emperor bids his men make an end of the Queen.  
And euere the emperour on-to his meny seyth

fful boystous woordis, strokis eke he leyth 1531

Vp-on) her bakkys, that they shulde make an ende

Of this woman). for now hir tetes<sup>1</sup> thei reende, 1533

<sup>1 at. hir t. now</sup>

1504 lyghte 1509 þe lufe þerfore of. heuene om. 1512 lufe .  
now þis w. 1513 now om. 1514 lest 1517 se 1519 þat om.  
before 1520 3e shul. heuently 1521 þour sp. sha'be he 1522  
amend alle þing 1524 non 1525 shul 1526 be . nest 1527-9 in  
their right place. 1532 a. e. 1533 for hire tetys now

As I seyde her; anon<sup>1</sup> after that grete payne, 1534 *Bk. V. Ch. 26.*  
 With a sharp swerd hir hed of thei smyte— <sup>1</sup> *at. and* *The Queen's*  
 Oure lord god to suffre graunte hir myght & mayne<sup>2</sup> *head is*  
 with grete pacyens al þis same vnrighte. <sup>2</sup> *at. O. l. g. strengthid* *smitten off.*  
 hir to susteyn  
 Thus is<sup>1</sup> passed hir soule to heuene<sup>2</sup> lighte 1538 *Her soul goes*  
 Whiche is endeles, right as we beleue. <sup>1</sup> *at. is she* <sup>2</sup> *at. is to þat* *to Heaven,*  
 The thre and twenty day of nouembre right at eue, 1540 *on Nov. 23.*  
 And on a wedenesday was this martyrdom 1541  
 Thus consummat. hir body whan it<sup>1</sup> was dede, <sup>1</sup> *MS. þat it* *Her body is*  
 Was left stille vnberied,<sup>2</sup> in despite of cristendam, <sup>2</sup> *at. om.* *left unburied.*  
 lyande ful faire coloured, both<sup>e</sup> white and rede,<sup>3</sup> <sup>3</sup> *at. = Rawl.*  
 No man soo hardy to wynden hir<sup>4</sup> in clooth or leed— <sup>4</sup> *at. it* 1545  
 Thus bad the emperour of his cruelte; <sup>1</sup> *at. om.* <sup>2</sup> *at. þouȝt.*  
 And<sup>1</sup> that she lay thus, moche folk had<sup>2</sup> pyte. 1547

Cap<sup>m</sup>. 27<sup>m</sup>.

*Bk. V. Ch. 27.*

Now is the nyght come, and on-to her rest 1548 *At night,*  
 Is euery man) goo that was abydyng there.  
 Porphiry thought it was most<sup>1</sup> honest <sup>1</sup> *at. om.* 1550 *Porphyry*  
 And eke [m]edeful<sup>2</sup> this body for to rere, <sup>2</sup> *MS. nedef.*  
 Eke<sup>3</sup> to the beryenge deuoutely it [to] bere: <sup>3</sup> *MS. And eke*  
 Therefore cleped he certeyn) knyghtis to hym, *and his*  
 And whan) the wedyr was ful derk and dym), 1554 *knights*

Right in the wyntyr a-boute seynt Katarynes day, 1555  
 he cam to the body with ful holy entent,  
 Euene in [hir lyuand]<sup>1</sup> ryght as she lay; <sup>1</sup> *MS. the lyuene, Ar.*  
 With ful swete and costeful onymnt *20 hyr lymyn*  
 he baumed the body, and foorth with it he went. 1559 *enbalm and*  
 With preyere, wepyng and ful besy cure *bury the*  
 Thus thei lede it on-to the sepulture. 1561 *Queen's body.*

1534 ere and after . peyne 1535 a om. . smythe 1536 Oure l. g.  
 strengthid hire to susteyne 1537 vnrythe 1538 is she . hire s. is  
 to þat lythe 1539 wheche was 1541 wednesday 1542 þat om.  
 1543 vnberied om. 1544 lyeinge þer fulle white & eke fulle rede  
 1545 wynd it 1546 had 1547 And om. þouthe pyte 1548 nythe  
 1550 most om. 1551 medfull 1552 And om. . to bere 1553  
 called. knythis onto 1555 kateryne 1557 in hire lyuand 1559  
 hire b. , he om. 1561 on om.

	<i>Bk. V. Ch. 27.</i>	The nexte day after <sup>1</sup> is <sup>2</sup> grete questyon)	1562
	Question being raised, who buried the Queen,	hoo beryed the queen), hoo was soo hardy <sup>1 at. om.</sup> <sup>2 at. is þer</sup>	
		To fallen) in <sup>3</sup> sueche greuous transgressyon) <sup>2 MS. in to</sup>	
		To remeue or bere <sup>1</sup> this ladyes <sup>2</sup> body? <sup>1 at. bery</sup> <sup>2 at. same</sup>	
		Oonly for <sup>1</sup> suspecyon) certeyn) foolk <sup>is</sup> <sup>2</sup> openly	1566
		Weren arested be the offyeer <sup>is</sup> there, <sup>1 at. of</sup> <sup>2 at. folke</sup>	
	Porphyry boldly	And porphyrie boldly with-outen) fere	1568
		Appered to the emperour, and thus he sayde :	1569
	blames the Emperor for torturing Katharine and killing his wife.	“ Sethen þou art lord, and Iustyse shuldest keepe,	
		Whi [h]ast thou tormented thus this holy mayde?	
		Thi owen) wyues heed of dede þou <sup>1</sup> sweepe— <sup>1 MS. þou dede</sup>	
		Grete cause hauest þou soore for to weepe !	1573
		These Innocent <sup>is</sup> eke this is þin entent	
		With-outen) cause now to doo <sup>1</sup> torment. <sup>1 at. om.</sup>	1575
		“ Cece of thi Ire, cece of thi wronge,	1576
		Leue thi besynesse of Inquysy[cy]on) !	
		I telle the pleyonly, þough þou shul <sup>1</sup> me hong, <sup>1 at. om.</sup>	
	He, Porphyry, buried the Queen,	I am that man) whiche with deuocyon)	
		þat beryed thi wyf—I thought it reson), <sup>1</sup>	1580
		And <sup>2</sup> ful weel a-cordlynge to nature, <sup>1 at. me th. it no treson,</sup> <sup>2 But</sup>	
		To brynge that body [on]-to sepulture.	1582
		“ Where hast þou seen) sweche cruelnesse ?	1583
		Yet theues <sup>1</sup> and robbour <sup>is</sup> whan thei arn) dede, <sup>1 at. to th.</sup>	
		her frendes han) leue of the lawe, I gesse,	
		To wynde hem in clothes, in boord <sup>1</sup> or leede, <sup>1 MS. in boord in clothes</sup>	
		To solace her neyghbour <sup>is</sup> with drynk and breede.	1587
		Al this is turned ageyn) discrecyon),	
		Ageyn) keende eke and <sup>1</sup> ageyn) relyggyon). <sup>1 at. om.</sup>	1589
	to save her body from being eaten by dogs.	“ Where lered þou euer þat beest <sup>is</sup> shuldie etc	1590
		Bodyes of men), of alle creatur <sup>is</sup> best ?	

1562 after om. is þer 1563 who 1564 falle. to sueche om. 1565 bery þis same body 1566 of s. folke 1567 were 1568 ful boldly 1570 Sith. a lord. shuld 1571 hast. thus om. 1572 thin. of þede þou s. 1573 hast 1575 doo om. 1576 Chese. þin ire. 1577 in I. 1578 shul om. 1580 þat om. me thout it no treson) 1581 But. weel om. acordand on-to 1582 onto 1583 seyn) 1584 yete to . are 1585 haue 1586 in clothis in bord 1587 or br. 1589 kynd. and om. 1590 lered

Thus writen oure Autouris and þus þei trete : Bk. V. Ch. 27.  
 It is neyther wurshipful ne<sup>1</sup> honest <sup>1</sup> *at.* ne ek  
 On-to mankeende to foule<sup>1</sup> soo his nest. <sup>1</sup> *Ar.* defoule 1594  
 Sir emperour, I confesse heere, þis dede haue I doo : Porphyry  
 Punysh<sup>1</sup> not; þese Innocentis, but lete hem goo ! ” 1596 the Queen.  
<sup>1</sup> *MS.* Punysh þou

Cap<sup>m</sup>. 28<sup>m</sup>.

Bk. V. Ch. 28.

**T**hese woordis of porphirye, thei arn a wounde 1597 The Emperor  
 On-to Maxcens-is herte : for he made a cry, is greatly  
 Whan he had sor[o]wed a litel stounde, hurt by  
 Soo grete and soo loude, the halle, whiche was hy, Porphyry's  
 Sounded with the noyse ; the very malencoly 1601 words.  
 Made hym soo wood he wiste not what he sayde.  
 But sone after suche woordis he up brayde : 1603

“ O me most wretched of alle men þat leue ! 1604

Wherto brought nature me on-to lyf ? He blames  
 Whi wolde she to me suche astate geue, Nature for  
 Whanne she thus wretchedly hath taken my wyf ? killing his  
wife,

had she suffered me with a sharpe knyf 1608

Be steked in my cradel, she had doo þe best !

ffor<sup>1</sup> now am I reued of my<sup>2</sup> dewe reste. <sup>1</sup> *at.* om. <sup>2</sup> *at.* all my

“ ffor porphirie here, on whom I most trost, 1611 and depriving  
 A,<sup>1</sup> porphiry now,<sup>2</sup> the beste frende I haue, <sup>1</sup> *at.* om. <sup>2</sup> *at.* here him of his  
 My good<sup>3</sup> porphirye, my gentel<sup>3</sup> knyght, is<sup>4</sup> lost, <sup>3</sup> *at.* om. <sup>4</sup> *at.* þus is he best friend,  
 So disceyued of witchecraft þat he gynne[th]<sup>1</sup> to<sup>2</sup> raue. Porphiry,

Euene as the spokes resten in the naue, <sup>1</sup> *MS.* gynned <sup>2</sup> *om.* in *Ar.* 168 1615

Soo in his breste stood al my comforte ;

To swiche a-nother frend can I neuere resorte. 1617

“ He disceyued my wyf, but she now is ded ; 1618

he hath disceyued hym-self, that greueth me most. who is self-  
deceiuid.

1592 þus oure a. wrythe 1593 ne eke h. 1594 mankynd . to  
 folow his own' n. 1595 serē 1596 punche not 1597 aren 1598 is  
 om. 1599 sorowed 1601 sounded 1603 sweche 1604 lyue 1605  
 on om. 1606 gyue 1607 take 1608 a om. 1609 stykyd 1610  
 ffor om. alle my 1611 of wh. 1612 A om. here 1613 good om.  
 gentel om. þus is he l. 1614 begynnyth raue 1615 rest in here n.  
 1618 deceyuid. now om.

*Bk. V. Ch. 28.* Myn herte is waxen<sup>1</sup> as<sup>2</sup> heuy as ony leed, <sup>1</sup> *at. it waxith* <sup>2</sup> *at. om.*  
 The Emperor Soo am I comered with thought<sup>is</sup> in my goost.  
 is sad. Allas, my porphirye! I durste a made a boost: 1622  
 Though al my kyngdam had me forsake,  
 ffals to my croune no man) shuld the make! 1624  
 “Yet, though thou hast<sup>1</sup> doon this grete despite, 1625  
 Disseyued my wyf and<sup>2</sup> disceyued thi-selue, <sup>1</sup> *at. haue* <sup>2</sup> *at. but*  
 Yet of þi treson) thou shalt haue respyte;  
 He will give Ten dayes I graunte the or ell<sup>is</sup> twelue:  
 Porphyry Leue þat<sup>1</sup> crysten) company, forsake þat clue, <sup>1</sup> *at. þis* 1629  
 12 days to Thesu of nazareth—he dede neuere man) good,  
 forsake that elf Christ, he is cause of spillyng of<sup>1</sup> mekel gentel blood. <sup>1</sup> *overl.* 1631  
 “If þou wilt leue this newe cursed scole, 1632  
 and so escape Thou shalt haue grace þou shalt not deye.  
 death. Soo wyse a man) now made a foole!  
 hoo caused the soo<sup>1</sup> sone to reneye <sup>1</sup> *at. hym þus*  
 The holy relygion), the very<sup>1</sup> true weye <sup>1</sup> *at. eld, olde* 1636  
 Whiche that oure fader<sup>is</sup> kepten) with-oute<sup>1</sup> mynde?  
 Allas man), allas! thi reson) is ful blynde.” <sup>1</sup> *Ar. out of* 1638

*Bk. V. Ch. 29.*Cam. 29<sup>m</sup>.

The Emperor examines all his knights,

and threatens them if they side with Porphyry.

**R**ight with this langage th[e]<sup>1</sup> emperour dede calle 1639  
 Alle the knyght<sup>is</sup> of the courte be oon) & oon),  
 he examyned hym-self that tyme hem alle <sup>1</sup> *MS. that*  
 how that thei thoughten thè<sup>1</sup> mater shulde goon). <sup>1</sup> *at. this*  
 fful doolfully to hem he made his moon), 1643  
 “Be-holde,” he seyth, “how my porphirye  
 Al sodeynly is fallen) on-to this myserye! 1645  
 “I hope it is to you not<sup>1</sup> but ignorauns, <sup>1</sup> *at. om.* 1646  
 If that ye faouere now hym<sup>1</sup> in his dede, <sup>1</sup> *Ar. hym now*  
 But ye be ware of that grete vengeauns  
 Whiche may falle with-uten) drede

1620 My h. it waxith. as l om. as þe 1621 acomered 1625 haue  
 do 1626 but inst. of and 1627 shall 1629 þis c. 1631 meche  
 1633 shalle l 1635 hyme thus 1636 þe eld trew 1637 kipt 1639  
 þe c. 1640 the l om. & be 1642 who. thouthe þis 1644 Be-  
 holdith. who 1645 I-falle 1646 not om. 1647 now om. 1648  
 be 3e 1649 wheche þat

O[u] swiche renegates that other men leede <sup>1 MS. of</sup> 1650 *Bk. r. Ch. 29.*  
 ffro her trewe lawes. hough wil ye answer?"  
 Alle seyden tho<sup>1</sup> thus, that stoden there: <sup>1 at. thei</sup> 1652  
 " Be it knowen to the now, sir emperour, 1653  
 That god and lord whiche this same man) *The Emperor's knights all avow their Christianity,*  
 honoureth at this tyme, ihesu oure saueour, 1655  
 This same god we<sup>1</sup> with al that we may & can) <sup>1 at. om.</sup>  
 hym<sup>1</sup> wil we<sup>2</sup> cuere scrunen, curse þou or ban), <sup>1 at. om.</sup> <sup>2 at. We wil</sup>  
 Endyte thou or smyte þou<sup>1</sup> with tormentis strange; <sup>1 at. om.</sup>  
 Leue this weel, þou shalt vs neuere chaunge. 1659  
 " ff[c]re o[f]f<sup>1</sup> deth, or loue of lyf swete <sup>1 MS. ffyre or</sup> 1660 *and will suffer death for Christ.*  
 May neuere departen) oure hertely loue  
 ffro Ihesu crist, the trueste prophete  
 That cuere was sente fro heuene aboue ;  
 Whan) peynes arn) plyed, than) shalt þou proue 1664  
 That alle oure hertis arn) sette thus<sup>1</sup> in oon) <sup>1 at. om.</sup>  
 In th[is]<sup>1</sup> same feyth, as stable as ony<sup>2</sup> stoon)." <sup>1 MS. the</sup> <sup>2 at. the</sup> 1666  
 The emperour commaunded in hasty wise 1667 *He orders them all to be kild.*  
 Thei shulde be led on-to her passyon)—  
 ffor of swyche renegates he wil be Iustise,  
 To venge the wronge whiche that was don)  
 Vp-on the goddis, þe sonne and the mon). 1671  
 Thus arn) thei led fourth tyl her ende ;  
 Saue porphiry allone now thei haue noo frende. 1673 *Porphyry*  
 ffor he, to comforten hem with ful myghty feyth, 1674  
 On-to the emperour preced there<sup>1</sup> he stood, <sup>1 at. where</sup>  
 Swiche-maner woordis at that tyme he seyth :  
 " Men wil wene<sup>1</sup> that thou be ny wood <sup>1 r. wenen</sup> 1677 *rebukes him for his folly.*  
 To sle th[is]<sup>1</sup> puple thus<sup>2</sup> sodeynly in her blood <sup>1 MS. the</sup> <sup>2 at. om.</sup>  
 And lete me scape whiche stered hem alle.  
 ffor perel I counsel, whiche may falle 1680  
 1651 who 1652 seyð þei þus 1653 knowe . ser 1656 we 1 om.  
 1657 hym om. cuere om. serue 1658 endithe . & smythe. þou om.  
 1659 shalle 1660 Serz of d. 1661 depart 1664 ar applied . shalle  
 1665 are . thus om. 1666 þis . as þe 1667 comaund 1672 are . to  
 1674 conforthe . myty 1675 where 1678 þis. thus om. 1680  
 perelle . wheche þat



Thei dede more for the than for fadir or em ; <sup>1</sup> *at.* knottis þat 3e *Bk. V. Ch. 30.*

I coude neuere perceyue the knot til it were<sup>1</sup> knytte— *The Emperor*

But deed are thei alle, [&] we repente not yitte ;— 1713

Mayden), þou may leue, if þou haue grace,

Not-withstandyng thyn treson) & thi trespass. 1715

“ Wherefore I counseyl now on-to thi fonednesse, 1716 *offers to forgive Katharine*

fforsake thy witchecraft, & wepe<sup>1</sup> and weyle <sup>1</sup> *at.* þi magik, wepe sore

That euere were thou<sup>2</sup> soo boold in fool-hardynesse <sup>2</sup> *at.* thou were

To yeue the queen) or porphirye swiche eucl counseyle ;

ffro thi eynez lete the water now be<sup>1</sup> thi cheekis reyle, 1720

file thi deeth now ! for, though [þou dede] this gylte, <sup>1</sup> *at.* om.

That is to seyne, thou art cause of the<sup>1</sup> blood þat is spilte, <sup>1</sup> *at.* om. *the blood he says she has spill,*

“ Yet may thou amende it with deuocyon) 1723

To make an offeryng on-to<sup>1</sup> hooly saturne. <sup>1</sup> *at.* to þe *if she will worship Saturn.*

We alle wil folwen the right in processyon),

Soo that thou wilt on<sup>1</sup>-to this counseyle turne. <sup>1</sup> *at.* om.

Alias, woman), hough longe wilt þou soiorne 1727

In this grete cursednesse oute of al reson) ?

Yet wil I forgeue the alle thyn) olde treson), 1729

“ Thou shal haue, mayden), tho<sup>1</sup> behestis alle <sup>1</sup> *at.* al þe 1730

Whiche I promysed the,<sup>2</sup> to bryng þe to astat ; <sup>2</sup> om. in Ar.

Tarye noo lengere, for pereH þat may be-falle,

Chese the better, or ellis sey chek mat.

But if thou offre, we too arn) at debat, 1734 *If not, her*

ffor thou shalt deye, and that in hasty wyse,

Thi deth a-noon) in this maner wyse :<sup>1</sup> <sup>1</sup> *at.* I wil deuyse 1736

“ I wil make thyn hed to smyte of with a blad 1737 *head shall be cut off with a two-edgd sword.*

Sharpe on bothe sydes, whiche may not faile—

he warented it, the smyth þat it mad,

That it was suer at eche-maner assayle,

1712 knottys þat 3e knyte 1713 & we 1714 May . lyue . hafe  
1715 þi 1716 counsell . fondnesse 1717 þi magyke wepe sore  
1718 þou were 1720 þin eyne . be om. . rayle 1721 thow þou dede  
1722 sey . the om. 1724 on om. to þe 1725 folow 1726 on om.  
1727 who 1728 cursydhed 1729 elde 1730 al þoo b. alle 1731  
þe om. 1732 falle (be- om.) 1731 are 1735 ful h. 1736 on þis  
m. I wyll deuyse 1737 make smyght of þi heel wyth 1739 waraunt  
1710 sewyre . ilke



Bk. V. Ch. 30. Were it flesh, were it boon, or mayle, 1741  
 It shulde it kerue. therefore, mayle, consente,  
 And of thi errour I counseyl þe to<sup>1</sup> repente." <sup>1 at. om</sup> 1743

Bk. V. Ch. 31.

Cap<sup>m</sup>. 31<sup>m</sup>.

**T**he mayde [answerde] thanne with ful mylde<sup>1</sup> voys :  
 Katharine declares she is ready to die for Christ. "Euere haue I seyde þat I am redy to deye 1745  
 ffor his loue whiche was hanged on croys.

This<sup>1</sup> shal ben, shortly for to seye, <sup>1 at. þis day</sup>  
 A grete spectacle to the wordly[s] eye, 1748  
 ffor<sup>1</sup> to seen) a queen) forsake lond and halle, <sup>1 at. om.</sup>  
 Soo sodeynly on-to deth for to falle. 1750

Her death-  
fall

"Som) men) wene that deth-fal were<sup>1</sup> myserye, 1751  
 Som) men) wene the fal were<sup>2</sup> reprobable, <sup>1 at. þe fall is</sup> <sup>2 at. is</sup>  
 Som) wenen) we cristen), whanne we deye,  
 We lese þing, to us that is supportable ;

will be gain  
to her :

I seye we lese þing that is disseyuable, 1755  
 I sey we lesen a leuyng ful of stryf,  
 And wyne a regyon) whiche is the lond of lyf. 1757

she will  
change tears  
for joy ;

"ffor grete sekenesse here, there shal we haue helthe,  
 ffor weepyng teeres we shal haue lawhyng loye ; 1759  
 That place abundeth euere-more in welthe,  
 That place in seker hath neuere [no] noye,  
 It is more seker than euere was the tour of troye 1762  
 ffro shot and treson). therefore thader I glyde ;

Christ will be  
her guide.

Whan) I shal deye, crist shal be my gyde. 1764

She despises  
the heathen  
Gods and  
Idols.

" Wherefore I wil no lengere now the drawe 1765  
 With veyn) termes—doo as<sup>1</sup> thou hast thought ! <sup>1 MS. ast</sup>  
 I despise thy goddes, thyn) offeryng) and thi lawe,  
 Alle thi maumentis eke I sette at nought.  
 Too hyn) I goo that hath me ful deere bought, 1769

1743 þin . counsell . to om. 1744 answerde . meke 1745 hafe  
 1746 hang 1747 þis day . be 1748 spectacle . worldlys eye 1749  
 ffor om. . se 1750 on om. 1751 weene we crysten whan) we dey 1752  
 is r. 1753 Some men weene þe fall is myserye 1754 ful s. 1756  
 lese a lyuyng 1757 wyne 1758 here om. 1761 n-uere no 1767 þi

- Too hym I wil, I coueyte to see his face. Bk. V. Ch. 31.  
 The Aungellis song whiche is in that place, 1771  
 "If thou myght heere it, þou shuldest astoyned be; 1772 Katharine  
 Thou hast noo grace suche mysteryes to approche.  
 ffarweel my freendes, farweel al my mene, bids farewell  
to her  
friends.  
 ffarweel my castellis tho<sup>1</sup> stonde hy on roche! <sup>1 at. that</sup>  
 A newe drynke my loue wil me [a]-broche, 1776  
 After my blood be spilt heere on the grownde.  
 ffarweel thys world that is shape soo rounde! 1778  
 "I shal folwe the lomb that washed with his blood 1779  
 Oure bloody synnes wretched and onkynde;  
 I folwe the lomb whiche is ful meke and good,  
 Whos steppes folwe virgynes with-oute[n] mynde.  
 Come of, tiraunt, slee, and doo thy kynde! . 1783  
 I abyde not ellis but deth and goo to lyff,<sup>1</sup> <sup>1 MS. lyffis</sup> She awaits  
Death,  
and goes to  
Life.  
 I drede noo fyre, watyr, swerd ne knyff."<sup>2</sup> <sup>2 MS. knyffis</sup> 1785  
 With these woordis sentens was youe anon) 1786 She is  
sentenst to  
death.  
 She shal be ded as was deuysed before.  
 ffoorth his she drawn) ; men) and women) ilkon)  
 ffolwen) on) faste and presse wonder soore,  
 Wepying, and cryenge euere more and more : 1790 The folk  
follow her.  
 "O hooly mayde, whi wilt thou þus wretchedly  
 Take thi deth, [&] wyth swyche velony?" 1792  
 She seyde ageyn) : "moderis and ma[i]denes alle, 1793  
 Weepe not for me, lette not myn) passion),  
 leue youre wordis with whiche ye on me calle! .  
 ffor if nature enclyne you to consolacyon),  
 To haue mercy on myschef and desolacion), 1797  
 Weepe ye thanne ryght for youre owne synne  
 Whiche ye haue haunted, in whiche ye be Inne, 1799  
 "Weepe for youre errour, whiche shal you brynge 1800  
 On-to brennyng fyre, where youre godd<sup>is</sup> dwelle !

1770 conett 1772 astoyned shuld þou 1775 castels þæt stand  
 1776 abroche 1778 þe 1782 wythouten) 1785 fere 1788 is. drawe  
 1789 folow . & folow on w. s. 1792 & with . velony 1793 moder-  
 his . maydenys 1794 my 1801 fere

<i>Bk. V. Ch. 31.</i>	Though þat youre prestis reede to you and syng Of þe goddis hoolynesse and moche thyng you telle, I suer yow this, that thei ben in helle, 1804 And euere with-outen ende in þat place shal be ; And but if ye amende yow, eke soo shal ye.” 1806
The heathen Gods are in Hell.	
<i>Bk. V. Ch. 32.</i>	<b>Ca<sup>m</sup>. 32<sup>m</sup>.</b>
When at the place of execution,	<b>A</b> fter this is seyde, she is come to þat place 1807 where she shal deye. and of the man) tho Whiche shulde hir smyght, she prayed a space ffor to haue, eer she fro this world goo, That she may seyn) woordis oon or too 1811 In preuy meditacion) on-to god aboue, Whiche is hir maker, hir lord and hir loue. 1813
Katharine kneels, and prays God,	The man) graunted, and she kneled doun), 1814 With handis and cynes <sup>1</sup> lift up to heuene, <sup>1</sup> <i>al. cyne &amp; handis</i> In suche sentens she made hir orison) : “ O myghty god, whos name for to neuene Is ful merucyous, makere of planetes seuene, 1818 helthe of hem alle tho <sup>1</sup> trosten) in thi mercy, <sup>1</sup> <i>al. that</i> hope of al virgynes that to thyn helpe cry ; 1820
her sweetest Jesus,	“ O Ihesu most swettest, whiche hast noumbred me 1821 Right in th[i] <sup>1</sup> collage a-mong <sup>is</sup> thi maydenes alle : <sup>1</sup> <i>Ms. the</i> Doo with thi seruaunt after thi benyngnyte, Sprede me in <sup>1</sup> thi mercy, lete me neuere falle <sup>1</sup> <i>al. wyth</i> In to myn) enemyes handes. lord, to the I calle, 1825 Doo me this mercy for thyn hye name
that whoever	That what-maner man), the right or the lame, 1827
thinks of her death,	“ Whiche hath my passyon in rememb[c]rauns 1828 Eyther in his deth or ellis in sakenesse Or in his perseeucion) or other greuauns,

1803 meche 1804 sewir 1805 wyth-oute 1806 And om. 1809  
smythe. a om. 1810 or 1811 sey 1815 eyene & handes 1816  
On sweche 1819 þat trostynē 1820 þi 1822 into þi college amonge  
1823 seruauntis 1824 me om. wyth þi 1825 my enemy 1826 þi  
hey 1828 remembrauns 1830 eythir g.

If he with deuocyon) and hertly besynesse		<i>Bk. V. Ch. 32.</i>
Aske ony reles, lord, of thi wort[h]ynesse	1832	and asks any boon of Christ,
Graunte hym) his bone, lord, for my sake		may have it granted for her sake.
As I now my deth for thi loue take.	1834	

“ And alle tho that my passion) haue in memorye, 1835

Pestilens ne deth mote hem neuere greue ;	
hunger and sores and other myserye,	
And alle cuele cyres on morwe or on eue	
Suffre hem not to haue, but rather hem yeue	1839
Abundauns in heruest, and eyr tempei'at ;	
lete not her londes abyde desolat,	1841

“ But graunte hem plente of her greynes alle— 1842

Be-cause thei loue me, thou shalt hem loue.		
Beholde, lord, for thi cause I muste <sup>1</sup> now falle	<sup>1</sup> <i>al. mut</i>	Katharine prays
Doun) in to deth : take to thin behoue		
Thyng that this bocher may not hale ne shoue,	1846	
Take þou my soule—no man) may but þou ;		Christ to take her soul; and
O Ihesu crist, my soule I commende now	1848	

“ On-to thyn) handis, I pray the þou it take, 1849

Lete þin Aungellis whiche þat see thi face		to send His Angels
Come doun) fro heuene for thyn maydenes sake,		
Suffre hem) to come now on-to this place,		
To lede my soule, lord, on-to thyn grace,	1853	to lead her soul to Him.
On-to that felawshepe whiche þou me belight,	<sup>1</sup> <i>al. that</i>	
A-mongis thyn scyntis tho <sup>1</sup> shyne with the ful bryght.”		

Ca<sup>m</sup>. 33<sup>m</sup>.

*Bk. V. Ch. 33.*

<b>S</b> he had scars mad hir conclusyon)	1856
Of this preyere, but anoond) sodeynly	
ffro [þe] heuene thei herden tho a soun,	
A swete voys, and thus it gan) to cry :	
“ Myn) owne spouse, my wyf & mayden) holy,	1860

1831 hertyly	1840 eyr	temperate	1844 mote	1845 þi	1849
þi	1851 þi	1853 þi	1854 feleschepe	1855 among þi s.	þat
1856	1857	1858 þe h. .	herd	poo a	sownde sounde
			1860	mayde	

At once a Voice from Heaven

- Bk. V. Ch. 33. Come now to me, [come now] on-to thi reste ! <sup>1</sup> *al.* as best  
ffor in my feyth þou hast laboured at þe beste.<sup>1</sup> 1862
- tells Katharine that her dwelling in Heaven is ready for her. “The blisshed yate of heuene is now ope, 1863  
It is made redy to the, that mansyon);  
ffor thy feyth, thi charyte and thi hope  
Shal thou haue my specyal benyson).  
There abyde the *persones* of thy nacyon) 1867  
ffor to receyue the to that eternyte  
Where thou shal Ioye be-forn) the trynyte ; 1869  
“Maydenes arn) redy to bryngre the thi crowne,  
Aungellis arn) ordeyned eke thi soule for to<sup>1</sup> lede. 1870  
As for a tyme caste of thi fleshly gounre, <sup>1</sup> *al.* þi s. eke to  
Thou shal receyue it in an other stede.  
Come forth in hast ! looke þou haue no drede 1874  
Of thi peticyouns, for I graunte hem alle.  
her petitions are granted; What-manner man) that on the wil calle 1876  
those who worship her “Or wurshipe with herte thyn hooly passyon), 1877  
What-manner myschef whiche he be Inne  
I wil relesse it, and al transgressyon)  
will be forgiven their sins. Of her defautes or of her olde synne,  
If thei wyl leue it and newe lyf begynne, 1881  
ffor thi sake I wil foryeue hem alle,  
Conferme hem eke no more after to falle.” 1883

Bk. V. Ch. 34.Cap. 34<sup>m</sup>.

Katharine lays down her neck for the Executioner.

**T**he mayde leyde fforth hir nekke fayr & white, 1884  
And thus she seyde on-to the smytere thoo :  
“ I am called to feste now of god al-myghte :  
Do thou thyn) office ! the tiraunt bad the soo ;  
ffulfille his *commaundement* ! and thanne may þou goo  
With-oute<sup>1</sup> daungere, stonde eke in his grace— <sup>1</sup> *r.* Withouten  
I prey to god forgeue the thi trespace.” 1890

1861 come now on-to þi rest 1862 as best 1865 þot f. 1869  
schalt . before 1871 are redy ord. þi sowle eke to 1877 þi 1879  
relese 1880 eld 1884 qwyte 1886 almythe 1889 stand

The man) was glad to doo the commaundement 1891 *Bk. V. Ch. 34.*  
 Of his lord, wherfore with besy corage  
 he applied hooly al his entent  
 Somwhat to spare this yonge tender age :  
 ffor with oon) strook, þat was ful wood of<sup>1</sup> rage, <sup>1</sup> *al.* & 1895 With one  
stroke  
Katharine's  
head is off.  
 hir heed he parted from hir body there.  
 Too grete myracles a-noon) men myght lere : 1897  
 Oon was, in tokene of vyrginal clenness 1898  
 In stede of blood mylke ran) at hir nekke,  
 Whiche of hir purite þat tyme bar wytnesse— Milk runs  
from it,  
instead of  
blood,  
 There myght noon) other thyng renne at þat bekke  
 Than swiche as was be-fore in the sekke, 1902  
 I mene thus, to putte you oute of doute :  
 Swiche thyng as was in hir, swiche þing ran) oute. 1904  
 It ran) so plenteuously it wattered al the ground 1905 and waters all  
the ground.  
 That lay abouten) hir. O most merueylous welle !  
 There<sup>1</sup> is the heed, the mylk aboute al rounde ! <sup>1</sup> *al.* here  
 What shuld I more of this myracle telle ?  
 Saue mary alone, of maydenhod she bereth þe belle ;  
 That witnesseth weel this present visyon),  
 Whiche may no-weye be called Illusyon). 1911  
 A-nother myracle eke was sey) at eye : 1912  
 Aungell<sup>is</sup> apperynge in ful merueylous aray,  
 Bodes liche men), wenges had they to flye ; Angels  
appear, like  
men with  
wings,  
 Thei cam doun) ful soley)ly, auctour<sup>is</sup> say,  
 Thei taken) the body and sone bore it away 1916 and bear her  
body to Sinai.  
 On-to the mount where Moyses þe lawe took.  
 Of this myracle right thus seith oure book : 1918  
 The hi) in whiche god yaf the wrytyn<sup>1</sup> lawe 1919  
 On-to the Iewes, ledeth to that perfeccyon) <sup>1</sup> *MS.* wrytynge  
 Of cryst<sup>is</sup> gospe) and of his vertuous sawe,  
 In whiche we fynde ful sweete instruceyon).  
 Paule in his book<sup>is</sup> maketh swyche induccyon) : 1923

1893 holly 1895 a stroke. & rage 1897 mythe 1906 aboute  
 1907 here 1909 she hathe 1912 y3e 1914 bodys . wynges 1916  
 toke 1919 wretyn) 1922 I wh. 1923 Poule

<u>Bk. V. Ch. 31.</u>	he seyth it longeth to Ierusalem as in seruage, With alle his children) heere in pylgrimage.	1925
	Thanne, syth this hiH is as it were a gyde On-to that mount whiche þat stant in blysse,	1926
Let us follow St. Katha- rine.	It is good to us þat we ful hastily ryde After this mayde, þat she may vs wisse A stedefast lore for to amende oure mysse ; Soo shal she been) in maner of a fygure, To brynge us to heuene after oure sepulture.	1930 1932
Mount Sinai is in Arabia,	This mount, þei seyn, stant in arabye ; It is fro Alisaundre of lond ful grete distauns ;	1933
20 days' journey from Alexandria.	In twenty dayes, if I shulde not lye, Myn auctour seith, thou men had purueauns And gydes goode & eke grete puissauns, Iful scarsely shulde he labouren it in these dayes— There leue <sup>1</sup> but fewe [þat] han made asayes. <sup>1</sup> MS. leuee	1937
Katharine was martyrd on a Friday,	<sup>1</sup> This passyon) was, as oure storye seyth, On a fryday, right for this entente <sup>1</sup> The next <sup>2</sup> stanzas are transp. That, sith she faught soo strongly for oure feyth, Men wene therfore it was conuenyent	1940 in Ar. 20.
the same day that Jesus died.	That this same day whiche oure ihesu went Oute of this world, that same day his mayde Shuld deye for hym—thus oure Antour sayde.	1944 1946

Bk. V. Ch. 35.**Cam. 35m.**

	<b>T</b> he grete myracles whiche ben at hir graue Ar) ny vnknowe, right for grete distauns Be-twyxe that and vs ; but this knowleche we haue That oyle it renneth euere in abundauns, With whiche oyle of soores alle grevauns Whiche men) suffre, it wil <sup>1</sup> be hooled <sup>2</sup> anon). <sup>1</sup> MS. wel Somme men) say þat if thei bere a stoon) <sup>2</sup> so all MSS.	1947 1951 1953
--	--	----------------------

Oil runs still  
from Katha-  
rine's tomb,  
which heals  
all sores.

1926 sith þat þis. a om. 1928 fulle good 1931 be 1933 sey .  
stand 1935 if þat 1937 pusauns 1938 scarsly . labourd ; it om.  
þeis 1939 þat hathe 1947 be 1948 are . onknow 1952 wilbe  
holyd

<sup>1</sup> Of the <sup>2</sup> same graue, whider þat þei it bere	<sup>1</sup> These last stanzas are wanting in Ar. 20, which has 2 different stanzas instead.	<u>Bk. V. Ch. 35.</u>
It wil sweten) euere þat same licoure—	<sup>2</sup> <i>al.</i> that	Pilgrims
Thus seyn) the pilgrymes þat haue ben) there,		
This sey oure book's whiche ben) made in honoure		
Of this sweete mayde, <sup>1</sup> of this vertuous floure—	<sup>1</sup> <i>r.</i> mayden	
It longeth to flowres swliche lycoure for to swete.		
I herde men) eke of other myracles trete,	1960	and writers
Of laumpes hangynge be-form) hir sepulture	1961	report other Miracles of St. Katharine's tomb and its oil,
ffilt with þat oyle, whiche brenne <sup>1</sup> a mannes lyue		
And of her light neuere maken) forfeiture,	<sup>1</sup> MS. brenneth	
Though thei brenne yeer's ten) & fyue.		
In this mater pleyonly I wil me shryue :	1965	
I may weel leue that swyche merueyles þer bee,		
But for be-cause I haue noon) auctorite,	1967	but, as I have no Authority for them,
I dar not wryte heere her declaracyon),	1968	I don't repeat them.
lest that I poyson) alle myn) forsayd weerk,		
lest þat men) eke of myn) owne nacyon)		
Shulde ymagen) þat I, whiche am) a clerk,		
Might of swiche thyng's take a wrong merk ;	1972	
Wherfore I commytte al this thyng in-feere		
On-to the <sup>1</sup> discrecyon) of hem þat shul it heere,	<sup>1</sup> <i>at. om.</i>	1974
ffor I wil determyne noo conclusyon)	1975	
as in this mater ; but fully I beleue		
That hoo-soo myghte see that solenne stacyon),		
he shulde knowe thyng whiche we can) not preue.		
Of this mater thus I take my leue.	1979	Yet I believe that folk who visit the Tomb 'll know things which I can't prove.
God oure lord for his hye mercy		
Graunte vs heuene after thys mysery ! Amen !	1981	

Soli deo honor et gloria

Per Cappegrauē.

1954 þat. wheder 1955 swete. same holy 1956 sey . be 1957  
 be 1959 licoures. for om. 1961 before 1962 brenne 1963 make  
 1968 hire 1969 poyseue. my 1970 eke mene 1974 the om. 1978  
 to whiche

Col. Per Capgrauē

Iste libellus constat Wilhelmo Tybbe Capellano (by the same hand).





## VARIOUS READINGS TO THE RAWL. TEXT.

1. FROM MS. ARUNDEL 168, fol. 15.<sup>1</sup>

1 O (Initial marked by a small o). criste. croune. maydyns 3 Amonge  
 4 lelyste thies . rithe . pis boke. 5 alle her herte . one 6 her love here plea-  
 saunce. one overl. sette. 7 lorde . cane not lette 8 Rith . ordire 9 modire .  
 resone 10 rithe . here 11 schape . heme . Ioy . thate . note 12 Bute nexte .  
 blisse 13 folowithe . whiche 14 we om. thynne 16 privileges whiche beth .  
 founde 17 Are sete . hire . degree 18 thies richly . abounde 19 pies . worlde .  
 rounde 20 leyde 21 shalle 22 3ave . lohne 23 owne . whane . shulde  
 24 cayne 26 wolde 27 Oute . hade 28 hire . graunte 29 Whiche . mylk .  
 ryth om. ate 30 Rane oute . mene sein . tokynyngē 31 martirdame . maydyn-  
 ode rithe 32 medelyde to-gedir . douterē one-to . kyngis 33 pies . thingis  
 34 his aungels . gode 35 Rithe . he om. dide 36 hire 37 hire . grauntede .  
 almyghte 38 mane . womane 39 Askith . hire . righte 40 wille . ife . aske .  
 righte 41 ellis 42 pou 43 Purchasede . lovers 44 serue þe as (so om.) . cane  
 45 Ande . lyfe . mor þæt (þæt overl.) . shalle . 46 womane . mane 47 There .  
 fullē wane 48 flore . labour . lyfe 49 lyue . thirtene yeres . lyfe 50 3it .  
 fonde . grete 51 ffere 53 More glade . basnet brith or 54 Thane . preste .  
 whane 55 blisside . saide 56 salace . ioy 57 made . liffe . welle 58 yite . do  
 59 scharpe wheelle 60 leffe . yite . do 61 made . þerto 62 Right 63 dede .  
 haste 64 make . liffe 65 Oute 66 & wiffe 67 haste sufferede . whate . haste  
 68 lorde . dore vndoo 69 Suspire . wittes . preuy 70 hyme 71 preste . whome .  
 spake 72 tellithe ate h. d. 73 þæt om. 74 martire 75 hire modire . hire sere  
 76 yeres 77 Withe . fastyngē colde . mychil 78 laste . reuelacione 79 Alle . hyde  
 al 80 thoughte 81 honeste clothide . schoroude 82 Whiche . vpone . preste  
 83 what . ame 84 thinge . why . came 85 hande . helde 86 rotene . rente  
 87 preste . behelde seems corr. to beholde 88 entente 89 wote . wele . haste  
 soute . mente 90 mouthe . boke . cke inst. of ete 91 do . wille . shalle . noyte  
 92 lorde seide . hyme . 93 shulde . boke 93 rotene bredes pies leues derke &  
 dyme 95 mouthe 96 mouthe . smale 97 wille breke . cheules 98 likely .  
 no 99 sayde . muste . booke 100 shalle elles . mouthe 101 hoke 102 Lete .  
 go downe 103 bake 104 mouthe bytter . wilbe 105 sumtyme to þe e3. 106  
 preste . tooke . mouth anone 108 othir mane 109 preste . stounede . pou3 110  
 ioy . thoughte . hade . þane þer 111 glade 112 blissede 113 Afters . longe .  
 felde 114 floures . herbes . smal 115 fonde 116 rith 118 laide þer . knythe  
 119 Armarake . knythis 121 fonde . amonge elde tresoure 122 kyngē petirs  
 123 fonde 124 Vrbane . as om. vnderstonde 125 felle 126 Which . herde .  
 yit . 3e om. 129 taughte hire . coude deuyne 131 hire 132 I-turnede vn-to  
 criste & vne-to . faith 133 hire ledere . seith 134 liffe 135 hire . laste 136  
 saw hire martyrede . hyme-selfe 137 hire liffe 138 seruauante vne-to hire 139  
 pis 140 hire chaunceler . secretarie 141 hire . thorow-oute . parties 142 hire  
 fadores 143 hire . row 144 paiede 146 hire kyne 147 hire 148 hire . liffe  
 149 hire . customes while 150 hire 151 saw . aungels who . hire 153 veni-  
 aunce . who . 154 eke om. . hire dethe 155 saw . maxiense . slayne 156 downe .  
 ryuere 157 Diede . sodenli . payne 158 fforth . drawe . helle-fiere 159 Aungels .  
 hire . devels . h. bere 160 sondry . syune 161 þe othire in helle w. 162 Longe

<sup>1</sup> For want of type, the dashes on n m t l l d g are replaced by e, noblé articlé by noblé articule. The variants of this MS. are for the most part merely orthographic.

aftere . maxience 163 Byschope . Alisaundre . Cite 164 same mane 165  
 whiche . myche 166 wote . verely 3ite ife 167 which 168 Whiche . ofe-tyme  
 syngre . 169 diede enene . anc 171 liffe 172 hye 173 dede 174 oute 175  
 liffe 176 speke oftyme 177 Both . hire . ende 178 love hire liffe had 179  
 gostely 180 sikire 181 spryng 182 ony . any 183 Twelf 184 what . myth  
 185 ther vsage 186 miche 188 liffe 190 founde 191 eritykis 192 both þe  
 leffe & brede 193 soughte 194 gode . hy 195 fonde . noghte 196 noghte .  
 noble 198 A hundrede 200 niche 201 passede 202 tonge both 204 in-to  
 205 I-sought . broughte 206 hyde alle in . amonge 207 vne-to . mans hande  
 208 whene . note vnderstonde 209 righte 210 liff . kepte 211 Neuer-þe-lesse  
 . dide miche thinge 212 noble . goode mane 213 lede . way . dore vne-doo  
 214 myche . better 215 þoutz 216 helpe . wylth<sub>2</sub> om . 217 Whiche . purchase .  
 219 diede . many a yere 220 nye fro . leste 221 Vit . diyngre . grete 222  
 aperede 223 glade . moste godely 224 rewarde 226 speche . bi 227 seint  
 228 Cite . wile 231 vne-to 232 Aftere 233 sette 234 Tristyngre 235 helpe .  
 cas . wrigh 236 parte . heuenly 237 appollo . seint 238 makith . grow .  
 mans 239 wite whate 241 Oute 242 \n-to . brotherode whiche 243 gife  
 244 fadris 245 Whiche . Austeyne 248 paiede 250 whene 251 heuene 252  
 Thoroughe .

The titles of Books and Chapters are wanting.

## I.

1 Some tyme þe . grece 2 Sipire boþ lorde 3 telles . olde 4 reuled 5  
 gouernde . alle his e . 6 Costus þo mene . kinge . þoo here om . 7 losede 8  
 lion 9 liste 10 wote . boþ 11 Alle thei dide . boþ ferre 13 here be-hoffe .  
 soughte 14 helpe . whene . nedede owt 15 Iles . vne-to . gret 16 þai om .  
 buxome . requeste 18 hauens . weste 19 welde . righte . liste 20 marineres  
 21 homageres 22 reynede 23 was 24 wilbelouede . homagers 25 noble 26  
 felde . pesibile 29 wolde him 30 what . dide 31 Whene . vengeaunce 32  
 Prayer . a-waile 33 assaile 34 castille bette 35 Whene thei . nozt . bonz  
 38 Stabulle 39 hande . douthi 41 wroughte 42 sperite 43 Peas . pute 44  
 cleymede 45 noble . vne-to peas . lofe 46 made . ax vne-to 47 Amonge 48  
 moste . wise 49 hatyde . harlottrie . vise 50 petie vne-to . thought 51 suche  
 a trewe 52 rithe . wise 53 thorny 55 spronge 56 Katrine . true 57 Citees .  
 amonge 58 largeste 59 coste . golde . fodire 63 whiche 64 high Amaliche  
 65 highte . egipte 66 londe . Sipre . nothinge . wante 67 of beis 68 golde 69  
 londe closede 70 north-weste 71 kinge . key 72 sette 74 shippe 75 peas .  
 were it were 76 hade 77 castille 78 vne-to 79 Be causes . fredoms 80  
 hethnesse . cristendome 82 meire 83 nozt 84 To 86 shippis . Cite 87  
 vpone . owne 88 ofe . cuntrees 90 Whiche . Cites 92 othire 94 grete . highe  
 95 Egipte 96 Vne-to . thoroughe 99 egipt 100 Thithere . Marke 101 bi  
 102 lordis 103 twiste 104 belyue 105 made . criste 106 plate 107 boke  
 108 theoretica . sayne 110 hermytis 111 such 113 alle . þies 114 martirs & f .  
 confessoours 115 maydyns wydowes . chaste 116 Nombre 117 growith . aftere  
 118 mythe . nombre 119 pute . sharpe asaie 120 This vessels . martirs 121  
 fiere . Irme . I-brente 122 fournesse . sorow . maide 123 schapede 124 turne  
 125 firste excersice . devyne 126 Whiche . longith . foule 127 patenus . boke  
 129 score (!) 132 goode comeniente . exortacione 133 Moste . whiche 134 Alisa-  
 andre whiche . now 135 pepyle 136 thidere drowe 137 knygh . mauchaunte  
 gone 138 though . Inow whane 140 elles 141 wones 143 Alisaundre . saide  
 144 a om . wurthi such 145 tonge . dome 146 lofe ner 147 doth . wele  
 myght 149 þis kingis 150 leuyde . mychille 151 suche 152 wane . lande .  
 scharp 153 thingis . pleyne 154 cronnyezde seyne 155 Almighty 156 no  
 merueils . caste 157 herithe . els 158 some . tyme om . laste 159 vne-to 160  
 whene 161 wille 162 Whene thinge 163 wirkith . righte . wille 165 childir .  
 not hem 167 whiche . fallene 168 halp . whene . þæt om . blyune 169  
 holpene . mighte 170 not om . 171 alle . entente 172 þæt om . 173 Whene .

not 174 helpe 176 wrought 177 vne-lyke 178 thies olde . which leuyde .  
dwire 179 haue . childe . moste . moder 180 kinge . foder 181 mighte . seker .  
suche a newe 182 elisabeth 183 dide Abrame . Sara . wiffe 184 conceyude  
185 lyffe 186 Maris 187 wille (= well) . suche 188 blisside 190 maydene 191  
owne 192 which speketh 193 parte . hire goode preyere 194 moste 195 wille  
196 come 197 Whene . þis sesone 198 maydene . lithe 199 ordeynede ite .  
suche . a om . 200 whiche 201 sprynge os 203 olde 204 a om . loughte 206  
kinge . feble . qwene . olde nowe 208 now lye 210 Ladyz . chambire . & om .  
211 come om . 213 marie 214 Excuside 215 writene 216 faire maide 217  
hire fadire . kynge . 218 hire modire . saide . sche om . highte 219 daughter .  
armeny 220 beaute sha . price . presse 221 Thorought . sarcenrie 222 liste  
noghte . hire praynsinge 224 shewede 225 hire helpe . mischef 226 whene .  
passede 228 ordeynede 229 noght 232 wesche 233 lifte . lulle 234 wipe .  
roke 235 labour . bi 236 kepte 238 qwene . nozt . hire yee (yee on eras.)  
239 norischte . noble 241 both meke 242 tetes 243 lastede . hire . alle life  
244 pleasede 245 woudre . haue 246 provede 247 sette . boke 248 Alle .  
lude 249 alle . scoleres . are 250 lofe . fere 251 Made . whene she gane .  
kenne 252 þe letters & wordes 253 maisters 254 hire . retrik 255 case .  
nombres . such . gyse 256 verbis whiche longed . foule 258 figurs 259 per-  
sons . modis 260 Of monge alle 261 hire chauncellere 263 survioire of . was  
264 paide hem here hire 266 Alle . couthe 267 moste 268 alle þe longe daie  
269 sauynge mesure 270 amonge . hire playe 271 say naye 272 hade . play .  
sitte 273 goodnesse . hire 274 lerned . latene 276 any philisophire bi 278  
alle . bodys . planettis 279 thorough besinesse 280 vne-to . sette 281 sei .  
storye 282 reynede 283 alle . victorye 285 lerne . þu 3onge 286 herisyce .  
blaspheme 287 Thorought . grece . reeme 288 ydeottes 289 apostyls . noght  
290 worlde . sowne 292 wyne . fere 293 bustonesse . I om . 294 thiinkethe . þis  
om . case 296 ordeynede 297 worlde 298 hire 299 hire 300 faile boste 301  
mythi . strenkethe . gooste . 302 Hire fadire . pies 303 noble . owne daughter  
304 Dede make 306 knytis 307 ordeynede . hire owne 308 reeste . for om .  
309 telle 310 maisters . thithire . fette 311 myth strech 312 lernede . with-  
outyne . lette 313 sette 314 wele 316 craftely . I-pythe 317 cheyers . myche  
318 beste . briþe 319 bi 320 Sete . weste 321 rithe 322 heuene 323 Alle .  
one rowe 324 Righ aftere 325 miþe wile y-k . 326 worthiare . hye 327  
Hire 328 thies . I-take 331 faste . lernede 332 Whene 333 chaungynge .  
maisters 334 noble . mych 335 wele witte . lofe 337 made make . for hire  
338 paleis wallede rith . southe 339 sonne . hire troone 340 none suche . worlde  
342 Whene . bi . selfe . soule 343 In om . gardeyne . moste 344 ferre . frome .  
wighte 345 ordeynede . owne device 346 lye . wrighte 347 strange 348  
& om . 349 alle 350 Solatorie liffe to stodiars his comforth 352 When .  
schet . faste 353 sparede . truly 354 thingis . agaste 355 moste . laste 356  
wordly 357 insure 358 tours . made vp so 359 sotely I-caste 360 mith .  
come . foule . doþe 361 yates . faste 362 hire-selfe . laste 364 lyued . hire  
366 firste . moste 367 telleth . wey 368 wrighte 369 Rethorike is þe s . 370  
doþe 371 materes . colours 372 calle . dialatike 373 litille throw 375  
truethe . fulssede . techith 376 rithe 378 wante 379 taught hire 380 wile  
(= wel) 381 hade 382 departede 384 voice 385 arne 386 lernede 387 en-  
clides bokes . purtreytours 388 It . myche . longithe 389 letturs 390 of ite .  
schalle . forfeitures 391 Agene 392 suche 393 stye 395 planettis . reyne .  
hye 396 Whiche . which 397 helpe 398 pies . lernede boþe 399 moulede .  
Idilnesse 400 hire . such 401 hire fadire dide gadire . londe 403 Right .  
vnderstonde 404 wit . daughter . one hande 405 aposede . meny 406 That .  
gaderede 408 straunge thinge 409 lernede . life . rith 411 not . katherine .  
zynge 412 vnderstode 413 some hath vndo 414 goode . thies clerkis þanne  
415 maide . hire life 416 supposede . þat inst. of than 417 wondre how . dryf .  
418 conclusion for in yeres fyfe 419 Conne 420 this wisemant 421 toke  
423 maide . shalle 424 wondre 425 not . haue 426 myche 428 noble .  
rewardede . wille 429 gyftis 430 Lordis dide . clerkis . dcle 432 bountyfus-

nesse . suche 433 rewardede 434 lefte 435 Whane . wele 437 alle hire .  
 ane 438 owne 439 worlde . lede . were 440 suche . vne-to 441 kynne 442  
 Whiche diede wyth-oute faith wythoutene cristendam 443 such one zite . longe  
 444 lordis came (corr. fr. come) 445 wronge 446 Alle hire . wurchipe only  
 447 noble kinge . lythe now per 448 closede . afterwarde 449 solempnite 450  
 w.ilinge 451 cite 452 wele away . what shalle 453 lorde 454 ded 455  
 lefte . no heire . hede 456 yonge 457 zite . sche wedede 460 say 461 likly .  
 suggete vne-to . londes 462 bonde . suffre bondes . 463 noble qwene . what  
 464 petie here (to, om.) 465 couthe 466 teres 467 yonge . hire 469 hire  
 470 leide . tombe 471 wite . he om. per kinge 473 Schulde not . such 474  
 thinge 475 Was pane saide . whiche nede 476 happely . mith 477 such 478  
 stille 479 dukes . Erles . knyghtis 480 Thirti . euene 481 ranne faste . be-  
 gonne . pasce 482 kinge 483 haue . thinge . 484 suche lastynge 485 rith  
 486 grauige 487 vanysh . waste . brente 488 alle 489 gret 491 high .  
 grete 492 his . coste 493 þither . carte 494 cite of famagooste 495 made .  
 ooste 496 have . mouth 499 moste 500 þe c. . hade 501 dide 502 þis cause .  
 same om. 503 while . stand . loste 504 knowlege . famagoste 506 G. C  
 507 noble 508 thorowoute 509 wirkithe many a 510 worthi 511 schalle .  
 such . per 512 qwene . hire owne 513 Alisaundre . whiche 514 helde . hire  
 housbonde 515 schulde 516 bolde 518 lordes . wiste 521 londe 522 hade .  
 solempnite 523 custome . holde 524 troble 527 cite 528 in whoos 531  
 stores 532 Al . lordis aftere 533 a lord om. 535 byldyde 537 scholde 538  
 wille . aftere . daie 541 Este 542 oute of . affrike 543 ryde whedere . beste  
 544 grete feste 545 hire . kynne 546 Oute . & mynne (þe om.) 548 semþ  
 549 lond 550 reinede 552 kinge . Alexaundre . rith . defferens 553 kinge .  
 Egipte . sentence . 554 wille (= well) 555 Whiche 556 which of w. r. 557  
 deceyuede 559 telle forth 560 Which longe . kynrode 561 after 562 Madag-  
 dalans . high 564 Reinede 565 hitte 566 which spekeþ 570 clepede 571  
 reinede 572 rith 573 owne 574 bylyde . fadres 575 firste lyfe . iche 577 hitte  
 579 spronge . oute 580 one-to . þe f. 581 noble 583 philip fadere . Alisaundre  
 584 secunde 585 zone s. . hafe 587 wondres . Alisaundre south 588 laboure  
 zete 589 kyng om. lith 590 owne 591 mythe 592 wane . grune 593 cesede  
 594 chaungede 596 made . þe om. 597 haue his . high 598 hool 599 hote . rithe  
 601 deie . þis worlde in 602 selue 603 lordis gafe 605 gafe . he om. mythi  
 606 Alexaundre . rith 607 firste 608 whiche . lefte . now om. 609 thinge .  
 clerkes 610 reinede 611 ayre 612 noble 613 amonge 614 ceptire 615  
 which 616 reinede per 617 calle 618 reinede 620 which . reynede 622  
 dide 623 tempile 624 noble boke . writithe 627 whane 628 askede 629  
 lefte 630 hithe 631 synnede bi . daughter 632 brente . brith 633 þe inst.  
 of 3c . story 634 seune 635 euene 636 reynede 637 high 640 regnede  
 demetirus 641 a Crowne 643 euene . regnede 645 wanne 646 mich . grete  
 648 sette 649 dede 650 rithe 651 lede . fere 652 loste . fadres wanne 656  
 dede pane 657 euene 658 after 660 gouernede 661 pies 663 here 665  
 weldede . calle 666 saide 667 by . rith 668 And om. 669 mayde 670  
 Rithe . high 671 Sey . suche anoþer 673 sone bi 674 highe 677 Sone .  
 fadere . alle regnede 678 rithe . haue 680 fader 681 fader . Katrine 684  
 schewede 685 be-high 686 reknyng 687 acordith . wyth cronicles . be  
 688 fro . thing s 690 þese kinges 691 & om. ; one-to oþer mens reknynges  
 692 which 693 pise . degree 694 But . hapely 695 meneth 697 Nombres  
 of veres which 699 lordschep 700 kynrode . scherwes . worschep 701 doth  
 702 Criste . schrewes 703 whi . worlde 704 correcte synners 707 Katrine .  
 þe 708 firste 709 lordes . which 710 araiede 711 oþer 712 nozt 713  
 Grete 714 bi . þat ite 715 lordes wyth . bachilere 716 come . þider . seruice  
 717 Bischoppes 718 wittes 720 Summe lordes 721 ladies . qwenes 722  
 crowned . þe om. 723 Whiche seruede at þat 724 prayede . hire 725 goddes .  
 & 726 whiche 727 lordes 729 grete 730 costome 731 & to þe pouert low  
 732 one-to . manne 733 dayntes . reherce canne 734 plenty . in hale & in  
 halle 735 seruede . nedede 736 Swiche rule . I . om. 737 warnede . withe

738 righe glade 739 opene bothe 740 curyde 741 meel . opire 742 vesselle .  
foder 743 voide neiper . ne 746 pepile 748 cite 749 gentils 750 ladys .  
hire 751 bothe . othere 752 loggede . Inne 753 hire fadire kyne . hire 754  
othere 756 spake . whiche 757 beste 758 Summe 759 reste 761 noble .  
whiche 762 asayede eche one 764 is om. 765 renelle . festis gunne 766 take  
767 are 768 Eche . whiche . or make 769 too courseres . whiche 770 blake .  
othir white 771 & silke (of om.) 772 sey 773 Summe . mantyls white .  
mylke 774 whiche 775 ryde . þei om. forthe . weye 776 note elles nowe .  
farewelle 777 & praye 778 storrye 779 hire . holde 780 qwene 781 hire .  
not blynne 782 doth . grete 784 durste 785 Ioy . & om. 786 herte . noghte  
787 affirwarde 788 Both witte . wisedame 789 Euene . rennethe 790 Sweche .  
stody dede 791 whiche 792 wite . presens 793 Durste ones touche . any  
794 dide 795 euer-more 796 her seruante 799 neuyr 800 gouernauns  
801 Both prevy . a-saie 802 Stedfaste . stabyle 803 seynte 805 preyer 807  
one-to 808 articles 809 before 810 criste . rith 811 good om. werkis 812  
werkis causede . sei þis 814 hauntede . werkes . sperithe 815 Which . haue  
816 vertue both nyth 817 nedeth . nyche . eye lithe 818 wele . fele 819  
hire noble presens 821 whene . coude . ony mysorawte (!) 823 loue 824 fulle  
wisely 825 honeste 826 reulede . is om. beste 827 whanne 828 noghte .  
truly 829 lokith 830 menbires . body 832 deyneth 833 what 835 rulere  
836 worlde . falle (be-om.) 838 schul . I-wis 839 goode lordschipe 840 whane .  
þat om. 841 noble 842 hire 843 homely 844 comforth 845 glade . disporth  
846 Sade . whane 847 Goodely . hire 848 whane . no hede 849 kepte . diso-  
late 850 hertis haungyng . þe lede 851 commons gruchyng . at debate 852  
no rule 853 pepile . surre 854 kinge . lythe . ny 856 opire 857 helpe crye  
858 come . too 859 alwey thoughte 860 who . stande 861 loste . lande 862  
commyth amonge 863 elles . bokes 864 Lete . londe . & renne 867 zete  
nyth alle 868 blynde . who turnyste . wheele 869 low 870 Lith 871  
supposede . conquire . his 872 not have 873 hole 874 vnsekirnesse . variable  
875 worldely . arte . vnstabyle 877 zete . sarsenrye 878 lefte . one-to . womans  
879 muste . mayde 880 summe kyng . not þis 881 if om. wurchip 882  
weldeþ . are made 883 schul . þis 884 þer golde 885 lyve . tende 886  
haue . myrth . any 887 euene . now om. 888 haue 890 noble kyng 892  
pepile saide 893 Iustice 894 sette . schire . cessiones 895 Righe . liste . nowe  
896 no-thinge to 898 schalle 899 abyle 900 pepile 902 certyne ony ; oþer  
om. 903 rankyre 904 laye . lande 906 alle . hande 907 sche one-weddede .  
zouge 908 lykyng 909 abyle . housebunde 910 nedes . safe 913 certene  
915 þanne 917 moste goodely 918 on-to om. qwene 919 hire modire whiche  
921 ladys 922 suffre 923 olde 924 serteyne . writene 925 ladys 926  
know 929 opire . whiche . honde 930 to-gedire 933 leue 934 hertes .  
pitouse 935 lette 937 pepile 938 oute 939 welle 940 vndire . nowe 942  
riche . whych (corr. fr. whech) 944 leue . reste . pees 945 crie . I-sees 947  
gouernde . werke 948 Thinkithe 949 summe-what 950 sume . oute 951  
Suffre . pepile . sume 953 þerfore 954 appolyne 957 one-doo 958 scene 961  
desireþ alle oure grete counselle 962-3 transp. and 961 & 962 are marked b a.  
962 of alle þe londe be-dene 963 weddede 964 Lete hire . choise 965 Choise .  
hire 966 soule 967 nowe 968 ane 970 suche 971 to-morowe . oute . bede  
972 ere 974 ansverde . rithe . agene 975 algatis mote 976 leue 977 any  
978 hire . heretoo 979 hire daughter 980 weddede hastely . sume 981 hire .  
sente 983 qwene . surre 986 passede . dede . hire pepile 987 aloweth 988  
done 989 hire daughter . sume 991 hire . to om. 992 were 993 fayne 994  
fynyschede 995 hire 998 neithere 999 leke . say . naye 1001 daughter  
1002 zet 1003 wighte 1005 hire . plithe 1006 rithe 1007 caste 1008 hire  
1010 certyne 1011 nozte 1012 muste 1013 elles 1014 ferthe 1015 weel  
1018 schulde . elles 1022 come . his beste 1026 lettete 1028 pepile . apaiede  
1029 voice 1030 endip þe b. 1031 which hire . kynrede 1033 sende 1035  
which . worchip 1037 be-twixe . hire 1038 which . rially holde 1039 stoute  
1043 reste rithe.

## II.

(Title om.) 1 brite 2 fierz . faste 3 rithe 4 tellith it so 5 neither . ne  
8 Thies . wordis . pis . dedis 9 Which . leuande 10 tokens . hire 11 hire gostely .  
fonde 12 honde 13 hath tokyns 14 alle . zet 15 criste 17 Brenmethē . hire  
18 hire . sittithe 19 dew . þe om . whichē 20 made . neste 21 wille . reste 22  
speche . commende 23 whichē . with inst. of we 24 Amonge vs 25 duly 26  
which 27 desireth 28 weddede 31 chidis 32 qwenchede 35 sereule . rounde  
36 othir 37 calleth . felawe 38 to-gedire . sistive . as om . brother 39 Eche .  
drawe 40 suche . hire 41 haste . laste 42 hire soredē . caste 43 hire . pis  
44 ferre 45 whel . caste hire 46 hire . tiede 47 so swetely take 49 bounde to-  
gdire 50 welle . thinkith . hire 51 liffe . hire . hafe 52 Thise latene bokes . þe  
same 53 hire . sey 54 destroie 58 Soundith . hire 60 destroyedē . hire 61  
Thies . hire 62 synne 63 schete oute . sperle 65 onworthi 66 þi langurē 69  
which . sufferede 70 streith 71 elles 72 Messengers 74 beste 75 Clerkis  
muste 76 lordis 77 tary 79 thider . grete 80 *wyth* . grete 81 erle 82 mene  
myth . beste 83 phaphone . pider 84 anz opire 86 rialē 87 *wyth* (overl.) fullē  
88 þise reall om . 89 solempnite 90 receyuēde 91 is om . 92 Laste . thidire .  
approche 93 owe 94 calle . anteoche 97 both . rith nozt 98 wille . hire 99  
daie . which assynede 100 gadere 101 lenghte . hundrede 102 certeyne .  
whichē 103 Sittyngē 104 mette . hemeselue 105 Swiche . worlde 107 telle  
hire . þei sei 108 wote 109 wente . easly 110 rith before . fis 111-12 last  
half-lines transp. : 3e schul note be dismaide 112 My s. lady . þane þus he sayde .  
114 trueth . muste 118 alle . lordes . other 119 excepte rith . certeynly 120  
cas . rith 122 duke . eme 125 muste . bokes 126 take . bi brokes 128 lye  
130 phelosophire . wille I sey 131 hardely 132 no pleasance 133 pleassith  
134 peple . housbonde 135 rialle . whichē 136 goddes 138 peple . shulle  
139 Excusith . note 140 suche chose . refuside 141 myth 142 haue . myche  
143 now om . 144 wey 147 desireth 148 *seruauntes* 149 yow om . 150 liste  
152 Rith alle 153 rith . liste . 154 thise 155 alle 157 though 158 qwene  
160 prey . whichē . longe 161 muste . wronge 162 schew . longe haue 163  
preyeste poynte 164 suerly 166 veyneglorie 167 please 168 peple . rith  
169 concele . councele 170 alle . peple 171 deny 172 telle 173 Which . falle  
174 herte . sette 175 suche . lette 176 zete . agcyne . owne 178 mynde .  
fareth . rith 179 schepē . whane . beste 180 eschapede . wawe 181 schipe  
182 poynte . broughte 183 leffe . ease 184 muste 185 peple 186 muste  
188 knoweste 189 haue 190 mythe 195 thought . hire-selue 196 softly  
197 myth þanz h. 198 saide . goode 199 feldes 200 poynte 201 one me tille  
202 alle 203 both reste . habundaunce 204 welle 210 grete haste . haue rith  
211 zonge . welle 212 haste 214 zeres . paste 215 both loke . taste 216  
ayse 218 not 219 suer . housbonde 222 to yow lenger 223 faste . lith  
224 lith 226 it om . thinkith 227 peple . while . iangile & carpe 228 Speke .  
luste . wone 229 choyse 231 summe 232 grete 233 riche 234 wordis . taugh  
236 wite 237 thoughte 238 owne . aboute 239 fadire . londē 241 pounde .  
hande 244 hider 245 aske 246 avisede 248 I 250 sekire . birde 252 pro-  
fitable 253 gresse 254 hungre 257 grow 261 law 262 traitours . rowe  
263 lordes 264 kende 265 blode 266 slayne . owyne om . 267 bowels cūte  
269 mene 272 mythe 273 make . falle 274 beste . þinke 276 Which . sinke  
278 haue 279 Rith . make 282 faders 284 þouz . lyuede 285 myth 287  
such 288 while 289 selue . þouz 290 emys 292 fadere . dede 293 yeres  
be-fore 294 dede . doth 296 obeyede 297 rowe 298 durste . þan om . 300 dide  
302 loste . sumtyme 304 theftē . grete 305 hyde . crafte 306 summe . pun-  
chide 307 ofte . rith nozte 308 þis same wise . wroute 309 ryde 310 Go .  
emys which 312 be neke þat . hongē 313 neuer 314 lete 315 goode . rith  
316 a reall om . eke with-alle 317 capadoce 318 knes 321 this . hyde 322  
And om . Yit may 3e note neyther . hyde 323 haue . soule 326 lykely 327  
I-passede 328 lefte 329 lykith . welle 330 wonderfullē we þinke 332 in  
om . synke 333 youre . myth 336 satille 337 myth . alle 338 ordeynede

rith 339 castelle 340 pepyle . bei . schente 342 alle . Inow 343 muste . kepe  
 344 pe om . faireste 347 3e om . 348 brynge forth 349 please 352 hyde .  
 kepte . crosse 353 mythe 354 capadoce 355 whiche myth 356 ransome .  
 gode 357 thinge consente 358 wiseste 359 thinge . wante 360 selue 362  
 Mythe . strenghte . wante 363 hane beaute 364 zit 365 Bodely strenghte wher-  
 with . oppresse 366 wikkede . whiche . now om . . ryffe 367 venians 368 or wille  
 369 telle . sekere . kinges 370 hane . wurchipe alle 371 Summe . pepyle . ofte .  
 muste 372 These thinges falle . thinkethe 373 wille 374 Ordeyne . mene .  
 lene 375 zit 377 Spede . longe 379 sere 381 welle 382 worchipe 385 to  
 be-holde 386 welle 387 streyte 388 Whiche disese . leke . dele 392 true  
 393 rith nozte 394 lordschipes . wonne . handes 395 wroughte 396 faute . no  
 om . londes 397 prisoners whiche . lede . bandes 399 borders 400 soudyours  
 401 rith nozt . couet 403 nozte . sende 405 nozte . fynde 410 swyche . halde  
 411 drope 412 guane 413 Rithe . wedede 416 pepyle . wille . schalle 417  
 make 418 graunte 419 hange 421 swone 422 Mith graunte . pouz 423  
 dede . fadere 427 note 428 kinges . herte 429 suche fredome . rithe 430  
 suerte 431 myne 432 punche . scherewes 433 euelle dedes . daye 434  
 nedethe 435 Suche deputies sires . feele 436 suche maters . muste 437 bot om .  
 fith . ande 438 officers . sekerly 440 sleithe . are . case 441 lase 442 Alle  
 443 faders 444 lete . lete 451 rith 452 perilous 453 fullsone be 454 any sisme  
 457 pepyle 458 lande 459 Renne 460 fize . flite . & om . 461 Alle . araye .  
 sette . nozte 462 alle thinge 463 sitte 464 olde 465 luste . elles 467 bokes .  
 wille 468 beste . dulle . mannes 470 you firste 471 hangede 472 suche 473  
 heme 477 goddes loue . pepyles 478 liffe . lete . boke 479 letters 480 trouthe  
 481 Tende vne-to . take 482 heyle . querte 483 myche . hane . herte 485 Rith .  
 nozte 488 any gode . rithe nozte 492 I-wisse 493 euene . pepyle 494 tachede .  
 pouer 495 amende . a-myssse 496 muste helpe 497 litelle 498 helpe . I om .  
 499 true 500 hertes 503 plithe 504 pane say . rithe 505 pepyle 506 amyse  
 508 I-wise 509 blisse 510 nabugodonyssore 511 pepyle 512 preste 514 breste  
 515 & om . pestelense 516 which . offense 517 such 518 amonges leons 519  
 pute . pepyle 520 durste . withstande 521 muste . pouz 523 goddes 524 Whiche .  
 sernede . myth 525 made om . 526 suche low pepyle . keane 527 pepyles . cry-  
 inge . kinge . oftene 528 such 530 menede . him 531 hane 533 muste . boke  
 534 sers . helpe 535 worldely 536 bise . mans prowte 537 such nowe 538  
 alle 539 faste . growe 540 witte 541 lith . wille 542 whiche 543 saw . rede  
 545 muste 547 faders . knowe 548 conquete 549 tolde 550 dede 551  
 telle 552 Swiche . thingis . hade 553 sire . muste yow lete 554 law . mannes  
 556 prestis are 557 pe feeste . the halidaie 558 suche 559 Eythire . Iupiter  
 560 carpe . suzane 561 Blanethe no suche thinge 563 semethe . hyde 564 to  
 om . suche wordis 566 mayntene alle . thinge 567 Whiche . goddes . offerynge  
 568 sire arcules 569 grete 571 here . whiche 572 autorite 573 grete 574  
 wordis 576 suche 578 either yere 581 new . ware 582 commeth . late 583 is  
 586 ferre a-sundire fer fro 587 Whiche 588 oste 589 such 590 salte watire  
 row 591 any 593 londe 594 mote nedis 596 goste 597 saile . londe 600  
 hande 602 suerly . schulde wille 603 schulde 605 myche . ofte 608 dothe bi  
 610 sire 612 myche 615 nozt 616 I-bouzte 619 tende 620 alle . wille now  
 perof . wante 621 sette . plante 622 maners 623 lerne . Iuste . here 624 grete .  
 whiche . alle 625 knyth 626 hane wurchipe pouz . hane 627 teche . schaftis .  
 bene 628 schalle . habunde 629 note 631 fadere . note 634 wedede 635  
 casede 636 wise 637 herte felle . or l . 638 mythe . alle thise 639 Whiche .  
 rithe 640 plentuously alle 641 Whiche kepte 642 armlis 644 3e myth he  
 note . faste inst . of softe 645 rith 646 laide 648 leide rithe 649 plas 651  
 herisie 652 rithe 653 roste 654 kynde 655 Whiche . rith . leste 656  
 departede . beste 658 now inst . of lo . dwellis 660 muste 661 alle . cooste  
 662 reste him 664 Rith 666 duke 667 he be-gane . say 668 zonge . rith .  
 dide 669 pepyle muste . obey 670 dey 672 hertely bow 673 kinge 674  
 pepyle . hye 675 Rith . amonges 682 thise thinges . seel 684 onc (to om .)  
 685 othire 686 wille obey 687 weddede . summe 688 law 693 laste . muste



bow . hardelie 694 Sire . suche 695 Rith . whiche . enforced 697 insuer  
 yow 698 thouth 699 it . ooste 701 kepte . whiche 703 wille (= wel) . in om.  
 704 reasons 705 Whiche 706 liste . such pinge 707 sire 708 That inst. of As.  
 fadere . he om. reste 709 lykly 710 any 711 one-true 713 crowne 714  
 liste 715 grete . stode . bi 716 scharpe 717 thoughte 718 one-to 719 pise .  
 alle 720 ȝit . arte 721 pringnauatly . parte 722 arne . thei be noghte 723  
 lesse . pouȝe 724 thoughte 726 Greteste . alle 727 preise . supposede 728  
 whiche 729 inhaunse 730 alle 731 poynte . not 732 herte 733 I-wisse  
 734 drinke to . trow 735 moste 736 Whiche . semethe . wedede 737 counselle  
 739 langore 740 Whiche . one-to . fikille whel 741 spousaile . olde 742  
 Valarye . moste 743 suche 744 suche . grete om. 745 whiche 747 saide wele  
 748 longe sith . rith 752 such . alle thinge 753 wele 754 wysche 757  
 schate . longith . rith 759 gouernenoure . goode 760 alle 761 purpose 763  
 Beholdithe 764 stedfastely 766 othire 768 purpose . warpe 769 Iete 773  
 ȝonge . goode 776 wondire meche 778 þat om. 779 which 780 note 781  
 suche thinge 782 Such 783 Neither . othire withe 784 grete disspithe 785  
 efte-sone 786 alle vnthir 788 weddede 791 Both . myne faders . moders  
 793 Which . ordeynede 794 Which . decense 795 grete 796 such 797 wele .  
 kinge . alle 798 Ouere 800 and 802 transp. 801 maytene rith . wronge 802  
 kinges myth . hardly 803 such helpe . wele 804 liste . say . parte 805 sire .  
 truly . arte 806 pretendede 808 myne . stably 809 suche 811 purpose 816  
 kinge . lorde 817 lete 818 brynge . hole bunche 819 make . vnche 820 haue .  
 beste 822 leste 825 suche 827 choise 828 whiche 829 no. 830 to corr. to o?  
 muste . bow 831 entente . efte . newe alow 832 schulde . & ȝe schal 833 sire  
 835 thise 837 such 840 othire 841 scathe . note 842 to om. 843 no-thinge  
 844 maters . ouer 846 which 848 wille (= welle) . rith . seyne 849 liste 850  
 Whiche 851 londe . wiste 852 myth . suche . fiste 853 Draw mych . euene  
 854 rith welle 856 note leke . leuyng 858 lorde rith 860 eke om. amonges  
 any 862 answerde schortly 863 Sire 864 poynte . which 865 liste 866 mayden-  
 hede . twiste 870 too 871 wede ȝete . thinkithe 873 liste . graunte . to 874  
 withoutene 876 grete 877 rith 878 wisdame 879 frendes . sittene 881 grete  
 namede loos 885 suche thinge 888 thise . witte 889 vsede 893 know . beste  
 895 schende 901 wote . beste 902 suche 903 know . frende 904 If ; se om.  
 905 liste 906 deynete 907 counte 908 suche 914 such . neither . luste 915  
 suche pinge 916 Drede 918 pepyle 920 putte oute . whiche 921 falsede 922  
 which . reeme 927 lykly . note om. 929 such 931 wene . opresse 933 Sire  
 936 mych to 937 conceyte 938 suche . witte 939 wittes . 940 Leke . egyle .  
 alle 943 fostere . whiche 944 Dispise . noghte . þat om. 945 liche 947 Growe .  
 witte . I-nowe 948 thowe . witte . suche 949 goode wille muste 950 mene  
 (mens?) 952 haunce . witte oute 953 lettithe 954 seruantes 955 counceille .  
 whiche 956 telle 957 bettيره ende 958 broute . helis 961 witte . whi  
 963 bydde . commaunde . sende 964 such 965 alle 966 his om. . londe . lyme  
 967 sryffe . þe debate 968 Amonges . pepyle 969 staunche both enuy 970  
 compelledde 972 kinge 973 streuen . thinge 974 whane 976 anothinge 977  
 brothir 978 Ageyne . sone . strinethe 979 rith . entente 980 brynge . thinge  
 981 Sume . witte 982 ande sume 983 rithe . on erasure . wittnesse 984 kinge  
 985 pepyle 986 seene 988 pepyle 991 choise 993 abouthe 994 selue . muste  
 þei louth 995 herte 996 whate . telle . plate 997 smerte 1000 if om. stronge  
 hyme-selue 1001 fith . alle 1002 wille 1003 Lete 1004 bringe 1005 com-  
 naunte 1006 wele carpe 1008 lete . falle . mende 1009 I-now 1010 mornyde  
 1011 saw . drow 1013 sy 1014 douthire . note 1015 suche 1018 worlde  
 1019 suche 1020 grete 1021 haue 1022 impossibale . craue 1023 anothinge  
 daie 1024 thouthe 1025 suche arae 1026 suche thinge . noghte 1027  
 Cursede . brought 1028 doth 1029 That euer thei poynte þei uarie euer for  
 soth 1030 thinge which 1033 clyuethe 1034 Wheder 1035 counselle 1038  
 lorne (I om.) 1039 xalle . schalle 1043 here om. 1044 duke 1047 brouth .  
 to 1049 myche 1050 suche 1051 one-to 1052 high . hire homagere 1053  
 myche 1055 kynrede 1056 mythe . alle . entente 1059 ȝonge . wise 1060

thinge . law . for-byddith 1063 wille . wytte whate 1066 rith 1068 sote  
 1070 Brouth . lith 1071 steppes 1072 wronge elles . childerne 1073 Whiche  
 1078 douthere . both maide 1079 councele . þus 1081 hew 1084 bore . myth  
 1087 myth 1090 distrucione 1092 worchipe 1094 haue 1100 diede . elles  
 1101 louyde beste 1102 myth falle . happe 1103 breste 1104 parte . reste  
 1106 entre while 1107 council . suche 1108 Which 1109 I . gladnes . euer  
 is 1110 pleasaunce . medelith 1111 lyve . dispise 1112 sewerte 1113 haue .  
 londe 1114 grete 1117 hire crafte . suche . hire 1118 philosophire . deuyne  
 1119 Whiche . termes 1120 ʒeuth . prise 1123 selue 1125 ʒit stode 1127  
 haue 1128 What . haue 1129 note ʒe 1130 alle 1131 wote 1132 which . my  
 1133 sothly 1134 goode 1135 witte 1136 haue . wrouʒt 1138 lordschipe .  
 noʒte 1139 bouʒte 1140 elders 1143 wordes whiche semede 1145 rith 1146  
 suche . prise 1148 haue 1150 whiche . þise 1151 witte . sadnes 1152 one-  
 too 1153 othire . renlede 1154 Lete 1156 neybour 1158 heme . othire . carpe  
 1159 he om . 1160 Whethire 1161 wele 1162 This v . wanting 1163 Alle  
 1165 werkes . dyrke 1170 answere 1172 to-gidire 1174 wille 1175 which  
 1176 þise 1177 say neither . strenghe 1179 landes . lenghe 1181 suche . baʒne  
 1182 suche 1186 worchipe 1187 sikirly 1188 wed not 1191 wise 1192  
 whiche longith 1193 nyse 1194 holde 1199 Athanes 1200 longe 1201 peple  
 1202 choise . þere & 1203 whate . whiche . heede 1204 in . stede 1208 goode  
 1209 & your 1210 semethe 1212 elders 1216 phelosophie . is ite 1218 take .  
 sote 1219 bokes 1221 all þise 1222 Eythire 1223 herte displesith 1224  
 oncurteisly 1226 duke 1227 grete 1228 schewe . haue 1230 Wer . witte  
 1231 Athanes 1232 Wo . ouʒte . lete . take þidre 1233 endewede 1234  
 worldely 1235 soffyne 1236 motyffe 1237 voyde . weel 1239 heede . ofte-  
 1240 o . growinge diurs 1242 rede . white . diuers 1245 acorde 1246 diurs  
 1249 hardely 1251 Whiche . clouene 1252 gryffe . gryf 1253 myne 1254  
 schulde 1255 I schalle 1256 certenly 1258 ffare weel . ffare welle 1259  
 counseile . profitabile 1260 sweche . stabile 1261 saide 1262 asundire 1263  
 Comonde . wittes stille 1264 hopynge . after 1269 Whiche . wise . cunnynge  
 1271 lernynge 1272 thinge 1273 whiche . vtter 1274 all om . loste 1276  
 Whiche . wedede 1278 firste 1279 oure 1280 worlde whiche 1281 fulle sone  
 be 1283 beaute . mote 1284 leueth 1285 leste 1286 blissid . whiche 1287  
 thirde 1288 Whiche 1289 falle 1290 fourte . grete 1291 Whiche . telle  
 1295 pepyle 1297 roialle 1302 Alisaundere . worlde wanne 1303 kynge 1304  
 Whiche . babelle 1305 lyuyng 1306 enhaunsede hyly . grete 1307 hede .  
 goddes 1308 weddede 1309 kynrode 1310 othir . brite Beaute 1312 yee  
 1313 Swiche . hardely 1314 flater . sekerly 1315 preyside . booke 1316 wyth-  
 outyne 1317 poynte 1318 schapithe þarfithye 1319 vnder 1321 mankynde .  
 eyje 1322 schappe 1324 rithe 1325 brite . with-al 1329 þinge . cer-  
 teyne 1331 Whiche 1332 takithe hede 1334 suche a faire maye 1335 sekirly  
 1336 rithe 1340 wille 1342 suche thinge 1343 Suche goodly . hyde 1345  
 thirde poynte . whiche 1346 grete lernynge 1347 wittes . suche 1348 kynge  
 1349 mythe . wele troste . cunnynge 1350 selue 1352 commune . othire 1354  
 firste . your 1355 Whiche . sterres . hye 1356 wisdame 1357 to þis entente  
 1358 sente 1359 heede . parelle 1361 drawe 1362 speke now 1363 myche  
 1364 fourte poynte . þise . laste 1365 whiche 1366 worlde wondrith 1368  
 witte 1370 parte . wone 1371 beste like if . kinge 1372 askynge 1373 swete .  
 wijte 1375 whiche . dede endyte 1376 plate 1378 alle herte 1380 sente .  
 whiche . wante 1382 wyse . warante 1383 muste purpose . ane 1384 a hous-  
 bonde goode . deboneyre 1385 I inst . of ʒe 1386 lyte 1388 passe 1390 wolde  
 knowe 1391 argumente 1392 worthieste 1393 muste . þe om . alle 1394  
 rith 1395 heede 1396 wise 1397 suche lenage 1398 suche 1399 haue .  
 wele 1400 stande 1402 my housbonde 1403 alle . muste 1405 muste . stabile  
 1406 purpose . sette 1407 suche 1408 haue 1409 muste . wise . know 1410  
 amendede 1411 rered 1412 suche 1414 fynde such 1415 muste . suche  
 mythe 1416 nede . helpe 1417 selue . þe om . rithe 1418 myth 1419 me  
 suche one 1420 haue 1421 Herkeneth 1423 mennes 1426 herte 1427

askile . ony þinge 1428 askyng 1429 muste 1430 muste passe 1432 goode . schynnyng 1433 Passe . whiche 1436 alle . noghte 1437 Alle . bute if 1438 grete . soughte 1440 alle . wile . alle . blis e 1441 suche welthe 1442 telle . desire 1443 strenkithe . alle þise faile 1444 leste 1445 whiche . disseuer 1448 warante 1450 I craue 1451 noute 1454 Which 1455 fader e . asunder 1457 this . o lowde 1460 wepyng . gune 1461 felle . rounde 1462 swounded 1464 lifte vþe 1465 laste . caute 1466 nye om . 1467 we2 om . such 1468 wele hire 1470 such one . hade 1472 suche 1473 seeke . muste 1474 scorneth . iche one 1475 faste 1478 satte 1479 cursyng . maistirs 1481 lordschip 1482 sende . realme 1484 grete 1485 meche . grucehyng 1486 asunder . iche 1487 lyknyng 1488 qwene wrothe . iche one 1489 lefte . dwelle 1490 write 1491 fynchede . white 1492 Iss . herte 1493 chaungyng 1494 alle 1495 loste . endyng 1496 whiche . pletyng 1497 alle . legemens .

## III.

2 goode 4 ffadire . heuene . sone 5 rith 6 it om . þe beste 7 goste 9 noble- hede 10 grete disputyng 13 suche . beste 15 Whiche 17 telle . ordire 18 criste 19 merueylously 22 þe reders 23 Whethir v . 24 overl . 25 writene 26 Miche þinge . hyde . diuers 28 Kepte 29 wydder 31 liffe . hire 32 While . lyffe 33 medeeyne 34 treacle 35 deuele 36 streite . to om . 37 blissede . comforte 38 such 39 muste lofe 40 lerne om . troste 41 better . troste 46 it om . 47 knelyng 48 preste . sothly 49 songe 50 sleep 51 counceile 52 longe 54 bapteine 55 schorge 57 was om . ordeynode 60 wente . lady 61 hermyte 62 bodely . gostely 63 criste . mayde 64 stronge . stabile 66 worldly 68 wroute . passith 69 worldly . agaste 70 speke . passith . gnaste 73 mythe . strenghte 75 leuyde . vitaille 76 he om . 77 lande hyc 78 schippis . faste 80 Sixti . lede sothly 84 lede 85 alle 86 ermytes 87 dwelte . six 90 wyth- outene 91 þis worlde 92 hermyte . falle 93 myth . bedes . wonte 95 Rith bi . scharpes 98 werkis 99 sittithe hyc 100 wele 102 sekiry 103 faste 105 goodnes 106 Deme . mythe 107 desirthe 108 blissede . allowede . sithe 109 mythe 114 sithe . þouth 115 walkede 117 blissede sith 119 Passyng . myche . erdly 120 Alle 121 brite 122 wote 125 lyte 126 þinkith . selue . lithe 128 sith . thinge 129 benedecite . merueille 130 zynge 131 hydyr om . morenyng 132 noþer inst . of now here . 133 Nother . fletyng 134 marvel- yng 135 wente 136 thoughte 137 firste . entente 138 omnipotente 139 heuene 141 hermyte 143 myschape 144 desese 149 one-to 150 troste 151 do . werkes . rithe 152 vsythe . brite 153 sere . messagere 154 wille . wordis 156 forsake 158 cōaunte 159 breth 160 feche . maydens 161 Speke 163 Arte . haste saide 164 nyth 165 not<sup>t</sup> (overl . by another hand) . þing om . wroth 168 meyne rith 170 petous noyse hath ecriede both . nythe 171 dulnesse 172 mythe 173 massagere . gostely 174 to om . 176 buske 178 suche 179 alle . worlde 181 rialle 182 bodely . schalle 183 rith 188 straunge . astōnede 192 ordeynode 193 meche 194 wede . myth 195 ordeynede 198 alle 199 wille . telle 202 shall 203 goodnes 204 firste . wite . qwene 205 rialle . wise 206 worlde suche 209 raynes 210 somes 211 sothnesse 212 in alle in 215 worldly . eke om . 216 worldly 217 hyer 218 sche om . 219 muste . meche þinge sertayne 221 pouerte 223 Or om . 225 hire . fyzte 226 Ageyne . herysie . phelosophie 227 all om . lite 228 sophymys 230 mytily . schal . arte 231 draw . parte 232 telle . sekiry 233 suche 234 lyre partilly 237 as om . a gl . ende 239 þinge 240 hermyte . plate 241 aferde . swonyng 242 lifte . agayne 243 sayne 248 I om . 249 commerous 250 comyng 251 witte . verely 253 hire seruante . caste 254 pleynthe 255 þinge . agaste 256 knowe . certayne 257 thoughte . souerayne 258 rokles 260 petous . praye 261 punche . leste 262 nyth 263 obediēte rith . requeste 264 beste 265 sewerly . grete 266 dede 267 note 268 certeyne 269 rith 270 fulfille . biddyng 272 þider . haue . mych 273 weys 274 wildernesse 275 weye . wikkede beste 276 hastely 277 schalle . leste 278 not a-reste 283 sayne

284 rialle 285 not om. stumbille 286 suche 287 comste. in om. 288 speke  
 292 onworlthi. mythe. dispysse 293 selue. muste 296 rialle 298 doungione.  
 walle 299 schalle 300 lfynde 302 alle 304 Rith. crouche 306 lette 309  
 walles. new 310 smal. schape 311 faste sew 312 note. rape 313 ope  
 lithly. swape 314 shalle entre. fynde. swete 316 wouaire. any 317 Mithe  
 entre. preuy 318 rith 324 postelles 325 stande 327 loller wyche 328  
 dismayde. gyf 329 suche 330 Rith 331 Suche wondire. stoned 332  
 Criste. endew. elde rekles 336 hire 337 sothnesse 338 leuande 339 vertue  
 340 wedde. schorte 341 massagere 342 hire. one-to 344 tokene 345  
*enquere*. thidire sente 349 durste 350 wurste 351 hire 352 sotil cuanyng  
 354 alle. studyng 355 faste. hider. hire 357 Take. state 358 rith. waye  
 359 Trostryng. suche. longe 360 pouze. aungels 361 lodyng broothe 362  
 longe. euene 364 runne 365 thinge 366 pe om. worlde. liste 367 werk-  
 yng 368 ciste 369 stronge. beste 371 Rithe 373 chase 374 is om. gone  
 forthe 375 hille. wildernesse 376 is om. as om. 377 studyng 378 en-  
 tred 379 too 382 sodenly 383 Be-fore. rithe 384 conceyte 385  
 stoynde (a om.). certayne 386 fonde. lokyng 387 stody. solatorie 388  
 amonge. looke 389 suche beaute 391 blissede mythe 392 brithe 394  
 Wende. suche a. leuyng 395 herde. womans 396 brithe. beauteuous.  
 thinge 397 Blissede. heuene-kyng 398 hider 399 passithe wyth-outen 400  
 othir 401 lokede anone one. stoynde 402 mythe. pe walles 403 elles 405  
 selue. laste 406 faste 410 brithe were 411 amendede 412 sithe. 413 heile  
 414 rith. agayne. seide 415 Goode. telle 419 firste. witte. muste 420  
 Whepire. wuste. 421 mythe. maistirlye 422 walles 423 enchaument  
 424 entrede 425 witte. ping 430 lyue 431 nepire 432 preuy. ite is 433  
 take suche ping 434 falle happely 435 now om. 436 boldnesse 437 witte  
 439 founde 440 wende 441 rith 442 agayne 444 sayne 447 lette 448  
 state 453 yeene haue 454 boldly make. commendyng 455 passithe. thinge  
 456 ferre 457 what-so. liste 458 dede 459 Ine. wiste 460 wroth.  
 schapithe. fiste 461 þow om. 463 worde 464 dede euer er before 465 any  
 466 leide. tresore 467 Rith. herte. emprentede 468 massagere 469 criste.  
 selue 470 Rithe os 472 a mane 473 þonge 476 dede 478 ferre. knowle-  
 yng 479 smerte 480 turnythe. ping 481 left. apposing 482 seyng  
 483 worthi a 485 worchipe. witt 487 þette 488 lithe. fayne. it 489  
 hire. wheþer. lordlesse 490 pinges 491 Wheþer. lyuyng 492 soole 493  
 weddede sekirly 494 Meche. wille. bow 495 rowe 496 And om. leue. selue  
 497 ofte 498 Rithe. abouthe 500 oute a doute 503 welle 504 suche 506  
 lordschipe. souerayne 507 heuene. erde 508 sothly. sayne 509 comethe.  
 suane 510 & of 511 Such. myth 512 lordschipe. stronge 514 truly.  
 wronge 516 mythe 517 leue 518 mechil 520 Modire. norse 521 to-gidere  
 522 þete ofte 523 bythe 524 moder 526 Sire 527 þe so 531 merueile we  
 more 532 arayde. sympile. massagere 536 suche 537 longe. seruante  
 538 cloth. worschipe 539 clothinge semyth. rithe 541 telle 542 make.  
 massager. dide 544 hardly 545 suche 546 alle. muste. rithe 548 gostely.  
 passithe 549 Bodely disgisinge 550 suche 551 clerks 552 truth 554 sente  
 555 Desirithe. inwardly araye 556 clothes spredde 557 boldely 559 brithe  
 560 Suche 563 sende 564 wille 565 feele 566 freuschipe 567 wordly.  
 parte 568 nozte 569 nozte 570 thouzte 571 lyuyng 574 dwelle. blisse  
 576 blissede. dide 578 massager 579 þone maydene 580 enprentede 582  
 sittinge 583 princis 585 kyng 586 stronge. mythy 588 endewede. goode  
 590 þat om. 591 leue. fiere 594 wille 597 þise 598 any 601 wordis 602  
 daie areste 604 note 605 meruelous 606 is modire his 609 worlde 611  
 mythe. & pitte 614 suche. whepire 615 suche 616 wheþer 617 pinges 622  
 seithe 623 ermyt. blisse 624 thouth 625 pinge longe 626 & alle hire  
 goodes. nozte 628 caste. worlde 630 bere it 632 rith 634 ony 637 sire  
 639 pou. not excersyse 643 þite. ilke 644 haue a. he om. 646 dide 647  
 be-gynne 649 sleep. swowe 659 goode 660 Proue. alle ping 662 suane.  
 brithe 664 remembrauns. telle. plite 665 othire 666 þise. werkes 668 telle

any merkes 669 proucabyle . clerkes 670 wittes muste 671 suche 672 Loke  
 673 aylede . myth 674 freile 675 bettere 676 lekyng 678 offende . witte  
 680 Inne 682 Inne 683 leuyng . delice 685 dwelle 686 semeth 687 mer-  
 chaunte 689 avaute 690 dide 698 wikkede 699 acorde . grete 700  
 longe . stronge 706 Loke . heriste 707 philosofie 709 passithe 710 fallithe  
 712 pise 713 medille 715 thinge 716 myche better 717 poynte . gyue .  
 warnyng 721 suche thinge 726 credulle . childere 727 thise 729 thinge  
 730 one-to 731 alle . wildyng 732 blissede 739 How . blissede 742 3ow  
 743 coupelyng 744 too . cryst om . 745 wille prou 747 arbitoure . tonge  
 749 Too . haue 750 skille 751 nozte 752 pene . thies . wille 753 in appetite  
 in werkyng & in thout 754 bouzte 757 wille . vne-to 758 How 760 kynde  
 761 mynde 762 Alle thyng . muste 763 herisie 764 Whiche too 765 heme  
 766 firste mouer 767 mouer 769 shalle 770 owne 771 pies 772 Assolyde .  
 pis 773 Vne-to . laste 775 bote . too 777 pat shalle 778 Thies wordis wente .  
 lefte 779 astoynde . wote . verely 780 Wheper 781 elles 782 wordis .  
 vnlyklye 783 ane inst. of & 785 þei inst. of men 786 liche 787 flewe  
 wordis 789 prouede 790 counceile 792 hermyte 795 see 796 throughte .  
 Cetee . gune 799 house 800 How . or zates . myth 801 smothe . sekensse  
 802 aurisia . heme 803 sekere 804 astoynde . shalle 805 hande . þene 806  
 cetee 808 lete . chide now & 809 knowithe it now whether 810 forthe  
 walkyng 811 Tille . house 813 wone 814 is but wilderness 815 waylde  
 816 caste 818 Goode lorle . leste 819 hyzte . geste 820 how 822 herde .  
 sekirly 825 myzty 826 lede 827 turnythe 828 lokethe . cooste 829  
 sodenly 832 wene 833 vntrew massagere 834 queene 835 verrey . how 838  
*turmentede* 839 Tel . pat om . stande . now om . 840 Couceile . lesse ne  
 mynne 841 lefte . house 842 wente . sente 843 straunge inst. of meruelous  
 845 olde 846 thouthe 848 pis mane 849 feche 851 suffere . diuersite 852  
 straunge 854 good om . lithe . sekernesse 855 saide 856 haue . troste . þene  
 myne-selue 857 entrede 858 passe 859 nozte . beste 861 saue vs 862  
 thoute 863 gruben . make . new agayne 865 sayne 866 dwellyng 867  
 gruchyng 868 counforte 871 syztes . swete 875 lede . kyngdome 876 hade  
 878 glade 879 goodly 881 loste . wille 882 truly . thinge 883 zondere .  
 nowzte 884 wonderfull walles shynyng . suane 885 Swiche . thyng .  
 wrozte 886 suche thyng . erthe . begunne 887 bryzte . robes . dunne 888  
 merely . note yonder sighte 889 yondere . bryzthe 890 nozte 891 Noþer  
 892 blissede . brouzte 895 haue felte 897 wepte 900 seithe . bryztere 901  
 othere . olde . growene . grase 902 olde . newe 903 3aue 905 zonde . zonde  
 906 ledyng 907 presse 908 graunte 910 ve . me om . 912 Desiryng . goodly  
 913 folowede whene 916 whene . zates 917 receyuede 918 suche 919 nozte  
 920 suche 921 whene . thiþer brouzt 922 hire thout 925 pies 926 suche  
 sithes . for om . 928 raunschede 929 Whether . nozt 930 nouzte 934 truly  
 935 Bute ife . 3onge 936 olde 937 what-so-ener . liste 938 myche thinge  
 939 receyuede . firste 940 bettere 941 Whene 942 swettere . mete . þene  
 943 hundrethes 944 þene 945 pies 946 Welcum 949 verrey 950 any 952  
 Thies goodly folkes . wonderfull 954 knytis 955 mene . abites . bryzte 956  
 successours 957 colours 958 hire 960 ledde 962 welcummyng . suche  
 963 welcum 965 felle . bones 966 alle ate ones 967 abites certeyne tokens  
 968 a t . 969 Aftere . passions . sufferde 970-1 transp . 970 tokens 971 þer  
 973 erth come 974 whene . brouzte 975 one . here 976 thout 977 suche  
 979 suche heuenly 981 wakede 982 folowede 983 Thene . sche om . alle .  
 makede 985 rialle 986 thyng 987 commyng 989 souzte 990 witte 991  
 pis 992 is om . on om . 995 suche 997 leyede 999 Leste 1000 note haue  
 1002 lifte 1003 goode 1004 heynesse . passede 1005 Alle . disport 1007  
 housholde . haue 1010 Rithe 1011 maydens 1013 tellithe note . seker  
 1014 ynow 1015 myche . bothe 1016 pies 1017 almithi 1018 compeny . þer  
 1019 stode 1022 solempnite 1023 wordis whene 1024 Sone . thinge  
 1025 haue brouzte a 1026 þer (st. pi ?) sp . . louyste . hire I hire bryng 1027  
 shalle . ryng 1035 haue the . thinge 1036 shalle . sijte lastyng 1038

Washide 1039 whiche 1040 Clensede . merkede . marke 1042 Whene . erthe  
 1043 Whiche . ofte vnkynde 1049 she hathc 1450 Brynge . me to 1051  
 suche . tokene 1053 preste 1054 goste 1055 Parforme 1056 note 1058 zite  
 zowe . mythe 1060 baptisc . erthe 1061 zite . note 1062 suche 1063 moste  
 rizthe 1064 wyzte 1066 discomfortede . wey 1067 sons . sekernesse 1068  
 moste 1072 make 1073 myzthe 1075, 2 do ye . deligens 1076 please  
 1077 zonde . baptistarye 1079 walkyde 1080 one-to 1081 fonde . funte  
 1082 watere 1083 callide . pepile 1088 suche 1091 watere 1093 clothis  
 1094 thinge 1095 ye 1096 Ryzthe . tokenynge 1097 know . oper olde . zynge  
 1098 Shalle 1101 thynge . trew 1102 wilis wrouzte 1103 suffre 1104  
 spoylide 1105 spoylynge 1106 feeste . tecme 1107 baptisc . blissede 1108  
 fadre . sonne . gooste 1109 In pe . witnesse 1110 one-to eriste 1111 booste  
 1112 Loke . dowghter 1113 one 1114 kirke 1116 dide wyrke 1119 vnde-  
 foulede . presente 1120 wittnesse 1121 answerde . pies articles 1122 sire  
 1124 founte 1126 wille . souerayne 1127 rithe 1129 renewede 1131 dile .  
 clothis 1132 Alle . ilke 1133 blyndnesse . ermytis 1136 lyzte receyuode  
 1137 myrthe 1138 easly 1139 sekerly . efte 1140 thankithe 1141 to om.  
 1145 writhe . tende 1146 bade . sekerly . dide 1148 How . he . elles . how 1151  
 zite . goynge . swetely 1153 shalle 1154 sekirly 1155 Suche wordis . walk-  
 ynge soberly 1157 mayde 1159 Suche 1165 grauntede . hydr om. 1168  
 blissede 1169 myche 1172 erthe 1174 be doo 1175 bene felle 1176 here  
 croune 1178 leuande 1180 heuene 1182 be pi modire 1184 bade . roos  
 1185 crounde 1186 myzthe 1187 any . whene 1189 Katrynes . felle 1190  
 Plate one-to . stille 1191 telle 1192 thinge 1193 arte . erthe 1194 com-  
 maundyng 1195 Mercy y craue lorde pat ofe alle maner thinge 1196 elles  
 1197 lernyd 1198 lyfte 1199 welcum doughter 1201 Wonderly . beaute  
 1203 seruyce 1204 lustyce 1206 welcumynge 1208 ffor my loue & . byddyng  
 1211 comous 1212 how lyke 1214 thies 1215 Plate . goode 1216 whene .  
 wittis 1217 thene . kyng 1218 souereyne . alle . thynge 1219 aungels .  
 mene . beste 1221 solempnite 1223 forgyfe 1227 sauuefaile 1232 yow  
 1235 house . rove 1236 broches . mantille 1237 for om. 1238 worldely  
 thynges 1241 ellez 1242 thouzte 1245 parte 1246 to om. 1247 in 1248  
 ordeynede 1254 alle . poo om. 1256 one-to 1258 alle 1259 Next my modire  
 ioynede to my presence 1260 schortly in sentence 1263 To be my wyfe for  
 euer & my make 1264 ffor youre constaunce & stedfastnesse in virginitie 1265  
 shalle 1266 Be-gynne . nozte 1267 shalbe bouzt 1268 rizthe 1269 spousesale .  
 nedes 1270 gyf 1271 seruede 1272 commaundede Iohñ . one-to 1274 ryng  
 1275 toke . ryng 1276 fyngire 1277 tokene 1279 wille 1281 wedede 1282  
 scene . ryng 1283 my nawtere 1284 grauene thynge 1286 called . calsi-  
 dony . cloude areyne 1287 swiche 1288 touchede 1289 autere 1290 bereere  
 1291 any maters . perilous 1293 debate 1295 bodyes . chaste 1296 songe .  
 abouzte 1297 most om. euery . myzte 1298 Wordis 1300 songe . songyn .  
 it om. 1301 pe same 1303 wil 1304 aungels 1305 songe 1306 wreched-  
 nesse 1307 The 1308 Cherche . y may 1309 wedynge 1310 liste 1312  
 hande . dide 1314 blissede 1319 sekernesse 1320 kepe . trew. 1321 reue  
 1322 shalte 1325 & om. some . goste 1326 godede 1328 alle . truste 1329  
 commaundement 1331 treuly 1332 Eche day whil sche (wylle I se crossed  
 out) 1334 solempnite 1337 ertly 1338 aungels shalle 1341 erthe dyede  
 1344 passede . myrth 1345 brygthe 1347 pe Chapelle . fount . lyzthe 1349  
 celle 1350 leftte . amonge 1352 how . par om. 1353 swone 1355 water .  
 comethe 1357 to om. 1358 rubyde . chekes 1361 lady om. 1362 pake 1363  
 do we lake 1364 chere inst. of rere 1365 ffallc . sorowe 1367 nouzte 1368  
 forsake 1369 ande thouzte 1370 wille . myche rouzte 1371 worldely .  
 ertly pleasance 1373 tho 1374 Weddyde 1375 how 1376 blisse . shulde  
 1377 suche . sekernesse 1378 ryng 1379 weddyng 1380 muste yow 1381  
 sekire . pleyne 1385 godhede . grounde . alle 1386 telle . shalle 1387 Thus  
 1389 besily 1390 suche 1391 sekirly . wretyn om. 1395 & om. sone .  
 goste 1397 moste 1398 coste 1402 goste . wite-outyne 1403 wille hane

1404 myzte . lyzthe 1410 fadur . sone 1412 sone . blisse 1413 begotene .  
 gooste 1414 beleue 1415 myzthe . conynge 1416 Goodnes . goste 1417  
 any 1418 myzte . goodnesse 1419 allmythi . sone 1422 thise 1423 the  
 cyzte 1424 saide . more om. 1426 þe 1427 bettere . thoughte þene 1428  
 tongis . broke 1430 lyzte 1432 bryzter 1433 Aungels . seucne 1434 longithe .  
 here 1435 emprise . heuene 1437 dede Iohn 1439 þe om. 1440 myzt 1443  
 Doughtur 1444 goode blissyng 1446 telle . a maner 1447 tyraunte . lyu-  
 ynge 1448 reigne 1450 styлле . owne 1451 tirauntrye 1452 in-dew 1454  
 muste . suffre . velony 1455 zourr om. goodes 1456 laste 1459 nozt 1460  
 doughtur . þe 1462 like 1463 eke inst. of ete 1465 dede . ryzth 1470 croune  
 1471 thungis 1472 how 1473 warnyngis 1474 whiche . þe om. ded 1475 y-  
 passede 1476 nozt discomfortede 1479 Shal . dwelle 1482 luyngis 1483  
 prayere . chmeslede 1484 zeue 3e . þe om. 1485 passede 1486 þene . make .  
 ende 1487 doughtur 1489 mynde 1491 euerlastyng 1496 Whedur . theþer  
 1497 note 1498 dyd . mysse 1500 ordeynede . souereyne 1504 please 1505  
 say . a voise.

## III.

1 Thies . dwellers . leue 2 Are lykned . dwel 3 els 4 farithe 5 Sume .  
 summe 6 diuers eke 7 laborers are lykned 8 law 9 flouers 10 to om. 13 thies  
 14 alle 15 be n. prophetabile 16 waste 17 but if it . the om. 18 vne-to 20 þene .  
 slepe . sikere 23 þfor þæt þei here þouȝ . noon om. dilectacione 24 zet in 25 encesse  
 28 Suffisith . ful 29 semyth 30 arayde 31 þis be-methe 33 hane om. 34 of 2  
 om. 35 list 41 þis wordly 42 Agayne . slulkyde 43 þies 44 wheche 45 wheche  
 46 the om. 47 the om. 48 wel 51 first and om. 53 vertuse 54 dwelle 55  
 thene he . hyme 57 wrytne . myche 58 mynde 60 mankynde 61 blynde  
 62 & clothe . olde 67 chyrches 68 trost 69 labour 70 guly 71 welle 73  
 ryzt 74 luyng 76 to hire 79 Emperours 81 Maxencius 82 thyrede  
 parde 83 dioeciane 84 mans 86 Dwelt 87 sacrifices dide 88 any 92 þies  
 93 Lefte 99 þer 100 emperours 101 empire . thei om. or 102 shorows 103  
 tonnes om. 104 sethe 106 And to 111 wheche 112 the om. 117 or . diede  
 119 in salisbury 121 the om. þe om. 122 crowned 123 myche solempnite  
 125 That 126 schrot 128 or 129 Sicile . diede . dyd 130 say 132 lyeth .  
 abyde 133 Whedire . or elles 134 dwellithe 138 labourthe . and eke 141 or  
 143 dome 144 reignede . the om. 146 kepe 147 slepe 149 speke 150 ne wiff  
 ne no 151 whene 153 husbnde let 154 set 155 þene bi 156 pepile 160  
 had hyme in-haunsede 161 conet 162 Romayns 163 lettoures . ded om. 164  
 brytayne 165 preyd . a knzte 166 fyzt 168 þer ende 169 strenthe 170 his  
 171 encesse . lenketh 173 pepile 176 hostis 177 trostith . one . Cete 178  
 disceynede 179 houshokle . meche . and om. 180 emsample 181 troste in .  
 pepile . wil om. 183 of Breytayne 184 is he 185 richfully 186 luyng 187  
 victorious 188 dide . strenghis 191 þe felde wone 195 suche maistres 197  
 whene . thus om. exiled 198 falyrs 201 letters 202 serge . honge 203  
 distroy 204 Theis letters 205 folowede 207 thynkit 208 dwel 210 leges .  
 empire 211 witt . faders 213 neþer 214 Suche . þæt be 215 pepile 218  
 luyng 221 I om. sweche 222 meche 226 in his 227 this 229 forfete . shal  
 230 Sweche 231 note 232 mene ony 233 þene . secte 234 officers 235 any  
 236 sweche 237 shal . sweche maystres 239 they om. letters 240 Wheche  
 242 lest 245 dame wheche 246 messengeris are . ferre 247 þies 248 selue  
 251 wheche . eke om. 252 meny lyued . al om. 253 dide 255 are 258 þene  
 260 whech 261 poyntes dide 264 wolde 265 dwelte 266 dampnacione 269  
 sune 273 the om. 277 Vne-to . wyechis 278 thinke 279 whene . are 283  
 how thei 287 pepile . stately 289 londe 290 guynys 297 be 298 shulde  
 300 Castels 301 none 302 thirde 305 the 308 ceremonies 309 mytour .  
 crosse 312 his s. 315 witene . Iupiter . hyc 317 al oper 318 forsake 321  
 apparicion 323 had . pepile . & renew 324 olde ryztes 325 faders . any  
 327 who 328 health 330 make 333 orribile lyztenyngis eke 334 þis shewede  
 336 lesse . not om. 337 þies 338 amonge 339 shepperdis 340 ful wil 342

sey pies 344 be 345 þat shall þene 348 councelle 351 þe g. 354 lande 355  
 þat s. 356 no overl. of om. 358 is 359 is 362 is 363 pepile 364 els. song  
 366 did he 367 shulde 373 diede 375 bouchers labourede 376 waiþyng .  
 carcays done 385 pepile . solempnite . 388 suspexione 389 sume are  
 391 bryȝte sune 397 whene 398 þene . veniaunce 400 arayde 402 y-  
 trayde 406 dispyse 408 offeryngis 410 slee & flee . pies 412 mynstrals . shul  
 414 elde . sey . þer 415 Suche 416 ways 420 amonge 421 solempnite 423  
 þise 424 are . in mychelle 432 sprede 433 worldly . are 434 þat tyme 435  
 ryȝte inst. of lyke 436 mayde 441 sers 444 elde 445 Riches 447 wit  
 448 pore 450 þei þat agayns 452 is om. 454 Suffisithe . lyue 455 com-  
 muerows . any 457 we om. 458 shal 459 begynnythe 461 faders 464 þo  
 drede 465 counceilloure 466 one yow v. 467 om. 468 that om. 470 Whene  
 þis mayde . þise 471 how 474 he 475 to<sub>2</sub> om. 476 talkyng 478 þis q. 484  
 conant 485 baptene whene . waishede 488 thorow 490 rudy 493 enprentede .  
 494 worldly 496 ffro 497 þene 498 for om. 499 þene . trewe 500 þo inst. of  
 loo 506 my housbonde 507 sonere 508 & brede 509 Allace . any 510  
 boldly . drage 511 Ageyne . trueth 512 suche 513 chyrches 516 Who  
 lonethe . worlde . wille heme 518 shall 520 his palays 524 he-tuex 525  
 al þat 526 pepile 528 the om. porters 531 stand 533 Thies solemp-  
 nites 534 no om. to no 538 offeryng 540 emperours . pies 541 whene .  
 sey . & so 543 speke 544 seide . pepile 545 Are 546 not 548 vne-to 549  
 strenghe 552 to þis 553 þene . lyke . 557 y-wisse 558 thies . blisse 559 one  
 530 grete 566 wolde 567 sitt 568 þe om. 569 þene 573 such deuls þat be  
 574 sothly sere 576 for 577 his c. 581 þene 582 Thise . mene om. 584  
 Agayne . agayns 589 are . deuyles 591 wit 592 þise 593 of om. 596 þi  
 hert frome 598 one-kynde 599 Agayne 602 shal . an om. 604 how 605  
 suche pepile 609 be myxte white 610 he om. begane 611 Astonede . beante .  
 pleasance 614 veniaunce . 615 hane take 617 þene 621 Be . sistere 622  
 veniaunce 629 gybet 630 the om. 631 mayd 632 Who . þis 644 þene 645  
 are 646 how . whene 648 pepile . dec-yue 652 besyli þo . mynde 653 strenth  
 654 ensamples . kynde 656 seide 663 now om. 664 womb 665 a mayd 669  
 such 672 ben om. 674 Suche . o lyue 675 herisies . hath be take 679 Thies  
 concyeteȝ . thei om. 680 þise . semythe 683 now to you 684 littithe . such  
 deliaunce 685 are . trew 686 nener 687 take . yee 690 such 691 customs  
 694 no rose 696 wille 698 ferre abouene . any 701 þise stokkis . goode 706  
 no such 707 wil preue 711 oure 715 lange . doble 718 verrey trueth 720  
 þene 721 trueth . any 722 Thow myȝt . sayne 724 þene . sume . gune 725  
 þe Idols 728 Vne-to . thei om. pleasance 732 gune 735 gune thei erie 736  
 and om. 737 inst. of & 741 thinkith . gune 744 haue 749 þene 750 Mayde .  
 gune 752 sune 754 yow 757 veniaunce 760 wille 762 me þerfor . alleȝ 763  
 his om. Rebelleȝ 767 beams 768 ner nere 770 are 771 are 774 be . pusaunce  
 775 suche 779 Certene 780 Dispise 783 tho om. traytours 785 semyth  
 787 frome 789 Whene . besily oure helth 791 solempne 792 Loke ȝe 793  
 shul 795 that t. 796 thise . brestis 798 þene 802 sune 804 Wherfore  
 805 punch 807 no-thinge þerby 809 encrease 816 for 819 counceile . ryȝt  
 thus . 822 sentence 824 sonest distroie 827 messageres . letters wilde 829  
 þat wil . lynelode 832 ar write . ichone 833 messagers . þise . are 835 þise  
 lettours 837 þe lettours 842 þere 843 pepile . on om. 844 kynrode 845 al  
 his 847 are 848 witte 849 counceile 852 þise . folke . pepile . to om. 853  
 suasions 854 swheche 857 Meche 859 nygromancey 859 are . lettours  
 writene 870 þat mayde 871 palayso 873 pleasaunte 877 alle . of om. 878  
 þene any 883 of om. shul 887 suche 890 þise 891 ryȝht om. 895 vp om.  
 896 þene 897 lord above 898 forsake 904 þi . suche 905 pronounsede 909  
 dispise . stand o row . 910 are 913 my 916 myne<sub>2</sub> om. 918 are 919 such .  
 our . land 921 hande 922 trumpis . before . stande 925 forto 925 þene 932  
 malicolye 935 take 937 he kepe . so so she . goo om. 938 he dey 943  
 theme . are 945 telle yow 950 vnderstande 951 sese . begunne 952 gune  
 955 massageres . þe haue 956 thies 958 & þus 960 philosophirs are . coun-



ceile 961 witt<sup>r</sup>. for heme hath 962 any 964 thise maistirs 965 philosophie  
 967 were 969 & alle 970 none heme 971 groundz 973 seith. entrynge 974  
 Maisters 976 RENEYHITHE. suche. vse 977 falle 978 þe (ye?) 979 is into þis e.  
 981 truethe 982 be 983 thinkith reuthe 985 berne 987 the om. 989 are.  
 cunynge 991 þat t. 992 þat same 993 leuyde 996 suche. cunpanye 999  
 þise 1002 theme bi autorite 1003 resone 1005 þat wheel 1006 I om. 1011  
 her om. 1012 special. suche 1017 counceile 1018 availede note 1020 wil.  
 mayde. proporcionis 1022 Stately 1027 Agayne 1032 aune sistere 1034  
 whedere. stille om. 1035 holde 1039 lesse 1044 sire. lekith 1045 alle  
 worldly 1046 alle worldly 1050 be. trew 1054 suche 1055 þus wille 1059  
 os 1061 Thinke. kynrede 1062 neuer none. theme. suche 1068 wiche 1070  
 suche 1072 he hire þus 1073 in om. 1075 wheither 0 1078 but om. 1080  
 sikerly 1082 seide 1085 stande 1086 hangede 1090 nedis muste 1091  
 enmyse 1092 þene speke 1099 a om. 1101 meche 1102 of wheche. sweche  
 1103 noujt 1107 whiche 1111 enmys 1112 trew 1113 orible 1114 tungis  
 1118 wrechis 1120 nede 1122 sere 1124 belyue 1128 philosophirs are. coun-  
 ceile 1129 sirs 1130 cunynge 1131 maisters 1133 the om. are haylede  
 1135 sey 1136 many mene 1138 yit. that om. 1140 Suche. rouse. þo 1145  
 a-taste 1146 waste 1151 she seide lorde 1152 yttis 1153 seconde 1154  
 Dyede 1155 fynde 1158 þise 1162 worldly 1163 graunte. to om. apostyls  
 1164 Whene. stande. & kyng 1167 shuld<sup>is</sup> 1169 the om. 1171 strenghe  
 1172 resones shrape 1173 chirches 1174 maners 1177 cunynge 1178 troste  
 1179 commes 1180 noujt. loste 1181 makiste. froste 1182 powe 1184  
 pleasaunce 1185 estere. please 1186 solempne 1191 Whene. that om. 1192  
 fro 1193 meruelouse 1195 prisone 1197 corners 1202 sayde 1204 fro  
 heuene om. I ane come now 1208 þise 1209 clerly 1212 theme 1213 shal  
 om. theme. autorite 1214 lede 1217 dye 1218 prophesye 1219 detemynde  
 1220 Thies. shal now despute 1222 grete troste 1223 þe om. 1227 Shal.  
 meche 1229 meche. you om. 1232 shal. þise 1233 trew 1234 spirith 1238  
 weihte 1239 Whedire. be. lyjt 1243 spouse 1244 suche 1247 confortede  
 1248 prisone. suche 1256 cunynge 1261 stande 1266 she om. is best  
 1268 þise 1269 Maistirs. þis e. 1273 glewde 1274 shaftis. yow 1275 Thene  
 1276 strange chalenge. in 1277 þise. in om. 1280 ye 1284 shalle 1286  
 þene 1287 trew 1288 thies 1292 I-now 1293 dameselle. tow 1297 gared.  
 to om. v. 1300 overl. and on the margin. wille 1305 emperours 1306 mayde.  
 write. eghtene 1309 know we 1310 thanne om. 1311 shal. puruey 1312  
 answeye 1313 couveye 1316 þene 1319 Thene speke 1320 the om. 1321  
 pronounce. leeste 1324 auctours 1326 be 1330 yow 1333 erely 1339 alle  
 om. 1340 meche trowere 1345 Beholde. Maistirs. þise mens 1348 hardely  
 1351 sweche 1352 wheche ouer shal 1354 is gode 1356 fyere. or 1359 borne  
 1360 one-to. thirty 1361 þene 1362 hynge 1365 sundric 1368 ite inst. of is  
 1375 reignede ertlylye 1378 whene 1379 Wype 3e þe. hillide 1380 whene  
 1381 shal. ful om. 1382 my om. 1383 haue; me om. þer 1384 oute bi  
 1389 sauacione 1391 science make. soo om. 1392 truth 1395 maters 1398  
 be 1407 speke. þene 1408 citeceynes 1410 shalle. to om. 1411 endewid  
 1412 wysdome 1413 suffre þise 1414 such 1417 here he seide 1418 noujt.  
 vnderstande 1420 þise 1422 say. be. vnkynde 1423 benefitis 1424 zynkith.  
 kynde 1425 for om. 1426 colours 1427 deuels 1429 here offence 1431  
 Thise lewede folke. liste 1432 resonens 1435 suche prechours 1436 hidere  
 1441 y-now 1442 couuete 1449 lewde. note worth 1451 say. lyfe agayne  
 1453 harde Iewis sayne 1454 stale. rayne 1457 þise 1458 She om. 1460 my  
 1461 is he þer. any pere 1462 or 1464 his fadire is 1465 þene 1466 ferdere  
 procede now 1467 before 1468 eterne 1473 no om. 1474 newly 1477 dide  
 1480 are 1481 gruntyme whene þei cilith 1483 trueth. fode 1485 þise resonens  
 1488 has done. sow 1489 sikire. whene 1490 wolde 1491 shal 1492 þe stode  
 1493 mayde. suche 1495 vnderstande 1496 make 1498 note. no 1499 be  
 1501 Like. þis 1504 are thise y. 1513 New chapter. mayde 1514 þise. wheche  
 þe worthieste 1515 stande. arow 1516 perseuye. dignite 1517 þene. 1518

lyuede 1520 *pat* same 1521 a om. 1524 owene childerne 1526 Banishide .  
harborow 1527 sistire 1529 *pis* are 1530 stande 1531 Whene . bilide .  
brithill bande 1532 maydons 1533 violent 1534 Wulleane . cokkolde 1535  
suche 1536 are . theme are 1537 vnelene 1538 This . vylonyes . fro heme  
shoue 1539 wheecraft 1540 suche 1541 whene . dronke 1542 *pe*ne wolde .  
Iangile 1543 deune 1544 tresorye 1546 Thies . *pat* om. 1549 *3e* om. 1550  
*comnythe* 1552 y-rounge 1553 be wisse 1560 *pis* . whene 1561 make reles  
1570 self 1571 *pis*e 1579 amonge 1585 *pe*ne 1586 *suche* thyn<sup>g</sup>is 1587 My  
nowne 1593 I wheche . *suche* v. 1594 om. 1598 Gladede 1601 bere hire  
nowe . koye 1604 tho om. *pe* 1606 figur . colour . wone 1607 ley 1608  
Are 1609 se theme 1610 sune 1611 the be 1612 are . graue 1613 kene  
1614 are . 1616 shadow 1619 shul euer stande 1621 be for to be 1623 be  
1625 *pe*ne are 1628 are . nethere . the om. 1632 philosophirs 1634 are 1635  
harde . *suche* 1639 a womane *suche* 1641 entendaunce 1642 worlde . stande  
1645 lest-ne 1648 be 1650 stodynge 1651 be 1656 is he . *pis* wynde . rayne  
1657 *suche* . *pe*ne inst. of thei . I sayne 1661 theme 1664 are . rediare 1671  
sei 1672 one p. 1673 *parfytly* 1674 no syche 1675 counseile 1677 one .  
*merveile* 1678 mans 1684 he om. 1685 hym blynde 1690 *at* *pat* lorde  
1693 dyede 1696 ffor *pat* theme . same om. 1700 *comercione* 1701 mer-  
ueilithe . his 1704 yite 1706 Be 1707 be . one p. 1708 *suche* 1715 be  
bare . 1716 tho om. 1720 solempne 1721 *pis* w. 1723 lajer 1724 ley fourty  
1726 do 1728 he 1731 vrouz<sup>te</sup> . *pis*e *mer*vailles 1732 Meeche 1735 truethie  
1736 ful om. reuthe 1737 his 1739 mete 1740 *pe*ne 1742 thies 1743  
preue 1747 cane 1749 *pis*e 1751 auctours 1752 *mer*uosly 1754 leke 1755  
laide 1756 shal 1757 *pis*e autrix 1761 thies 1762 is . *blesse*de 1763 hyng  
1764 come 1770 saye 1771 waye 1772 *suche* 1775 wol 1776 Wyth-outene .  
no om. 1777 *suche* . ye shulde 1778 *resones* 1779 *constryne* 1781 leue  
1782 loffe 1783 houe 1784 this om. 1786 ful goode 1788 as om. 1790  
mater now e. 1794 were inst. of bere 1795 are . *pus* om. *pis*e 1799 whame  
1801 Whene 1802 any 1803 *Suche* 1804 this thyn<sup>g</sup> 1805 are 1806 walke  
1811 *euanyng*e 1815 *pis*e 1816 shal . now om. *pe*ne 1818 *pat* 1820 *meche*  
thingis 1822 Iehe 1829 heme 1831 frellere . stably 1833 holde 1836  
*resones* 1837 *pat* be 1838 *pep*le 1840 *ping*is . shuld 1841 be-gynne 1842  
he is 1848 thus om. theme 1854 *passith* 1855 thenkith . stande 1860 for  
*pis* 1871 *marrithe* 1872 *rekynnyng*e 1873 any 1874 birthe . liehe 1875  
borne . octouyane 1876 *betheleme* . *lewede* 1877 note fully *zet* . hundreth  
1878 was of his *modire* 1879 *suche* 1880 thingis 1882 *thowsandis* 1883 er  
*pat* . lyffe 1886 *pep*le . fyere 1890 *Sweche* 1892 *sire* 1893 oo om. 1896  
countithe 1897 not om. *wheche* *pat* 1899 ago 1902 *vn*do 1903 *merveile*  
1905 *begynnyng*e . shal 1909 of 1910 kynde 1911 kynde . his om. 1913  
not om *suche* disease 1914 *pis*e . *couplyng*e 1915 *faders* . please 1917 *man*-  
hode 1918 *manhode* . not om. 1920 yit inst. of *pat* 1922 mayde v. 1923 on  
the margin 1924 *betheleme* 1926 Whene 1927 stonyde . *marryde* . *mynde*  
1929 kynde 1933 *motyffe* 1935 left . lyffe 1939 *pe*ne 1940 not om. *rialle*  
1941 *maistird*e . soo om. 1942 *noz*te sende (a om.) 1944 *Suffire* *suche* 1945  
*suffirde* 1946 note 1947 selfe 1948 *pe*ne . take 1951 thorne 1952 *enmys*  
1953 thinkith 1955 *noyede* 1956 *lerede* 1958 *fyzte* 1959 *suche* kynde 1961  
be . *mankynde* 1964 *parfyzt* 1966 *blesside* . or 1968 money . *dyede* . a om.  
1971 *fyzte* 1972 *pe* tre . bore—1973 Ioye om. 1974 *pat* . *blesse*de 1975 a  
om. 1979 he om. 1980 lady om. v. 1986 om. 1987 note *verely* *zit* 1991  
*pis*e . no 1993 *witnesse* 1997 sune 1999 *trew* 2001 *hundrethe* 2002  
*endewede* 2005 *reignande* 2006 *suche* 2007 *comunicacione* 2008 be 2009  
*resones* 2012 be *assuiled*e 2016 *Suche* *sundrie* 2023 *thundire* 2024 is he .  
*reignyng*e . *aboue* 2025 yite 2029 *folowith* 2033 *lere* inst. of sir 2034 & of  
2036 chose 2037 a 2038 *reigneth* . any 2040 *chosyne* . *commyth* . bi 2042  
*cache* 2049 are 2052 *pat* gode 2058 al 2059 *maistire* . *pe*ne 2062 *maistres*  
2065 *drunke* . a . *cupe* 2066 *seeres* . *pe*ne 2069 wil 2070 *enterely* 2072 any  
2074 *knowlege* 2080 *comoursly* 2081 *consente* 2084 *zite* . *vtiire* 2087 *pep*le .

incessede 2088 lede 2089 are 2090 loy . bede 2091 flede 2095 whate is  
 bene 2096 ych . prouty . dide þei 2097 þise 2098 dispise 2100 þene þer  
 2101 looketh om. 2104 any . shul 2105 wisere . sawe 2106 þit 2109 meche  
 thyng 2112 resonen 2114 lye 2116 maters 2119 maistire . þe lande 2124  
 Distroye 2126 we seene 2127 wilde . þeme 2129 uictoure . þene 2130  
 solelymly 2133 be 2134 þite . my pees 2135 þis m. þus 2138 it om. 2141  
 wuzne 2142 victour þo 2145 before haue be 2146 thinkthe 2147 suche  
 2148 I inst. of it 2149 pursew 2152 thinkthe 2154 thies 2156 Wolde  
 2161 mans 2164 in his 2169 mayde 2170 Wytþ-oute any 2171 mankynde  
 2173 myche 2174 Bute of . be 2177 sitithe þus 2178 whene þat 2179 leke .  
 sune 2180 Like . lykene . maydens 2181 sune 2182 thorow 2184 downe  
 came 2187 carnacione 2188 neuer 2189 be 2191 fonde . vntrew 2193  
 Reþlyng 2194 suche 2196 Suche . douþtes 2197 suche thingis 2199  
 auctours 2200 speke . pringnantly 2204 þus 2206 o 2211 sune 2214 sune  
 2215 be . one 2216 iche 2217 þene are 2218 one 2219 wrihith 2225 þene  
 2232 truethe 2233 dide . ruethe 2235 meche 2240 here 2241 sey . fadris  
 2242 wheche . gouerne om. 2251 alle mankynde 2255 soude . prouydençe  
 2261 of om. 2262 sey 2266 alle þe hoste . philistees 2267 on om. 2268 a  
 om. 2273 orleynde 2278 Eentereferede 2279 longe 2281 plede . hyme 2285  
 chapitre . thinkis 2289 þise 2290 special 2292 as amasede 2293 speke o  
 2294 hoost 2295 make . mayde 2296 are 2297 spoke . saluacione 2301 any  
 2303 coude note . resonen 2305 go 2307 trewere 2308 note 2309 blesse  
 2310 his sone is 2311 beleue 2312 beloue . dyede 2315 erthly . fyndes 2316  
 note 2318 The . alle þo . þat om. 2319 had om. lyue 2320 kepe 2321  
 perlyous 2325 the om. 2326 Prvyng 2327 hem om. 2328 shul it þus 2329  
 þise 2330 Cryng 2332 forgite 2333 Deme . lorde note 2334 lorde petous  
 2335 we om. 2336 oure om. 2340 wil we 2343 þat heuene-b. 2344 Were .  
 loke . þat face 2345 mene . be.

## V.

5 fauourede 7 thirde & eke . ferthe 10 me 15 like . deuysede 17 Thies  
 18 cleue 19 rede flowers kepte 20 Or 21 þene 23 wiffe 24 sharpe 25  
 Wheche 31 yite 32 þies . clyue 33 are 34 stante . wytþ-oute dage 35 are .  
 wone . grow 36 Thise . wel 37 one h. 38 & date 40 lyuede 46 oppiniones  
 . note 48 thirde 52 alle 55 are 56 Reigynge 60 whelis 61 peple toke þo  
 62 translate . latene 63 the om. of. om. 64 þise 65 alle þat . crudelite 66  
 emperours 67 speke 68 alle 69 disputours 71 a om. 72 a om. make 73  
 counceille 74 worldly 77 note . what þat þe peple 78 sey 80 þat same 81  
 alle om. 83 Whene . hiper . alle 84 euanyng . mekil 86 euanyng 87  
 Thinke 88 note . þene 92 stande 93 be 94 haue 96 fare 99 þeme 106  
 yow . pykyde . compeny 109 þe om. 110 Theologe 111 an om. 113 or  
 117 velonye 118 wage 119 we om. worldis 124 haue 125 spech 131 my  
 bowels . gane 133 alle 135 refusee 136 renouen . the om. 137 know 138  
 here rowe pawe 142 mankynde 146 shal yow 152 thise 153 dye 155 and  
 om. 157 Clerkis 158 more in 162 fyere . hastely 164 surne 165 þise  
 166 fyre heme . be om. 169 rosyne 172 dey 173 very om. 174 lewesse  
 thate ite be do 175 do . shal 176 theme 177 theme 180 gyf . hem om.  
 suche . vyllene 181 be 182 theme schape 184 one ashes 185 to om. 186  
 theme 187 more om. 189 shal 191 wrestil note 194 þis 195 þeme . at om.  
 198 self . coumforthe 199 tiraunde . any 201 to þot 202 are rihte gadrede  
 203 a 206 merour 215 Alle 216 waishithe 217 waishide 222 refwsede  
 223 rewe 224 leuede . on-trew 228 for om. lye 230 are . þeme 232 his om.  
 233 sitte 235 he 236 seste 237 are 238 kende 240 wayshede 243 please  
 247 al þis 248 eche 250 dispence 252 be 254 yow 256 daie 257 waish-  
 ynge 258 shal . aungels shal 262 alle 263 suffire 264 harde ay y. c. 265  
 demp 267 fyere . purgyn mans 269 are baptizede 270 fute 271 are 272  
 þat dey 273 are 275 deyene 277 þe knyztis 279 nozte 280 now om. 282

officers 284 theme . as<sub>1</sub> om. 285 pavide 289 fyere . are 290 gune . amonge  
 291 feche 292 fewelers shulde 293 throw þem 294 are 295 alle 296 suche  
 297 theme 298 theme . þat om. 300 go 302 ande f . theme 306 fyere 307  
 pise 308 þeme before . þeme 309 sey 312 of om. 313 meruelous for to 314  
 myrthe 316 diede pise 318 þe laic 319 body 321 þis sey the peple . mer-  
 uelede 324 folke 326 solempne 327 þo 331 mayde 334 þene shulde þei  
 335 mayde 337 selfe 340 fekylnesse 342 lost . ryztes . elders 347 & om.  
 wite 348 Beaute 351 shalle 354 temporal 355 myroure . parfith 359 þene  
 360 3e om. are 363 Deceyuours . pepyle v. 365 om. 366 smyte . take 367  
 þem 370 please theme . for inst. of soo . be 371 & om. be 375 al . shal 376  
 Obeynge 379 leue 381 leue 383 suche thyng which 386 any 387 goode  
 388 pleasaunce 391 Whome 393 Be-tuex 398 reame 399 shal 401  
 solempne . Emprise 402 like 405 Whene . shal 414 for-þene 415 be 416  
 Suche 419 pleasaunce 430 suche 431 chaungeours 432 so om. myche  
 434 Suche 438 a 442 ryche 445 to om. 446 beaute . represente 447 be .  
 pleasaunce 448 theme . worldly 449 know or 452 theme 453 wite 455 Or  
 456 yene 457 it shal 458 suche . cane om. 463 tunge 469 your<sub>2</sub> om. 471  
 Stande like . þat flye ab. 474 vnclene 475 ymage 476 suche a guerdone  
 477 shul defile 478 one-to 481 thinkithe 482 troste . fonnude 483 feyunge  
 & fykyll 485 shal 487 childrene 491 deuyls . stant 494 loue<sub>1</sub> 498 be .  
 ease 499 such . profyzt 500 thinketh . please 502 dilectable . colours 503  
 encesse 504 sekenesse . relesse 505 it om. 507 Ne 509 suche 511 thyng  
 om. þene 512 promesse 514 before 516 parfyzte 520 It wil 521 It shal  
 note 524 is om. alle 525 is<sub>2</sub> om. 527 on om. 528 The more benyngly  
 530 shal 531 ye 532 lyfe 539 nede 540 nozte 542 at my promysse . at  
 om. 544 fyere 545 sonerz 547 shal 548 pepyle 549 are 550 bi þer 551  
 passe . suche 552 punchide 553 be 554 welcum 556 smyte 558 myscheuys  
 560 lyuede 561 Pouerte 562 had om. 565 blasphemours . 566 Geuyng  
 567 any 571 or 574 haue we 575 offerde 576 hoste 577 offire 578 & to  
 582 yow shal 591 encresithe 594 shal 596 menyne 597 Shal 599 fynde  
 600 þus shal 605 gete 608 mayde . strepe here 609 hir om. 612 speke 613  
 galale . deuyne 617 tormentours 619 yrie . may 620 bete 621 come 622  
 bete 623 conforth 624 Thise 627 purgede 628 puryaunce 632 yow  
 sent . me om. 638 amonge 639 þe om. beters 640 mayde 641 herisye  
 643 shal 644 Or 647 suffre 648 wheþer 649 shameful dogide 651 thi om.  
 652 Be-thynke . wille 653 oute inst. of now 654 pepyle . is om. 655 kepe  
 656 dye . worldly 657 ffolow 658 Where þat 660 orible 661 shal 662  
 shal . bounde 663 shal 664 suche 665 yow . hy 666 shal 668 Lyinge .  
 shal 669 shal . hastely 670 shal þou inst. of fulfill . malicolic 672 a om.  
 673 anone 674 mayde . hir lede 675 put 677 this om. 678 þise . 679 slate  
 682 mout 683 Whene 684 þat om. 685 straitly . wyth-oute 690 rydyne .  
 menyne 695 forgotene 696 þise 697 leue . lyke 699 angels 700 of  
 om. 702 disease 703 suche 709 angels . kepte 712 sarris 713 mer-  
 veiledde 714 note . on om. 715 courte 716 Spronge 719 Iaylers 720  
 dongione 721 þis w . goth aboute þe courte s . 723 & of 724 mayde . any 728  
 And om. was om. 730 lande 732 shal 734 þise . he om. 736 þite 737 þise  
 v. 740 on the margin . a stody 742 & to . preuely 743 Thise . folke . no  
 wronge 744 bye 746 Now & now 747 of om. 748 Glotons . dronkelew 749  
 pleassithe 751 nouzte 753 sey 754 mykyl 756 my . gynnyth 759 selfe  
 761 hade hyme 762 alle 765 folke 768 she saide porphirie . be 769 be 771  
 trouble . the om. 773 or 774 maner 775 lyfes 776 tho om. 779 gaylers .  
 y-now 781 vow 784 ny 787 suche . shal 790 shal 791 be 792 thinkithe  
 . sufferith 793 horibely bete 794 no 795 oft-tyme . one þis 797 whene 801  
 gyfe 803 you om. 804 Comythe 807 slepe . prisone 809 þei come þer þei too  
 810 prisone . se 811 down om. wyth-oute 812 to om. be om. 813 lyzty-  
 yunge 814 sey 817 þe lyzt 818 felt . suche 820 suche 822 borne 824 Be  
 825 chose 829 angels sey 833 beaute . softly 837 a 839 Thies 840  
 delyzte 842 on om. 845 thithere 849 note 852 sistere 853 Shal 854 be

855 shal. a om. euerlestyng 858 theme 859 pise 860 shal. writyng. lyue  
 861 sers 863 Thise . þe booke 864 þer synnes. wyte. 865 theme 867 that  
 om. receyue 868 elders. one-to oþer 869 þresious. sitte 871 yow 872  
 þreuous 875 suche 878 Shal 880 pise folke. take 883 þrisone 884 suchē .  
 herde 886 suche 887 fulle 888 Wyth-outē . pise 891 Abacuche 893 þrisone  
 . þus fede 894 diners 895 brout 896 gostely or bodely . it om. 898 fadirs  
 899 þene 902 norchide . erthe 905 so om. 906 þe om. 909 erldy 910 but  
 om. 911 wille 914 be 916 thise 918 sey 920 aungels 921 suche 925  
 alle . dissease 927 please 928 worldly 929 Thinke . leue 931 a. shal 932  
 or . parte 933 pepile shal 934 a housbonde . wydow 935 ffor. maumentrie .  
 shal ye returne 936 theme . soiorne 939 lokithe 940 Returnethe 942 liste  
 944 be he 945 comende 946 Whene his . are 950 be 953 Alle 954 pepile  
 955 are . haue . dispyte 957 thinke 961 þat wchoche 963 to om. stirt 964  
 smarte 966 for hire 967 pynede 968 wyth qwyte 972 trayturs . shal dye iche  
 one 974 fede hire 978 shal 979 forfendede 980 bynde . yrne 981 mayde .  
 excuse 982 suche 984 alle 986 shulde . punche 988 thise 992 messagers 993  
 Alle . hyme 994 sere 995 pise 996 nonþte 997 angelles 998 No 1001 nouþte  
 1002 thise 1004 suche v. 1005 om. 1009 to þe kinge 1010 sernyne 1012  
 are . alle 1013 certene wicchis 1016 are traytours 1019 yife . wycheafte  
 1020 be . to om. a kepte 1021 maisters lorde 1026 sewirly 1027 note-wyth-  
 stande 1028 nutz nede 1029 pepile . stante 1031 suche 1033 þene 1036  
 yrne . rente 1040 Theme 1042 the om. 1043 encesse . dye one a 1048  
 gruche 1052 are 1053 whene 1055 possibde 1057 þene 1062 pleasaunt .  
 dilectabile 1063 kyne . calueryne . alle 1065 lefully 1068 veniabile 1072  
 shal 1073 shal 1074 shal 1075 þi dedis . are 1079 he 1081 be . þene .  
 solemly 1084 adawe 1086 alle 1087 wil 1089 þies 1090 Thise 1093 wol  
 1095 prophetyse 1101 fyzte 1102 one-to 1103 þansaunce 1104 ytaie .  
 ynglonde 1108 alle 1111 markede 1112 smdre 1113 Alle . trew 1114  
 Bot . þis wordis 1115 pepile 1117 falle 1118 Suche 1119 þis 1121 wheche  
 1123 goodly lyuers . shal 1127 thynkis 1130 a om. 1133 hirz om. yrne  
 1135 bet 1139 sey 1141 lyfe . pepile 1142 lede . to 1143 pepile . gane 1147  
 alle 1148 aske . are 1149 dispise 1153 alle . beante 1156 nouzt 1157 it  
 om. þene . uelensly 1162 counsellede 1164 lese 1165 lese 1166 Alle 1167  
 thynke 1168 lede 1169 special 1170 pepile 1172 Alle 1175 alle 1176  
 council 1179 be 1181 pise . no 1183 council 1185 thinge 1188 leue  
 1193 dye 1194 of ryzt 1196 þene 1197 fykyl 1201 be 1202 Such 1204  
 senew . weynes 1206 alle 1208 lofe 1212 þene 1218 pepile 1221 dye 1225  
 þrisone 1227 sey 1229 seris 1231 dye 1232 rysyng 1233 theme . herde  
 1237 wyth-draw 1238 prinyly 1241 meyre . pepile 1243 mekyl 1244  
 Venemhous . any 1245 Dispitous veniabile 1251 O 1252 standiste 1253  
 lystyng . council 1257 orryhile 1259 this om. thyng þat (þat overl.) 1265  
 countrollere 1268 bysy 1269 whe'is 1270 suche 1272 shal 1275 Shal  
 1276 y-fastenede . alle 1279 come 1280 alle 1281 know 1282 shal 1283  
 whele 1284 suche . shal 1285 Iche . theme 1286 shal 1287 shal 1288 a  
 1289 þies 1290 he 1291 be 1292 lyuyng . sey such whels 1293 please  
 1294 shal 1295 zendur 1297 Thise whelis shul . anone 1298 gane 1299 are  
 calde 1300 smythes 1302 whels mact 1303 it om. thride 1304 whels are  
 1307 whels 1308 seithe 1309 grugith 1310 shal ye 1312 meyre 1313 hath  
 stodyethe . alle . mende 1321 yne 1322 suche 1323 bothe om. sume 1326  
 hydyst 1327 crye 1330 orribde 1333 þi 1335 easy . suche 1336 pepile .  
 meruelous 1339 stande 1340 thynke . my 1341 tunges 1345 thei om.  
 1346 & om. 1352 þat om. 1355 a horibde 1357 or eyzte 1358 whels . fley  
 1359 spryng 1360 Sum mane hath . or 1361 mene om. are 1363 take om.  
 1365 veniaunce 1368 his 1375 theme 1376 fere 1379 fere 1380 whels .  
 alle om. 1385 heraudes nombere 1386 his 1389 for om. 1391 Meche folke  
 1393 Lyfte 1394 alle 1395 are 1396 are . gurne . frunttis 1397 folke .  
 hathe 1398 Summe mene . veniaunce 1399 o 1400 suche 1401 mesite  
 1402 and falleth om. shulde now 1405 aune 1406 requyngyng 1409 thise .

smythis 1410 makith 1411 is it . þe 1414 thynkis . wondire 1415 alle  
 1419 before 1420 whatz may falle 1422 the om. 1425 wrestilliste 1428 shal  
 1430 fytziste . þou shal 1433 þi . mans 1437 dide 1438 o. 1439 selue 1440  
 comounys 1441 lye 1442 hyme þane 1443 o. suche 1444 I counseyl om.  
 1448 gyfe (for- om.) 1452 ye spoke 1453 on om. þis 1454 or þæt 1455 orible  
 1456 kynrode 1457 þæt hye maicste of þe 1458 þæt . grayous om. þe kynge  
 1459 þis fondnes 1460 an om. 1462 rizte welle 1463 broke one 1464 wich-  
 craftte 1466 youre . trechorie . 1467 one þe rene 1468 nozt 1470 illucione 1472  
 ministirs 1473 yrne wyere 1474 shal . right om. 1475 I . þei shal do it 1476  
 L. sorow . and woo om. þæt his . wyf om. 1479 traitours 1480 haue . haue om.  
 deserue 1482 it om. ly . ite shalle 1483 it om. dispite 1484 his mene 1485  
 orible 1486 from 1488 Alle . and<sub>2</sub> om. alle blodly 1490 euene inst. of ryght  
 1491 pilere 1495 be . sufficiaunte 1501 þis holy lyfe to turne agayne to gyne  
 1502 or 1503 þe c. of þis 1504 alle . lyzte 1507 maydene 1507 alle 1509  
 þe loue þerof of oure kynge 1511 she 1513 disease 1514 leste 1515 please  
 1517 se 1519 þæt om. before 1521 he be 1522 amende al thynge 1523 in  
 om. 1526 be . neste 1531 bostous 1533 hire tetis now 1534 ere . & aftur  
 1535 a om. smyzt 1536 O. l. g. strenghide hire to susteyne 1537 peynes  
 1538 is she . soule is to þæt l. 1541 wensdaie 1543 vnberied om. 1544 Lyinge  
 þer ful white & eke ful rede 1545 wynde ite 1547 And om. meche . folk om.  
 1550 most om. 1552 byrynge . to om. 1553 callede . one-to 1554 dyrk  
 1555 Katherine 1558 oyntunte 1559 this . he om. 1561 on om. 1562 after  
 om. is þer 1563 biriede 1564 falle . suche 1565 berie þis same body 1566  
 of . folke 1567 were . bi . officers 1568 ful boldly 1570 Sithe . shulde 1571  
 thus om. 1572 þyne owne wyfis 1573 hast 1574 Thise 1575 doo om. 1576  
 thyne i. 1577 & þi i. 1578 shul om. 1580 þæt om. Biriede . me thouyte it no  
 tresone 1581 But . weel om. acordande one-to 1582 þe 1583 seyn suche  
 1584 zet to . robbours . are 1585 haue 1587 neybouris 1589 kynde . and om.  
 1590 lorde 1592 write . autours 1593 ne eke 1594 man-kynde . defoule  
 1596 note þise 1597 Thise . are 1598 maxience hert 1604 lyue 1606 gyne  
 1607 take 1609 stiked . eradylle . 1610 ffor om. alle my 1612 A om. P.  
 here 1613 good om. gentel om. þus is he lost 1614 whichcraft . gynnithe .  
 to om. 1615 reste in here 1616 alle 1617 suche 1618 deceyuede . now om.  
 1620 My . ite waxite . as<sub>1</sub> om. as þe lede 1622 a<sub>2</sub> om. 1623 alle 1625 haue  
 do 1626 but 1627 shal 1628 els 1629 þis 1631 meche 1633 shal note  
 1635 hyme þus one 1636 þe olde trew 1637 fadirs kepte oute of 1639 this  
 om. 1640 the om. his courto . & be one 1641 examede 1642 thougt þis m.  
 1644 Beholdethe . 1645 sodenly . y-falle . meserie 1646 not om. 1647 hyme  
 now 1648 be ye. 1649 Wheche þæt 1650 suche renagatis 1652 seide thei  
 1653 know 1656 we om. or cane 1657 hym om. We wil . seue . ande bane  
 1658 ande smyte . þou om. 1659 shal 1661 departe 1662 truest 1663 to fro  
 1664 are applide . þene shal 1665 are . thus om. 1666 þe stone 1669 suche  
 renagatis 1671 suene 1672 are . to 1674 comfort 1675 presede where 1676  
 Suche 1678 fle . pepile . thus om. sodenly 1680 wheche þæt 1682 menbris  
 1683 vnderstande 1684 or 1687 go 1688 Wherefore euene after 1689 bounde  
 & forthe eke 1690 heritiks . fiere 1692 hundrede 1694 þer 1695 we left .  
 doges 1697 autores 1699 hire 1707 of inst. of and 1708 ffer . made 1710  
 hire modire 1712 þe knottis þæt ye 1713 & om. 1714 Mayde . lyue 1715 þi  
 1716 counselle 1717 magik . & om. wepe sore 1718 þou were 1719 suche  
 1720 þyne eyne . be om. 1722 saye . the om. 1724 on om. to þe 1725 folow  
 1726 on om. counsell 1728 þi . alle 1729 forgyffe . þi 1730 alle þo 1731  
 the om. 1732 falle 1734 are 1735 shal 1736 on þis m. y wil deuyse 1737  
 smyte þyne heede of 1738 none faille 1739 warantz . 1740 sewire . ilk 1743  
 þyne . councele . to om. 1744 þene . meke 1746 hange 1747 þis daie . be  
 1748 worldis 1749 ffor om. To þe a q. & alle 1750 one om. 1751 wene þe  
 falle is 1752 is 1753 Summe mene wene . dye 1754 ful s. 1755 deceyueable  
 1756 lese 1758 hethe 1759 lawghynge 1760 haboundithe 1761 hate 1762  
 the om. 1763 theder om. 1764 dye 1766 haue 1767 dyspise . þi o. 1770

couet 1771 aungels 1772 shulde astoundede 1773 misteris 1775 þat stande  
 1777 spente 1779 waishide 1785 fere 1786 thise . zeue 1788 is . draw  
 1789 folow . prese 1792 sweeche 1793 modirs . maydens 1794 my 1797  
 myschyff 1801 brynyngre fiere 1803 meche thyngis 1804 swere . be 1805  
 wyth-oute 1806 And om. 1808 dye 1809 smyte 1810 or 1811 sey 1815  
 cyne & handis 1819 þat trostynne 1822 to þi college amonge . maydens 1823  
 þe b. 1824 with 1825 enmy 1828 remembraunce 1838 at eue 1843 shal  
 1844 mute 1845 þi 1846 bother 1849 þi 1850 aungels 1851 þi maydens  
 1853 þi 1855 Amonge þi . þat 1857 sodenly 1858 herde 1860 & om. mayde  
 1862 as beste 1869 before 1870 Maydens are 1871 Aungels are . þi s. cku to  
 1879 relees . alle 1882 forgyue 1887 þi 1889 stande 1890 forgyfe 1893  
 holly alle 1895 wode & rage 1902 þene suche 1904 Suche 1905 watirde alle  
 1906 aboute 1909 hathie 1913 aungels 1914 like . wyngis 1915 come .  
 autoris 1916 toke 1920 the om. 1921 & of this v. 1923 on the margin.  
 Poule . suche 1927 þe mounte 1928 hastily 1930 for om. 1931 be 1933  
 sey 1935 if þat 1936 autor 1937 pusance 1938 labourde . it om. þise  
 1939 byne . hane 1944 weche 1945 day om. 1947 be 1948 are . onkuowe  
 1949 knowlege 1952 holede 1954 þat . wheder 1955 swete . þat same holy  
 be lycoure 1956 sey þei p. be 1957 Thus . be 1959 suche lycours 1961  
 before 1962 mans 1963 hire . make forfiture 1964 or fyue 1967 autorite  
 1968 nouzt 1970 cke om. 1971 ymagyne . a om. 1974 the om. shal 1977  
 solempne 1978 to wheche

Col.: Explicit vita sancte Katerine facta per Doct. Capgrauo

## 2. FROM MS. ARUNDEL 20, fol. 1.

### I.

Prologus (v. 1—252) om.

1<sup>us</sup> liber 1 grece 2 surry . both lorde 3 clarkis . olde storece 5 gouerne  
 6 calde . to inst. of þoo 7 luffyd . ful om. 8 lambe . lyon 9 nootyde . þow  
 lyst 10 be-knowne 11 dyd . omage 12 bachalere 13 theyr . sought 14 þei  
 nedyd ought 15 yles longyd . þoo om. vnto (so always) . londe 16 to hys 17  
 he had . honde 18 havens 19 weldyd þem . ryzt . lyste 20 marchandis .  
 maryners 21 omagers 22 pece . reynynd . zerys 23 feyr 24 belovyd . omagers  
 25 noble . seyð 26 felde . pessabulle 28 pennes 29 wolde hym 30 dyd .  
 xulde yt 31 began vengeance 32 Prayer 34 bet . ryzt 35 lawys 37 meyð  
 38 Stabulle . euermore . I . om. 39 manz om. 40 þem 41 thyngis . þer wrouzte  
 42 pytus . spryte 43 Pece 44 clynnyd 45 on . om. & to 46 als mete . axe  
 vnto 47 lordis . ther inst. of þoo 48 wysse 49 hatyd he hardely . harlotry  
 & vyssse 50 pete vnto . thouzt 51 such . xulde hethyne 52 wysse 53 Ouzt .  
 hard thorne brymbulle tre 54 growys . rosse . ze mey 55 Iues 57 Two .  
 othyr 58 large & grete a . þe tothyr alle 59 fothur 60 & walle 61 þe  
 tothyr . bokis 62 or 63 whych . kyngis there erownyd 64 hyzt Amelech .  
 stande 65 þe tothyr . Alexander . Egyp 66 same om. land 67 & eke of 68  
 frewte . I . wysse 70 surry . douzt . 71 key 72 alle þe kyngdome . trone 73  
 surrey . must cum . wey 74 mey . shypp 75 els 76 hayvene . hooge . fulz om.  
 77 castels 78 Oppuz to . wolde cum 79 theyr fredomes . feyr 80 ouzt . heyth-  
 nes . crystyndum 81 repeyr 82 Vndyr . meyr 83 xulde . ffeylle 84 wyth  
 mete men & vyteytle 85 Alexander 86 schyp s . cyte 87 owne lordshyp 88  
 of . curzresse 89 in tonne felde or one see 90 whych 91 done 92 othyr 93  
 egyp . standis 94 & large . grete fame 95 must 96 Vnto . way & wyte 98  
 must 100 sent 101 þy seynt p . sent 102 þem 103 so þer þei alle yt wyste  
 104 flor . theyr 105 theme 107 whyche 108 xalle 110 þer 111 Munkis .  
 suche 113 þeis 114 Alle . martyrs and fulle 115 meydyngs wydous 116 numbyr  
 117 medow . shourys 118 Than numbyr theme I trow not he mey 119 assey

120 Theys vessels. martyrs 121 fyer . yerne . sleyn & brent (I- om.) 122 four-  
 nesse 123 scapyd 124 xulde . Intent 125 devyne 126 longys 129 after 132  
 an holy 133 callyd 135 large & ryzt fulle . pepyle 137 gan . than om. 138  
 xulde 140 noujt els 141 wones 142 callyd theyr . no nothyr 143 alexander  
 144 wordy suche 146 neper louys nor 147 do zyt . myzt 149 evyne . pis kyngis  
 deys 150 lyvys here in . mykkelle 151 longis . lawes 152 landis . assays 153  
 thyngis . now om. 154 cronaccules 155 As mythly . alle overl . makis 156 mo  
 marvyls 157 how . Ere 159 whete vnto h . whete . quaste 160 must nedis .  
 whene 161 muste nedys 162 fardyst 163 wyrkis . wondrys ryzt 165 þe om.  
 chyldyrne . þem 166 þem 167 falne 168 helpt þem . whan . þat om. 169 helpt  
 þem soner 170 bene . þeyr 171 changyd . theyr 172 þem . þat om. 173 not  
 175 sauejoure 177 vnylke 178 þeis olde . lyvyd 179 haue . mother 180 fodder  
 181 sykker . suche new 183 dyd habraane . sara 186 Marys . bryngars 188  
 feyr thyng . blyssyd myzt 190 vnto . meydync . hathe chosse 191 owne 192  
 whych . spokis 193 hyr 196 vnto 197 Whane . þe om. seasone xulde 198 to  
 lyne 199 orlynd yt . suche 202 þe w . wondryd 203 how . olde . xulde v . 204  
 follows v . 208 . 205 was 206 olde 207 Shalle . xalle 208 lye now . 204 a  
 om. lough 210 lordys 211 cum . begynnys 212 Cryes a waylys . dose 214  
 Excusyd 215 wryttyne 216 meydync 217 Hyr father . callyd constus 218  
 Hyr mother . seyd . hyzt 219 dougher 220 beawte . presse 226 passyd & gone  
 227 holde 228 wordy . ordynl 229 traavylle . þere om. 230 rouzte 231 aboutz  
 233 hule 235 þeyr 236 xalle 238 hyr eye 239 nurryshyd 241 boþe om. 242  
 teetis 243 lestyd . hyr . lyue 244 ful om. 249 scolers 250 nor f . 251 gan (be-  
 om.) 252 lettars . þe om. sche om. spellyd 253 He . masters 254 hyr (so  
 always) 255 case . numbyr 256 modys . verbs 257 lernyd 259 þe modes om.  
 and þe tence 262 master 263 seivyoure 264 ore . peyd þem theyr hyre 265 a  
 hye clarke 268 sche om. 273 Inclnynd . alle hyr 276 any 278 bodys 279  
 bysynes 280 Whych was wyth hyr . thus om. one pis w . 281 seys 282 Ageyns .  
 reynyd þan 284 be a rewlyd 285 zung god 286 xalt over-cum 287 grece . þe  
 reme 288 ydiotes 289 mene . appostels . 290 worlde 292 wysdome 293 bus-  
 tyusnes . we xuld 294 thynkis . caas om. 296 ordynyd . gyffe 297 worlde . xulde  
 not hyr 298 Nor 301 mythy . strength of þe holy goste 302 wold þat . þeis aretys  
 303 dougher 304 palyce 306 knyghys 307 ordynde 308 for to . ryce 309 And  
 eke hyr to nurtur 310 masters 315 hyer master 316 I- om. 317 chayrs .  
 myche 318 glasyd 322 þe boke 323 one rowe 324 aftyr om. 325 knowe . I- om.  
 326 wer 328 Vnto þeis clarkis . 329 only om. now þus newly 330 now inst. of  
 þan 331 waxt 332 one . gone 335 wele wyt . louys 337 made make 339  
 Oppuz 340 none . worlde 343 In om. 344 from 345 devysse 346 & stodye  
 ryzt 347 treesse . off strange wysse 348 & om. ryse 350 Solatory to stodyars  
 of lyffe to theme comfote 351 gardyne & no moo 352 shyt 356 worldly . nor  
 357 wysse man seys 358 walls . towrs . made vp so 359 cast (I- om.) 361 shyt  
 364 lyvyd 366 lyzt 367 tellys 368 how . wryzt 369 hys plyzt 370 arays  
 371 colours . displays 373 lernys . lytylle 374 be om. 375 trouthe from . falsed .  
 techys 376 þan om. folows 377 connyngis 378 xalt 380 in þat 381 master  
 383 meture 384 A . ys wyse 385 are 386 gemetry 387 ynglysh (!) 388 Yt  
 ys . mych . longis 389 letturs 390 of yt . 392 I can . makis 393 stythe 394  
 st'ring . standyng 395 reyne vppone heyth 397 it om. 399 dulnesse 401 dyd  
 gadyr 402 clarkis 404 wyt . dougher . one hand 406 gaddyrd 407 þem  
 408 alle hys c. of any 409 þat he hath l . alle hys . ful om. 411 nojt 413 Theyr  
 problems . vndo 415 haue . thyngis 417 how . hyr a . 418 Or hyr c. for in  
 419 Can 421 þan om. than alle 422 certene 424 mey lyue 425 nedis 426  
 myche 427 wysse 428 þem 429 gaue þem . gylytis 431 off theyr l . 432  
 theyr boumtisnes . such 438 takyne . owne fathyr 439 worlde 440 longis  
 vnto 441 loggyd . loordis 442 dyed . & c. 443 zyt 444 great 445 done .  
 done wr . grete om. 446 þeir 447 lythe . now om. 448 clothyd . after (ward  
 om.) 449 solemnyte 451 no neper noyce . cyte . 452 weleawaye . xalle 455  
 no ayre 456 zunge 457 zyt 458 father . þus om. 459 bene . sykernes .  
 morez om. 460 sykcerly 461 subiectis to o . landis 462 must . bandis 463



noble . what . þat om. 464 to here om. 465 gladdē 466 terys 467 changyd  
 hyr 469 hyre 470 tombe 471 mey wyt . a kyng 472 anoyntyd . balme .  
 nepher 473 nor . suche 474 thyngis 475 Was þan . whyche nedis 476  
 hapely . warse 477 suche . ryztis 478 lorde 479 byschops . knyghys 480  
 deys for evyne so v. was 481 run . begynne . passe 482 theyr 483 Must haue  
 484 suche lastyng whych . feytle 486 enteylle 487 vanysh . rotun 488 to þis  
 intent 491 ameleke 492 Thys . oute om. 493 dythyr cum . seke 494 must  
 now alle clepe þis cyte 495 coste 496 must haue . it om. 500 myche loy and  
 myrthe 501 In þis c. eke dethe dyd hymē doune falle 502 cawsys . thys n.  
 503 stand . not 504 knowlege 505 ys yt callyd 507 standis 508 þis ys yt  
 manyd 509 walkis . werkis many a . 510 worthy 511 schrewys xalle . þeir  
 512 hyr owne 513 Alexander 514 had . husband 515 xulde 516 cum 520  
 One 521 kyngis in . land 522 solemnyte 523 custome 524 troublle . þer (-for  
 om.) 525 Many a . parlament 526 kynred . hyre 527 foundyd 528 in (whose  
 529 now om. 531 storys 533 Sodene 534 egyp . babbelle 537 nor 540 lesse  
 541 standis 542 outz off 543 wheber 545 hyer ryalle 546 babbylle 547 seyð  
 548 grottyst . vnto 549 land . egyp 550 weche . reynyd 554 athanas 555  
 makis 556 same om. 557 descyvyd 559 & other 560 longis 562 Madagda-  
 laus hyzt 564 Reynyd 565 seys 566 No . spekis 569 wordy 573 owne 574  
 fathers 576 must . treuly 577 gorgalus zunger . mardaenius 580 mardamy .  
 þe 583 father 585 gorgalus zung . haue 586 whyle om. 587 wonders . souzt .  
 lyue 588 zyt . ryve 589 conquestyd 590 araby . fenyse . owne 591 gorgalus  
 592 wan . gunne (?) 593 sessyd 594 calde 597 haue hys 601 When . dye . in  
 602 alle alone . suentyne om. 603 gaue 604 Snre 605 þat om. He gaue . a  
 mythy 609 onys . clarkis 610 reynyd 612 so dere (!) 614 septure 615  
 callyd anthiocus 616 þer xv ; þere om. . rosse 617 callyd 621 lewys zyt 622  
 dyd 623 robbyd 624 wrytys þeis 625 þe c. . and tresun 627 when 629 the  
 same plyzte 630 phileplator . sey 631 wyth . dougher . vnkynndly 632 a  
 bryzt 636 any om. 637 þat hyzt 642 þe kyngē . þer-too 644 callyd 645  
 No new chapter . þis t. . romayns wan from 646 Myche 648 In mene 649 þat  
 inst. of for . feyne 651 in om. 652 landis . faders wan 653 reynyd evyne þe r.  
 656 dyd 659 calde hys 660 governd . lande 661 þis . seys 662 þe om. 663  
 t. from theyr h. 664 elyus adryames 665 dougher tytle . calde phalome 666  
 on- om. ; to þis seyð 667 surre to þe r. 668 And om. to þem cessyd 670 þei  
 seyð þat hyr dyd s. 671 Þei saw . suche 673 some . solabre 674 fathyr 675  
 archeyone & 676 glandace 678 barus 680 custos fathyr 682 zow . ofz om.  
 683 meydnye inst. of lady 684 holly 685 behyzt 686 þe rekkunnyng . aue  
 687 accordis . cronacides . be 690 d. in many thyngis 691 othyr mens rek-  
 kynnyngis 692 gyfe 693 þeis . men om. in ordyr ryzt as þei xulde be 694  
 apply reply 695 menyng 696 rekkun 697 Numbers & reherse . wh. wyllē 698  
 thynkis 700 kynredd . not worschypp 701 þerto . dothe 702 shrews . seys 703  
 how . cam 704 correk synnars 705 ware 706 genology 707 standis . þe same  
 708 to om. 710 ageyns 711 vyteytle . oper 712 þer inst. of þat 713 off alle  
 m. v. 714 so om. 716 cum 717 to-gydder 718 shew now 720 cum . omage  
 721 ladyes 723 mace 724 þem av. 725 gods 726 lat þer 727 how 728 hyr  
 sewtys 729 began . enowgh 731 to þe povert lowgh 732 foyssyone . vnto 734  
 in bows & in halle 735 þe . nedis 736 had (I- om.) 737 wyght 739 nyght  
 740 borecdys . coverde 741 meelle . another 742 vesselle . 743 neydyr om. 744  
 & men 745 palyce . standis 746 pepyle 747 among lordis . or X 748 þus þei  
 kept þeir state . eke om. 749 gentyls 750 ladeys 751 cam . othyr 753  
 fathyr . & sum . were om. 754 eurtasy . cam inst. of game 755 spake 758  
 best . warre . 759 theatur 760 enery man was þer fythyng . 763 Also . wrostyl-  
 lyng 764 And when . was . & ylk dele done 765 lustyng rewylle . þan began  
 to 766 homward yehone for to . 767 had fully . I- om. 768 þat had . or make  
 769 gyffne . coursars . þe tone 770 þe tothyr whyzt 771 ofz om. 772 eke om.  
 773 war gyffne mantyls whyzt . þe om. 775 þei ryde . forth om. 777 And  
 preyd 778 tellys 779 kepdy . helde . þer 780 quene þat þer styllē dwels 781  
 for om. she can þerof 782 Hoo . þei dyd grete 783 þis 785 & hyr 787 ffor

hy 788 grete wyt & . hert om. wels 789 rynnys frome . wels 792 þat was  
 793 any evle 794 And he þat dyd 799 neuer 800 court 801 perte 802 þat q.  
 804 was 805 3yt hys 811 good om. 813 meydyn . bapt. not 814 vsyd .  
 spryth 816 bothe be 817 mech om. þe eye 818 wyt 819 þat 821 spy .  
 mys wrozt 823 nor inst. of or 826 he<sub>2</sub> om. 832 deynys 833 thys 836 falle  
 (be- om.) 837 þat lord ys ever and xalle be in blyvs 843 also þow . was 850 as  
 any 852 kepyd no r. nor none a. 855 landis 856 must 861 both oure 862  
 cummys 863 lovys 866 to<sub>2</sub> om. 868 turnys 870 lyth . beneyth 871 ys now  
 alone 872 He ys dede & beryed & leyd fulle depe. 873 we be hole . be we<sub>2</sub> om.  
 874 o<sub>2</sub> om. 876 now w. k. now 878 Into 880 not þus 882 weldis 884 þeyr  
 887 now om. lykly 888 xalle 889 eke om. 890 ryalle k. 891 conselle 893  
 land . in<sub>2</sub> om. 895 os 896 for oure prow 897 xulde to batylle 898 ho . xuld  
 be 899 kynd . 3yt neuer 901 a st. . wyngis 902 chesse . a captene 905 a om.  
 907 þat feyr 3yng thynng 910 must 911 Appone . matere om. 912 wythe ; oute  
 om. 913 hath. 914 That om. xulde 916 wryzt 917 þis matter 919 is om. .  
 þer lady 921 Os 922 þeis l. 924 on 925 ladeys . helder . 3yng 926 now om.  
 knowne . lande 927 spokun 928 lyke . bannde 929 hathe . hand 930 Os 931  
 ladeys 932 Appon . appone 935 lat 938 alle þe 941 alle inst. of ylde 942  
 þat long to 3owe now 943 Shall 945 ceasse (I- om.) 947 wyrk after 949  
 veylle 951 of þeyr hertis desyre 952 þe men 955 owne 956 xulde be soo  
 957 for þat wolde yt vndo 958 nor 960 for om. 961 desyrys 963 3yng . must  
 nedis 964 let . chosse 965 on om. 966 Spede 3e 969 myzt 970 a om. 971  
 3yt inst. of ryzt . or ouzt of bedd 3e rysse 974 ryght om. 976 al-wey inst. of  
 alone . yt wylle not be-seeme 982 in<sub>2</sub> om. . skylle 983 & of 987 She lovys .  
 hyr meydynhede 989 on om. 991 to om. 992 so om. 993 wyld . þing om.  
 994 bene . tyme om. 995 lyggyne in me or my w. 996 I thynk . 3e sey 999  
 nor 1000 3ow ; selue om. wysse 1001 xalle to 3oure wylle 1002 3yt asscyd  
 neuer 1003 nor me in no 1004 As om. neythyr nay nor 1005 pleyne inst. of  
 blame 1006 dose . as om. 1007 castis 1008 oppose 1010 same om. . touchys  
 1011 nor to 1012 land therto 1013 þer (of om.) 1014 fullys 1015 wyt . wele  
 om. 1016 must nedis . 1018 xalle . eke inst. of ellys 1019 muste 1020 lat .  
 matter . lengare 1022 now cum . hys 1024 sey theyr alle 1025 þerto I make  
 god 1026 speke he what he wylle 1027 off þe olde quens bylle 1028 wer  
 1029 thus wyth one v. 1030 endis þe fyrste b. 1031 kynred 1032 Ys d. now  
 at thys tyme 1033 she myzte send. 1034 A new boke now begyne xalle wec  
 1035 on- om. 1037 be-tweyne hyre l. 1040 Vnto þe 1041 or þis 1042 prosse  
 inst. of pause 1043 And a reste ryght here at þis same clause.

Explicit primus liber vite beate virginiis Katerine.

Incipit prosa (!) in 2<sup>m</sup> librum.

## II.

2 fyer . to om. 3 mey 4 tels 5 gosse . nor 6 there be ffyer 7 In þ. s. m.  
 I sey be þis blyssyd ladye 10 tokuns 11 no tyll 12 knew 13 Os . xalle .  
 hasse tokyns 14 knew . roote. 15 knew . hard 17 brynns 18 sytte om.  
 aboune 19 þat (inst. of þe qwech) one 24 Among vs 25 duly thynk one 26  
 ffor whyche ensampyls went 27 desyryd 28 must . nede 29 burne 30 þis ys  
 no d. 31 frome þe thyne. 32 be<sub>2</sub> om. 33 vertue 35 ffor she gaffe hyr fully  
 þerto þat stounde. 36 ryth om. 37 cum yt callys . ffelow 38 to-gydder as s.  
 & brother. 39 yche . alle om. dose . drowe 40 To þei be cum alle suche ys  
 þeyr l. 42 serue & course . lo om. 44 ffar past 45 þat fro þem she casts 46  
 & þem are 47 she hathe so swotly takyne 48 metis and mats 49 bonde 50  
 accordis . me thynk om. 51 lyvyng 52 þe same 53 say . it om. 55 meny<sub>2</sub> . mey  
 56 þus om. 57 or—ryne om. 58 Soundyth . hyre 60 neyde 62 syune 63 þer  
 64 ys inst. of art 65 vnwordy 68 & eke dyne<sub>2</sub> syte 70 streche . (fol. 9 & 10 are  
 transp.) 71 rynne 74 þeir 79 þei cum 81 loppyne . ryth om. 82 ho cowde .  
 syt or 84 many oper 85 saracene 86 ware . there om. ryalle 87 & fulle 88  
 þe ryalle 92 there 93 awne . ny om. 94 callyd 95 now he xulde 96 one 97

bothe om. 99 now om. assynyd 100 gaddyrd alle togydder 101 spas 102 so om.  
 Was in certene 103 at peir. þe 104 it om. 105 Syche 106 chosse. among þem  
 107 þei seyð 111 þus om. 112 My. lady om. xalle 113 forgyue 114 sey to 3ow  
 trough 115 take om. 116 many a 117 chosyne 119 excepte. ryght om.  
 mothy 120 certainly inst. of ryght. 121 wyllē sey þat 3e 124 lengar 125  
 3oue 126 tak om. 127 & on 128 olde awucetre 129 xalle falle 130 Nor.  
 here om. 131-3 Yt ys no plesance þat 3e xulde þus wrye, Yt pleece þem better  
 and 3e consent þer-too, Þat 3oure awnswere myzt breke theyr wo 134 husbaude  
 137 must nedys 138 3e xalle therly amend 139 Excuse 140 chosse 143  
 now om. 145 cr. & hys. rathyr wolde he 146 wysse 149 yow om. 150  
 Oppyne 151 case 153 Oure p. oure s. 154 theysse 155 astunyd 156 hard  
 157 now om. 158 nor. wyt nor 161 me thynkīs 164 thynkīs suerly 166  
 cumis 167 scruffis. pleece 171 theyr 172 þem 173 thynge yff 175 mey  
 176 yt ys 3yt 177 sworne 180 cumis 181 fellys 185 mothy. & inst. of if 186  
 must 189 alle om. 190 mey. 3et om. 192 my stody 194 loffyð. how xulde  
 196 sythynge 197 þei harde hyr 198 lord 199 & alle 3oure wones 200 at p.  
 205 curtesy 206 syne 209 fle me thynkīs noþer but 3e 210 but I 211 abyed  
 213 þeis matters now for a w. 215 The whyls 216 I inst. of &. avysse 217 wysse  
 219 swere 222 to yow lengar tale m. 223 loop 224 sey. lythe 225 w. one  
 wysement wyrk 226 it om. thynk 227 for om. bark 228 theyr lyst. wont  
 229 chose. must 231 as om. 233 seyð 235 eke þe more and lasse 236 þat casse  
 238 my awne. boujt (a- om.) 241 yore inst. of þoo 243 3e inst. of oþir men.  
 244 cum hydder 246 a om. avysseyd 248 but a lytyll. 249 3e yt  
 253 whyls þe gyrs growys 254 steiffe 255 now om. knowys 257 clark  
 one 261 xulde. arre 262 travto.s 263 þeis lordīs. warre 264 flor 3.  
 gouernance and 3our kynd þis ys f. fare 265 abyed 266 men so sleyne. owyne  
 om. 267 theyr w. 268 þem whyls þei are 269 men scruffyd. scruffe. lambe 270  
 Throw 271 þeme drawne by (oute om.) or 272 petyus 274 as me thynk  
 276 se hem om. 277 & suffyr 279 lengar 280 growys 281 vnto þeis wordīs  
 282 father 285 one 286 a 287 nedīs 288 one 290 þe enmys 292 fathyr  
 293 3ers. 3ede 294 do 295 chase. captynne þan 296 alle in þis 298 þan om. ney.  
 299 sers 300 mey 30ue 301 nede 3oue now to. blame. 302 was om. 303 Was  
 wuz. als w. 304 thynge inst. of theft 305 frome 306 ware punnyshyde 307  
 & off þis punnyshment 3yt he k. 308 þis; same om. weyse 309 I wytsane.  
 ryne 311 þei cunte. bryne 312 hem om. 313 othyr 315 lyke as 316 a  
 ryalle lorde & ryche wyth-alle. 317 calde. þe prince 318 knesse 320 3oure  
 feynes Is sprung 321 þei. knowne 322 And om. 3yt mey 3e not nethyr. nor  
 324 Os. gone 325 or 3yt calle 326 care & om. 327 what xalle. I-pased &  
 om. now goo 328 for om. 329 lykīs. weel om. 330 chaunce 332 wysse  
 334 trouthe 335 fyngers 336 settyle 338 ordenyd 339 castels 340 peiple.  
 þei. no 341 weys went 343 must om. 344 feyryst. berys 345 so do m.  
 347 awne. wyllē 349 xulde pleece. þat om. 350 mothy 351 Rychese. xuld.  
 aveylle 352 coffer. kepyd 353 myzt. bothe plate. meyllē 354 land. capa-  
 dosse 356 Wyldē pey. raunsum 357 on-om. 358 þe om. wysyst 359 3et om.;  
 3e haue not one 361 wyllē not nor can not 362 nor strength. for þat þei w. 366  
 þe. reyne 367 þoo om. 368 in<sub>2</sub> om. in<sub>2</sub> om. 369 sykker. knyths 370 þeis  
 worshypps. at casse 372 me thynk 373 þat inst. of & 374 Ordyne 375 Spous-  
 ayllē. os 3yt 3e neuer 376 Þis ys my tale and ours fully therto. 377 in spense  
 378 warde. boþe om.; oure l. & expense. 379 Grauncer. þan om. 381 I-om.  
 382 worshyp & my honour wolde 383 syre om. 384 spake 386 thynkīs. awyse  
 388 desesse. wyldē lyke 389 þus om. pretendythe 390 noþer. nor 391 all  
 om. 392 thynk 393 als. conquestīs. seres om. 394 lordshypps. wer wonē  
 395 þat om. 396 no om. 397 presoners. layd 398 were. seyne þat 400  
 sowys. 401 ne om. we no covyt þat 3e do 402 a-ferē 403 A. 3e 405 I.  
 3e. vnto 3oue 406 in a. 408 þeyns gyffyne 409 semys 411 My. drope  
 412 gane 414 must nedīs 417 To om. Make fire or make to hyme presonare  
 419 hope to hang and drawe 421 swone 426 awjt. 429 haue suche freedom g.  
 hyme w. 430 nor 431 Þere ys offycers 432 þe shrews. nor. 433 yllē. i. d. ey

pus mey 3e 434 nedis . not om. 435 offycers 436 must þem 437 slesse fyztis  
 438 xalle 439 Nor þeir dede but 440 slesse peys men þat are. 441 Serwandis  
 to þe l. 443 Os . fathers 444 let . lat . or saue. 445 longis 446 meydyne  
 447 be hem om.; thow þei dampnyd be 448 to þe Iuggis b. k. & q. to se. 451  
 begun . ryght om. to r. 452 perlon 454 rysyng at any season war steryd  
 455 afferdy 457 3owe . how 459 men om. 461 thynk 462 It f. þat off alle þis  
 3e ne r. 463 syttis 464 an . eke om. 465 be om. were . Iustyes 468 Nother .  
 nor . mans mynde. 469 And peyr . yene 470 t. 3owe 471 myzt . be 472  
 bath om. 473 þem 474 boke 475 how 476 fulle s. 479 lengare . þe  
 lettars 480 wyll 482 full om. holle and in quarte 483 xalle 484 wyll  
 486 gryme 489 xulde . a man þan more þan 3e drede 490 als w. 494 ewle  
 tacchyle . yt ys. 497 it om. 498 os . xalle 499 on- om. 500 lat 501 lande  
 505 here now how þe pepale . þeyr 506 to om. 507 I now shew 510 babilon  
 515 dethe 516 One 519 ryth om. 522 repentand 524 I wolde 526  
 loue 527 oft tymes 528 opynyons . fomyd 529 Make oftymes a l. 530 hyme  
 onzte at herre 531 theyr wyttis 532 þat om. 535 wardly . ware 536 ware  
 538 slydis . 3e knowe 539 fulle fast ageyne 542 þat om. 543 saw . wrete om.  
 ane evyne 544 þe boke 545 Reseuyd os 3yt . thynk . must nedys. 546 yt tellys  
 547 how xulde we k. 548 wordy . eldrys 549 tolde þem 550 what 551 Where  
 553 oppynyons . sere now om. 3ow lett 554 gods 555 þat 556 prechars are feyne .  
 one rowe 557 haly 560 we om. þerfore inst. of þan . a noþer 561 standis . full  
 om. 562 master . I wyll 563 senys 564 to om. 566 meyntyne 567 longis .  
 godds 568 calde 569 of 1 om. 570 theyr pesse 573 þoo om. 576 cause .  
 must 578 hyde (a- om.) . one 3ere 582 cunes 583 hens om. agoo 585 landis  
 586 fare a. fare fro þe 591 wythouzt 592 thynk 595 Whyche þat xalle wele . eke  
 om. 599 we . lande one se & 601 studdy 602 thynkis surely . xulde do wele thus  
 603 xulde 604 lesure 606 no . wherfor 607 one . vaffe 608 do . counselle 613  
 os 614 and cypre 615 drede I 616 so I dere yt b. 617 þat om. 620 þer-offe  
 not wante 621 xulde set a p. 622 3yng 623 lere 624 ek om. 626 xulde .  
 had 627 þe om. be so 628 presyng 3oure t. xalle 630 now om. 632 farther-  
 more 633 yff yt . nowe om. 638 at alle 639 Whyche off 3oue spake 640 plen-  
 tuosly 641 frome 642 sayyd . os . a vale 643 Os off . borne 644 ryde 646 yt  
 647 fun 649 One 650 for om. 651 is om. c. has as 655 Whyche as . cuene  
 om. 656 hathe d. to þem þus þan 658, 659 dwels . at 661 owte om. 662 & inst.  
 of Ete . rest hyme and eke at evyn[e] 663 þeyr 665 no fyculte 667 þore . þus be-  
 gan 668 3unthe 669 a kyng 671 bone 672 we om. hartely 673 sworne 675  
 Ryzt so & 678 yt ys 679 xalle now m. 685 not om. no noþer 690 cum affray  
 694 style 695 in 3our wyt 3e enf. 697 I inst. of 3e . swere 698 to om. 699 yt  
 xulde 704 reheryd 705 awnswer 706 for om. . thynkis 708 þat for . he om.  
 710 þem sesse 711 And om. But yff 713 gylte 714 þat om. 715 þer stode  
 717 þoo om. delffe 717 deppar . to (vn- om.) 720 hert 721 perte 722 are  
 727 3ow 728 in þe whyche . are indosyde 729 3oure ylke 730 eylys 731 be-  
 leue 732 lady om. harte ys surely sett 734 3e so sore drynke 735 most om.  
 737 concelde . tyll 738 3ay 740 febulle wele 741 os wrytis þe 743 þe om.  
 oft suche dystance 745 now lady 3owe 748 ryght om. 750 but yff 752 as is  
 754 nethyr in wake nor 755 as here 756 standis 757 on- om. 758 Seyne .  
 graunty þem 760 hathe 3oue . we wyll craue 764 I- om. vp om. one p. 765  
 thynk . chaunge 766 Now and þan wyll 3e now are 3e not of Ioynt 767 Now  
 wyll 768 know om. 772 nedis ifor 3owe care 774 be 775 nor 777 þat 3e  
 sey . myche mervylle 780 hartly 781 wyll 782 were no behoue 783 nor  
 784 dysseyuer . spyzt. 785 sey also þat 786 all om. 788 Os to . xalle be.  
 790 knowne 791 fathers . onz om. mothers 793 ordynd . gods 794 eke ys  
 796 ware . yne þat n. 798 leegys 799 it were om. buttraces 800 shew 801  
 meyntyne 802 ys fulle smalle herdely 803 als w. 806 pretendys 810 &  
 xulle I trow 812 lere 815 þer 3e sey fully þat 817 he but 818 alle þe  
 bunche 819 of ane ynche 820 I put case I gafe 3ow a b. 821 folowys . þerof  
 þat om. I gawe 822 I mey . pey 3oue 823 And gyue 3oue an horse 824 cum .  
 þe 825 arestotels . & made . such a gyse 826 lernys þem 827 chose 828

chose 829 vp om. 831 I 3yt eft 832 xalle . & om. 833 þis ys 834 þoo om.  
 lamosines 835 here now 837 *mervylle* 840 a faryd 841 skeyth 842 had om.  
 843 But yt ys 844 mattyrz 846 ffor þe loue 847 Aceep 848 do wele 849 3e  
 lyst 855 hym all: 856 leke . vs om. 857 haue rest nor no esse 858 ware . lyke  
 as . are 859 wele 860 many of 861 herd 863 sche sayde om. troste 864  
 one . þe inst. of to 865 loste 866 wost 868 eyre 869 *cum* 871 thynkis  
 873 haue om. 3ow om. 876 amerelle 877 *can* 879 thynkis . svttis 880 now  
 om. myre 881 loose . now om. losse. 882 yt ende þus (!) 885 thynGIS 887  
 wolde thynk 890 sey 891 dose lyke 892 dose a f. 893 frome 894 Be ware  
 895 nor 896 now om. wylle 899 man off d. d. 902 here om. 906 dente . leue  
 907 not om. 908 sullyne 909 hathe byddyne 912 not I . þe g. 914 nor loue  
 915 þe . thynGIS 917 Be . telle . mo thynGS 918 among 919 ful om. 920 be .  
 so om. 921 vsys 922 reme haply 923 Seyne 927 ful om. note om. 930 3e .  
 correk . 3oure-s. 931 wolde o. 932 þan began 933 cald 935 ful om. 936 3oue  
 madame . ful om. to b. 937 Os 938 of<sub>1</sub> om. 939 wyt 940 lyke as . Egyllle  
 941 in als m. 942 fallys 943 whyche þat 3e loue 944 not theme . þæt om. 948  
 But þow 953 lets . beleue 954 be om. 955 shal om. 956 xalle 957 end om.  
 958 þe om. 959 yt ys . as om. 960 ffor inst. of sore 961 wyt þe cause off 3oue  
 962 meyny . shal om. þe g. 963 to send forthe . both om. 964 þæt om. 965  
 One . hath om. off 966 off londe lorde . and lyme 967 olde . debate 968  
 Among . þer reynyd 971 soo inst. of thoo 972 why þæt þei chasse 974 ffor  
 qwar om. Ther was not els 975 Þer was non þan wylld 976 seyð . xulde 977  
 oft fallys betwene 978 Ageyns . stryvys 981 ware chosun 982 strenghe & sun  
 985 Excellys . þow þei be as 988 wer 991 chosse 992 drawne 993 Nor  
 994 heed om must þei 995 my 998 Nor 1001 he om. 1003 as om. 1005  
 cumand . ne om. 1007 þe behynde 1008 fawle 1009 eke om. 1010 morenyd  
 sore & 1011 saw 1012 þei om. 1013 ganc om. 1015 pereyлле 1016 dayes om.  
 1017 wyt 1018 ne rome 1019 not such a m. 1020 yff inst. of of 1022 or craue  
 1024 To þæt . be ch. 1025 turnyd now 1027 hath brouzt 1028 do om. 1029  
 þæt euer þey poynt þey v. euer þer s. 1031 who om. my 1033 clyvys 1035 not  
 yt 1036 I-wey 1037 wepyd 1038 ys lorne 1039 sey speke or els doo 1040  
 þe tyme om. 1041 though . is om. 1042 I wyt nevyr 1043 mey wyt hyr answere.  
 1045 cum . auzt farther 1046 doyne 1047 me om. stunnyd . to abey 1049 but  
 om. 1055 kyndrede 1056 all om. 1057 one 1058 elys 1059 3yng 1060 for-  
 byddis 1062 turne 1063 3oure entent 1064 frome 1066 lyke as 1067 here bef.  
 1068 cume ne set 1070 lyue 1071 folow 3oue . stepps . 3ede 1072 þe chyl-  
 dyrne 1074 decesse 1075 I hope 1077 þæt om. xalle 1078 dye . meydyne  
 1079 þus yff 3e conceyff 1082 getyne 1083 lerne . lessone om. at me 1084  
 thynk 1086 Vnkylle . ware I 1089 land 1090 eke om. vnto 1094 bothe  
 gouerne 1096 my hart 1099 my harte 1100 ellys om. 1104 ware 1105 my  
 hart . to do alle þing 1108 nor 1110 oft medlyth 1112 haue 1113 londe  
 1115 þe inst. of þoo 1116 nor 1119 dredys 1120 What so e. gyffis . pryse  
 1121 os 1123 seyne tyme 3e 1126 Os yt standis . land 1127 One th. þæt 3e loy  
 1129 not om. gyffyne 1131 longis to þæt 1132 regalyte . my 1133 standythe  
 1134 eke om. wyrkyng 1136 how we 1137 werke and laboure 1138 lord-  
 shyps . xalle not 1139 it om. brouzt 1140 gyffyne 1141 seruff . be 3oue  
 sworne 1142 lord om. 1143 semyd 1144 þoo om. 1145 þan om. in 1146  
 astate 1148 haue 1150 haue 1153 Os 1155 he om. wrytis . þe astr. to me (!)  
 1156 how . not om. naypur wyrk 1158 xulde . barke 1159 man om. 1160  
 whyther<sub>2</sub> om. 1161 i- om. 1163 xalle 1164 xalle fele and se 1165 dyrk  
 1166 xalle 1168 xulde one 1171 of 3oue she seyð 1172 myzt 1173 at þis  
 t. 3oure p. 1174 wele . put m[e] in d. 1175 I put case . xulde 1176 oure l.  
 1177 nor 1178 rewle 3e 1179 length 1181 thynGIS 1182 ware 1183 hertis .  
 full om. 1186 nor 1190 holde 1191 seyne (= svth) 1192 one th. þæt longis to  
 þe regalyte 1194 if om. holde 1195 it<sub>2</sub> om. 1196 for om. 1198 3yt knelyd doune  
 before þe q. 1199 þe Rychē duke off Athenys þe Cyte 1200 of seole 1201 chosyne  
 (I- om.) also inst. of þoo 1202 theyr chose . as om. 1203 wheche om. l. to be þeyr  
 h. 1207 descendyth 1208 bothe fentylle 1210 semys . of þæt k. 1211 ware . nor

1212 eldyrs 1213 Os greyne ryally groune . theyr 1215 ware lyke 1216 in om.  
 pus om. 1218 soote 1219 Farther-more 1220 lyke thyng hys l. 1221 semes  
 1223 despytis . os. 1224 vneurtyslye 1226 answard pus 1228 pat om. hathe  
 1231 of wyt yt berys 1232 lle pat 1233 indwed 1234 wardly 1236 I mey  
 1237 zoue ; resoum om. 1238 tent 1240 one t. 1242 berys . he om. suete 1244  
 eke inst. of & 1245 & in pat 1246 In pis we dyfflyr 1247 semys . graffe 1248 I-om.  
 olde 1249 and savour 1251 clyvyd a fore 1252 graffe 1253 farys . bez om. mync  
 1254 xalle . lyue 1255 Os do now I . I xalle 1258 ffadyr om. 1260 I wyll chose  
 suehe lyue as ys 1263 Kestyng 1264 hopyng 1265 pis seyð m. it om. 1268  
 chase . theyre althys 1272 hath formyð 1274 but yf 1275 is in zoue 1276  
 for om. 1279 none þer 1281 fulle wele asp. 1283 myzt 1284 lyvys . se  
 1285 For zoure feyrde no man can deerne 1287 gyvne . þow om. 1288 yt  
 over zoue ys so leyð 1289 frome 1291 nere s. 1294 vnto zoue 1299 xalle .  
 inelyne 1303 þe nobile 1304 pat om. þe name 1305 & many othyr of zoure  
 lynageyng 1308 Seyne . ylkone 1309 do . kynred. 1310 for þour 1311 and  
 byde therby 1314 ame not 1316 wyth-owtynne 1317 paynt 1318 schapys  
 1319 is om. 1320 vyser 1321 gyne . nose 1324 gyffne 1325 fayre om. 1328  
 thus do . mey s. hath 1329 thyng whyche 1330 do alle-wey . pat hyr dysdeyne.  
 1332 take 1333 lesse . helde 1336 it om. 1337 forther-more . myzt 1338 &  
 inst. of þow . coppyllyd . one 1342 thyngis 1343 thyngis. 1344 wolde she  
 1345 poynt om. 1346 lyuceyng 1348 for and 3e 1351 os . thynk 1352 þow  
 comunye þeis gyfftis 1353 gyffne . þem 1354 man inst. of mever 1355 syttis  
 1356 gafe 1357 hane sum xx<sup>ti</sup> . to 1358 xuld comun 1359 therto . peryle  
 1360 man . syttis 1363 os 1364 poynt om. & þe last poynt 1365 to zoue ys  
 1366 wondrys 1368 os 1371 xalle be best 1375 endyzt 1376 sey 1378 alle  
 ny 1379 hane bene 1383 ane cyre 1384 a husband 1385 wele inst. of syre .  
 pat om. 1386 lye 1387 set vs aboue 1389 þus I 1391 Thys argument ys zoure  
 awne lare 1392-8 om. 1399 none 1402 whyche I wolde 1403 wyth-owtynne  
 1405 vawe 1406 settis 1407 such one . h. wyll I none 1413 sykkerly 1416 he  
 nede 1421 H. what I wyll also more sey 1423 nedis . mens 1424 in e. pat  
 xulde be hym lych 1425 so lentyll of blode 1427 onys om. askis 1429 he .  
 om. 1430 amcable 1431 seyne 1434 on om. seruaut om. 1437 but yf 1438  
 seyne 1439 Os . semys . alle amysse 1441 feyll 1443 alle thys feylyth 1448  
 xalle . pat he 1449 wyll . newe om. 1451 Els myzt 3e wene pat I. 1452 Os  
 1454 Wh. pat 1455 eke om. mother 1459 as þan om. 1460 so sore . can 1463  
 sees 1465 takyne w. 1466 nye om. 1469 wotis 1470 wher xulde 1471  
 desyrys 1474 scornys . eucry chone 1475 lat 1478 sat 1481 xulde þus .  
 combird 1482 a kyng . werys 1484 a om. 1486 yehe . on om. 1487 go to  
 ryde . as þeyr 1488 are þei ylke one 1490 bothe reherse 1491 fynyshyd  
 1492 lyvys 1496 tretim 1497 betwene þe . & hyr lordys legemen.

Explicite 2<sup>us</sup> liber huius benignissime vite s. Katerine virginis

Incipit prosa in 3<sup>m</sup> librum vite sanctissime virginis Katerine.

### III.

1 Sythyne . here om. present lyue 3 þe holy gost . frome 4 and off 5 frome  
 vs 6 pat yt ys 7 þe holy gost 9 kynred 11 how she 14 noz om. 15 on-  
 om. 16 now om. myne 19 mervensly she ys enteryd in to hys t. 23 Whedyr  
 24 do om. hane bene 25 never can 31 be hyd 32 Inelyne 33 hyre inst. of  
 ny 34 ageyne . venum 35 dewle h. gyffne to 36 vnto 37 Katerine inst. of  
 may . þou om. me now 38 was . & so gode a 42 hathe done Explicite prosa.  
 Incipit Tercius liber huius vite sanctissime virginis Katerine 43 hermyt . old  
 44 fulle grete 45 seyð . þoo om. selle 46 pat om. 47 full om. 50 Slegt .  
 walkyd . he had 51 off holy meyd 53 spake afore . thane not 56 xalle 57  
 ordynyd 59 vnto egypte 60 more om. 61 harmyt 62 bodely . wark 67  
 wythe f. d. 68 passys 69 men om. 70 passys . goste 75 hys lyvyng wane 76  
 ffior to no t. . euer 78 shypps pat saylyd . þere om. 79 had om. 81 frome þis

82 a partye . & a partye . hys om. 84 armyt 86 armyttis . þei om. 87 dwellyd  
 frome townys 89 were om. dwellyd 90 wyth-owtyne 92 was fallne in grete a.  
 97 eylys now þe 98 and werkis 99 seyth . syttis 101 Os . wont 103 nor  
 105 alle þat 106 Demene me not 108 to be abouȝt in thy s. 112 and meke  
 113 he had 114 þe om. 115 w. by hys selle vp 116 I- om. 117 vnto 118  
 saw 120 accordythe wele 121 croune 122 not best what ys to doo 124 Into  
 125 hathe cauȝt comforth of a new l. 126 zonged he th[is]nkis & hys myzt 129  
 mervylle hath I 130 feyr freche & 131 here . morenyng 132 ne boote ne om.  
 nowhere (!) 133 nor 136 to hym also 3. 137 fulle gode meke 139 þe om.  
 145 myzt 146 þat om. 148 full om. 151 dose 152 mey 153 massyngere .  
 ware 154 for om. 155 þan seyð thys 157 & om. 158 cummand 159 me om.  
 my br. 160 To . a meydyns 162 the meyd 164 preyd . whan þi myzt 165  
 of no thyng 166 nor . wyth<sub>2</sub> om. flebylyte 167 yke . hard 170 haue . boþe  
 om. 172 for om. 173 eke om. 175 haue . newer 179 sethe 182 boldly 184  
 gretys 185 commaundis 187 xalt 188 astumnyd 189 þe om. 191 Seyne  
 192 was made 194 wed 195 ordynde 197 xalt 198 do om. 203 cumnyng  
 hydr godenes 205 A ryȝt ryalle / a ryche / a w. 207 nor . no eyr 208 lyffe .  
 heyr 209 reyns 210 sommys 211 in sothe also . ryth om. 213 schewde . in w.  
 214 spence 215 Ryches 217 for a hyer 218 not ȝyt knowys 220 whyche she  
 now in flowys 222 Os . þe sothe 226 off theyr ph. 227 lyȝt 228 sotlyly 230  
 mythy . xalle 231 off g. p. 233 a . othere om. 235 Os 237 ane ende 238  
 kynde 241 & om. . ravysshyd . swonyng 243 can . þoo om. 244 And om.  
 247 recheles . bustons 248 late om. 249 comborous 250 to me was 251  
 gone . þan om. 252 my 254 allas<sub>2</sub> om. wryttyne 256 ho . knowne . forgottyn  
 258 fulle reches . but late 260 pyteus woyce 261 punnyche . snyb me 262  
 euermore redy 264 do om. 265 suerly . & large 266 spake 267 nor 268  
 hard 269 wylle I doo 271 werenesse 272 full om. 276 hastyly . now om.  
 277 in . xalle 278 Ordyne 285 fade inst. of stumble 286 gyed 287 cummys .  
 þe 291 xalt 292 here 293 And one suche thyngis þei wolde langlyly & clatter  
 294 þer-flore þi wordes kepe only. 295 xalt . þe 296 þat om. on- om. palyce  
 300 þere om. gaatis 301 ȝepe 302 ffrom 306 Nor . eke om. þe om. 307  
 dwels she 308 xalt 309 walls 310 of<sub>2</sub> om. 311 þat<sub>2</sub> om. 312 nedyth om.  
 þou nethyr (noght om.) . nor 313 oppnye 314 þou entyr xalle 315 be to hyr  
 a f. 317 in om. 318 blode 320 casse 321 nor 322 þat þou xalt 327 calle  
 ȝouc loller 328 Be 331 stumnyd 332 olde . rekeles om. 333 which om. ryȝt  
 inst. of full 334 speyalle 336 wylle she þerto 338 haue 339 for<sub>2</sub> om. 341  
 xalt 342 e. ryȝt to 343 w. any s. 344 þou xalt 345 and inst. of if . inquere  
 347 chosse 348 chose . full om. I- om. 349 so os 350 warst 351 xalt 355  
 hydder 356 well om. 358 ryght om. one 359 whych long 360 þer . nor  
 361 led hyme 362 þat . were 363 day om. . full om. 364 gone . ryne . full  
 om. 365 god þat vnfullykly th. 366 Os . lyst 367 chese 368 & aye away .  
 east 370 In þe Epystols . þat om. 371 wyth-ouȝt any 373 chese 374 gone  
 375 hylle 376 wher þat . empyce 377 gardyne . þan om. 381 mervyld 382  
 can 383 þer ryȝt 384 Os 386 leynnyng 389 suche a . saw 390 Os . see  
 391 myzt 392 þoo om. 393 O 394 never such a creature to a fonde l. 395  
 as off 396 nowne . bewteus 399 passys oure mesure 402 þe 404 Cropnye .  
 mervyld 405 ffor hyr-s. . bene 407 began 411 hundryth 413 knelyd . seyð  
 417 suddenly 418 & cum . any oþer 420 be t. 422 whych þat 424 ey 425  
 wyt 426 ho gaf ȝe 427 entyr wyth-in. 430 if om. rechesly 431 nor 432 yt  
 ys 434 haply 435 now om. 438 man þorow whome 439 if om. may be . mene  
 440 xalle ȝouc . frome 445 grettyr . yf þat 446 dwellys 447 longis 449  
 weyne 450 os 451 tylle 452 Nor 453 ffor hyre & ȝouc both . wyth eyne om.  
 sene 455 passys 456 poure 457 þat om. 460 scapys 461 wyll om. 462  
 frome 464 in hyr 465 for criste 466 ermyte om. 467 hert om. prentyd .  
 suere 468 os 470 os . from 473 freche . ȝung 474 or . on- om. meydyns  
 476 wyll om. 477 was cum 478 ȝyt far he was as to h. knolegnyng 480 turnyd  
 481 ore 482 procedyng seyð vnto 483 wordy a 484 Os 485 hyc om. 486  
 we wene wer we 488 lyggis . land 489 wheythere om. 492 lyffys . os I 494

welc. must 495 she 499 þis wyt 501 whedyr yt be 502 ys most 504  
as yt xalle 509 cumis . nor dewis nor eke r. 511 þover 513 þat om. 520  
mothyr . nurryche 522 eft 523 leue . be 527 so preche of so hy 528 sey þus  
529 passys 530 be<sup>o</sup> om. 532 ylle . symepvllc 533 ys bene (inst. of it had be)  
534 not to send 536 os 537 hyr inst. of alle 539 semys 540 wyllc 541  
wyllc 543 þat om. had 547 wyt 548 passys 549 both in hye & lowe 550  
cete 551 clarkis 552 in many 553 Elync . gryce 555 dysyrys . m. g. þan  
worldly 556 in body 563 I mene 564 on- om. 566 ludys . now om. 567  
must . parte a twynne 568 welthys om. settis 569 xalle 570 must 573 wher  
579 þone 580 I toke þan so empretyd 583 erls 584 þis<sup>o</sup> om. 585 wyld . nor  
586 pere 588 war 592 drownyd nor 593 euyr om. 597 þis . plentyus 598  
any 599 vertue 600 Cham þone 603 xalle 607 & om. she ys meyclyne 609  
syns of þis . clenysd 611 in<sub>1</sub> om. in<sub>2</sub> om. 614 stand 615 suche a 616 þe  
sothe . wottis 618 & wh. 619 leue om. 621 tyllc . manys 622 se 624 hath  
625 haue om. 626 hyr<sup>o</sup> om. gode & hyr godds settis 627 Infryrd 628 castis .  
maryed 629 *Per* to 630 enformacyone 631 þat of om. one th. 634 wyth-  
ouȝt 635 at om. & om 638 þe inst. of of 639 wey . not excereysse 641 Nor .  
but þat hye 642 can devysse 643 knowys 644 haue a . he om. . sowys. 648  
on- om. 649 same om. slept 650 þan ouȝt 652 Sythyne 653 poure 656  
chosyne hath . þour om. & ȝyt 657 of þis 660 proue be gode r. 661 Seke . of  
om. leffe 664 & telle 665 warc . ethyr 666 Than om. Seyne þat 667 yt ys  
668 kulde haue merkis 671 as we 672 lat 673 cyls 677 euer wyth mankynd  
679 can now . vs om. 682 Inne 684 boþe om. 686 semys . a w. ; fullc om.  
687 marchande 688 crose dyd sp. 689 þis same 690 weshyd 691 gretiste  
693 þerfore om. 694 how . comple. ȝe 695 erthe inst. of eyre 698 suffryd . hande  
700 grete pascyone 701 how . lyue . eye 702 is om. complete 703 of om.  
god and man 704 haue takyne . seyld 705 is om. 706 loke now þoure speche  
þat þer be now no heresyne 707 offendys 708 questyone 711 standis 712 of  
om. 713 in no 715 & inst. of if 716 þour om. 717 one . gyffe 718 of oure  
719 Nor . sole . xalle þone 720 old 722 know . þat om. 723 on- om. 724  
þat w is bounden sumwhat wyth a bande 726 erudulle as chylderne 728 haue  
inst. of hem 730 commaundis . on- om. 731 hasse 733 byddis . kulde 734  
Sufflyth 736 argue 738 þat om. 740 þinge inst. of most . precius 743  
coppyllyng 746 awne 747 arbyter . oune tong 749 wyth-ouȝt 751 þe tone  
desyrys þe todyr . not 752 Contrary be þeys ij þan in wyllc 753 & þouȝt 754  
in þis 755 Be . wyls 756 ryght om. 760 know . tretis 761 determe . mynde  
763 þe 764 be-gynnyng puttis 765 chosun 766 man 767 man cumis o. e.  
769 xalle 770 In . owyne om. thys mey ȝe ssee 771 þe ernyte om. hard 772  
And soylyd . many one 773 at last 774 seyld 776 and wyth þis lady speke  
777 þat xalle 779 no v. 781 frome 784 awysyde 785 whane þey 788  
senys . and chere 789 Os . hane provyd 793 folowyd 794 in þe halle 795  
nor saw off 796 Thus passyd they bothe þorow þe place 798 went . ryȝt thus  
s. þe h. 799—805 om. 806 e. blynyd thane 807 I w. 808 lat . or b. 809  
knows 811 can at the ground 813 wont . ys go 815 ȝede 819 as om. to e.  
822 full om. suerly þe weys 825 hym 826 a . þat lede 827 morenys . turnys  
828 lokys 829 he fallys 831 xuld 833 & vntr. 837 ȝe 840 haue . nor myne  
841 my 843 contrary 844 Alle is gone drenchyd or brent 845 old 846 my  
847 must 848 Than 849 the inst. of þow . seehe 851 in suche dyuersyte 854  
good om. lyggis . tyne om. 855 be þone 857 þe om. a om. ; but lete 858  
cythyr 859 Be . nor 861 beleue . soo om. 862 now ys now 865 ys gone  
867 lady om. 868 myȝt 871 sythys & of so swete 874 from þe shyypp 875 take  
kept 879 and trosty 880 on- om. aswage 882 telle þone 883 se þone 884  
as þe sone 887 þe rowffe yt not dyme 888 ȝendyr 889 ȝendyr . shynys 890  
sawe 891 wals ne ȝatis . gret s. 892 ware . borne 894 haue done 895 lvyvayd  
897 Ther 899 in a noþer 900 sees 901 olde . growne . grace 902 olde . was  
large 904 now om. 905 þoure towre 906 Trust . off no l. 907 preys 910 ȝe me  
om. 912 for inst. of sore 916 to 917 resevyd off 918 of . om. 921 saw 922  
hyr . nor hyre 927 evyne one 929 not . was . þe 930 but þe bodye 933 creme



938 do . þæt 942 & myche. met hyr 943 A C. . can we 944 vddyr. sene 945  
 on om. 946 Welcum 947 haue 951 þei om. . ledes 952 wedis 954 Emprovors  
 955 abyttis fulle b. 956 creatours 957 þe freche and gay 958 saw . hyr 959  
 lyffe 960 þoo om. forthe þus . f. grete 961 gate 962 þoo om. 963 Welcum  
 now 964 Os . but fulle 965 fell om. 966 Os 968 man<sub>2</sub> om. 969 paseyons  
 971 Þer tokyns . þeyr ryzt 972 What 973 þe erthe cam 975 l. one h. leders  
 how þei l. 976 þeyr m. 978 in to a tr. . nor 980 it om. 982 in to þe holy p.  
 983 saw 984 Wh. þæt callyd . vnto . nobulle 985 ryally 988 wost . he was  
 989 hym 991 þis 992 cuyr om. on- om. þe om. 995 thyng 1001 nyer  
 1002 Thane . lyft 1009 now om. for me must 3. l. 1011 meydyns 1013 tels .  
 we 1014 enoughe assynyd 1015 had lothe 1017 walkyng 1018 þei om.  
 walkyng þer a. 1022 ordynyd a p. 1025 a 1027 desyrys . xuld 1029 haue  
 bene 1032 seyð . 3ow know 1034 to lok of . do 1035 no noþer 1036 xalle .  
 blys l. 1038 Weshyd from . be om. dyrk 1039 whych 1043 to me fulle ;  
 ofte om. 1045 hafe om. 1048 lat 1049 mark 1053 & om. 1055 parfume  
 1056 My aungels 1057 w. any d. 1058 zet om. 1066 Be . discomforth 1069  
 a om. 1070 on- om. or to 1071 a baptyzyng 1073 run 1075 do 3e 1080  
 Vnto . vnto 1082 wyed 1083 from . assyed 1086 now om. 1087 cr. men  
 1089 the now here 1090 baptyzyd . lordis 1091 crystynned 1092 commaundyd  
 1093 of om. 1094 als n. . redy om. 1095 Þis n. . xalt . cleppe 1096 for<sub>2</sub> om.  
 1097 cythyr old 1098 an om. 1101 þæt we 1102 are om. nor 1104 Þer  
 1106 solemp . þe tyme 1107 here om. 1111 vn- om. 1113 one 1116 B. in þe  
 1119 vndefylde 1123 ame 1125 for ch. 1127 yt ys 1129 renewde 1130  
 there 1133 ey 1134 þeis werkis . sey 1138 essely . now om. 1139 hathe  
 sene 1140 thankis 1141 vnto 1142 dane 1143 þis om. þæt inst. of wheche .  
 saw 1145 tent to 1147 o. here 1148 els cum 1149 þis lady 1150 enteryd  
 1153 xalle 1154 Or 1157 medyne 1159 tale om. 1160 myzt 1161 þe here  
 1162 humbynes 1163 That om. 1165 hyr om. 1169 ys . meche om. to þe  
 bothe beh. 1170 ful om. 1175 vnto 1176 of om. 1182 be thy mothy<sub>r</sub> 1184  
 ryse . rosse 1185 crownyd . or she was 1186 Þore . was 1187 came 1188  
 þoo om. 1190 to om. . os 1192 of om. 1196 nouzt els 1197 þe wels ; is om.  
 1202 hem om. on- om. . deyte 1203 þæt m. 1204 Than 1205 xalle 1208  
 my l. & 1209 3ow om. 1210 þe same 1211 communs assent 1212 Chosse .  
 lyke 3oue 1217 þan ageyne to 1218 athyng 1219 O maker off aungels of man  
 best & 1221 coppylde 1223 forgyue 1224 seruande 1229 on- om. 1232  
 þoo om. . 3oue 1234 castylle 1235 roue 1236 Broche & ryng 1238 delect-  
 taeyuns 1240 þis wote 1241 & of none els 1244 os 1247 in 1248 ordynyd  
 1254 þe meydyns 1260 schortly to sey 1262 recue . a om. 1263 About alle  
 creaturs here I 3oue make 1264 My wyff for ever here constant in virginite  
 1267 offendis 1268 Than 1269 Sythen . spouseylle must 1271 gyffis 1273  
 alle blody one þe tre 1275 þe r. 1276 & put 1277 off þæt sannde 1279 vnto  
 1280 berys 1282 hath sene 1283 os my 1284 sey . grene 1287 cllys om.  
 1289 auctor seys 1290 To bere of . þæt om. 1293 þe bate . & strete 1295  
 þem inst. of here body 1296 Ther . abowyn 1297 most om. þæt any man  
 1298 s. þer . fulle evyne 1299 þe s. 1300 sunge . it om. 1302 þe awnswer  
 1303 semys 1309 endis 1310 Now lyst 1312 þe s. 1314 hyr inst. of þis  
 swete 1315 seyð 1316 lat . nor 1318 þæt yt ys 1321 I make 1322 Os .  
 xalt 1325 & om. 1328 now om. 1330 wylt . some om. 1333 Inforne 1336  
 gyffe 1337 lyffe 1338 xalle 1340 sene 1341 dyed 1342 þus . my dere  
 1345 þe 1346 Alle om. I- om. 1347 þe . þe . & lyzt 1348 now om. 1350  
 Was . tresse 1351 for om. 1352 swete meyd 1353 swone . os . þer 1355  
 cummys 1356 gane to hyr sey 1357 came . to om. 1358 þe checkis 1360  
 Tylle she woke 1363 do we 1365 sorowe 1366 Thynk now 3. l. 1367 Hane  
 1368 os 1369 3owe be . in<sub>2</sub> om. 1370 mys wrouzt 1371 nor erthly 1372  
 no thyng 3ow 1373 Os 1376 Þe s. b. ageyne sum tyme xalle t. 1377 suernes  
 as xalle 1378 be 1379 of 3our 1380 3oue . my aune 1383 3oue 1384 soke  
 1387 3oue 1388 ware 1391 as om. off hyme wrytyn I fynde 1392 is  
 om. 1395 & . om. 1397 nor 1398 evyne of 1399 plurelyte 1400 in any

wyce 1402 Nor . þe holy gost 1403 One . in alle thyng 1406 madame om.  
 1411 & haue 1412 begetis 1413 begottne . from them two 1416 þus om.  
 1420 hath . haue 1421 wyt 1424 þan I rehers cane 1425 But at þis tyme  
 suffythe 1426 þe 1427 þei may om. 1430 cam . from 1431 ys þan 1432  
 semys 1433 þore 1434 longis . theyr . dew om. 1435 emprice 1436 cam þer  
 1439 eke there 1441 vnto þat 1444 gretis . godly 1445 behest . cum 1447  
 a<sub>2</sub> om. 1448 reme 1449 zoue, nor þat 3e flec. 1450 Abyde . ryght om. 1451  
 tyrauncy 1453 none ; woman om. 1454 must . suffyr . velanye 1455 jour,  
 om. 1460 so fleyr 1461 was 1465 bothe inst. of she 1468 dyuersnes . or  
 rode 1472 done 1473 warnyng 1474 þe<sub>2</sub> om. 1475 I- om. and layd 1476  
 But om. Be . dyscomforthe 1481 3e om. 1482 Kepe 1484 gyff 1485 I- om.  
 1486 ane ende 1489 mynde 1490 now om. 1492 I- om. 1493 Os 1494 my  
 1495 þat om. rede how 1496 on dey or weke 1497 now þer 1500 ordynd  
 1501 we hath 1503 off crossed out ; vnyte wyth-ouȝt discorde 1505 a v.—

Explicit 3<sup>us</sup> liber istius vite beatissime virginis Katerine  
 Incipit prosa in 4<sup>um</sup> librum.

### III.

1 dwellars 2 lykkynd . dwelle in a h. 3 els . draynes, off 3e 4 farys .  
 theyr 6 þere bee om. dyners eke 7 laborars are lykkynd 8 gode l. 10 lerne  
 and soke bothe teche and drawe 12 conseyt, wele sauourd sauoures 13 bene  
 v. 14 om.: MS. Othyr þer be þat prophytabull no thyng 17 but yf . tabylle  
 18 vnto þat wark . fulle grete. 19 : Theyr bodies to stuffe and make þem more  
 abyll, To vycyus lvyng to be Inclynabyll 20 slepe 21 dranyz 22 þe  
 draynes 23 flor þat þei here þouȝ they haue d. 24 3yt in 25 nor 27 no om.  
 28 Suffythe þem here to haue theyr reste 29 semys 31 And holy kyrk The  
 hye I-wys 32 Wyth many stormys of tymz affrayd 33 vertuose . haue om.  
 34 hydr . to hony & waxe 35 meny . lyst 36 lere 37 owlde 38 þis ys to  
 hyme . sucre 39 stabulle 42 flukyng 45 Of euery wyȝt was feyr to sene 46  
 ouȝt of hony grete holynes 47 can 51 first and om. 52 one syde 53 one a  
 cl. n. 55 Ware . he . on om. hym 57 eke she gaddyrd 58 truly to kepe euer  
 61 eke om. 62 of clothe . olde 63 laboryng and hydr 64 sukkyd . bettry 65  
 flours 67 in to h. chyrche 68 os 69 labur 70 any galye 74 lyuyng  
 stabully 75 heynly 76 hydr p.—Explicit pro huius 4<sup>ti</sup> libri. Incipit 4<sup>us</sup> liber  
 vite sanete Katerine 78 os 79 Emprouws 81 galarius 82 light om. thyrd  
 84 mans 85 galarye 86 kept styll þe 87 sacryfye . þer 88 any 89 presse  
 90 and to. 93 left þeir . resynyd 94 excusse 96 awaylde . nor inst. of now  
 99 Resynyd . vnto 100 Emprouws 101 empyre . or cane 102 batels . shours  
 104 seys . Ieste 105 assynyd 106 And þe . tho om. 107 to kepe l. 109  
 cuntresse 110 ware 111 brytan . land 112 lyke as I zoue telle 113 Thys  
 115 a om. batelle 117 or . dyed . lyue 118 os . caryne 119 lat . in salysbery  
 120 Thane . took om. romans 121 on om. the om. 123 & wyth g. 124 oute  
 om. vnto m. 125 þat inst. of and 126 þat 127 cum 128 or . doune east 129  
 eyelle . dyd he lere 130 As c. tels whych I saw l. 132 lythe . abyed 133 wepe  
 or els 134 dwelt 136 þis om. 137 bothe om. 138 be ryght 139 for sothe to  
 seyne 140 reyne whe[n]. was 141 or . to 142 sotiours 143 dome 144 regneth  
 om. 145 Now os alone 146 kepe 147 slepys . ellis om. 148 reynyd . al om.  
 149 speke . what so euer 150 no wyffe meyd nor m. 151 must nedis cum 153  
 What man þat let . it om. 154 Appone . xulde set 156 pepale 157 oppu .  
 þore 160 poure . had 161 covyd . wyld 162 Thane . romayns . cumynce  
 assent 163 ded om. wryȝt 164 brytane 165 preyd . os . knyȝt 166 cum .  
 ageyns . fyȝt 169 greyt strenghe 170 lande 171 encresse . lenghe 172 by  
 whyche 173 Ytaly . up om. pepale 177 trustyd . one 178 lefte 179 hows-  
 holde . myche 180 weel om. 181 in 182 and streȝt frome 183 ouȝt off  
 bretane 184 þis same 185 deseuyd 186 lvyng 187 os a man 188 strenghtes  
 189 os 190 cald 191 þe felde wuz 192 yt put . wars 193 þe ende 195 suche  
 mastres 197 exaltyde 198 and om. fathers 199 waxde 200 more om. In-

clynyd 201 lettys to 203 he seyde truly . wolde . þe 204 came 205 hem om.  
 207 Wryjt . thynk 208 dwelle 210 greetis . legis . empyre 211 þoue wyt .  
 fathyr . before 213 batelle . neyther om . nor lore 214 Suche . gods þat be  
 wyce 215 os 217 we . frome suche v . laws 218 speccyally from . hong one a t .  
 220 man inst . of god 221 I . om . suche 222 myche 223 now dwellyng . lande  
 224 nothyr . nor 226 os 228 sermons 229 xalle 230 Suche . deseruff 231  
 lordshyps nor ryches 232 men any 234 offycers 235 any 236 We xalle  
 ordene . lett 237 xalle . suche mastres 240 vnto 241 knyghys and lordys  
 242 cum . b . þe more & þe l . 243 vnto 245 þat inst . of whiche 246 massyngers  
 are . fare 248 abyede 249 Into . as om . vnderstande 250 mythy hande 251  
 cete 252 meny . levyd ever in prey 253 cam om . 255 are . os 257 speccal  
 om . 258 þer inst . of the cytee 259 storyd ther wythe m . 260 cum 261 þer  
 dyd 262 w . were 263 stode in sentence 264 wolde 269 gods 270 now om .  
 271 ful om . 274 Ther . cum 276 what we gyff 277 Vnto suche wyches . far  
 278 thynk 279 are 281 þat he 282 þat þei 283 Who 285 brytayne 287  
 pepile . stoujt pouere 288 tretor 289 Os . entyryd 290 gunmys and engyne  
 291 nor . þer 294 seys 295 conquerre 296 on om . þat c . 297 prayd . were  
 298 xulde . bowys 299 gyftis 300 and landis . castels 301 nede þei none  
 302 thyrd 304 wyll 305 þe seruyce . þe newe 306 godds wer orlynd by þe  
 comunys 307 seys xalle . þe more mercyffulle to vs 308 þat om . sermonys  
 309 þer . crosse 310 Suche . þan 311 cryed þan . crosse 312 moughe . hys  
 saw 313 a lytyle wyth-drawe 315 wyt . hyc 316 haue . conseruatyue 318  
 forsakyn . falne 319 we inst . of me 321 apparycyone 323 bad . teche þe  
 pepylye 324 sermones . ryghes 325 fathers . knew . vsyd overl . any 326  
 knythys 327 Who gyffis . fythys 328 holdis . vpp hymne 330 make . mastrye  
 331 quakis 332 makis 333 lyjtnyng . makis 334 Alle þis shewys he to vs .  
 forsakis 335 ful om . 336 or 3e þe shent . 337 Leue 338 gods 339 schep-  
 pardis . plowmen 340 wyt full wele . standis . mans 341 Vnto 342 Os seyth  
 þis c . of criste os s . þe b . 343 alle þe syus from þe worlde he toke 344 be . shal  
 om . 345 xalle gyfe 346 longis 347 euerlastyng 348 Repelle from 349 I  
 gyue þou 350 sowlys . bodys . shane 351 off þe . grete om . sermones 354  
 wolde 356 of om . 358 was 359 ys . replenyshed 360 & wyth 363 pepile .  
 grete and also so st . 364 noujt els 365 cum 366 borne . þei dyd 367 there  
 om . xulde 368 Serche . mynstralcy 372 trumpettis 373 Myche . dyed  
 375 bochers laboryde os . bene 376 weshyng . carkas doune 377 moredyr . the  
 om . 379 the om . 380 byschops . areyd . theyr seruyce 381 mattyns . seyde  
 om . nor 382 gane 385 þe s . 387 eye 388 had . suspecyone 389 are 391  
 sume . owres 392 graffene (I . om .) . sotelle 393 The next 394 welys . hyr  
 meydyns 396 Wyth hys sykkyll in hys h . 397 no nothyr 398 vengeance  
 399—405 om . 406 awe . I not auance 407 Myche 408 was . offering 409  
 nethyr oxen hors nor 410 sle and fle . þas was theyr crying 411 þe prestis &  
 byschops . thyng 412 mynstrals 413 makis 414 The olde pepile seyde . sawe .  
 deys 415 os 416 haue . weys 417 godds 419 zunge . lolely 420 rewyll  
 among 421 at þe solennyte about 422 harde 423 þis syers so stouuht 424 are .  
 wyth fulle mykyll pryed 425 lokyd 426 dose . gods 428 holy inst . of noble  
 429 longis 430 hir om . 431 styll inst . of tho 432 frome 433 worldly welthys  
 are . frome 434 þat t . 435 ryjt os . 436 meyd . hard þis grete c . 437 now  
 om . 438 menys 439 knythys 441 serys quat 442 þan . annolde seruaund  
 443 he om . 444 He hath the c . euery man to haunte 445 ryches and seruyce  
 447 and inst . of if . wyt . 448 off lyue . pore . state 450 þei þat ageyne 451  
 clossyt 452 poure 453 Lat þem 454 Sullythe . and . lyue 455 euamorous .  
 any lece 457 we om . 458 cytyners off þe eyte . xalle 459 os . begynnys 460  
 taujt anon vppon theyr gods 461 þeyr fathyr 462 hard 463 cum . ower  
 464 þo drede 465 receyffe . concelloure 466 vppone 468 þe . that om . ware  
 470 þis meyd . hard 471 remembyr how 473 She spake þus to me & seyde my  
 meyd 474 be 475 toz om . 476 & suche 477 vnto 478 oure 479 behestyd  
 me yt ys . I . om . 482 reysys 484 Þer . remembyrd þe eueraund þat 485 hap-  
 tyne . weshyd 486 sadd 487 nor . lesse 488 war throwne . cawduruz 489

chose 490 **þan** waxyd she feyr & ruddy of colour lyke þe rosse 498 enprentyd  
 494 worldly . fykkylle 495 nethyr . nor 496 fro . hart . yt xalle 497 **þan**  
 softly 498 flul om. astuanyd . for om. 500 she þoo 502 eke om. gyffe  
 503 þis inst. of tho 504 & towne 505 trough 506 Vnto my 507 soner *cum*  
 508 nought om. but sorow & quede 509 euere om. any 510 boldly 511  
 trewth 512 suffrys . now om. 513 chyrchys . seruandis 514 **One** . I wele  
 515 xalle 516 Ho louys . world . þat om. hyme wele to spylle 517 ordynd  
 518 xalle . frome . No new chapter. 519 walkis 520 place 521 folowyd . þe  
 place 524 purpose 525 Scatter . þat 526 pepile 527 replete . entyr 528 on  
 om. pore tars 529 lat . errande 530 Vnto 531 stand 534 vanytes nor to no  
 536 at om. 537 Þer . strong 538 hyre offeryng . I- om. 539 þeyr 540  
 emprours 541 saw þis bryzt meyd and sh. 542 ful om. 543 speke 544  
 seyð . pepile 545 Ar *cum* frome farre 546 a done 548 ryzt to 549 strengh  
 551 manes 552 entyrde 553 ryzt as 555 kynde . curtasye 557 3yt . myche  
 560 done ageyne . grete 562 **Þus** take . frome 563 gyff 564 not help . nor .  
 eke om. 566 woldest om. 567 knowe om. syttis 570 vnto . & do 571  
 vnto . os 572 ageust . causyst . to ryse 573 suche ducls os be 574 sotlyly  
 577 & fro . wykyd 578 gane 579 Vnto 580 xalt 581 yet om. trost þis  
 582 I- om. 583 ydols magre off theyr 584 Ageyne . resonos 585 & eke 586  
 pyk & burastone off 587 for þem . no nothyr 588 ware . do 589 gods are  
 ducls 590 dyscevers . covytyse 591 als wele 592 nor 593 ete nor drynk .  
 of om. 594 wythowtne . fote þei mey 595 thei om. no thyng 596 þi .  
 illucyone 597 þat þe and alle thyng made (made on the margin) 598 vnkynde  
 600 þe amend . mayst 602 xalle . an om. 609 coloure waxyd whyzt 610 &  
 he begane 611 Astuanyd . a party 612 aremys to hyme gan he 613 seyð  
 ageyne 614 vengeance 615 hathe take 617 þeir 619 hath ordynd to þem  
 621 syster 626 ware 628 ware 629 Ichyt 630 That 3e . godds 631  
 Thane . meyd 632 Who . gods 634 xalt 635 ware 637 so s. 638 land 639  
 fater 640 ytale 641 **þan** reynyd 642 calde hyme w. þe doble 643 lokyd .  
 & to 645 **þan** are þei 646 ware 647 longis 648 3e þe pepile dysceyff and  
 clade 649 nor 652 tho om. mynde 653 strenghe 654 ensample . kynde  
 655 trow . stabyle 656 seyð 658 lat 659 oppynly 660 whyche þat 662 þe  
 om. Impossybyls 663 sadly om. hepe 665 meyd 667 imp . ys vnto 668  
 Remene . hart 669 soo om. 670 That om. **þou3 þat** 672 be 675 os .  
 herryse 676 seyð 677 frome . man chyld & wyffe 678 And fro enery  
 meyd . ychone 679 **Þeis** fonde 680 Vnto . semyd 681 awnswerd 683 now  
 inst. of on-to 3ow 684 lettis 685 are 686 nethyr . nor . the om. 687 take .  
 eye 689 fruct 690 ys 3oure rage 692 freute 694 sekis rooses . rooses 697  
 yt . among 698 far . any pere 701 stokkis 703 Leue yt 705 gyffis 706  
 no suche . gyffe 707 ensampylle . 3one inst. of than . preffe 708 rottyne .  
 thyng 709 byzt 711 oure 714 haue 715 also long 716 rudenes & crokyd  
 o. 717 xalle . sykkerly 720 habile 721 the om. what so euere any 722  
 Thene myzt men a sene 723 men . I- om. cherde 724 ere om. & theyr browys  
 gan þe b. 725 þe ydols 726 & deth . afferyde 728 vnto 730 vnto 731 hyre  
 732 haue . begyne 734 nor into suche 735 gane þei crye 736 saw 737  
 begane . þe colour in 738 ylle 739 Vnto 741 My oune . thynkis . thei om.  
 gane 744 haue . mervously 745 now om. 748 bewte 749 vnto 750  
 Meyd . seyð . begyne 751 vnto 752 3e om. sune 754 3e spend . 3one slake  
 758 I- om. 759 damppe 761 stoppe 762 þer-for . ware . els 763 rebels 764  
 any 768 walkis . nor 769 master 770 are bune 771 traytours are 772  
 spendythe . great 773 ensampyle 774 be . ful om. pusanee 778 cace 779  
 menye 780 deffye 783 þe traytours . lyue 785 semys by . creatore 787  
 frome . honore 788 xulde hathe . þat he 789 When . byselye oure helthe 790  
 gnye . dewls 791 solely off 793 Traytours . os . xalle 794 wylle þe 3one not  
 795 Vnto þat 796 lat . frome 798 xalle 799 stuanyd 800 alle þeyr wyttis .  
 for om. are 801 vexyd . harte 802 toz om. nor 803 lowzt . the om. 804  
 Wherefore . thynkis . right om. harte 805 puznyshe . peyns 806 stragyyle  
 hyr sle . brynye 807 3yt . þerby nothyng 808 thynk . rymic 811 resonos

814 councele 815 *per can* 816 *frome* 817 *whedyr* 819 *ryzt þus* 820  
*clarkis* 824 *sonyst dystroye* 826 *l- om.* 827 *massyngers . wylde* 828 *lande*  
 829 *þe clarkis þat . lyuolode* 830 *cum* 831 *Vnto* 832 *þe letters are wrytten*  
 & now selde *ychone* 833 *massyngers . are* 834 *as for* 835 *Selyd þeys letters*  
 836 *gravyne (l- om.)* 838 *off inst. of if* 839 *þee om.* *ffor þe leste 3yt* 841  
*haue* 842 *off councele . cete* 843 *ffathyr vnto . on om.* *kynrod* 845 *Sendis .*  
*clargye* 847 *lordshyppe . are* 848 *wytt* 849 *Vnto . prudence* 850 *nethyr*  
*taxe nor deme* 851 *oure feythe & sekte* 852 *makis . to om.* 853 *seyence*  
 854 *musse* 855 *moost om.* *now haue we cauzt* 857 *myche* 858 *frome* 860  
*pervertys . lande . wysse* 861 *hyd 3owe þat . wysse* 862 *now om.* 866  
*xalle . cristynyd . and eke* 867 *avaunsyd xalle* 868 *rychece* 869 *are .*  
*lettys wryttyne . l- om.* 871 *Vnto . palyee* 873 *vnto* 874 *many om.*  
*behestys to hyr he hyght* 877 *of<sub>2</sub> om.* 878 *any* 879 *on om.* 882 *in<sub>2</sub> om.*  
 883 *of om.* *gyffe* 884 *Vnto . as to . goddece* 885 *that om.* *lyffe* 886 *xalle .*  
*lece* 887 *wordlynes* 890 *þeis promyseces* 892 *euer inst. of the* 894 *hem om.*  
 895 *wylle he* 896 *w. grete salnes* 897 *þeis wordis . lorde aboue* 898 *forsake*  
*hym wylle I neuer more* 899 *man . nor* 900 *my . frome* 901 *ful om.* *there*  
*om. lyke* 902 *dye* 903 *Vnto* 904 *seyne . þi . myzt* 905 *Os . promysyd*  
 906 *lat* 907 *rasse* 908 *nor* 909 *os . stand* 910 *are* 912 *wolde . xulde .*  
*inlyne* 913 *my* 914 *vnknowne* 915 *dysceens . tastament* 916 *os . myn om.*  
 918 *Scyne . are* 919 *suche mastres in vddyrt mens landis* 920 *temmans* 921  
*oliryng . handis* 922 *truwpyttis . tabors . before . stande* 923 *or my lysence*  
 924 *to god & to me grete o.* 926 *vnyztffulle* 927 *þair byddyng* 928 *ageyns*  
 929 *went* 932 *Thane* 935 *xulde take* 937 *soo om.* *þat she* 938 *þat om.*  
*horryblye.* 940 *Os . spouce . chambur* 941 *nor nothyng* 943 *are* 946 *ys*  
*þus in p. so cloydde* 947 *ryddyne . lande* 948 *as I supposyd* 949 *bande*  
 950 *cetees . vnderstand* 951 *cessyone . begune* 952 *Yeche . off othyr . gune*  
 953 *But whan þat he hys lurney had spedd* 954 *cum . hom om.* 955 *mes-*  
*sangers* 956 *þeis clarkis* 957 *Are cum wythe bookis charged many a weyne*  
 958 *þus are met* 959 *are* 960 *are entyrd . concelle* 961 *wyt . for them hathe*  
 962 *any fleylle* 964 *masters chosse* 966 *if om.* 967 *My awter* 968 *in<sub>2</sub> om.*  
 969 & *alle* 970 *none theme* 971 *studdyd . grounde* 972 *now om.* *cumnyng*  
 973 *seythe* 974 *Masters* 976 *renythe . suche . vse* 977 *fallyd . þe* 979 *ys*  
*Into* 980 *dewls* 981 *supposse . tronthe* 982 *be* 983 *suche a 3unge .*  
*thynkis yt reuthe* 987 *To cast . the om. how inst. of now* 988 *cum* 989  
*answers are* 990 *sykker* 991 *Vnto* 992 *Vnto . hyer father* 993 *hyer*  
*mother* 994 *whiche om. 3e doo* 998 *studyous* 999 *þeis masters* 1000 *nede .*  
*cumnyng* 1001 *on om.* 1003 *resone* 1004 *goddes* 1007 *cum* 1008 *hard .*  
*wher a w.* 1009 *And after . semonyng . on om.* 1010 *commandis* 1011 *her om.*  
 1012 *specyalle* 1013 *longis vnto* 1015 *destresse . No new chapter* 1016 *odyr .*  
*cum* 1017 *assey . a prevye councele* 1018 *vaylythe* 1019 *hys resone wylle*  
*not veylle* 1020 *meyd . proposyeyon* 1021 *tho om.* 1022 *Stale . experyence*  
 1023 *armony . þer* 1024 *hyer* 1026 *macedony* 1027 *Ageyne . not hyr* 1028  
*provest* 1030 *resones* 1031 *mayd* 1032 *syster . hedir om.* 1033 *Before*  
 1034 *whedyr* 1035 *holde* 1036 *renye* 1038 *þersone* 1039 *streue* 1040  
*meclyns . roosse* 1041 *longis . gloosse* 1043 *Vnto* 1044 *I haue . lykis*  
 1045 *alle worldly . yt ys* 1048 *know 3e . for a fullle certeyne* 1050 *be* 1051  
*Thane* 1052 *laborde* 1054 *now must 3ow* 1055 *Os longys . traytorus . þus*  
*wylle raffe* 1057 *or els* 1058 *ermony* 1059 *on om.* 1060 *leue* 1061 *Thynk .*  
 1062 *neuer none* 1063 *3ow* 1064 *vnto* 1065 *per* 1067 *knowne* 1068  
*wyche* 1069 *in wychrafte he had þe name* 1070 *wysdome* 1072 *and hyr*  
*þus r.* 1075 *wher ys* 1076 *wordy . to om.* 1077 *wold* 1078 *the om.*  
*wysdome & þe trouth wyth-owtyn mysse* 1079 *erle . macedony . caspanas*  
 1080 *Vnto þat . thus om.* 1082 *borne* 1085 *stand . casse* 1086 *hangyd*  
 1088 *Vnto . wysse* 1090 *frome . nedys must* 1094 *Vnto* 1095 *scruidis*  
 1096 *peyne om.* 1101 *myche . on om. 3ow echone* 1102 *off whyche* 1103 *are*  
*gone* 1104 *vnto payns* 1105 *frome* 1106 *bounde sore* 1108 *Nor* 1110 *þe .*  
*was* 1112 *warc* 1115 *þe* 1117 *barkyng . on om.* 1118 *any wreches* 1119

and off so hye d. 1120 must 1121 proveste 1122 þeis clarkis . lat 1123  
 keue 1124 must . dye 1125 no nothyr 1126 clatternyng 1128 are entret  
 into . concelle 1129 seys . owre 1130 wyll se 1131 masters do 1132  
 from 1133-4 But yf 3e spede oure feyth wyll sone slyede . ffor þe pepþle wyll  
 turne one euery syde 1136 many man 1138 any 1139 Ageyus . nor 1140  
 rosse . þer 1141 lat . cum 1142 ware 1143 gone to þresone to hyr 1144  
 Ientyll 1146 nedys . for om 1147 thydyng 1149 Thane . al om. 1150  
 hyr and hyer cause euer to g. a. 1152 seruffe . whyche þat syttis 1154  
 Dyed 1155 vnto . fyndis vnkynnd 1157 canne 1159 þi d. 1160 wondis  
 blowe . wanne 1161 gyffe 1162 gan . worldly 1164 stande 1166 nor  
 1171 mey haue str[e]nghe . for om. 1172 reasons 1173 chyrcles . can 1174  
 frome . maners 1176 Os 1177 my h. 1178 truste 1179 cumis . but only  
 1180 lat 1181 makis 1182 þerfore . þowe 1183 3yt . 3et<sub>2</sub> om. 1185 ester .  
 plece hyr answere 1186 solemp 1189 causse 1190 clausse 1194 Os .  
 os 1195 woutis 1197 thyrke cornars 1200 cumnyng 1204 And as dys  
 messenger he sendis me now 1205 greetis 1206 þis matter 1207 com-  
 maundys 1208 not om. 1209 clerely 1210 3et om. xalle 1211 now om.  
 1214 lede . vnto petrus 1215 figures . seys 1516 xalle 1217 xalle dye 1218  
 whyche þat 1219 determyd 1220 þeis clarkis xalle now 1222 xalle now  
 from þem 1223 þe om. 1225 sauçoure 1227 xalle suffyr . myche 1228  
 lesure 1229 þis myche . gyffe . ful om. 1230 for om. þe kyng 1231 dye  
 evyne In 1232 xalle 1233 gyue . messyngere 1234 spryte . dobulnesse  
 1236 of heuene om. haue 1238 pays . weyght 1239 þe 1240 beleue 1241  
 ordlynd 1243 spous 1246 be 1247 comforyd 1248 suche inst. of swete  
 1250 þat om. 1252 herte om. 1253 nor frome 1257 cum . owre 1259  
 paryte . elles om. 1261 stande 1262 þey 1263 þe l. sat 1264 and be 1265  
 meyd . eke also 1266 was best 1267 one hye 1268 exortyd he 1269 Mas-  
 ters . þis concyanatryx 1270 off whome 1271 deuyour 1273 gluede . from  
 1274 euanyng 1275 vnto 1276 strange chalaunce sayng 1277 Vnto . in om.  
 1278 os 1279 guerdome grete off price 1280 that om. 1281 thynkis . hath  
 3e 1282 3owe . guerdome 1284 xalle leyff 1285 as om. take & know 1287  
 Inste Iuge and man trewe 1289 on- om. 1290 has 1292 thynk . enowe 1293  
 lat . damselle . towghe 1294 Entermyte 1295 ful om. 1296 Than . meydne  
 to 1297 Seyne 1298 Appone 1299 myzt 1300 mynd frome 1301 frome  
 1302 lat . any . to me now 1303 Than 1304 a 1305 cum . sey d . emprours  
 1306 meyd 1308 cum . know we 1309 lyggis 1310 Seyne . araye 1311 xalle  
 purvey 1312 hens away 1313 sykkerly . conuey 1314 þe 1315 concelle  
 1316 aunswer xalle we 1321 pronounse . þat om. þe leste 1322 vworthy  
 1323 sethe þe tyme . þat om. 1324 loste . auctorytees 1325 fynde . frute  
 1326 be gone . gyffne . els 1328 fathy 1330 3e dyd 1331 Off alle þem haue I  
 take now 1332 þeyr . In termys & in proce 1333 erly 1334 gloce 1335  
 chosyne 1336 eke om. 1338 takyne . Escalape 1339 alle om. heyr . serchyng  
 1340 myche trwer . susteyne 1341 euery creature 1342 eke om. 1343 done  
 1345 Beholde . masters . þeys mens 1346 studdyd & laburde 1347 sottelle  
 1348 lyffis 1350 laste 1351 lereyng 1352 treetis . þat xalle 1354 alle cre-  
 ature 1355 whyzte 1356 fyer . or . ys 1359 borne 1360 vnto 1361 prophyt  
 1362 hyng 1363 here inst. of tho 1365 knowne . was om. sundre 1367 abeyd  
 1368 eselye . is om. 1369 saw 1375 reynyd erthlye 1376 suffreyne 1377  
 tumbile . wawe 1378 Troste not in þem . ffor nowght ys theyr myght 1379  
 whych byndis 1381 þei xalle . ful om. 1382 my om. 1383 xalle . haue . me  
 om. 1388 of 3e b. 1390 not . ne om. 1391 seyence makis 3e 1392 more om.  
 1393 ys þat þat makis 1395 matters 1397 bettyr 1398 be 1400 and om.  
 makis 1402 ane . tho om. 1403 os þowe 1404 Master . calde þei 1405  
 angure 1406 he styrt vpp in þe p. 1407 Thane 1408 cytynars 1410 xalle .  
 3e for to calle 1412 vvsdome 1413 suffyr 1414 in suche vengabile 1416  
 lande 1417 here om. 1418 vnderstande 1419 Many of þem be brent wyth a  
 brande 1422 sey . that om. be vnkynde 1423 benyffyttis 1424 jungyst .  
 womans kynde 1425 so for to 1426 al om. colour 1427 dewles 1428 &

thys ys warste 1431 folke . lyste 1432 resonen . I- om. 1433 frome 1434  
*cum* 1435 prechars . ageyns 1436 novylte 1437 be-gynnys 1438 calde . pro-  
 phyte . galalee 1439 calis 1440 Off sande off se off water and off erthe 1441  
 Inowthe 1442 convicte 1444 greate dobbylnesse 1445 sey 1448 whyche  
 know alle *mez ys* 1451 frome 1452 was 1453 hard lwys 1454 stale . prevely  
 1455 master . I- om. 1456 and so 1457 Vnto 1458 She om. 1460 take . my  
 1461 *wythkowjt* any 1462 One . or 1464 hys fader ys 1465 seyne 1466 pro-  
 ceede further-more 1467 before 1468 eterne in hevyne reynynge 1470 noted  
 om. 1474 newly 1477 dyde . ware 1480 And *zoure* . are 1481 ffor *pei* .  
 grunt . *pei* ayll 1482 Os flure In *pis* matter os *zyt* I haue sowght 1483 frome  
 1484 now anne 1485 *than* . reasons 1486 trubbylde 1488 sowne 1489 *cum*  
 1490 wolde 1491 maners xalle overl. 1492 clarke . *per* 1493 Vnto . meyd  
 1495 vnderstand 1496 make . diffence 1498 nor . no 1499 be 1501 lyke  
 1502 betokyns 1504 are . tokyns 1505 gyue . harte 1506 Not ffor theme but  
 ffor theyr s. 1509 now *sum-what* 1512 To do theyr d. *men pat go pem* bye  
 1513 meyd 1515 stand one . rowe 1516 *perseue* 1517 *pan* in *ane oper* 1518  
*lyvyd* 1521 Veniabulle dispetens . a om. 1522 condycyons vustabile 1523 a  
 whyle *wyth* *hyr* abyede 1524 chylderne kylde 1525 gyltee . father 1526 He  
 banyslyd hym and made *hym* hys harborow to seke 1527 syster 1528 ffather .  
 he om. *pe* lande 1529 *peis* are 1530 feythe *pis* eternally stande 1531 byggyd .  
 bryttyle lande 1532 Plato *wyth* (!) r. of *peis* meydys vyolent 1534 Wal-  
 cane . cukkolde 1535 such a *persone* . any 1537 encressys . vncleue 1538  
*pis* . vyolence . *from pem* shoue 1539 god om. 1540 so-erye 1543 suttelc  
 reasons . *pan* 1545 sothe seyde 1548 habomynabile 1550 *cums* 1551 haue  
 1552 wer *pus* ; openly om. I- om. 1553 be 1554 flle *ze* . drede *ze* 1555 Thane  
 1556 one worde to *hyr* 1557 so hys harte dyd b. ; tho om. 1558 Vnto . latt  
 1559 os 1560 xalle . thei om. 1561 wyslome . make sone r. 1562 clark 1563  
 so inst. of tho 1569 *commune* . Intent 1572 moeyons 1576 despreue 1579  
 Os . now amongis 1580 os 1581 Hym take we . & eke Inno 1582 takyne .  
 ayer . gyffys 1584 Resembled . that om. sempyterne 1586 *over* suche thyngis .  
 be eterne 1587 My awne 1593 founde 1594 Off theyr godds but for a con-  
 clusyone 1595 *pis man* haue 1596 preue 1598 Gladdyd 1599 waxyd 1600  
 frome 1601 bere *hyr* now . koye 1603 lat . here 1604 tho om. vnto *pe*  
 master 1605 *hyed* 1606 *fygure* . coloure 1607 ley 1608 Are 1609 se 1611  
*pey* be 1612 are . graffne 1613 easye 1614 are not nor 1615 arre 1618  
*planyttis* 1619 xulde stande 1621 bene 1623 alle planetis be 1624 farther  
 1625 *pan* be they 1626 *he* om. 1627 *wyth* inst. of alle 1628 are . nor 1629  
 Vnto 1630 off *zoure* errour 1631 haffe 1632 *mervelyd* 1634 are 1635 hard  
 1636 can declare . be 1637 master . tho om. 1638 the om. 1639 a woman .  
 attayne corr. to attame 1640 Lat . felows 1641 gyue 1642 world . standis  
 1645 laste 1647 Whyche *pat* . thus om. 1650 devyne . farre . euer-more study-  
 inge 1651 I haue bene . semys 1652 demys 1653 alle thys 1654 lerne off h.  
*pe* platt and *pe* pleyne 1656 ys he 1657 I- om. 1658 ys he 1659 now to lerne  
 1662 *peis* same *men* . she dyd 1663 Seyne . now *pe* forme . a scolere 1664 are .  
 redyare . mysteres 1665 as for 1667 one 1669 ful om. 1670 in god 1671  
 auctor seys 1672 one 1673 *commun* 1674 none suche 1675 ordnyd .  
 councele 1677 one . fulle myche *meruelle* 1678 *consydered* . mans myche  
 1679 *peyr* substance 1681 theys iii 1684 falne 1685 can *hyme* 1686 Among .  
 off grete delice 1688 in erthe abulle 1690 *pis* lorde dyed 1691 in to . into  
 1693 dyed 1695 master 1696 same om. 1697 Ioye (ful om.) 1699 puregyd  
 1700 And made . correceyone 1701 *mervelythe* . Infymacione 1702 *wyth*  
 1703 One 1704 concene as *zyt* very clere 1705 coppyllyng 1706 Be 1707  
 be . in one 1708 none suche 1709 and inst. of if . he must 1715 be 1716 tho  
 om. *pis* 1717 concene 1719 coppylid 1722 enowght 1723 raysyd lasare  
 frome 1724 leyne 1726 Ille . os . dyd . *pe* grene 1727 *pat* om. 1728 tyed  
 1729 on om. dydd glyde 1730 and sowle 1731 *peis* myracles 1732 myche  
 1733 gyffynge . *zow* 1735 Indewe 1736 ful om. 1737 hys 1738 shews . &  
*man* 1739 right om. 1744 that om. . slepyd 1746 welc inst. of pleynly 1747

can 1750 werkyng. whyls 1753 blysse 1756 wolde . what om. I xulde vnto  
 1758 a. amytyd 1759 zoure 1760 Berys 1763 hange 1764 cum zoure a.  
 1767 meyd 1769 overtanne 1770 preyd 1771 his om. 1773 fulle 1774  
 makis 1775 Ageyns. qualle 1777 xuld 1779 mans 1781 ho þæt . thyng  
 1783 Vn om. 1784 desyrys 1786 fulle gode 1787 wylle serulle h. as þis t.  
 1789 Vnto 1790 matter 1791 them 1792 þæt þei xulde n. m. t. one þeyr  
 old l. 1794 abouuzte 1795 are loynyd to-gydder þeys ii. 1799 frome 1800  
 els . owre 1801 qwykk 1802 any 1803 for om. serche 1804 Belene 3e þis  
 thyng 1805 are . now om. 1806 In euery . walke 1807 for to 1808 it om.  
 I- om. 1809 warkyng 1812 cum 1813 haue . from . þe 1814 seyne 1815  
 knolege 1816 than off 3owe now 1817 3owe inst. of ful 1818 3owe . þæt l .  
 haue 1819 3oue 1820 þæt om. 1821 gyffne 1822 Yeche . there a. 1823 mer-  
 velous to ch. 1824 ware 1829 where om. prechyd þem so t. 1830 forsoke  
 þem 1831 freyler 1832 worthye 1835 The thodyr seyð 1836 saw he 1837  
 stuznyd . þæt be theyr 1839 and om. experyence 1841 begane 1842 he om.  
 ys 1844 bones aremys 1846 many 1847 astuznyd 1848 Cowardis chorls  
 1850 now inst. of thus 1851 moost om. 1852 Or . shul be om. 1854 passys  
 1855 thynk . stande 1856 Ther 1859 nor 1860 So off þis matter as he now  
 a-fesyde was 1861 sothly 1863 sundre 1864 Contradyccions in theme fulle  
 sone . ifunc 1865 ys fulle wele knowne 1866 Os . seyð . fulle rownde 1868  
 that om. haue 1869 seyð 1871 Provenyng 1872 male om. rekkynnyng .  
 wylle 1873 Among . any 1874 bookis 1875 borne flulle trewly 1877 not 3yt  
 fully 1878 Seyne . was off hys mother 1882 þæt inst. of thyng . thowsandis  
 1883 þe d. or he . than om. 1884 an om. 1886 þeis syempulle pepyle 1890  
 haue 1891 on om. 1892 grounde 1893 takyne one parte 1894 the tother  
 1895 falls . rekkynnyng 1897 þe b. 1899 ago 1900 Vnto . lenger 1902 But  
 as for þis matter þis mystry . vndoo 1904 Os . seniys 1905 begynnyng . first  
 om. xalle 1906 god om. haue . oure lorde Ihesu 1907 lyvande 1909 off  
 1910 kynde 1911 kynd . his om. 1913 decesse 1914 cuppyllyng 1915 plesse  
 1916 & þe fals dewls þus . fesse 1917 manhode 1918 manhode 1919 haue he  
 bene 1921 þæt 1923 dyd hyngre 1925 haue bene 1927 stuznyd . mynde  
 1929 of om. and alle þe kynde 1931 þer . wyth a grete crye 1932 Os 1934  
 off cryst hys feyth & 1937 þer away, tho om. 1939 Whan . eke gane felle.  
 1940 his om. ryalle 1941 mastyrd 1942 not he . massyngre 1944 losse .  
 myght 1945 wer mythy 1948 take 1950 þane om. 1951 thrune 1953 me  
 thougt 1955 haue . I note 1956 Os 1958 fyght 1959 oure cam . suche kynde  
 1960 wele 1961 be . by maekynde 1962 among 1964 parfyt and 1965  
 that om. so stable 1966 or 1968 dyede 1970 a tre 1971 fyght 1972 In þe  
 tre . was wo 1974 þæt tre . a om. 1975 a om. 1978 appoysaylle 1980 Os .  
 lady om. . one-syede 1981 Os . abyed 1984 But & . cum 1985 one 1986 pro-  
 phycey 1987 not 3yt verly 1988 spekis 1990 whome . singler 1991 noo  
 1992 moo 1993 prophytis . berys wytnes 1996 to om. in h. 1997 haue  
 2000 calde 2001 prophyttis vn-to 2002 induede . ful om. 2004 How forbare  
 3ow 2005 raynyng 2008 syne . be 2009 reasons . laly om. vaylle . raakis  
 2012 haue . be 2013 calde 2018 you om. 2019 meryte 2020 yif 3e 2021  
 nor nevyr none were 2024 reynnyng 2027 Thow callys 2029 folows . the om.  
 2030 þer where 3e . cau 2031 ther be godds thre fowlous 2032 syttis 2033  
 here inst. of sir . among 2035 as om. 2036 chose 2037 a . styлле 2038  
 reynys . any 2039 but yif 2040 cumis 2041 My . breke 2042 Perfore thys  
 conceyt in 3owre hartis now founge 2043 raynys 2044 pyte haue calde . to om.  
 2045 right om. 2047 euere om. 2048 Reynyng 2049 are . chylderne 2051  
 eft 3yt legge 2052 balaam 2054 rechersys . dede om. 2055 þe . prophyttis .  
 hy s. 2056 dyvynars 2058 alle þæt ther ere 2062 masterys 2063 avaylys  
 2064 gyne 2065 haue . a 2067 passys 2068 spekis 2069 seys 2070 harte  
 enterly 2072 what so any 2073 xalle . my 2074 one . knolege 2075 I haue  
 2076 lat 2078 breke 2080 anone inst. of concoursly . one 2081 þe consent  
 2082 Onc . þei alle wyth one voyce 2083 commandis 2084 þei wylle 2085  
 vthyr 2087 increasyd 2088 haue we ladd 2089 are knowne 2090 ware .



leync 2092 holdyn, a vanyte 2095 but one þei wot ys saturne 2096 Ych to  
 thodyr. preyvly. thus om. 2099 falsed 2100 þat was inst. of there thanne  
 2101 lokyd 2102 thus om. renythys 2104 any maydync 2105 wyser in hyer  
 sawe 2106 grevys 2109 myche. vntrew 2110 One 2111 was cum off newe  
 2112 reasons þer othyr 2113 my 2114 lye þer fulle s. 2115 þat inst. of lete  
 2118 dey inst. of lady 2119 master. þe 2121 now wyll we 2122 chosyn. e.  
 commyn 2123 þat om. 2124 dystroy 2126 we see 2130 vp om. solely  
 2134 my pece 2135 þis matter þus. dowþlece 2138 it om. greate 2140  
 fro. fykkulle 2141 haue om. that om. 2142 victor þan 2144 off cryste  
 2145 beffore haue 2146 thynk yt ys 2147 farther 2152 thynkis 2153  
 A-fore 2154 frome. þis 2156 wolde 2157 ȝyt 2160 Seyne 2161 gyffne.  
 manes. as a 2164 calle 2166 balle 2168 proue þem wele 2169 meyd 2170  
 any 2171 mankynde 2173 myche. ageyns 2176 or off velanye 2177 syttis  
 2178 harborage 2179 cummyng. lyke. sunc 2180 lyke. lykkinid. meydyns  
 2181 shynys thorow 2183 peresyd 2184 farde þe 2185 hyer 2186 concevyd  
 2188 neuer 2189 be 2190 xalle 2191 ȝe xalle not fynde me vntrewe 2192  
 moyd 2193 sore om. 2194 fulle sore & hard 2195 vttur 2196 strong 2197  
 my. thyngis 2198 yet om. vnnethys 2200 spekis. more om. pregnantly  
 2202 þat syre 2203 ȝoue. myre 2204 vnto 2205 bothe inst. of hough 2206  
 coupylde 2208 not he 2209 done. as I gesse 2213 one 2215 Seyne. be.  
 one 2216 yche 2217 are 2218 eke om. one. accordis 2219 a om. thynkis.  
 wrythys 2220 seyde 2221 Oon om. 2222 Wherto 2223 thus. 2224 Seyne.  
 worde 2225 off inst. of on-to 2226 folowys 2227 perreyeyd 2228 vnto 2229  
 longis 2232 trow 2234 myche 2235 not farther 2236 wysdome. nouȝt  
 2237 os 2238 But ȝyt 2239 Vnto 2240 here 2241 sey. vnto. faders 2242  
 longys. whyche. gouerne om. 2243 longys 2244 wysdome. a om. 2246  
 Wher. be h. longis 2248 folowys. seyne 2249 in om. 2251 mankynde 2252  
 Intent 2256 Os. tho om. 2258 one god 2259 ensample. we om. 2260  
 puttis 2261 wryghys þeroff in. of om. 2262 sey 2266 phylstens 2267  
 parylle 2268 þat thyng 2273 ordynd 2274 burdyne 2275 and secunde  
 2278 Entyrferryd whyche 2279 Os. thynkis. longis 2280 occupythe 2281 in  
 hyre. hyme 2284 shortly inst. of as of this book 2285 Off þis dysputacione.  
 thynkis. it om. 2286 Seyne 2287 vnto. mynde 2288 Know 2289 haue.  
 þeis masters alle b. 2290 inspeccally 2291 yt vaylys 2292 standis now m.  
 2294 gode oste 2295 maken om. meyd 2296 are 2297 after om. 2298  
 whedyr 2299 & off hys progressyone 2300 At alle tymes þis l. 2301 any  
 2303 ifrome hyr reasons he cowde 2304 Vnto. ffelows. thus om. 2305 vnto  
 2309 off one 2310 leue. hys sone ys 2311 holy goste. knytter 2312 dyed  
 2313 clensyd be theme 2314 Vnto 2315 hartely. from 2317 sey now ȝe  
 2318 aunswerd. new 2320 kepe 2321 perlous 2323 leyue 2324 and plato.  
 sudiorne 2327 purchesse. hem om. vntrewe 2328 haue inst. of schulde 2330  
 fulle grete 2331 glorious p. 2332 forgyff 2333 lorde not 2334 Os. pyteus.  
 þou om. 2337 mayntyne & s. yt.  
 2339—2345 follow after V, 329. Vv. 1—63 of the V. book are wanting.  
 Book V. begins v. 421.  
 2339 martyryzed. I om. 2344 loke. þat f. 2345 gladdis alle men. be.

## [V.]

64 complement 65 alle om. credylyte 66 emprours hart. to flaynte 67 speke  
 68 coviete 69 dyspytyous 71 truste 73 experyence 74 reyvyd. al om.  
 worldly 76 ioye om. longis vnto 77 pepulle 78 sey. haue 81 þe om. (twice)  
 82 bene 83 heder om. 84 mykkelle 85 Lat. you om. 86 losse 87 Thynk  
 88 Be not. losse 89 lyfte. hartis 92 stand. hartlesse 93 be astunnd 95  
 myȝt haue bene 96 fare. though om. boundyne. w. a lyne 97 gyue 98 vaylythe  
 99 maister om. 100 þat I spake off 101 he om. begane 102 Vnto. came 103  
 Thys 106 ȝe 107 & in þe a. 109 Indewyd. þat s. þat þei 111 To inst. of Tyl  
 þat 113 or 114 reason. be. om. 115 neuer 116 wer 117 velanye 118

wage 119 than . worldys 120 it om. 121 wot not 122 makis . in a traunce  
 123 semys now, it om. 124 spekis . whyche hang & was rent 125 to þe p.  
 126 no purchase 127 as om. solemnnye 128 makis 129 curyalte 130  
 mystely harde h. speke 131 mye bowels begane to ; sore om. 134 proferde  
 135 refusse 136 renouus 137 þowe . knowe 138 þeyr row bowe 139 3e .  
 þreue 141 hys blyssyd p. 142 mankynd . hymne inst. of now. 143 Vnto 145  
 burne & put to destresse 146 xalle 3e 147 to om. hartis 148 baptyme 149  
 off vs he 150 felows . Intent 151 syttis 153 wyll forsake 155 and om.  
 156 wolde haue falne 157 chorlys 158 more in 160 tho om. 161 seyde  
 162 now om. hastely 164 saturne 165 þat þeis renegattis þat 166 grece  
 167 nor 169 rosyne 171 Vnto . any 172 dye 173 very om. 174 & se my-  
 selue þat yt be d. 175 done . xalle 176 þow . in om. handes 177 vnto 178  
 mythy . bandes 179 boodes . nor . her om. 180 gyue . hem om. vyllence  
 181 be 182 escape . no 184 vnto askis 185 fast now one thys 186 haue  
 187 no mo w . more om. 189 cum and aske þoure mede 190 drawne . relayne  
 191 Vnto . wrastelde not þer-ageyne 192 eye 193 dare now 194 þeys mene  
 196 nor 198 felows . now comfort 199 any 201 ledys vs 202 are gaddryd  
 203 In hevnye a loyffulle 204 haue . frome 206 myrroure 209 dye 211 a .  
 warke 212 causys . and f. eke . it om. induthe 213 marke 214 cryestes  
 stepps sewys 217 wasshyne 219 this om. 220 now om. 221 off-tyme 223  
 & ener-more xalle rewte 225 ys now 226 seyne . must vs dye 228 for om. lye  
 230 are purched 233 for goddis loue . syttis 234 crosse 235 to hymne for vs  
 þat ys 237 lvyng . are 240 weshyd 241 baptyme . þe better 243 prayr  
 244 þat thyng 245 wyll 247 ffor alle þis mey he do ffor he 248 lovys . euery  
 250 3e 251 may om. 252 be 253 on om. 254 3e 256 dye . luff 257 þe h.  
 258 xalle 260 seruffys 263 þat þei suffyr ffor god to theyr g. m. 264 lesse þis d.  
 troste ener one þoure e. 265 þat om. 267 fyer purge many 269 are 270  
 water eke . fonte 271 are puregyd . fulle elene inst. of I wene 272 þat dye os  
 273 are . beleue 275 dye 276 callys 277 There (fore om.) . knyghys 278  
 clayme now 279 Be 281 ware 282 cam 283 bound . euene om. 284 as om.  
 myzt 285 One a. payvde 286 he 287 hym-selue inst. of tho 288 one 289  
 fyer . are . heppe 290 gane . among 291 reune feche and leppe 292 not om.  
 293 hende . feyte . threw . fyer 294 and fulle . eke om. 298 now to hymne þat  
 he wolde 299 lengare 300 go 301 graunte 303 nor e . of berd 304 bowys  
 feyr and bent 305 fayre om. 306 makis . þe om. 307 þis fyer 308 before  
 styll þaz myzt 309 mene seyde om. cryed alle-wey thus 310 knew neuer erre  
 312 now om. no-maner 313 forto 314 thei om. 315 Vnto . gane 316 dyed  
 317 sememyng 319 body . eke om. 320 colours 321 þis saw þe pepulle 324  
 Myche folke 326 solempne 329 endis . martyrdome . evyn inst. of right.

Then follow IV, 2339—2345, and the Colophon: Explicit 4<sup>us</sup> liber huius  
 beatissime vite virginis devotissime Katerine martiris. Incipit prosa in 5<sup>um</sup> lib-  
 rum in folio sequenti (but this prologue, v. 1—63, is wanting; v. 64—322 form  
 the end of the 4th book; 330—420 are wanting).

421 lewhe . hard 423 vnto 424 What þat . þus me 425 make 429 If om. 431  
 chaunchors xalle . no reste 432 myche . weste 436 Sullythe 438 a 439 fulle  
 3erne 440 dye 441 langage 444 þou inst. of that 445 syng . right om. Intent  
 446 represent 447 be . ful om. 449 know or I 453 My . wolde wyll 455 Or .  
 thyng om. 456 xuld 457 þei xalle 459 fulle wele wordy . ful om. 460 beleue  
 462 no man . yt cane 463 to om. 464 Vnto . & eke to 466 þis . werkis .  
 mastrye 467 so om. 469 & grete e. 471 Stand lyke . þat flye about 472 Os  
 474 vncleue . xalle 475 ymage 476 querdome 478 shakyd 480 worlde 481  
 a om. 482 feynynd 483 but veyne and feynyng flatorye 484 it om. als f. 485  
 xalle 486 honord wyth 487 chylder . cum 488 xalle . þer make 490 frome  
 491 dewls . stande om. 492 repte 493 nor 494 leyff . leue 496 sir om. 497  
 neuere om. ffor to 498 be bettyr at esse 499 statute 500 thynk 502 colours  
 503 Vnto . wyll gyue 506 hele . comforth 507 Nor nouzt aveylle . nor 508  
 longis 510 þat yt . leue 511 as a thyng prophytible . receue 512 vnto a  
 513 a om. 514 beffore 515 groundyd . mysse 518 Leue 520 wyll not 521

xalle . nor arte 526 Thane 528 benyngly 529 Os . semys 530 xalle 531 Ioy  
 or dethe . what 3e 532 3ow 533 xalle . grete d. 534 þe hye m. 536 Os 537  
 Redressys 538 Spredis . ther-too 539 chosse yt must 540 avaylys . not om.  
 542 at my p. at om. pryse 543 xalle . shortly 546 encrease 547 xalle  
 548 peple . be 549 hartis are 551 passe 553 xalle be 556 he sle flyght curse  
 or b. 557 skyls 558 myscheyfis 559 suffyrd . myche 560 Whyls . lyvyd 561  
 ful om. 562 haue om. 564 But and . cum 566 gyfflyng ensampile . of very p.  
 567 any 568 purposyd. 569 and his l. 571 and r. 574 xalle we haue 575  
 offerd . vnto 576 vndefylde 577 And om. 580-81 transp. 583 vsys 584  
 pover . settis . grete om. 585 sore 586 in ifyer 587 xallt þou 589 threttis 592  
 frome 593 menyne 594 þi . xalle 597 xalle . leyue 599 fynde 600 frome .  
 xalle 602 the om. 603 nere 605 geyt 3ardis 606 eke om. ful om. 607 right  
 om. 608 meyd . modir om. 609 3e xalle 611 feese 612 speke . bedleeme 613  
 Nor . galale 614 rather hyr 615 þat may be besye p. 617 takyne 619 yrne .  
 mey 620 bet 622 bett . spous 623 trustis . cumis from 626 rune 627 purchyd  
 628 vnto 630 I that I 631 I thank 632 þat om. senttis 634 as om. 635  
 euer & more 638 among þe 639 þe betyrs very 640 meyd 641 holde crysye  
 whyche 3e be in f. 642 now calle 643 xalle . or els 644 Or 645 þus ageyne  
 646 strengare 647 suffyr 648 wheþer 649 vnshamfulle 650 wyll 651 thi  
 om. 652 Bethynk 653 mast sle & bryng ouzt adaw 655 kepe 656 dye &  
 passe þis worlde fulle wele I know 657 folow 658 nor done 659 and In alle  
 662 bound 665 hy 666 whane þat we are in 667 wythowtyne any 668 xalle  
 669 in happ . hastely 670 shew inst. of fulfillle 671 suffyr 672 a om. 674  
 þat þei take . hyr lede 675 And put hyr 676 hyre 677 seyð þat she fowle  
 fylthe in dede 679 for to 680 gyue . ne om. 682 myzt 684 þat om. 685  
 wythouzt 686 any maner 687 any 688 commaundment 690 ryddyne . mence  
 691 land 697 leue . lyke 698 from 700 of om. 701 lord om. commandis  
 702 desesse . sobur 703 xalle 704 now om. 705 rynnys 707 comforthet  
 709 kepte 711 dyd crepte 712 cornars 713 are þei mervelyd 715 men .  
 cuntre 716 Sprong . þer inst. of soore 717 from 718 frome 719 laylers 720  
 sertyne . dungyone 721 goth about 722 thydyngis . cum vnto . eyre 724  
 meyd . any 728 And she þerfor in presone lyggyng to be shent 730 land ryd-  
 yng 732 nor 733 hungure 734 Peis wer þe last wordyes that he seythe 735  
 gyue . deythe 736 pyte 740 studdye 742 And to . þus prevyly ; ful om. 743  
 folke 744 by . peye 746 sey 747 of om. wey 748 gloterous nor drunkyne  
 749 plesys 750 I had bene 752 sene . drewe 753 wolde sey 754 mykkyll  
 dolle 756 my hart . there om. begynnys to 761 cum evyne as god had hyme  
 762 nobulle 763 councele 764 and leedyr 765 jung folk 766 porphyr in  
 story 768 she seyð porphyre . be 769 be . myche . aveylle 770 concelle 771  
 trubhyld now newly . the om. 772 cane inst. of may . nor 773 or . begynnys  
 776 tho om. 777 nedis now see þis meyd 778 Ordyne 779 gyf . ynowgh 780  
 3ow myne owne mane 781 þis lady vnto . for to g. 782 nor so rowgh 783 wyth  
 hyr or els I must 784 my hart 785 Porphyr 786 purvey 787 dorsse xalle .  
 vndoo 789 and I 790 xalle . 791 flor wyth . I haue bene 792 thynkis .  
 suffyrs 793 orybyle bet . frome 794 no . do 795 oftyme . ouer 796 Seyn .  
 hard 799 that om. lesure 801 gyftis . gyue 803 chamber . you om. 804  
 Cum 805 whane 3e here me c. 806 are c. . porphyre 808 right om. seys oure  
 storrye lyer 809 cane 810 sawe 811 ffelle . doum om. wythouzt 812 to om.  
 a bene 813 þe 814 saw þer so wonderly bryght 815 wyttis are gone 816  
 falne 818 felt . seys 819 þe s. 820 Thane . vnto 822 borne 823 he om. 824  
 Be 825 haue calde . to hys 826 flor many cawses now to thys place 827 tyed  
 829 saw . syed 833 myche 834 whyls . þat om. 837 and inst. of than . ane  
 nowre 838 comforth 839 thei om. 840 lyghte inst. of delight 841 eke om.  
 842 gyfflyng . vnto 844 numbur 849 cane om. 850 frome 852 syster . þeis  
 853 xalle 854 Os . be 855 xalle . a om. 856 Vnto . man þan 857 Whyls . in  
 hyr hand þer syttyng 860 xalle . wryttyne 861 serys 862 wryzt 863 þe b.  
 864 wyzte 865 þat from . þe xalle no more deseuyr 867 þe t. . that om. receyue  
 þis 868 olde men vnto hyr ageyne 869 syttis 870 O quene 871 askis 875

haue om. 876 powro . councele 877 þæt þowor þeir f. b. 878 xalle 880 hathe  
 þeis folke . take 881 hart . ful om. 884 haue hard 886 dare vysyt hyr . now  
 om. þe fere 887 thus om. 888 wyth-ouzt 891 soo om. 892 veytalle 893  
 soo om. 894 stors . dyuerse 895 frome 896 Whedyr bodely . for om. 897  
 seynt Awstynse seys 898 fathers 900 seys 901 it is om. þæt suche 902 nur-  
 ryshyd . erthe 904 þe erthe 905 þe s. 906 wher he trettis off mervylle 907  
 donne 908 mayde om. gan hyr 910 but om. 914 wytþouzte . rowthe 915  
 þis p. . levyd she þis ys trewthe 917 in presone 918 sawe a. 919 cum 920  
 aungels 921 meydens 922 falne 924 Dowgher loke vp he seyð . se zowe 929  
 Thynk . leue . hart 931 a hart . xalle 932 oure . or . parte from 933 number .  
 peple . xalle 934 a 935 ffrom . mawmentry 936 sudiorne 939 to she se  
 940 þan returnyd . preyare . tho om. 941 tresure 942 lyst 943 hartly 944  
 be hee 946 hys causys was . to an ende. 947 þe emproure I mene 948 cum .  
 he om. begane 949 be hys knyghys 950 be . wyll 951 xalle . it om. 952  
 mey be provyd . gaue 954 pepulle 955 are . hath 956 Vnto 957 thynk 960  
 coneyanatrix 961 wyche . harte 962 ys she so sore infyxt 963 from . to om.  
 966 for hyr 967 bene pnyyd 968 lokyd . quyk . ruddy 969 angure . hart .  
 nere sleythe 972 Traytours . xalle . euerychone 974 commendment 978 xalle  
 979 That we forbyddyd 980 bynde In yerne 981 meyd 983 þou art an em-  
 prour a grete so mene. 984 ordynd. 985 þi law 986 xuldiz 987 doste . dost  
 ageynst 989 me om. nor 990 in a nother 992 massyngers . be hand 994  
 caust 997 aungels þis mete my lorde 999 he nolde suffyre 1001 nor . deseuyr  
 1002 dublynes 1003 þæt stode 1005 hart 1006 hyd in . nevyne 1009 a  
 kyngis doughter to 1010 seruffe 1011 borne 1012 are . al om. 1013 wychys  
 1014 kepe ze 1015 petyr mary 1016 are traytours prevyd 1019 gyffe 1021  
 maysters 1024 soo om. 1025 worde . vngodely 1026 cawsys 1027 no wyglt-  
 standyng so haue I 1028 but I must 1029 peple . stand 1031 deme 1032  
 denye 1033 eke om. 1036 els wyth yerne xalle 1037 meydyne 1040 any  
 1042 to þe 1043 ffor hys loue I ame rely to dye one k. 1045 þow þæt . cum .  
 owre 1047 nor 1048 gruche . and my 1049 honowrment 1050 a om.  
 changoure 1051 ledys 1052 are 1053 commys . bryngis . þe preue 1054  
 seys . hybylle 1056 Vnto . þe 1057 seene 1060 Bryne 1063 kyne calvys and  
 shepe 1064 offyr 1066 Os 1068 vengahylle 1069 Thane xalle I go to that  
 hyc feleyeite 1070 To hymne þæt was offyrd In caluery one a hylle 1071 after  
 þis inst. of yet efte 1072 heer-after om. dede. 1073 Not 1074 Intent 1075  
 þi dedys . are 1077 landis 1078 And take 1079 sley 1080 gare inst. of  
 make . smyt 1081 be . thanne om. solennlye 1082 Vnto 1083 that om.  
 wryzt 1084 a dawe 1086 grete om. 1089 standis 1093 semys . meydyne  
 1095 That om. hyr here . prophytessc 1096 cummannde 1098 ys seyð 1099  
 stoors 1101 fyzt 1102 vnto 1103 pusaunce 1104 ytale . yngland . spayne  
 om. 1105 þæt inst. of tho 1107 dyscomfyt hym 1109 Os 1110 þæt . borne  
 1112 yt knewe 1113 þæt cuer 1114 þeis 1116 he þan . now om. 1117 falne  
 1119 suffur þus a woman here to 1121 wyche 1123 lyvers . xalle 1126 cryed  
 he 1127 me thynkis as men . ware 1129 barkyt . þe 1130 done one þe crosse  
 1131 gane he . to om. 1133 Irne . plumhys 1135 bet now þan beffore 1136  
 disputously 1137 þer 1139 say 1141 pepulle 1142 bune . in to 1143 caz  
 1144 not ze 1145 Vnto 1147 It om. foore 1148 aske . are 1154 farther  
 1155 Seyne . holdyne 1156 vnto 1157 þæt vylensly 1158 we trowe 1159 ze  
 mey 1160 longis . vnto þe h. 1161 Seyne . why om. 1162 wyld . counceild  
 1164 zow lese þe god in zow plentyously sett 1165 crytage . lese 1167  
 solelyly . that om. hart 1168 ze lede nor rewle 1169 to zoure aweylye 1171  
 Remembyr 1173 feyne zet . syne 1175 mercye askyng 1177 shynes 1179  
 be . done 1180 wh. þæt now 1181 Hyer in þeyr deys r. none canne 1186 þe  
 bewte 1187 þæt om. 1190 not ze 1193 in erthe wyth w. 1194 ffor þæt longis  
 to vs off equyte and ryght 1195 pr. of god allmyzt 1196 Ihesu owr lord . xulde .  
 soo om. 1197 wyll so some 1198 as om. 1200 hyc deyte 1201 bees (?) 1203  
 þæt þei 1204 nor synnews . nor 1207 vnclene 1208 lechyry 1209 or w.  
 1212 it om. 1213 fleche . shal om. 1215 & om. hoot (be- om.) 1216 soo om.

for to 1219 ffolow . go 1221 bodely 1222 baptyme . þe 1223 traweylle  
 1225 vnto 1226 scape . after 1227 save 1228 I b. þis thynng and troste 1229  
 sers as for 1230 dyrknes 1231 dye 1232 rysyng . ageyne om. 1233 hard  
 1237 Wyttdrew . frome 1238 any 1241 mayr . ledare . pepulle 1242 vnto  
 1243 mykkylle 1244 Crowlle in hys a . any 1245 dyspysceous vengabulle wytth-  
 owtyne 1246 Cursate . oute om. 1247 saw 1248 in feie 1249 O lorde om-  
 prour . wysdome 1252 standis stunnid os þouȝ . wart 1253 lystyne to 1254  
 save 1256 Intent 1257 horryble 1259 lat . ons 1260 thanne om. 1261  
 vnto 1262 master 1264 marke 1265 countroller . clarke 1269 whelys . xalle  
 1272 xalle 1273 xalle 1275 xalle . neylys 1276 ffestynyd 1277 berys 1278  
 hart . nor 1279 cummys neuer 1280 in peecys 1281 knowe 1282 xalle  
 1283 vnto . whele 1284 xalle 1285 yche 1286 xalle cum . cowrsys 1287  
 xalle 1288 & þus make 1289 made and þat now 1290 betwene þem ryght .  
 þat om. 1291 be 1292 þat hathe 1294 cursate . xalle 1295 zendyr 1297 whels  
 1298 þis cursate 1299 are calde 1300 Carpentars . smythys als f. 1301 leue  
 now we 1302 muste 1303 it om. cum . thyrd 1304 whels are . xulde 1305  
 Kataryne om. 1308 reende om. seythe 1309 grutythe 1310 ascape 1312  
 meyr . ymagenyng 1313 stodyd . hart . mynde 1314 ffor to 1315 from 1316  
 the om. 1318 hyr l. . drossyd 1320 chaunge 1321 Hyer yne 1323 bothe om.  
 1324 ys alle-mythy 1326 hydyst nevr 1327 þe folk . crye to 1328 preyar .  
 mast 1329 Intent 1331 leyvyne 1333 vppone now 1334 power now 1335  
 easye 1337 ys 1338 I lord . not om. for no 1339 stand 1340 thynkis . my  
 hart 1341 wordys & tungis 1344 Þis prey I shortly in a clawse 1346 And om.  
 1347 from 1348 clepe 1349 hart 1353 frome 1354 per 1355 orrybylle 1356  
 owre the om. 1357 or viii . ffyre 1358 flew 1359 sprong 1360 Sum man had  
 1361 men om. are 1362 fyer flew . wonderfully 1363 myche . takyne . feesse  
 1364 hart 1365 from . veniance . styrte 1367 Makeyng . preyare 1368 hys  
 cleete 1370 colde 1371 What . ffett 1372 fyer by 1375 lady is om. 1376 fyer  
 flewe 1377 oftyme 1378 Nor . nor 1380 alle om. 1383 and leyd . alle om.  
 row 1384 caytyffis . shrow be shrowe (rith om.) 1385 heroddis numbyr 1386  
 holy om. reste 1387 sobere preyare 1388 & þe fyer . bothe om. 1389 To þe p.  
 for om. 1390 cummyng 1391 Myche folke 1393 vp ageyne frome þat grete  
 frey 1394 al om. 1395 are . þe hethyne 1396 Who are . who can . for-  
 heddis 1397 folk . hathe . fyer 1398 Sum men . nor 1399 þe too . þe tother  
 1402 feyls and falsys . now om. 1403 abytt 1406 repugnys vnto (is om.) 1409  
 cyclops smythys 1410 makis 1411 it om. thy 1414 thynk 1416 one 1417  
 What vnto . borne 1419 before 1420 what so 1421 cum 1423 wrechyd  
 man . hathe . I - om. 1424 turmentis . wrongly om. 1425 wraystyls 1426  
 makis . & wytth 1427 pyne 1429 Whedyr 1430 fyztis . & þat 1433 bestyalyte  
 vnto mans kynd 1435 wyrkis . wonderfully 1439 Smote 1440 þe om. com-  
 muns 1441 lye zendyr 1442 hym þen 1444 I counseyl om. 1445 rede þe  
 1447 whyls 1448 forgyue 1449 xalt 1450 hard 1452 ȝe spake 1453 on om.  
 thys 1454 ȝe 1455 orrybulle . þat om. 1456 nor 1458 graeyous om. þe  
 kyng 1459 frome þis foundnesse 1461 Os 1463 haue brookyne a whele 1464  
 nygramansye 1465 orlyne 1466 ȝoure 1467 art þou one þat oure goddis now  
 dysdene 1468 I count not at shyttyn bene 1469 forsaakis 1470 takis 1472  
 byddys hys sarvantis 1473 sotelle . yrene and wyre 1474 xalle . right om.  
 1475 þei xalle do yt 1476 L. sorow . and woo om. wolde he þat hys w. xulde  
 1477 lat . now om. 1478 done loke ȝe hyr take 1479 þer wher traytours 1480  
 haue om. deseruffe and teye 1481 smyzt 1482 lye . hungre 1484 Os . þeis  
 men 1485 pullyd off 1486 frome 1487 vaynys . doth ryssc 1488 alle raggyd  
 alle blodye 1489 ȝyt vnto 1490 preyng . ryght om. 1491 pyller . moost om.  
 1492 vnto 1495 be 1496 cum 1500 orrybulle 1501 Þis holy lyue to turne  
 ageyne to synne 1502 or 1503 xalle 1505 Prow ȝow 1506 vnto 1507 hathe  
 forsakyne 1509 þe loue perfore off oure k. 1511 Os . make ȝow 1512 whosse .  
 ȝe suffyr 1513 hartely . desess. 1514 last 1515 þer-wytth 1516 haue 1517  
 se 1518 mery 1519 When ; þat om. cum before 1520 land 1521 husband .  
 he be 1522 amend alle þing 1523 dwellys 1524 haue . non om. dyversyte

1525 vnto 1526 be . frome . neste 1528 stabelyd myztly 1529 knyghys  
 1531 boustyous . & strokis eke 1532 and bad þem make annende 1533 and  
 off hyr teetis wyztly rende 1534 Os . and after wyth g. p. 1535 smyzt 1536  
 god om. strenthys hyr to susteyne 1537 Peis grete peynys þat she suffryd for  
 hys ryzt 1538 ys she . ys to be lyzt 1540 at om. 1541 on þe wedynsdey  
 1543 vnberyed om. 1544 lyggyng ther fulle whyzt & eke fulle rede 1545 to  
 om. wynd yt 1547 And om. myche . thouzt. 1548 come and om. vnto  
 1549 gone . byedyng 1550 porphyr . ryght h. 1553 callyd . vnto 1554 ful  
 om. dyrk. 1555 Kateryne 1557 in hyr lynnynne evyne as 1558 oyntment  
 1559 hawmyd 1560 preyr. and wyth 1561 layd . in to 1562 after om. ys  
 þer made 1564 falle . suche 1565 berye þis same bodye 1566 off suspeccyone .  
 folke 1567 Wer be-restyd 1568 porphyr 1570 Sythe . a lorde . xuide 1572  
 wyffys . dyd þou off 1573 hast . ouer inst. of sore 1574 Intent 1575 þus inst.  
 of now. doo om. 1576 thyne Ire 1577 leue þi b. leue þis deuoracyone 1578  
 shul om. 1580 Þat om. me thouzt yt no treasone 1581 But . vnto 1582 vnto  
 1584 zyt to. Robbers . are 1585 haue 1587 neyburs 1589 kynde . reasone  
 1590 byrdys 1592 wryghys . auctors 1593 nor eke 1594 Vnto mankynd .  
 deffowle 1597 porphyr . are 1598 maxence hart 1601 Soundyd 1604 O I .  
 lyne 1606 vnto . gyue 1609 stykkyd . credylle yt had bene þe beste 1610  
 ffor om. reyvyd . alle my 1611 porphyr now off 1612 A om. Porphyr here  
 þe b. 1613 good om. gentel om. and þus ys he loste 1614 decevyd be .  
 begynnys 1615 rest wyth-in 1616 standis . comforthe 1618 decevyd . now  
 she ys 1619 & þat grevys 1620 My hart waxys hevy as any 1621 comburde .  
 thouzt 1622 porphyr 1623 kyngdome 1624 xulde no man þe make 1625  
 haue . grete om. 1626 decevyd my w. zyt deceyff not 1629 þeys 1631  
 myche lentylle 1632 now þis cursyd 1635 hyme þus sone . renye 1636 þe  
 olde trewe 1637 fathers kept ouzt off 1640 & be 1641 examenyd 1642  
 þouzt þis 1643 dulfully 1644 seyde . how om. my gode 1645 soddenly . falne  
 vnto . meserye 1646 hoppe . fulle inst. of not but 1647 faver hyme now . þis  
 1649 Whyche þat 1650 renegattis 1652 seyde þei þus . stode now there 1653  
 knowne 1654 þat inst. of and . whyche þat þis s. meyde 1655 honourd 1656  
 god we om. or cane 1657 hym om. we wylle . scruffe 1658 smyzt . þou om.  
 turment 1660 so swete 1661 departe . hartely 1662 ffrome 1663 frome 1664  
 are peyd xalle þou þan 1665 hartis are . thus om. 1666 as . om. stabulle os þe  
 1672 are . vnto 1673 porphyr . now om. had 1674 he dyd comforthe . mythy  
 1675 Vnto . preysyd where 1676 wordyes 1677 nereand 1678 þeis pepylle .  
 thus om. 1679 lat 1680 perylle . counnelle . befalle 1681 Vnto . lande 1682  
 menbyrs 1683 vnderstande 1684 comforthe . or 1688 Wherefore evyne after  
 1689 now om. 1690 erytykis . ffyer 1691 martyrdome 1692 ware þei . one  
 not 1694 endyght 1696 crystys 1697 auctorous . in this legend doth t. 1698  
 sothfastnes . wryztis 1702 clepyd 1704 sottelle . vnto 1705 sottelle entent  
 1706 gylte . seyth 1707 porphyr off . & off 1708 from . madis 1709 socery  
 1710 resort off þeir mother 1711 father 1712 persewe þe knottis þat ze knytt  
 1713 & om. 1714 lyue 1715 Not-wythstanding þi 1716 counnelle . vnto .  
 fondnes 1717 magyke . & om. wepe sore 1718 þou was 1719 gyue . porphyr .  
 ewle concelle 1720 Lat thyne eyne wyth water now þi cheekis reylle 1722  
 sey . cause þat blode ys spylte 1724 an om. on- om. to þe holy 1725 folow  
 1726 on- om. 1729 forgyue 1730 xalt . alle þe b. a. 1731 the om. 1732 lengere  
 1734 are 1736 one þis maner I wylle devyssa 1737 þi . to be smyte 1739  
 warand 1740 sure . yche 1741 fleche . or els 1742 caruffe 1743 thyne . ye  
 repent 1744 meke 1745 dye 1746 was om. hangyd one þe croce 1747 Þis  
 dey . be 1748 vnto weredys aye 1749 ffor om. se . and alle 1750 on om.  
 to dethe now 1751 wene þe falle ys m. 1752 men om. ys 1753 Sum men  
 wene . dye 1754 fulle s. 1755 deceyvabde 1756-7 transp. 1756 I soy om.  
 We lesse þat thyngh whyche ys fulle of stryff 1757 land 1759 þer xalle we  
 haue grete loy 1760 aboundys 1761 ys sykker yt had 1765 lengar 1767  
 thyne lawe 1769 haue 1770 So wylle I desyre for to se hys face 1771 & here  
 þe aungels whych are 1772 þem . woltis astunnyd 1775 castels þat standis by

zone roche 1776 aproche 1777 spent 1778 alle þis . shape om. 1779 þe  
 whyche *wyth* h. b. 1780 O. wrechyd s. weshyd 1781 bothe inst. of ful 1782  
 folows 1783 *Cum* 1784 abyed 1785 nor 1786 þe sentance . gyffe 1787 as I  
 was avysyde 1789 folow . preys 1791 so wrechydly 1792 velanye 1793 mothers  
 & maydyns 1794 my 1796 inclyne 1799 hathe . & whyche 1802 þat om.  
 1803 3ovr goddis . myche 1804 swere . be 1805 *wythouzt* 1806 if om. yow  
 om. ryght so 1807 was s. she came . þe 1808 xulde dye, and þer ys þe man to  
 1809 smyzt . preyd of 1810 or . frome 1811 sey 1812 In om. medytacyons  
 vnto 1813 hir; om. 1815 cyne and handis 1816 *Wyth* meke harte she seyð  
*wyth* sharpe sounne 1817 whosse . vnto nevyne 1819 þat trustis 1821 num-  
 byrd 1822 þe collage among 1824 me now *wyth* 1826 lorde for thy 1828  
 haue . remembrance 1829 ellis om. in hys 1831 hartely 1832 any relese  
 1833 þem theyr 1834 Os 1836 pestelence nor . myzt 1837 and; om. nor o.  
 meserye 1838 alle om. ewle 1839 but lord off þi mercy þem gyue 1840 off h.  
 1841 landis abyed 1842 Lord graunt 1845 vnto 1846 tyrant . nor 1848  
 To þe I. cr. 1849 Vnto 1850 þi aungels 1851 *Cum* . frome . þi 1852 vnto  
 1853 now inst. of lord . thy 1854 feleshyppe 1855 Among þi . þat . so bryght  
 1856 scarsly 1857 prey. 1858 frome . harde þer . swounne 1859 noysse . can  
 1860 My . spoosse 1861 *cum* . vnto 1862 þou arte full stedfasty fieste 1863  
 yt ys 1864 now rody 1866 xallt 1867 abyede 1868 thy eteryte 1869  
 before 1870 are 1871 are ordynyd þi sowle eke . for om. 1873 xalt 1874  
 dowgher inst. of in haste 1876 wylle one þe 1877 harte thy 1882 forgyue  
 1883 Confermyng . hem eke om. 1885 vnto . smyther 1886 calde to a f. .  
 now om. 1887 thou om. 1889 & stand 1890 forgyue 1891 þis c. 1893  
 holly 1895 & rage 1896 þe bodye 1897 þer lere 1900 clenues at þat t.  
 1901 no noþer . rune 1902 os 1904 thyng om. *wyth*-in . þing om. came  
 1905 plentyously . wattyrd 1906 as a most *mervelusse* 1907 Here 1909  
 meydnyhd . berys 1910 wytnes 1912 was sene eke 1914 lyke . wynggis  
 1915 þus auctorus 1916 toke . bare 1919 gaue 1920 Vnto . Iuwys . ledys  
 1921 cryestis 1923 poulle . makis 1924 longis 1926 gyed 1927 Vnto þe .  
 standis 1928 for vs . hastely 1929 wysse 1931 be 1933 seye standys  
 1934 frome Arabye . of lond om. a full 1935 In om. Iurneys 1936 My . seys  
 1937 gyedys . pusanee 1938 þei labure . it om. 1939 are but f. here . hathe  
 made þat seys. The next 2 stanzas are transp. 1947 are 1948 Are . vnknowne  
 1949 knowlege 1950 þat yt runnythe oyle 1952-3 Whyche men suffyr one  
 bodye or one bone, þis holy oyle wylle hole þem anone 1940 The passyone of  
 þis holy meyd as þe story s. 1941 Was one . right om. 1942 seyne 1945 þe  
 same 1946 auctours 1954—1981 These last stanzas are wanting; Ar. has  
 instead the following 2 stanzas :

Hyr dey ffals newlye euery 3ere  
 Þe xxv<sup>ii</sup> dey of þe monythe off nouenbyr,  
 Suche tyme as she was martyrvzjed here,  
 Os wytnesse berys euery kalender.  
 He þat thys lyue wryztis, redis or els evthe here,  
 Cryste, kyng off glorye, graunt þem þat grace  
 Off alle þeir synnes mercy to purchace.

Þorow þe Intercessyone of oure lady seynt mary  
 & þe medys off þe passyone of þis glorios meyd,  
 bryng vs, lorde, to þi hevyntly concistory  
 ffor whom most speccially þis holy meydyn preyd.  
 Now, glorios Kateryne, be to vs ane eyde  
 And speccialle succour yne þis perloous pylgrymage,  
 þat after þis lyue we mey cum to thy cage.  
 Amen.

## INDEX OF NAMES.

BY THOMAS AUSTIN.

- ADRIAN, Roman Emperor, A.D. 117—138, 57/664.
- Adrian, a hermit monk, 173/43; lived sixty years on a rock, 175/80; Virgin Mary appears to him, 177/118; is sent by her to St. Katharine, 179/148; swoons, 185/240; tells the Virgin Mary that he will obey her, 187/272; is told how to find St. Katharine, 189; reaches Alexandria, and finds Katharine, 193; tells her of the Virgin, 199, etc.; tells her of Christ, 213, etc.; asks Katharine to go with him, 217; quits Alexandria with her, 219; finds his cell has disappeared, 219; enters the Holy City with Katharine, 227; baptizes her in Heaven, 239; teaches Katharine, 250.
- Alexandria, in Egypt, one of the chief cities of King Costus, 21; its Divinity School, 25; built by Babel, and called the Lesser Babylon, 49; Athanasius writes of its foundation, 51; its former kings, 51, etc.; Parliament held there, 59; Katharine's coronation there, 61; a Parliament meets there to consider on her marriage, 83, etc.; the city gathers to hear Katharine's discussion with the Philosophers, 302.
- Alfragan confuted by Katharine, 325.
- Amalek, a city in Cyprus, and the port of Syria, 21/64; is one of King Costus's chief cities, 21; ruled by a Mayor, 23; its name is changed to Famagost, 47.
- Amphos of Athens, 303.
- Ananias, Earl of Joppa, comes to Alexandria, 83/81; urges Katharine to marry, 107.
- Antioch, in Syria, is built by Seleucus, 51/574. It was the capital of the Greek kings.
- Antiochus I., or Soter, King of Syria, B.C. 280—261, 51/566, 53/612; he was the son of Seleucus I.—Antiochus II., or Theos, B.C. 261—246, 51/570, 53/615; son of preceding.—Antiochus III., or Great, B.C. 223—187, 55; son of Seleucus Callinicus.—Antiochus IV., or Epiphanes, B.C. 175—164, 55/637; he was the son of Antiochus the Great, and had also the name of Epimanes.—Antiochus V., or Eupator, B.C. 164—152, 55/638; son of preceding.—Antiochus VII., or Sidetes, B.C. 137—126, 55/642; he was the son of Demetrius Soter.—Antiochus VIII., or Grypus, B.C. 125—96, 57/659; he was the son of Demetrius Nicator.—Antiochus, son of Archibelon, 57/676.
- Antigonus, King of Asia, B.C. 316—301, 57/676. He was one of Alexander's Generals.
- Apollonius of Tyre, 55/633. He was a Stoic Philosopher, and lived in the time of Ptolemy Auletes.
- Appollymas is silenced and converted by Katharine, 321.
- Arabia, subdued by Alexander the Great, 53/590.
- Archenon, King of Alexandria, 57/675.
- Archibelon, King of Alexandria, 57/675.
- Armenia, King of, Katharine's uncle, argues with her, 295.
- Arrek finds St. Katharine's Life, 5; englished it, 7/57; has a vision, 9; Capgrave adapts Arrek's version, 17; turned into Latin St.



- Athanasius's *Life of St. Katharine*, 13/173, 15/199; died at Lynn, 15/219; was Rector of St. Pancras, London, 15/227.
- Aryot disputes with Katharine, 330; converted by her, 336; openly professes Christianity, 342.
- Astenes argues with Katharine, 306, etc.; is silenced, 309.
- Athanasius, St., teaches St. Katharine, and is converted by her, 11/128; wrote her *Life*, 11; was afterwards Bishop of Alexandria, 13/162; is Katharine's Chancellor, 33/261.
- Athens, Duke of, argues with Katharine, 153.
- Babel, Sultan of Assyria and Egypt, built Alexandria, or Babylon the Less, 49.
- Baldake, Prince of Palestine, urges Katharine to marry, 147.
- Borus, King of Alexandria, 57/678.
- Candia, 73, 75.
- Capgrave takes St. Katharine's *Life* from Arrek's version, 17; born at Lynn, 17.
- Cappadocia, Prince of, comes to Alexandria, 83/80, 99.
- Clanadour, Duke of Antioch, addresses Katharine, 135.
- Clarus, Prince of Cappadocia, comes to Alexandria, 83/80; urges Katharine to marry, 99.
- Claudas I., King of Alexandria, 57/676; Claudas II., 57/679.
- Clement of Alexandria, A.D. 200, 25.
- Constantine, Lord of Britain, 265/112; is appealed to by the Romans, and drives out Maxentius, 267.
- Costus, King of Greece, father of St. Katharine, 17; a good man, 19; his chief cities, 21; is old at time of St. Katharine's birth, 29; builds her a palace, 35; dies, 43; is buried, 45.
- Cursates, Mayor of Alexandria, constructs wheels to tear Katharine to pieces, 379.
- Cyprus, part of King Costus's dominions, 17.
- Damascus, the Duke of, comes to the Parliament at Alexandria, 85, 119.
- Daniel, 111/518.
- Darius III., or Codomannus, King of Persia, conquered by Alexander, 53/589.
- Demetrius, King of Alexandria, 55/640; Demetrius I., or Soter, son of Seleucus IV., or Philopator, B.C. 162—150, 55/644.
- Diocletian, 264/83.
- Enclid, 41/387.
- Eugenius, Lord of Nicopolis, urges Katharine to marry, 149.
- Fanagoost. See *Amalek*.
- Garaencen, the Duke of, comes to the Parliament at Alexandria, 85/85.
- Gorgalus, son of Antiochus I., 51/568.
- Greece, 17/1.
- Hercules, Prince of Paphon, 85/83; urges Katharine to marry, 113.
- Inf. See *Joppa*.
- Janus, 282/642.
- Joppa, the Earl of, comes to Alexandria, 83/81, 107.
- Katharine, St., her *Life* written by St. Athanasius, 15; her father Costus, 19; born in her parents' old age, 29; her mother Meliades, 31; her teachers, 33; her father builds her a palace for study, 35; she learns the Seven Liberal Arts, 39; her pedigree, 57; is crowned at Alexandria, 61; her great goodness, 65; her people wish her to marry, 69; a Petition is sent to her, 73; a Parliament is called in reference to her marriage, 79; meaning of her name, 83; the Parliament individually addresses her on the necessity of marriage, 89, etc.; she craves delay, 93; is urged by her mother, 141; her beauty, 159; has an ideal husband, 165; her refusal

- angers her Lords, 169; the Monk Adrian seeks her by command of the Virgin Mary, 193, greets her, 195, tells of the Virgin, 199; she is told of Christ, 207, 215; Adrian asks Katharine to leave Alexandria with him, 217; she leaves the city, 219; sees the Heavenly City, 225, and is welcomed there, 227; is taken to Christ by the Virgin, 233; Christ orders her to be baptized, 235; is baptized in Heaven by Adrian, 239; is taken to Christ, 241; consents to wed Christ, 244; weds Christ, 246; Christ comforts her, 248; goes to Adrian's cell, and is taught by him, 251; the Virgin Mary visits her, 256; her death foretold, 258; is at Alexandria, 269; reproaches Maxentius for his idolatry, 279, etc.; refuses the Emperor's hand, 290; is imprisoned by him, 291; they try to convert her, 292, etc.; she is threatened with death, 295; prays for help, 299; gives up her heathen books, 304; argues with Astenes and silences him, 308; denounces the heathen gods, 310; expounds the Trinity, 315; effect of her arguments, 320; Appolymas questions her, 321; she converts him and Alfragan, 323, 328; the Emperor is wrath at her victory, 329; she disputes with Aryot, 330; converts him, 336; comforts the martyrs, 345; refuses to turn heathen, 352; declines a statue, 353; is flogged, 358; Angels visit her in prison, 361; the Queen's visit to her, 365; Christ visits her, 368; her death ordered, 375; torture wheels shattered at her prayer, 383; she comforts the Queen, 388; is sentenced to death, 397; is beheaded, 401; her tomb, 402; miracles there, 403.
- Lymason, Earl of, comes to Alexandria, 85/87.
- Lynn, in Norfolk, 15/219; Arreck died there, 15/219; Capgrave born there, 17/240.
- Madagdalus, son of Babel, succeeds him as King of Alexandria, 51/562.
- Mardemius, second son of Gorgalus, 51/577.
- Maxentius, Emperor of Rome, A.D. 306—312, his death, 11/155; made Emperor of Rome, 265; is a tyrant, 266; flees from Constantine, 267; flees to Persia, and becomes king, 267; orders Christians to be persecuted, 268; comes to Alexandria, 269; his edict against Christians, 270; festival on his birthday, 273; warns Katharine, 281; sends for Clerks to convict Katharine, 288; offers to wed Katharine if she recants, 289; threatens her with death, 295; reproaches his philosophers, 340; orders the converts to be burnt, 343; tries to win Katharine over, 349; orders her to be flogged, 358; imprisons her, 360; orders her death, 375; orders his wife to be tortured, 386, and beheaded, 389; threatens Porphyry with death, 392; has 200 knights beheaded, 394.
- Maximian, 264/82.
- Maximinus II. or Galerius, A.D. 305—314, 264/81; made ruler of the East, 265; dies in Sicily, 265/129.
- Meliades, daughter of King of Armenia, marries King Costus, and is mother of Katharine, 31; summons a Parliament, 47; agrees with those who want her daughter to wed, 75; the Monk Adrian seeks her, 193.
- Meliore, wife of Mardemius, 51/581.
- Nicopolis, ? in Africa, 149/1142.
- Northfolk, or Norfolk, 17/240.
- Origen, 25/130.
- Pancras, St., London, Arreck Rector there, 15.
- Pantænus, 25/127.
- Paphon, or Paphos, in Cyprus, 85/83.
- Phalon, King of Alexandria, marries Solaber, the daughter of Hadrian, 57/665.

- Philip of Macedon, father of Alexander the Great, 51/583.
- Philo, *De Vita Theoretica*, 23/107.
- Philosophers summoned to argue with Katharine, 292.
- Porphyry visits Katharine in prison, 364; rebukes the Emperor, 390.
- Salence, the Duke of, comes to Alexandria, 85/85.
- Seleucus I., or Nicator, King of Alexandria, B.C. 306—281, 51/572; cousin of Alexander, 53/606; Seleucus II., or Callinicus, B.C. 246—226, 53/617; Seleucus III., or Ceraunus, son of Antiochus II., B.C. 226—223, 53/618; Seleucus IV., or Philopator, B.C. 187—175, 55/630.
- Severus, ruler of Lombardy, 265/106; raises an army against Maxentius, but is slain by his own men, 266.
- Solaber, daughter of Hadrian, marries Phalon, 57.
- Surry, or Assyria, 17/2, 51/569, 57/667.
- Tholome, or Ptolemy, the astronomer, 149/1155.
- Tyre, 77/1016.
- Valerius, a writer against marriage, 123/735.
- Virgin Mary appears to the Monk Adrian, 177, etc.; takes Katharine up to Christ, 233; gives directions for her baptism, 237.
- Zozymus, King of Alexandria, 57/674.

## GLOSSARY.

BY THOMAS AUSTIN.

- ACRISIA, *sb.* 218/802. See *Aurisia*.  
 Afrayed, *pp.* ? assaulted, 262/32.  
 Almyght, *adj.* almighty, 5/37.  
 And, *conj.* if, 43/424, 144/1079.  
 Apeyr, *vb. t.* impair, 106/469.  
 Apposayle, *sb.* apposal, examination, 189/321.  
 Appose, *vb. t.* examine, 40/405, 76/1008, 297/1127.  
 Apryse, *sb.* price, value, 302/1279.  
 A-rere, Arrere, *vb. t.* gain, win, 34/284.  
 Armony, *sb.* harmony in music, formed of symphony and euphony, 40/384.  
 Arn, *vb.* first pers. pl. of present of *be*, 45/461.  
 Arsmctryk, *sb.* arithmetic, 38/377.  
 Arts, Seven Liberal, 39/365. They are Grammar, Rhetoric, Dialectic, Arithmetic, Music, Geometry, Astronomy.  
 Asay, *sb.* trial, affliction, 24/119, 27/152.  
 Asayle, *sb.* assail, assault, 19/33, 35/299.  
 Astoynd, astounded, stupefied, 277/498, 281/611.  
 Astronomy, 41/393.  
 A-taast, A-taste, *vb. t.* test, try, 298/1145. O. Fr. *atuster*.  
 Attaime, *vb. t.* attack, meddle with, 314/1639. Fr. *entamer*.  
 Auctrix, *sb.* authoress, authority, 318/1757.  
 Aurisia, *sb.* a disease of the eyes, 219/802. Gr. *ἀορασία*, blindness.  
 Avysyon, *sb.* vision, 6/80. O. Fr. *Advision*, *avision*, vision, dream.  
 Banne, *vb.* curse, 54/621, 97/301.  
 Barm, *sb.* bosom, 383/1376.  
 Bate, *sb.* strife, contention, 248/1293.  
 Beck, *sb.* brook, 401/1901.  
 Be-dene, *adv.* together, 74/961, 169/1478, 246/1256.  
 Behest, *vb. t.* promise, 256/1445, 277/479.  
 Behest, *sb.* promise, vow, 277/486.  
 Beyc, *sb.* bracelet, 63/774.  
 Beyn, *adj.* bairn, ready, 210/670.  
 Beucerych, *sb.* beverage (of melted lead poured down throat), 280/586.  
 Biled, *pp.* built, 310/1531.  
 Bille, *sb.* letter, proclamation, 78/1027; article, item, 213/691.  
 Blaspheme, *sb.* blasphemy, 34/286.  
 Ble, Blee, *sb.* complexion, 166/1432.  
 Blowe, *vb.* blow, publish, divulge, 320/1811.  
 Blynne, *vb.* blin, cease, 27/168.  
 Boteras, *sb.* buttress, 127/799; "bot-races" on page 126.  
 Boystysnesse, *sb.* boisterousness, outburst, 34/293.  
 Bredes, Bredys, *sb.* boards of a book, 7/86, 9/94.  
 Bregge, *vb. t.* abridge, 327/2041.  
 Brethel, *adj.* brittle, 310/1531.  
 Brymbyl-tree, *sb.* bramble-tree, 20/53.  
 Busk, *vb.* hasten, 219/792.  
 But if, *conj.* unless, 73/936, 939, 250/1330.  
 Buxum, *adj.* obedient, 18/16.  
 Byrd, *sb.* a byrd in your fest (fist), 93/250.  
 Calle, *sb.* caul, net for head, cap, 168/1482.  
 Carnacion, *sb.* incarnation, 332/2187.  
 Carpe, *vb.* speak, converse, 113/560: pate too much, 121/703.  
 Carpynge, *sb.* talk, conversation, 63/755.  
 Cast, *vb. t.* purpose, devise, 77/1007.

- Cessyons, *sb.* sessions, 71/894.  
 Chalcedony, its virtues, 249.  
 Chaules, Chaules, *sb.* jowls, jaw-bones, 8/97, 9/97.  
 Chauncelere, *sb.* chancellor, secretary, 10/140.  
 Chepe, *sb.* cheap: "Grete chepe," good bargains, 59/713.  
 Ches, Chees, *vb.* chose, 222/860.  
 Cheuentayn, Cheuctayn, *sb.* chief-tain, 130/850.  
 Circumlocucyon, *sb.* evasive way of speaking, 312/1591, 322/1887.  
 Circumuent, *pp.* circumvented, 300/1208.  
 Clappe, *vb.* *t.* strike, smite, 281/621.  
 Claryfy, *vb.* *t.* purify, make pure, 231/993.  
 Clatere, Clatyr, *vb.* chatter, talk noisily, 140/1006.  
 Cloggis, *sb.* blocks, logs, 347/290.  
 Clospe, *sb.* clasp of a book, 8/101.  
 Clynk, *vb.* *t.* jangle, 364/796.  
 Collusyon, *sb.* deceit, trickery, 236/1102.  
 Colour, *sb.* disguise, pretext, 307/1426, 313/1606.  
 Comered, *pp.* cumbered, encumbered, 168/1481, 392/1621.  
 Comerous, Comorous, *adj.* cumbrous, stupefied, stupid, 185/249, 276/455.  
 Communycacyon, *sb.* converse, conversation, 335/2276.  
 Comoun, *vb.* *t.* common, make common, communicate, 161/1352, 1358, 315/1673.  
 Compendiously, *adv.* briefly, 350/378.  
 Concionatrix, *sb.* *f.* oratress, public speaker, 302/1269, 370/960.  
 Conclude, *vb.* *t.* redargue, confute, 293/1002, 300/1211.  
 Concludyng, *sb.* conclusion, summing up, 322/1894.  
 Conclusyon, *sb.* end, close, 258/1456.  
 Concoursly, *adv.* in concord, together, 328/2080.  
 Confeder, *vb.* *t.* confederate, 315/1678.  
 Conferme, *vb.* *t.* confirm, strengthen, 400/1883.  
 Consent, *pp.* consented, agreed, 46/488.  
 Conservacye, *sb.* protection, 271/316.  
 Conuersacioun, *sb.* way of life, habits, 10/148.  
 Convict, *vb.* *t.* convince, confute, 289/867, 300/1213, 303/1283, 307/1417, 308/1442.  
 Corown, *sb.* crown, 240/1176; *vb.* 242/1185.  
 Cote, *sb.* cot, covering, *fig.* of the body, 4/31. Compare *Kaye*, 332/2180.  
 Coude, *vb.* could, understood, 32/266.  
 Counterollere, *sb.* controller, 380/1265.  
 Crede, *sb.* creed of St. Athanasius, 12/167.  
 Creke, *vb.* make a disturbance, 140/1006, 276/453.  
 Creyn, *vb.* cry, 227/945.  
 Cristen, *sb.* Christianity, 293/1978.  
 Crope, *vb.*; crept, *pp.* 195/404.  
 Cruelnesse, *sb.* cruelty, 54/625.  
 Crysmes, *sb.* holy oil for baptism, 235/1082.  
 Crystendom, *sb.* Christianity, baptism, 43/442.  
 Cure, *sb.* care, 32/267.  
 Cyse, *sb.* assize, 71/894.  
 Dalf, *vb.* delved, dug, 8/115. See *Delue*.  
 Dame, *sb.* dam, 308/1445.  
 Dawe, *sb.* brynge . . . of dawes or a dawes, put out of life, kill, 374/1084.  
 Dawe, *vb.* *int.* dawn, 363/773.  
 Debate, *sb.* strife, contention, 18/43.  
 Debater, *sb.* quarreler, bully, 310/1519.  
 Declaracyon, *sb.* explanation, tale, 50/558.  
 Declynacion, *sb.* declension of nouns, 33/259.  
 Delectacyon, *sb.* delight, pleasure, 245/1238, 262/23.  
 Delice, Delys, *vb.* delight, 213/683, 316/1686. Fr. *délice*.  
 Delirament, *sb.* raving, insanity, 307/1421.  
 Deliner, *vb.* *t.* bring to end, decide 74/966.  
 Delue, *vb.* dig, 150/1166.

- Deme, *vb.* deem, give sentence, 105/444.
- Demene, *vb. t.* manage, conduct, 165/1418. O. Fr. *Demener*.
- Dempt, *vb.* deemed, judged, 258/1464.
- Depute, *sb.* deputy, 105/431.
- Dere, *vb. t.* harm, injure, 115/613, 248/1316.
- Despouse, *vb. t.* bestow, betroth, wed, 233/1028.
- Dever, *sb.* devoir, duty, 235/1075.
- Deyn, *vb.* die, 229/980, 347/275.
- Deyte, *sb.* deity, godship, 286/764.
- Dialetike, *sb.* dialectic, one of the Seven Liberal Arts, 39/372.
- Dilatacyon, *sb.* extension, prolongations, 335/2278.
- Diuerse, *vb.* differ, discord, 59/688.
- Do, *vb. t.* do off, take off, 239/1131.
- Dome, *sb.* opinion, judgment, 35/314.
- Domynacyon, *sb.* rule, dominions, 270/265.
- Doole, *sb.* sorrow, trouble, 33/257, 69/866, 314/1643.
- Doubilnesse, *sb.* duplicity, 301/1234, 308/1444.
- Draue, *sb.* drone bee, 261/3, 262/21.
- Dreadful, *adj.* timid, fearful, 67/844.
- Dresse, *vb.* address, apply, 83/70.
- Dreynt, *pp.* drowned, 206/592.
- Dun, *sb.* dun is in the myre, *Prov.* 143/1046: *i. e.* "I am at a loss," or "in a fix," *Dun* being a horse's name.
- Dwere, *sb.* doubt, fear, 27/178, 89/172, 105/418, 271/304, 284/698, 299/1165, 308/1461.
- Dyme, *sb.* dime, *lit.* tithe, 289/850. L. *Decima*, Fr. *Dime*.
- Dysdayn, *adj.* disdainful, 161/1330.
- Eem, *sb.* uncle, 87/122; "hem," on page 186.
- Egal, *adj.* equal, 334/2269. Fr. *Égal*.
- Egaly, *adv.* equally, 346/249.
- Eke, *adj.* ilk, same, 57/662.
- Elenk, *sb.* proof, main point of argument, 128/825. Gr. Ἐλεγχος.
- Elmesse, *sb.* almshouse, alms, 175/82.
- Em, *sb.* uncle, 124/753. See *Fem*.
- Emprende, *vb. t.* imprint, 205/580, 260/1488, 277/493.
- Enbraas, Enbrace, *vb. t.* embrace, engage, 71/897.
- Endoos, *vb. t.* ? endorse, magnify; ? endow, 132/882.
- Enforce, *vb. t.* strengthen, 299/1183.
- Enprende. See *Emprende*.
- Entayle, *sb.* intaglio, 45/486.
- Enterfered, *pp.* mingled, mixed, 335/2278.
- Entermete, *vb.* interpose, meddle, 303/1294. Fr. *S'entremettre*.
- Erde, *sb.* earth, 242/1193, 250/1341.
- Erdely, *adj.* earthly, 252/1371.
- Erdely, *adv.* on earth, 250/1337.
- Ereeth, *vb. t.* eareth, plougheth, 27/157; herp on p. 26.
- Erthely, *adv.* on earth, 305/1375. See *Erdely*.
- Euphonye, *sb.* euphony, in music, 40/385. See *LANE*, *Continuation of Chaucer*, p. 20. "Melodie proceeds out of musickes euphonic."
- Ex, *sb.* axe, 18/46.
- Faculte, *sb.* college, body of professors, 37/319.
- Fane, *sb.* vane, weathercock, 277/494.
- Faste-by, hard by, 275/439.
- Faunt, *sb.* child, 275/444.
- Febilte, *sb.* feebleness, 181/166.
- Feer, *adv.* far, 284/698.
- Feere, *vb. t.* fear, frighten, 249/1316.
- Feet, *adj.* feat, nice, pretty, 21/77.
- Fele, *adj.* many, 256/1438.
- Felle, *sb.* skin, 181/159, 245/1243.
- Fere, in-fere, in company, 59/717.
- Fese, *vb. t.* attack, annoy, 115/590, 321/1860, 323/1916, 358/611.
- Filiacion, *sb.* affiliation, 335/2297.
- Fix, *adj.* fixed, inveterate, 370/962.
- Fle, *vb. t.* flea, flay, 357/581.
- Flecte, Flete, *vb. t.* float (as a witch), 95/276.
- Flyght, *vb.* strive, contend, 107/460.
- Fonge, *vb. t.* grasp, 327/2042.
- Fonnel, *adj.* fond, foolish, 110/528, 283/679, 349/341.
- Fonmednesse, *sb.* fondness, folly, 395/1716.
- Font, *sb.* source, spring, 251/1347.
- For, *prep.* on account of, to prevent, 37/330.

- For-barre, *vb. t.* forbear, decline, reject, 326/2004.
- Forby, *adv.* by, along, 219/798, 241/1155.
- Forfete, *vb.* incur a charge, be guilty, 269/229.
- Forfeture, *sb.* crime, error, 41/390.
- Forlore, *pp.* forgotten, 14/201.
- Forth-brynger, *sb.* parent, 28/186.
- Fother, *sb.* weight of about a ton, 20/59, 27/180, 61/742.
- Fouled, *sb.* foulhead, foulness, 67/831.
- Foyson, *sb.* plenty, 61/732. Fr. *Foisson*.
- Fulfilled, Fulfyllyd, *pp.* filled full, 22/110.
- Fundament, *sb.* grounds of belief, 330/2124.
- Fy, sey fy, say fie, 342/152. Comp. Fr. *Faire fi de*.
- Fyn, *sb.* fine, end, 76/1019. Fr. *Fin*: Lat. *Finis*.
- Gaule, *vb.* bawl, yell, 98/325.
- Geometry, one of the Seven Liberal Arts, 41/386.
- Gette, *sb.* ? get, prize, 269/236. This may be *Jette*, fashion, but the subst. *Get* is used thus.
- Glose, *sb.* lie, 295/1041, 327/2028; glose, 304/1334.
- Glose, *vb. t.* deceive with fair words, 349/335.
- Gnast, Knast, *sb.* spark, snuff of candle, used in derogatory sense, 26/159, 174/70. Compare *Snast*, in E. Anglia.
- Gonne, *sb.* ? any warlike weapon, 292/952. See *Gune*.
- Goost, Gost, *sb.* flesh & gost (spirit of life), 114/596: Holy Ghost, 35/301, 170/3, 334/2246.
- Gramer, *sb.* one of the Seven Liberal Arts, 39/366.
- Gret-namyd, *adj.* great-named, renowned, 132/881.
- Grew, *sb.* Greek—the language, 82/56.
- Gripe, Gryppe, *vb. t.* get hold of, 145/1085: catch, get the better of, 147/1116.
- Grope, *vb. t.* seek into, 175/73; explore, 231/995.
- Grotch. See *Grutch*.
- Grubbe, *vb.* grub up, 222/863.
- Grugge, *vb.* he gruggeth with his teeth, grinds his teeth, 381/1309: compare next.
- Grutch, *vb.* murmur, take in dudgeon, 67/851, 97/301. O. Fr. *Gruchier*.
- Gryf, *sb.* graft, 155/1247.
- Gune, *sb.* gun, 52/592. It is applied in *Cath. Angl.* to an engine for throwing stones, or one for attacking walls. See *Gonne*, above.
- Gye, *vb. t.* guide, 264/87.
- Hale, *sb.* hut, tent, 60/734. Properly a wattled hut. L. L. *Haala*.
- Hame, *sb.* ? skin, film, 239/1132.
- Hard, *vb. t.* harden, 297/1098.
- Hardly, *adv.* hardily, surely, 87/131, 121/693, 203/544, 305/1348; firmly, 346/264.
- Hardynesse, *sb.* courage, boldness, 299/1177.
- Hatte, *vb.* be named, 47/491; “hyght” on p. 46.
- Haunt, *vb. t.* frequent, 301/1223.
- Heende, *sb.* end, death, 12/177.
- Helve, *sb.* handle of axe, *fig.* 18/46.
- Her, Here, their, 2/5, 6, 18/13, 30/225, 35/298, 267/185.
- Herburgage, *sb.* abode, dwelling, 331/2178. O. Fr. *Hébergage*.
- Herne, Hyrne, *sb.* nook, corner, 312/1587, 313/1622, 343/182, 352/438.
- Herr, Herre, *sb.* hinge, 132/891.
- Hethenese, *sb.* the heathen world, 21/80.
- Heyl, *vb. imp.* hail, 298/1133. It is used transitively for *Hail upon*.
- Hille, Hylle, *vb. t.* hele, wrap, cover, 30/227, 306/1379.
- Homager, *sb.* one that does homage, a subject, 19/21, 24.
- Hooore, *adv.* ere, before, 195/410.
- Hope, *sb.* expectation, 105/419.
- Horse, *sb.* grey horse, *prov.* 95/253.
- Houe, *vb.* ? loiter, ponder, 134/915.
- Hyght, *vb.* See *Hatte*.
- Hyng, *vb.* hung, 246/1273.
- Hyze, Yze, *sb.* eye, 65/817.
- Iape, *sb.* jest, 127/782.
- Ildes, *sb.* isles, 19/15.

- Impossible, *sb.* impossibility, 282/662.
- Indignacyon, *sb.* contempt, 89/170.
- Induction, *sb.* counsel, instruction, 401/1923.
- Inn, *sb.* abode, mansion, 278/539.
- Inquietude, *sb.* molestation, annoyance, 38/355.
- Insolible, *adj.* insoluble, insolvable, 316/1713.
- Intrusore, *sb.* intruder, 270/289.
- Iornay, *sb.* day of battle, battle, 97/296.
- Iust, Iusten, *vb.* joust, 116/623. O. Fr. *Jouste*. It is properly a combat between two knights, for honour.
- Kepe, *vb.* keep, intend, mean, 245/1246.
- Keye, *sb.* key, *fig.*: main defence, 20/71. *Clavis* also means "endroit fermé," or fortified place.
- ✓Knettere, *sb.* knitter, bond, 336/2311.
- Kynhod, *sb.* kindred, kinsfolk, 49/526; it is spelt "kynrode" on p. 48.
- Lane, *adj.* unsound, crippled, dishonoured, 48/537.
- Lappe, *sb.* lap of garment, 191/356.
- Laught, *vb.* *pp.* of *Lacchen*, got, 328/2062.
- Leche, *vb.* leech, heal, 212/685.
- Leed, *sb.* lead, the metal, 348/306.
- Leke, *sb.* leek, "not worth a leke," 54/628.
- Leke, *vb.* *t.* like, please, 200/504, 318/1748.
- Leones, *sb.* lions, 111/518.
- Lette, *vb.* *t.* let go, abandon, 112/553.
- Lette, *sb.* let, hindrance, 35/312.
- Lette, *vb.* *t.* let, hinder, 266/153, 269/227.
- Lettyng, *sb.* hindrance, 36/330.
- Leue, *vb.* believe, 346/264, 273, 381/1301, 393/1659.
- Leve, *vb.* live, 42/424.
- Leuene, *sb.* lightning, 54/632, 369/938.
- Leuyng, *adj.* living, 345/237.
- Leuys, *sb.* leaves of a book, 329/2114.
- Lewed, *adj.* foolish, 313/1596.
- Lofte, on lofte, aloft, above, in this world, 266/146.
- Lollard, used as a term of abuse, 191/327.
- Lomb, *sb.* lamb, 17/8.
- Loos, *sb.* honour, fame, 133/881. O. Fr. *Los*.
- Lope, *sb.* leap, 92/223.
- Lordles, *adj.* lordless, husbandless, 201/489.
- Losyd, *adj.* honoured, 16/7. See *Loos*.
- Loute, *vb.* bow in worship, kneel, 287/803, 320/1825.
- Low, *vb.* laughed, 352/421.
- Loy, Loyn, *pp.* lay, lain, 329/2090.
- Lyne, *vb.* *t.* lime, with bird-lime, 341/115.
- Lyn, Lyne, *vb.* cease, rest, 52/593, 76/1020.
- Magre, maugre, in spite of, 280/583.
- Male, *sb.* mail, trunk, 333/2219.
- Marred, *pp.* amazed, thunderstruck, 192/381, 206/610, 274/386, 322/1871, 323/1927. It seems to mean *senseless* on p. 322.
- Massager, *sb.* messenger, 324/1942. Fr. *Message*.
- Maument, *sb.* idol, 279/563.
- Maumentrye, *sb.* idolatry, 22/104, 45/477, 271/318. L. L. *Mahomeria*; O. Fr. *Mahomerie*.
- May, *sb.* maid, 297/1108, 302/1265.
- Meke, *adj.* meek, domesticated, 309/1475.
- Mene, Meny, *sb.* retinue, attendants, 72/936, 196/439, 269/252, 286/777. O. Fr. *Mesnie*, *Mejné*.
- Mere, *sb.* ? measure, 332/2203.
- Meuere, *sb.* mover, 319/1798.
- Mocyon, *sb.* motion, proposition, 151/1169, 316/1714.
- Modes, Modys, *sb.* moods of verbs, 32/259.
- Modir-naked, *adj.* naked as a newborn child, 358/608.
- Moone, *sb.* moan, 314/1629.
- Motyf, *sb.* argument, idea, 321/1856, 322/1884, 324/1954, 333/2227.
- Mowled, *vb.* rusted, 40/399.
- Musyk, one of the Seven Liberal Arts, 39/379.



- Myn, Myne, *adj.* less, 49/546, 104/431, 387/1501.  
 Myne, *sb.* mine, 270/290.  
 Mysdraught, *sb.* misbehaviour, 65/821.  
 Mysty, *adj.* diin, uncertain, 312/1566.  
 Nase, *sb.* nose, 159/1321.  
 Ne were, were it not for, 113/555.  
 Noblched, *sb.* nobleness, nobility, 171/9.  
 Not, *vb.* ne wot, know not, 141/1031.  
 Noye, *sb.* annoyance, trouble, 313/1600.  
 Noysed, *pp.* celebrated, 330/2120.  
 Nngacyon, *sb.* trilling, 329/2115.  
 Lat. *Nugacio*.  
 Nyce, *adj.* foolish, effeminate, 65/822, 108/493; fastidious, 310/1522.  
 Nygramauncy, *sb.* necromancy, 289/859.  
 Omager, *sb.* See *Homager*.  
 Onlykly, *adj.* unlikely, unlike, not in keeping, 217/782.  
 Onreuerently, *adv.* irreverently, 285/752.  
 Onrightful, *adj.* unjust, 291/926.  
 Onsekernesne, *sb.* uncertainty, mutability, 69/874.  
 Oppresse, *vb. t.* keep down, keep under, overcome, 101/365, 289/863.  
 Ouere-leede, *vb. t.* draw over, win over, master, 328/2060.  
 Ouere-flinke, *vb. t.* repent; compare "remember it," 369/951.  
 Overt, *sb.* overture, 248/1302.  
 Palustre, *sb.* palæstra, arena, 288/830.  
 Partye, *sb.* side, 322/1893. Fr. *Parti*.  
 Party . . . party, partly . . . partly, 289/859.  
 Passyble, *adj.* possible, 316/1712.  
 Passyon, *sb.* suffering, death, 393/1668.  
 Pathed, *pp.* paved, 347/285.  
 Pere, *sb.* pear, value of a pear, fig, 133/907.  
 Peroracyon, *sb.* peroration, close of spech, 278/536.  
 Peyse, *vb. t.* pese, weigh, 301/1238.  
 Fr. *Peser*.  
 Plat, *adj.* flat, flatly, used as *adv.*, plat and pleyn, 22/106, 139/996, 315/1654.  
 Plesauns, *sb.* plesaunce, pleasure, 2/6.  
 Plete, *vb.* plead, 164/1400, 300/1189.  
 L. L. *Placitare, Placitum*.  
 Pletyng, *sb.* pleading, 170/1496.  
 Pluk vp your hertis, pluck up your courage, 103/402.  
 Plumb, Plumme, *sb.* plum, plummet, 375/1133.  
 Point, *vb. t.* cause to appear, 316/1698.  
 Portratre, *sb.* figure (in Euclid), 41/387.  
 Potestate, *sb.* potentate, 361/692.  
 Povert, *sb.* poverty, poor people, 61/731.  
 Pregnantly, *adv.* significantly, 122/721, 154/1237.  
 Proesse, *sb.* matter, cause, 264/76, 306/1401. Comp. French *Process*.  
 Procession of the Holy Ghost, 335/2299.  
 Progression, *sb.* a royal progress, or visit, 187/280.  
 Promission, *sb.* promise, 256/1429.  
 Prone, *vb. int.* attain, reach, 367/874.  
 Protoust, *sb.* viceroy, proconsul, 294/1028.  
 Prow, *sb.* profit, 111/536, 115/592.  
 O. Fr. *Prou*.  
 Pryme, *sb.* prime: the first Roman Catholic service (after Lauds), 12/168.  
 Pryme, *sb.* spring, 316/1698.  
 Puple, *sb.* people, 119/669.  
 Purchace, *sb.* purchase, hold, grasp, 161/1333; compare nautical usage.  
 Puttyng at the stoon, putting the stone, 63/763.  
 Quayll, *vb. int.* fail, give way, cower, 294/1019, 318/1775.  
 Quecke, *vb. t.* quick, quicken, make alive, 319/1801.  
 Quencher, *sb. q.* of vice, extinguisher, 65/820.  
 Qwat, what, 6/67.  
 Qweche, which, 12/167, 80/19.

- Qwert, qvert, *adj.* sound, hearty, 108/482.
- Qwhy, why, 6/84.
- Qwome, whom, 6/71.
- Race, *vb. t.* tear, destroy, 290/907.
- Rake-stele, *sb.* rake-handle, 326/2009.
- Rap, *vb.* ryngne ne rap, at a door, 189/312.
- Rayle, Raylle, *vb. t.* array, 245/1230, 294/1020. Compare *Nightrail*.
- Rayle, *vb. t.* range in line, 377/1168.
- Real, *adj.* royal, 153/1213, 181/181. O. Fr. *Real*.
- Regalte, *sb.* regality, royalty, royal power, 122/726.
- Regalye, *sb.* regality, royalty, 286/778.
- Remembre, *vb. t.* remind (with two accusatives), 253/1379.
- Remene, *vb. t.* interpret, 335/2271.
- Reney, *vb. t.* reject, disown, 293/976, 294/1036. Fr. *Renier*.
- Repayr, *sb.* repair, resort, 22/81. Fr. *Repaire*.
- Replished, replenished, 278/527.
- Replicacion, *sb.* reply, 310/1508.
- Resultans, *sb.* resultance, origin, 213/704.
- Retoryk, one of the Seven Liberal Arts, 39/369.
- Reuers, *vb. t.* upset, overcome, 306/1396.
- Reve, *sb.* steward, delegate, 251/1321.
- Revers, *vb. int.* ? be perverse, 355/529.
- Reyle, *vb. int.* rail, flow, 395/1720.
- Ront, Runte, *vb.* ? scold, 177/96.
- Roos, Rowse, *sb.* rouse, stir, 298/1140.
- Rought, Rowth, recked, cared, 253/1370.
- Row, *adj.* rough, 72/942, 94/262, 114/590, 200/495.
- Rowne, *vb.* round into ear, whisper, 329/2006.
- Ryf, Ryffe, *adj.* rife, evident, 246/1280.
- Sacrifye, *vb.* sacrifice, 274/389. Fr. *Sacrifier*.
- Sadly, *adv.* soberly, in a settled way, 16/5, 315/1662.
- Sadnesse, *sb.* soberness, steadiness, 148/1151, 290/896.
- Sale, *sb.* opportunity, 208/635. See *Seel*.
- Saluatour, *sb.* Salvator, Saviour, 270/270.
- Sare, *adj.* sore, used as *adv.*, 242/1188.
- Sarsynrye, *sb.* Saraceny, 68/877.
- Sarysbury playn, "let him go walk on Salisbury plain," *prov.* 265/119.
- Saunsfayle, without fail, 245/1227.
- Say, *vb.* saw, 10/136; sayn, 252/1383.
- Scar, *sb.* chink, 361/712. Comp. *Armor. Skarr*.
- Schape, *pp.* shaped, prepared, 246/1257.
- Scysme, *sb.* schism, party disturbance, 106/454, 108/486, 292/951.
- Seel, *sb.* opportunity, occasion, 121/682. A.S. *Sæl*.
- Selkouth, *adj.* strange, 179/128.
- Sempiterne, *adj.* eternal, everlasting, immortal, 282/647, 312/1586. L. *Sempiternus*.
- Sencyall, *adj.* essential, 294/1012.
- Sere *sb.* sir, 275/423, 441. Fr. *Sire, sieur*.
- Serge, *vb.* search, 319/1803.
- Servage, *sb.* servitude, subjection, 57/654.
- Sewe, *vb.* pursue, follow, 2/7, 60/728.
- Shene, *adj.* radiant, beautiful, 279/541.
- Shew, *vb. t.* display, 30/224; *vb. int.* 31/224.
- Shides, *sb.* burning brands, fire-brands, 81/31.
- Shour, *sb.* shower, squall, in fig. sense, 265/102, 298/1132.
- Shrew, *sb.* wicked person, 47/511, 59/702.
- Sisme, *sb.* schism, 107/454.
- Skyl, *sb.* skill, reason, 59/702.
- Slughed, *adj.* slugged, slothful, 263/42.
- Slyde, *vb. int.* slip, be forgotten, 72/935, 91/213.
- Smytyng, *sb.* smiting, striking (of

- musical instruments, as harp), 40/384.
- Snebbe, Snybc, *vb. t.* snub, reprove, 187/261.
- Soke, Sook, *sb.* suck, 2/2.
- Solen, Solenne, Soleyn, *adj.* solemn, terrible, 132/908; sacred, 317/1720.
- Solemnyte, *sb.* solemnity, 265/123, 273/385.
- Sonde, *sb.* message, dispensation, 12/194, 334/2255.
- Soonde, *sb.* See *Sonde*.
- Soothisaw, *vb.* speak truthfully, 311/1545.
- Sophem, *sb.* sophism, sophistical argument, 185/228.
- Sophie, *sb.* learning, 372/1020. Gr. *σοφία*.
- Sowdyoures, *sb.* soldiers, paid troops, 102/400. O. Fr. *Soldaier*: comp. M. Fr. *soudoyer*.
- Speker, *sb.* speaker, one who presides at a meeting, 84/107.
- Sperd, Spered, Speryd, *pp.* barred, closed, shut, 38/353, 275/432.
- Spousesse, *sb.* wife, 231/999.
- Spyce, *sb.* species, manner, 2/20. Fr. *Especce*.
- Staker, *vb.* stagger, hover, 278/525.
- Stakeryng, *sb.* staggering, 388/1510.
- Sterne, *vb. int.* starve, die, 157/1285, 295/1039.
- Steuene, *sb.* voice, 193/361.
- Stodieres, *sb.* studiers, students, 37/350.
- Stoyn, *vb. t.* astound, stupify, 9/109, 287/799, 320/1837.
- Surveour, *sb.* surveyor, overlooker, 33/263.
- Swap, *sb.* blow, at a blow = at once, 189/313.
- Swete, *vb.* sweat, distil, 403/1959.
- Swow, *sb.* swoon, deep sleep, 209/649, 242/1214, 252/1353.
- Symphonye, *sb.* symphony, related to harmony, 40/385.
- Sysc, *sb.* size, conceit, self-esteem, 128/845.
- Sysed, *pp.* app. set, 338/17. Comp. Fr. *assis*.
- Tarie, *vb. t.* tarry, delay, 291/930.
- Tary, *sb.* tarry, delay, long study, 12/186.
- Tast, *vb.* try, 287/815. O. Fr. *Taster*, L. L. *Tastare*. See *Ataast*.
- Teche, *vb. t.* teach, 291/925.
- Teene, *sb.* anguish, pain, 7/77: Tene, 6/77, 12/186.
- Tetched, *pp.* taught, 108/494.
- Tetys, *sb.* fro þe tetys, or teats, *i. e.* from infancy, 30/242.
- Thenswart, thenceward, *i. e.* to depart thence, 231/1015.
- There = where, 47/506.
- Poo, those, 246/1254.
- Thurify, *vb.* burn incense, sacrifice, 349/350.
- Tight, *adv.* tite, quickly, 350/385.
- Touch, *vb. t.* touch on, allude to, 331/2157.
- Trace, *vb. t.* track, rove through, 90/193; *vb. int.* (of a dance), 275/421.
- Trappure, *sb.* trapping, array, order, 240/1166. Fr. *Trappure*.
- Trayn, *sb.* treachery, artifice, 267/185.
- Treacle, *sb.* theriac remedy, 173/34.
- Turbe, Turbel, *vb. t.* disturb, trouble, 49/524.
- Twyst, *vb. t.* turn aside, 22/103; destroy, 131/866.
- Vengeable, *adj.* vindictive, 310/1521.
- Veniable, *adj.* vindictive, revengeful, 307/1414. See *Vengeable*.
- Vinolent, *adj.* given to wine, 311/1533.
- Vlix, *sb.* Ulisses, as a crafty person, 302/1271.
- Vnch, *sb.* inch, 129/819.
- Wade, *vb.* dive, flounder about, 120/703, 314/1624.
- Wale, *sb.* within the wale = on board of, 117/642. The wales are thick planks which give the form of a vessel.
- Walk, *vb.* be off, go, 210/672.
- Want, *vb. int.* be lacking, fail, 80/26.
- Wared, *pp.* guarded against, saved, 100/378.
- Warn, *vb. t.* warn a gate, forbid it, 61/737.
- Wave, *vb. int.* waver, totter, 183/199, 207/593, 306/1377, 350/390.

- Wave, *sb.* wave, 89/178.
- Wayr, *sb.* wear, lock, 22/96; thorow wey & thorow wayr, by road and by river.
- Wecch, Weteche, *sb.* watch, in wecch, *awake*; 125/754.
- Weede, *sb.* weed, clothes, array, 229/952, 259/1484.
- Weent, Went, *sb.* bent of mind, course, 291/929.
- Weniaunce, *sb.* vengeance, 10/153.
- Werre, worse, 263/55.
- Weyue, *vb. t.* waive, decline, 354/510.
- Whanse, Wanyse, *vb. int.* vanish, disapear, 47/487.
- Wilfully, *adv.* willingly, of free will, 47/516, 305/1361.
- Wisse, *vb. t.* teach, 402/1929.
- Wonder, *adj.* wonderful, 289/860; *as adv.* 313/1608.
- Wondyrly, *adv.* wonderfully, 242/1201.
- Wone, *sb.* house, abode, in wones = at home, 18/26, 25/141; property, 163/1370. In 25/141 it seems almost equivalent to *once*.
- Word, *sb.* world, 53/600.
- Wordly, *adj.* worldly, 299/1162.
- Woundyr, *adj.* wonderful, 42/424.
- Wrake, *sb.* wreck, harm, ruin, 18/29, 69/866.
- Wreche, Wreke, *sb.* wrath, vengeance, 326/2014, 339/61.
- Wyte, *sb.* weight, 301/1238.
- Xalle, shall, 40/390.
- Ya, 3a, yea, 123/738.
- Yave, *vb.* gave, 5/22.
- Yche, *adj.* ilk, same, 50/575. See *Ilke*.
- Ydiotes, *sb.* ignorant people, unlettered men, 35/288.
- Yeede, 3ede, *vb.* yede, went, 45/466.
- Yefte, *sb.* gift, 271/299.
- Ylde, *sb.* isle, 72/941.
- Yongthed, 3onthyd, *pp.* youthed, made youthful, 179/126.
- Youe, *pp.* given, 7/63.
- Yryn, *sb.* iron, 24/121; "yern" on p. 25.
- 3aue, *vb. t.* gave, 4/22.
- 3erne, *adv.* eagerly, quickly, 352/439.
- 3onthyd, *pp.* made youthful, 178/126.
- 3ouc, *pp.* given, 6/63.
- 3yng, *adj.* young, 40/411.



May 1892. For this year and 1893 the Original-Series Texts are now ready, and so are the Extra-Series Texts for 1892, and the first of those for 1893, while the second will be ready in a few months. **Members are asked to send their two-years' subscriptions for both Series at once.**

The second Extra-Series book for 1891 is also ready. It is No. LX, Dr. J. Schick's edition of Lydgate's *Temple of Glass*, with a full discussion and classification of its MSS., a chronological arrangement of all Lydgate's chief works, and some account of his best poem, still in MS., 'Reason and Sensuality.'

The Original-Series Texts for 1892 are:—No. 98, *The Minor Poems of the Vernon MS*, Part I edited by Dr. Horstmann, and No. 99, Part VI of the *Cursor Mundi*,—the Preface by the Rev. Dr. R. Morris; an Essay on the Sources of the Poem by Dr. Haenisch; and a Glossary by Dr. Max Kaluza.

The Original-Series Texts for 1893 are:—No. 100, Capgrave's *Life of St. Katharine*, the text edited by Dr. C. Horstmann, with Forewords, side-notes, and a discussion of Chaucer's *gh* and Shakspeare's long *i*, by Dr. F. J. Furnivall; and No. 101, the *Cursor Mundi*, Part VII and last, an Essay on the MSS. of the Poem, their Dialects and Relation, &c., by Dr. H. Hupe.

The Extra-Series Texts for 1892 are:—No. LXI, Hoccleve's *Minor Poems I*, from the Phillipps and Durham MSS., edited by Dr. F. J. Furnivall; No. LXII, the *Chester Plays*, Part I, re-edited from the MSS. by the late Dr. Hermann Deimling.

Those for 1893 are—1. Thomas à Kempis's *De Imitatione Christi*, english: the first three books from the MS. in Trinity College Dublin, about 1440 A.D., and from Dr. Wm. Atkynson's version, printed by Wynkyn de Worde in 1502; and the fourth book by Margaret, Countess of Richmond and Derby, Mother of Henry VII; the whole edited by Prof. J. K. Ingram, LL.D. 2. Dr. Mary N. Colvin's edition of Caxton's *Godfrey of Bologne, or Last Siege of Jerusalem*, A.D. 1481. This is all printed but the Notes and Glossary, and they are in the hands of the printers. Dr. Furnivall's edition of the *Lichfield Gilds* is also all printed, and waits only for the Introduction, which Prof. E. C. K. Gonner has kindly undertaken to write for the book.

The Original-Series Texts for 1894 and 1895 will be chosen from books already at press: Part II of the *Minor Poems of the Vernon MS.*, edited by Dr. J. Kail; Richard Misyn's—he was Prior of Lincoln—englishings in 1434 and 1435 of Richard Rolle of Hampole's *Fire of Love* and *Mending of Life*, edited by Robert Harvey, M.A., Headmaster of the Cork Grammar School; Lydgate and Burgh's *Secretes of Philosophes*, c. 1440, edited by Robert Steele, B.A.; Mr. Gollancz's re-edited *Exeter-Book*—Anglo-Saxon Poems from the unique MS. in Exeter Cathedral—Part I, of which the Text, with a modern englishing, has been long in type. Dr. R. von Fleischhacker has also in the press—333 pages of text stereotyped out of 352—a treatise perhaps more valuable for Dictionary purposes than any yet issued by the Society, an english *Laufranc's Chirurgie*, about 1400 A.D., which takes up to Chaucer's death the whole class of surgical and medical words (besides many others of common speech) which we before had only from the black-letters of Queen Elizabeth's time. The Editor has collated the English text with its Latin; and he shows how largely our first printed *Anatomic* (Vicary's) is borrowed from it. Dr. Fleischhacker's illness drove him to the South last winter, but he hopes to be in England again in the summer, and then to finish his edition. Miss Pemberton has also sent to press her edition of the fragments of Queen Elizabeth's englishings (in the Record Office) from Boethius, Plutarch, &c. Prof. Napier has nearly ready a 12th-century Homily on the *Legend of the Holy Rood*, with an Introduction on the different Legends about it, together with an incomplete Chester *Hymn to the Virgin* of the 13th century, and a short Paper on the soft and hard *g*'s of the *Ormulum* MS., with a facsimile. Prof. Mead has sent to press the completion of the prose *Merlin*, for which the Society has been looking in vain from its Treasurer since 1870. Mr. Utley is home from Roumania, and promises to finish *Lydsey's* Works this year.

The Texts for the Extra Series in 1894 and 1895 will be chosen from the Parallel-Text of the only two MSS. of the *Owl and Nightingale*, edited by Mr. G. F. H. Sykes; the prose Romance of *Melusine*, edited from the unique MS. by Mr. A. K. Donald; Hoccleve's englishing of *De Regimine Principum*, 1411-12, edited by Dr. Furnivall; Deguillville's *Pilgrimage of the Life of Man*, three prose versions—two English, one French—edited by G. N. Currie, M.A. Some of these Texts will be ready in 1892. **Members are therefore asked to send Advance Subscriptions in 1892, for 1893, 1894, and 1895**, in order that the 1893-5 books may be issued to them as soon as the editions are finished. The Society's experience has shown that Editors must be taken when they are in the humour for work. All real Students and furtherers of the Society's purpose will be ready to push-on the issue of Texts. Those Members who care only a guinea a year (or can afford only that sum) for the history of our language and our nation's thought, will not be hurt by those who care more, getting their books in advance; on the contrary, they will be benefited, as each successive year's work

will then be ready for issue on New Year's Day. Members are askt to realise the fact that the Society has now 50 years' work on its Lists,—at its present rate of production,—and that there is from 100 to 200 more years' work to come after that. The year 2000 will not see finish all the Texts that the Society ought to print.

Mr. G. N. Currie is preparing an edition of the 15th and 16th century Prose Versions of Guillaume de Deguilleville's *Pilgrimage of the Life of Man*, with the French prose version by Jean Gallopes, from Mr. Henry Hucks Gibbs's MS., Mr. Gibbs having generously promised to pay the extra cost of printing the French text, and engraving one or two of the illuminations in his MS.

Guillaume de Deguilleville, monk of the Cistercian abbey of Chaalis, in the diocese of Senlis, wrote his first verse *Pelerinaige de l'Homme* in 1330-1 when he was 36.<sup>1</sup> Twenty-five (or six) years after, in 1355, he revised his poem, and issued a second version of it, and this is the only one that has been printed. Of the prose representative of the first version, 1330-1, a prose Englishing, about 1430 A.D., was edited by Mr. Aldis Wright for the Roxburghe Club in 1869, from MS. Ff. 5. 30 in the Cambridge University Library. Other copies of this prose English are in the Hunterian Museum, Glasgow, Q. 2. 25; Univ. Coll. and Corpus Christi, Oxford<sup>2</sup>; and the Laud Collection in the Bodleian, no. 740. A copy in the Northern dialect is MS. G. 21, in St. John's Coll., Cambridge, and this is the MS. which will be edited by Mr. Sidney J. Hertridge for the E. E. Text Society. The Laud MS. 740 was somewhat condensed and modernised, in the 17th century, into MS. Ff. 6. 30, in the Cambridge University Library:<sup>3</sup> "The Pilgrime or the Pilgrimage of Man in this World," copied by Will. Baspoole, whose copy "was verbatim written by Walter Parker, 1645, and from thence transcribed by G. G. 1649; and from thence by W. A. 1655." This last copy may have been read by, or its story reported to, Bunyan, and may have been the groundwork of his *Pilgrim's Progress*. It will be edited by Mr. Currie for the E. E. T. Soc., its text running under the earlier English, as in Mr. Hertridge's edition of the *Gesta Romanorum* for the Society. In February 1464,<sup>4</sup> Jean Gallopes—a clerk of Angers, afterwards chaplain to John, Duke of Bedford, Regent of France—turned Deguilleville's first verse *Pelerinaige* into a prose *Pelerinaige de la vie humaine*.<sup>5</sup> By the kindness of Mr. Hy. Hucks Gibbs, as above mentioned, Gallopes's French text will be printed opposite the early prose northern Englishing in the Society's edition.

The Second Version of Deguilleville's *Pelerinaige de l'Homme*, A.D. 1355 or -6, was englished in verse by Lydgate in 1426. Of Lydgate's poem, the larger part is in the Cotton MS. Vitellius C. xiii (leaves 2-308). This MS. leaves out Chaucer's englishing of Deguilleville's *A B C* or *Prayer to the Virgin*, of which the successive stanzas start with A, B, C, and run all thro' the alphabet; and it has 2 gaps, of which most of the second can be filled up from the end of the other imperfect MS. Cotton, Tiberius A vii. The rest of the stopgaps must be got from the original French in Harleian 4399,<sup>6</sup> and Additional 22,937<sup>7</sup> and 25,594<sup>8</sup> in the British Museum. Lydgate's version will be edited in due course for the Society.

Besides his first *Pelerinaige de l'homme* in its two versions, Deguilleville wrote a second, "de l'ame separee du corps," and a thirld, "de nostre seigneur Jesus." Of the second, a prose Englishing of 1413, *The Pilgrimage of the Soule* (perhaps in part by Lydgate), exists in the Egerton MS. 615,<sup>9</sup> at Hatfield, Cambridge (Univ. Kk. 1. 7, Caius), Oxford (Univ. Coll. and Corpus), and in Chorton's edition of 1483. This version has 'somewhat of addicions' as Caxton says, and some shortenings too, as the maker of both, the first translator, tells us in the MSS. Caxton leaves out the earlier englisher's interesting Epilog in the Egerton MS. This prose englishing of the *Soule* will be edited for the Society after that of the *Man* is finished, and will have Gallopes's French opposite it, from Mr. Gibbs's MS., as his gift to the Society. Of the *Pilgrimage of Jesus*, no englishing is known.

As to the MS. Anglo-Saxon Psalters, Dr. Hy. Sweet has edited the oldest MS., the Vespasian, in his *Oldest English Texts* for the Society, and Mr. Harsley has edited the latest, c. 1150, Eadwine's Canterbury Psalter. Dr. Logeman then raised the question of how the other MSS. should be treated; and he was authorised to prepare a Parallel-Text edition of the first ten Psalms from all the MSS., to test whether the best way of printing them would be in one group, or in two—in each case giving parts of all the MSS. on one page—under their respective Roman and Gallican Latin originals. If collation proves that all the MSS. cannot go together on successive pages, there will be two Parallel-Texts,

<sup>1</sup> He was born about 1295. See Abbé Goussier's *Bibliothèque française*, Vol. IX, p. 73-4.—P. M.

<sup>2</sup> These 3 MSS. have not yet been collated, but are believed to be all of the same version.

<sup>3</sup> Another MS. is in the Pepys Library.

<sup>4</sup> According to Mr. Hy. Hucks Gibbs's MS.

<sup>5</sup> These were printed in France, late in the 15th or early in the 16th century.

<sup>6</sup> 15th cent., containing only the *Vie humaine*.

<sup>7</sup> 15th cent., containing all the 3 *Pilgrimages*, the 3rd being Jesus Christ's.

<sup>8</sup> 14th cent., containing the *Vie humaine* and the 2nd *Pilgrimage, de l'Âme*: both incomplete.

<sup>9</sup> Ab. 1430, 106 leaves (leaf 1 of text wanting), with illuminations of nice little devils—red, green, tawny &c.—and damned souls, fires, angels &c.

one of the A.Sax. MSS. following the Roman version, and the other, of those glossing the Gallican; but every effort will be made to get the whole into one Parallel-Text. This Text will be an extravagance; but as the Society has not yet committed one in Anglo-Saxon, it will indulge in one now. And every student will rejoice at having the whole Psalter material before him in the most convenient form. Dr. Logeman and Mr. Harsley will be joint editors of the Parallel-Text. The Early English Psalters are all independent versions, and will follow separately in due course.

Through the good offices of Prof. Arber, some of the books for the Early-English Examinations of the University of London will be chosen from the Society's publications, the Committee having undertaken to supply such books to students at a large reduction in price. The profits from these sales will be applied to the Society's Reprints. Five of its 1866 Texts, and one of its 1867, still need reproducing. Donations for this purpose will be welcome. They should be paid to the Hon. Sec., Mr. W. A. Dalziel, 67 Victoria Rd., Finsbury Park, London, N.

Members are reminded that *fresh Subscribers are always wanted*, and that the Committee can at any time, on short notice, send to press an additional Thousand Pounds' worth of work.

The Subscribers to the Original Series must be prepared for the issue of the whole of the Early English *Lives of Saints*, sooner or later. The Society cannot leave out any of them, even though some are dull. The Sinners would doubtless be much more interesting. But in many *Saints' Lives* will be found interesting incidental details of our forefathers' social state, and all are worthful for the history of our language. The *Lives* may be looked on as the religious romances or story-books of their period.

The Standard Collection of *Saints' Lives* in the Corpus and Ashmole MSS., the Harleian MS. 2277, &c. will repeat the Laud set, our No. 87, with additions, and in right order. The differences between the foundation MS. (the Laud 108) and its followers are so great, that, to prevent quite unwieldy collations, Dr. Horstmann decided that the Laud MS. must be printed alone, as the first of the Series of *Saints' Lives*. The Supplementary *Lives* from the Vernon and other MSS. will form one or two separate volumes.

Besides the *Saints' Lives*, Trevisa's englisging of *Bartholomæus de Proprietatibus Rerum*, the mediæval Cyclopaedia of Science, &c., will be the Society's next big undertaking. Dr. R. von Fleischhacker will edit it. Prof. Napier of Oxford, wishing to have the whole of our MS. Anglo-Saxon in type, and accessible to students, will edit for the Society all the unprinted and other Anglo-Saxon Homilies which are not included in Thorpe's edition of Ælfric's prose,<sup>1</sup> Dr. Morris's of the Blickling Homilies, and Prof. Skeat's of Ælfric's Metrical Homilies. Prof. Kölbings has also undertaken for the Society's Extra Series a Parallel-Text of all the six MSS. of the *Ancient Riddle*, one of the most important foundation-documents of Early English. Mr. Harvey, too, means to prepare an edition of the three MSS. of the *Earliest English Metrical Psalter*, one of which was edited by the late Mr. Stevenson for the Surtees Society.

In case more Texts are ready at any time than can be paid for by the current year's income, they will be dated the next year, and issued in advance to such Members as will pay advance subscriptions. The 1886-7 delay in getting out Texts must not occur again, if it can possibly be avoided. The Director has in hand for future volunteer Editors copies of 2 or 3 MSS.

Members of the Society will learn with pleasure that its example has been followed, not only by the Old French Text Society which has done such admirable work under its founders Profs. Paul Meyer and Gaston Paris, but also by the Early Russian Text Society, which was set on foot in 1877, and has since issued many excellent editions of old MS. Chronicles &c.

Members will also note with pleasure the annexation of large tracts of our Early English territory by the important German contingent under General Zupitza, Colonels Kölbings and Horstmann, volunteers Hausknecht, Einkenkel, Hæuensch, Kaluza, Hupe, Adam, Holthausen, &c. &c. Scandinavia has also sent us Dr. Erdmann; Holland, Dr. H. Logeman; France, Prof. Paul Meyer—with Gaston Paris as adviser;—Italy, Prof. Lattanzi; while America is represented by Prof. Child, Dr. Mary Noyes Colvin, Prof. Mead, Prof. Perrin, &c. The sympathy, the ready help, which the Society's work has called forth from the Continent and the United States, have been among the pleasantest experiences of the Society's life, a real aid and cheer amid all troubles and discouragements. All our Members are grateful for it, and recognise that the bond their work has woven between them and the lovers of language and antiquity across the seas is one of the most welcome results of the Society's efforts.

<sup>1</sup> Of these, Mr. Harsley is preparing a new edition, with collations of all the MSS. Many copies of Thorpe's book, not issued by the Ælfric Society, are still in stock.

Of the Vercelli Homilies, the Society has bought the copy made by Prof. G. Lattanzi.



## ORIGINAL SERIES.

Half the Publications for 1866 (13, 14, 15, 18, 22) are out of print, but will be gradually reprinted. Subscribers who desire the issue for 1866 should send their guineas at once to the Hon. Secretary, in order that other Texts for 1866 may be sent to press.

*The Publications for 1864-1893 (one guinea each year, save those for 1866 now half out of print, two guineas) are:—*

- |  |                      |      |
|--|----------------------|------|
| 1. Early English Alliterative Poems, ab. 1360 A.D., ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris.  | 16s.                 | 1864 |
| 2. Arthur, ab. 1440, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A.   | 4s.                  | "    |
| 3. Lauder on the Dewtie of Kyngis, &c., 1556, ed. F. Hall, D.C.L.  | 4s.                  | "    |
| 4. Sir Gawayne and the Green Knight, ab. 1360, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris.   | 10s.                 | "    |
| 5. Hume's Orthographie and Congruitie of the Britan Tongue, ab. 1617, ed. H. B. Wheatley.  | 4s.                  | 1865 |
| 6. Lancelot of the Laik, ab. 1500, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat.   | 8s.                  | "    |
| 7. Genesis & Exodus, ab. 1250, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris.   | 8s.                  | "    |
| 8. Morte Arthure, ab. 1440, ed. E. Brock.  | 7s.                  | "    |
| 9. Thynne on Speght's ed. of Chaucer, A.D. 1599, ed. Dr. G. Kingsley and Dr. F. J. Furnivall.  | 10s.                 | "    |
| 10. Merlin, ab. 1440, Part I., ed. H. B. Wheatley.   | 2s. 6d.              | "    |
| 11. Lyndesay's Monarcho, &c., 1552, Part I., ed. J. Small, M.A.  | 3s.                  | "    |
| 12. Wright's Chaste Wife, ab. 1462, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A.  | 1s.                  | "    |
| 13. Seinte Marherete, 1200-1330, ed. Rev. O. Cockayne.   |                      | 1866 |
| 14. Kyng Horn, Floris and Blancheflour, &c., ed. Rev. J. R. Lumby, B.D.  |                      | "    |
| 15. Political, Religious, and Love Poems, ed. F. J. Furnivall.   |                      | "    |
| 16. The Book of Quinte Essence, ab. 1460-70, ed. F. J. Furnivall.  | 1s. [In print.]      | "    |
| 17. Parallel Extracts from 45 MSS. of Piers the Plowman, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat.   | 1s. [In print.]      | "    |
| 18. Hali Meidenhad, ab. 1200, ed. Rev. O. Cockayne.  |                      | "    |
| 19. Lyndesay's Monarcho, &c., Part II., ed. J. Small, M.A.   | 3s. 6d. [In print.]  | "    |
| 20. Hampole's English Prose Treatises, ed. Rev. G. G. Perry.   | 1s. [In print.]      | "    |
| 21. Merlin, Part II., ed. H. B. Wheatley.  | 4s. [In print.]      | "    |
| 22. Partenay or Lusignen, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat.  |                      | "    |
| 23. Dan Michel's Ayenbite of Inwyt, 1340, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris.  | 10s. 6d. [In print.] | "    |
| 24. Hymns to the Virgin and Christ; the Parliament of Devils, &c., ab. 1430, ed. F. J. Furnivall.  |                      | 1867 |
| 25. The Stacions of Rome, the Pilgrims' Sea-voyage, with Clene Maydenhod, ed. F. J. Furnivall.   | 1s.                  | "    |
| 26. Religious Pieces in Prose and Verse, from R. Thornton's MS. (ab. 1440), ed. Rev. G. G. Perry.  | 2s.                  | "    |
| 27. Levins's Manipulus Vocabulorum, a ryming Dictionary, 1570, ed. H. B. Wheatley.   | 12s.                 | "    |
| 28. William's Vision of Piers the Plowman, 1362 A.D.; Text A, Part I., ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat.   | 6s.                  | "    |
| 29. Old English Homilies (ab. 1220-30 A.D.). Part I. Edited by Rev. Dr. R. Morris.   | 7s.                  | "    |
| 30. Pierce the Ploughmans Crede, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat.   | 2s.                  | "    |
| 31. Myrc's Duties of a Parish Priest, in Verse, ab. 1420 A.D., ed. E. Peacock.   | 4s.                  | 1868 |
| 32. Early English Meals and Manners: the Boke of Nourture of John Russell, the Bokes of Keruyng, Curtasye, and Demeanor, the Babees Book, Urbanitatis, &c., ed. F. J. Furnivall. | 12s.                 | "    |
| 33. The Knight de la Tour Landry, ab. 1440 A.D. A Book for Daughters, ed. T. Wright, M.A.  | 8s.                  | "    |
| 34. Old English Homilies (before 1300 A.D.). Part II., ed. R. Morris, LL.D.  | 8s.                  | "    |
| 35. Lyndesay's Works, Part III.: The Historie and Testament of Squyer Meldrum, ed. F. Hall.  | 2s.                  | "    |
| 36. Merlin, Part III. Ed. H. B. Wheatley. On Arthurian Localities, by J. S. Stuart Glennie.  | 12s.                 | 1869 |
| 37. Sir David Lyndesay's Works, Part IV., Ane Satyre of the Three Estaites. Ed. F. Hall, D.C.L.  | 4s.                  | "    |
| 38. William's Vision of Piers the Plowman, Part II. Text B. Ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A.   | 10s. 6d.             | "    |
| 39. Alliterative Romance of the Destruction of Troy. Ed. D. Donaldson & G. A. Panton. Pt. I.   | 10s. 6d.             | "    |
| 40. English Gilds, their Statutes and Customs, 1389 A.D. Edit. Toulmin Smith and Lucy T. Smith, with an Essay on Gilds and Trades-Unions, by Pr. L. Brentano.                    | 21s.                 | 1870 |
| 41. William Lauder's Minor Poems. Ed. F. J. Furnivall.   | 3s.                  | "    |
| 42. Bernardus De Cura Rei Familiaris, Early Scottish Prophecies, &c. Ed. J. R. Lumby, M.A.   | 2s.                  | "    |
| 43. Ratis Raving, and other Moral and Religious Pieces. Ed. J. R. Lumby, M.A.  | 3s.                  | "    |
| 44. The Alliterative Romance of Joseph of Arimathe, or The Holy Grail: from the Vernon MS.; with W. de Worde's and Pynson's Lives of Joseph: ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A.          | 5s.                  | 1871 |
| 45. King Alfred's West-Saxon Version of Gregory's Pastoral Care, edited from 2 MSS., with an English translation, by Henry Sweet, Esq., B.A., Balliol College, Oxford. Part I.   | 10s.                 | "    |
| 46. Legends of the Holy Rood, Symbols of the Passion and Cross Poems, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris.  | 10s.                 | "    |
| 47. Sir David Lyndesay's Works, Part V., ed. Dr. J. A. H. Murray.  | 3s.                  | "    |
| 48. The Times' Whistle, and other Poems, by R. C., 1616; ed. by J. M. Cowper, Esq.   | 6s.                  | "    |
| 49. An Old English Miscellany, containing a Bestiary, Kentish Sermons, Proverbs of Alfred, and Religious Poems of the 13th cent., ed. from the MSS. by the Rev. R. Morris, LL.D. | 10s.                 | 1872 |
| 50. King Alfred's West-Saxon Version of Gregory's Pastoral Care, ed. H. Sweet, M.A. Part II.   | 10s.                 | "    |
| 51. The Life of St Juliana, 2 versions, A.D. 1230, with translations; ed. T. O. Cockayne & E. Brock.   | 2s.                  | "    |
| 52. Palladius on Husbandrie, englishit (ab. 1420 A.D.), ed. Rev. Barton Lodge, M.A. Part I.  | 10s.                 | "    |

53. *Old-English Homilies*, Series II., and three Hymns to the Virgin and God, 13th-century, with the music to two of them, in old and modern notation; ed. Rev. R. Morris, LL.D. 8s. 1873
54. *The Vision of Piers Plowman*, Text C: *Richard the Redeles* (by William, the author of the *Vision*) and *The Crowned King*; Part III., ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 18s. "
55. *Generydes*, a Romance, ab. 1440 A.D., ed. W. Aldis Wright, M.A. Part I. 3s. "
56. *The Gest Hystoriale of the Destruction of Troy*, in alliterative verse; ed. by D. Donaldson, Esq., and the late Rev. G. A. Panton. Part II. 10s. 6d. 1874
57. *The Early English Version of the "Cursor Mundi"*; in four Texts, edited by the Rev. R. Morris, M.A., LL.D. Part I, with 2 photolithographic facsimiles. 10s. 6d. "
58. *The Blicking Homilies*, 971 A.D., ed. Rev. R. Morris, LL.D. Part I. 8s. "
59. *The "Cursor Mundi,"* in four Texts, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part II. 15s. 1875
60. *Meditacyons on the Soper of our Lorde* (by Robert of Brunne), edited by J. M. Cowper. 2s. 6d. "
61. *The Romance and Prophecies of Thomas of Erceuldoune*, from 5 MSS.; ed. Dr. J. A. H. Murray. 10s. 6d. "
62. *The "Cursor Mundi,"* in four Texts, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part III. 15s. 1876
63. *The Blicking Homilies*, 971 A.D., ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part II. 7s. "
64. *Francis Thynne's Embleames and Epigrams*, A.D. 1600, ed. F. J. Furnivall. 7s. "
65. *Be Domes Dæge* (Bede's *De Die Judicii*), &c., ed. J. R. Lumby, B.D. 2s. "
66. *The "Cursor Mundi,"* in four Texts, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part IV., with 2 autotypes. 10s. 1877
67. *Notes on Piers Plowman*, by the Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. Part I. 21s. "
68. *The "Cursor Mundi,"* in 4 Texts, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part V. 25s. 1878
69. *Adam Davie's 5 Dreams about Edward II., &c.*, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A. 5s. "
70. *Generydes*, a Romance, ed. W. Aldis Wright, M.A. Part II. 4s. "
71. *The Lay Folks Mass-Book*, four texts, ed. Rev. Canon Simmons. 25s. 1879
72. *Palladius on Husbandrie*, english (ab. 1420 A.D.). Part II. Ed. S. J. Herrtage, B.A. 15s. "
73. *The Blicking Homilies*, 971 A.D., ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part III. 10s. 1880
74. *English Works of Wyclif*, hitherto unprinted, ed. F. D. Matthew, Esq. 20s. "
75. *Catholicon Anglicum*, an early English Dictionary, from Lord Monson's MS. A.D. 1483, ed., with Introduction & Notes, by S. J. Herrtage, B.A.; and with a Preface by H. B. Wheatley. 20s. 1881
76. *Aelfric's Metrical Lives of Saints*, in MS. Cott. Jul. E 7., ed. Rev. Prof. Skeat, M.A. Part I. 10s. "
77. *Beowulf*, the unique MS. autotyped and transliterated, edited by Prof. Zupitza, Ph.D. 25s. 1882
78. *The Fifty Earliest English Wills*, in the Court of Probate, 1387-1439, ed. by F. J. Furnivall, M.A. 7s. "
79. *King Alfred's Orosius*, from Lord Tollemache's 9th century MS., Part I, ed. H. Sweet, M.A. 13s. 1883
- Extra Volume.* Facsimile of the *Epinal Glossary*, 8th cent., ed. H. Sweet, M.A. 15s. "
80. *The Early-English Life of St. Katherine* and its Latin Original, ed. Dr. Einkenel. 12s. 1884
81. *Piers Plowman: Notes, Glossary, &c.* Part IV, completing the work, ed. Rev. Prof. Skeat, M.A. 18s. "
82. *Aelfric's Metrical Lives of Saints*, MS. Cott. Jul. E 7., ed. Rev. Prof. Skeat, M.A., LL.D. Part II. 12s. 1885
83. *The Oldest English Texts, Charters, &c.*, ed. H. Sweet, M.A. 20s. "
84. *Additional Analogs to 'The Wright's Chaste Wife,'* No. 12, by W. A. Clouston. 1s. 1886
85. *The Three Kings of Cologne.* 2 English Texts, and 1 Latin, ed. Dr. C. Horstmann. 17s. "
86. *Prose Lives of Women Saints*, ab. 1610 A.D., ed. from the unique MS. by Dr. C. Horstmann. 12s. "
87. *Early English Verse Lives of Saints* (earliest version), Laud MS. 108, ed. Dr. C. Horstmann. 20s. 1887
88. *Hy. Bradshaw's Life of St. Werburgh*e (Pynson, 1521), ed. Dr. C. Horstmann. 10s. "
89. *Vices and Virtues*, from the unique MS., ab. 1200 A.D., ed. Dr. F. Holthausen. Part I. 8s. 1888
90. *Anglo-Saxon and Latin Rule of St. Benet*, interlinear Glosses, ed. Dr. H. Logeman. 12s. "
91. *Two Fifteenth-Century Cookery-Books*, ab. 1430-1450, edited by Mr. T. Austin. 10s. "
92. *Eadwine's Canterbury Psalter*, from the Trin. Cambr. MS., ab. 1150 A.D., ed. F. Harsley, B.A. Pt. I. 12s. 1889
93. *Defensor's Liber Scintillarum*, edited from the MSS. by Ernest Rhodes. B.A. 12s. "
94. *Aelfric's Metrical Lives of Saints*, MS. Cott. Jul. E 7, Part III., ed. Prof. Skeat, Litt.D., LL.D. 12s. 1890
95. *The Old-English version of Bede's Ecclesiastical History*, re-edited by Dr. Thomas Miller. Part I. 18s. "
- (With Reprints of No. 16, *The Book of Quinte Essence*, and No. 26, *Religious Pieces*, from R. Thornton's MS.)
96. *The Old-English version of Bede's Ecclesiastical History*, re-edited by Dr. Thomas Miller. Pt. II. 15s. 1891
97. *The Earliest English Prose Psalter*, edited from its 2 MSS. by Dr. K. D. Buelbring. Part I. 15s. "
98. *Minor Poems of the Vernon MS.*, Part I., ed. Dr. C. Horstmann. 20s. 1892
99. *Cursor Mundi.* Part VI. Preface, Notes, and Glossary, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 10s. "
100. *Capgrave's Life of St. Katharine*, ed. Dr. C. Horstmann, with Forewords by Dr. Furnivall. 20s. 1893
101. *Cursor Mundi.* Part VII. Essay on the MSS., their Dialects, &c., by Dr. H. Hupe. 10s. "

## EXTRA SERIES.

The Publications for 1867-1893 (one guinea each year) are:—

- I. William of Palerne; or, William and the Werwolf. Re-edited by Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 13s. 1867
- II. Early English Pronunciation with especial Reference to Shakspeare and Chaucer, by A. J. Ellis, F.R.S. Part I. 10s. "
- III. Caxton's Book of Curtesye, in Three Versions. Ed. F. J. Furnivall. 5s. 1868
- IV. Havelok the Dane. Re-edited by the Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 10s. "
- V. Chaucer's Boethius. Edited from the two best MSS. by Rev. Dr. R. Morris, 12s. "
- VI. Chevelere Assigne. Re-edited from the unique MS. by H. H. Gibbs, Esq., M.A. 3s. "
- VII. Early English Pronunciation, by A. J. Ellis, F.R.S. Part II. 10s. 1869
- VIII. Queene Elizabethes Achademy, &c. Ed. F. J. Furnivall. Essays on early Italian and German Books of Courtesy, by W. M. Rossetti and Dr. E. Oswald. 13s. "
- IX. Awdley's Fraternitey of Vacabondes, Harman's Caveat, &c. Ed. E. Viles & F. J. Furnivall. 7s. 6d. "
- X. Andrew Boorde's Introduction of Knowledge, 1547, Dyetary of Helth, 1542, Barnes in Defence of the Berde, 1542-3. Ed. F. J. Furnivall. 18s. 1870
- XI. Barbour's Bruce, Part I. Ed. from MSS. and editions, by Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 12s. "
- XII. England in Henry VIII.'s Time: a Dialogue between Cardinal Pole & Lupset, by Thom. Starkey, Chaplain to Henry VIII. Ed. J. M. Cowper. Part II. 12s. (Part I. is No. XXXII, 1878, 8s.) 1871
- XIII. A Supplication of the Beggars, by Simon Fish, 1528-9 A.D., ed. F. J. Furnivall; with A Supplication to our Moste Soueraigne Lorde; A Supplication of the Poore Commons; and The Decaye of England by the Great Multitude of Sheep, ed. by J. M. Cowper, Esq. 6s. "
- XIV. Early English Pronunciation, by A. J. Ellis, Esq., F.R.S. Part III. 10s. "
- XV. Robert Crowley's Thirty-One Epigrams, Voyce of the Last Trumpet, Way to Wealth, &c., A.D. 1550-1, edited by J. M. Cowper, Esq. 12s. 1872
- XVI. Chaucer's Treatise on the Astrolabe. Ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 6s. "
- XVII. The Complaynt of Scotlande, 1549 A.D., with 4 Tracts (1542-48), ed. Dr. Murray. Part I. 10s. "
- XVIII. The Complaynt of Scotlande, 1549 A.D., ed. Dr. Murray. Part II. 8s. 1873
- XIX. Oure Ladyes Myroure, A.D. 1530, ed. Rev. J. H. Blunt, M.A. 24s. "
- XX. Lonelich's History of the Holy Grail (ab. 1450 A.D.), ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A., Ph.D. Part I. 8s. 1874
- XXI. Barbour's Bruce, Part II., ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 4s. "
- XXII. Henry Brinklow's Complaynt of Roderyk Mors ab. 1542: and The Lamentacion of a Christian against the Citie of London, made by Roderigo Mors, A.D. 1545. Ed. J. M. Cowper. 9s. "
- XXIII. Early English Pronunciation, by A. J. Ellis, F.R.S. Part IV. 10s. "
- XXIV. Lonelich's History of the Holy Grail, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A., Ph.D. Part II. 10s. 1875
- XXV. Guy of Warwick, 15th-century Version, ed. Prof. Zupitza. Part I. 20s. "
- XXVI. Guy of Warwick, 15th-century Version, ed. Prof. Zupitza. Part II. 14s. 1876
- XXVII. Bp. Fisher's English Works (died 1535), ed. by Prof. J. E. B. Mayor. Part I, the Text. 16s. "
- XXVIII. Lonelich's Holy Grail, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A., Ph.D. Part III. 10s. 1877
- XXIX. Barbour's Bruce. Part III., ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 21s. "
- XXX. Lonelich's Holy Grail, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A., Ph.D. Part IV. 15s. 1878
- XXXI. The Alliterative Romance of Alexander and Dindimus, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat. 6s. "
- XXXII. Starkey's "England in Henry VIII's time." Pt. I. Starkey's Life and Letters, ed. S. J. Hertridge. 8s. "
- XXXIII. Gesta Romanorum (englisht ab. 1440), ed. S. J. Hertridge, B.A. 15s. 1879
- XXXIV. The Charlemagne Romances:—1. Sir Ferumbas, from Ashm. MS. 33, ed. S. J. Hertridge. 15s. "
- XXXV. Charlemagne Romances:—2. The Sege of Melayne, Sir Otuell, &c., ed. S. J. Hertridge. 12s. 1880
- XXXVI. Charlemagne Romances:—3. Lyf of Charles the Grete, Pt. I., ed. S. J. Hertridge. 16s. "
- XXXVII. Charlemagne Romances:—4. Lyf of Charles the Grete, Pt. II., ed. S. J. Hertridge. 15s. 1881
- XXXVIII. Charlemagne Romances:—5. The Sowdone of Babylone, ed. Dr. Hausknecht. 15s. "
- XXXIX. Charlemagne Romances:—6. Rauf Colyear, Roland, Otuel, &c., ed. S. J. Hertridge, B.A. 15s. 1882
- XL. Charlemagne Romances:—7. Huon of Burdeux, by Lord Berners, ed. S. L. Lee, B.A. Part I. 15s. "
- XLI. Charlemagne Romances:—8. Huon of Burdeux, by Lord Berners, ed. S. L. Lee, B.A. Pt. II. 15s. 1883
- XLII. Guy of Warwick: 2 texts (Auchinleck MS. and Caius MS.), ed. Prof. Zupitza. Part I. 15s. "
- XLIII. Charlemagne Romances:—9. Huon of Burdeux, by Lord Berners, ed. S. L. Lee, B.A. Pt. III. 15s. 1884
- XLIV. Charlemagne Romances:—10. The Four Sons of Aymon, ed. Miss Octavia Richardson. Pt. I. 15s. "
- XLV. Charlemagne Romances:—11. The Four Sons of Aymon, ed. Miss O. Richardson. Pt. II. 20s. 1885
- XLVI. Sir Bevis of Hamton, from the Auchinleck and other MSS., ed. Prof. E. Kölbing. Part I. 10s. "
- XLVII. The Wars of Alexander, ed. Rev. Prof. Skeat, Litt.D., LL.D. 20s. 1886
- XLVIII. Sir Bevis of Hamton, ed. Prof. E. Kölbing. Part II. 10s. "
- XLIX. Guy of Warwick, 2 texts (Auchinleck and Caius MSS.), Pt. II., ed. Prof. J. Zupitza, Ph.D. 15s. 1887
- L. Charlemagne Romances:—12. Huon of Burdeux, by Lord Berners, ed. S. L. Lee, B.A. Part IV. 5s. "
- LI. Torrent of Portyngale, from the unique MS. in the Chetham Library, ed. E. Adam, Ph.D. 10s. "
- LII. Bullen's Dialogue against the Feuer Pestilence, 1578 (ed. 1, 1564). Ed. M. & A. H. Bullen. 10s. 1888
- LIII. Vicary's Anatomie of the Body of Man, 1548, ed. 1577, ed. F. J. & Percy Furnivall. Part I. 15s. "
- LIV. Caxton's Englisling of Alain Chartier's Curial, ed. Dr. F. J. Furnivall & Prof. P. Meyer. 5s. "

- L.V. Barbour's Bruce, ed. Rev. Prof. Skeat, Litt.D., LL.D. Part IV. 5s. 1889  
 L.VI. Early English Pronunciation, by A. J. Ellis, Esq., F.R.S. Pt. V., the present English Dialects. 25s. ,,  
 L.VII. Caxton's Eneydos, A.D. 1490, coll. with its French, ed. M. T. Culley, M.A. & Dr. F. J. Furnivall. 13s. 1890  
 L.VIII. Caxton's Blanchardin & Eglantine, c. 1489, extracts from ed. 1595, & French, ed. Dr. L. Kellner. 17s. ,,  
 L.IX. Guy of Warwick, 2 texts (Auchinleck and Caius MSS.), Part III., ed. Prof. J. Zupitza, Ph.D. 15s. 1891  
 L.X. Lydgate's Temple of Glass, re-edited from the MSS. by Dr. J. Schick. 15s. ,,  
 L.XI. Hoccleve's Minor Poems, I., from the Phillipps and Durham MSS., ed. F. J. Furnivall, Ph.D. 15s. 1892  
 L.XII. The Chester Plays, re-edited from the MSS. by the late Dr. Hermann Deindling. Part I. 15s. ,,  
 L.XIII. Thomas a Kempis's De Imitatione Christi, english ab. 1440, & 1502, ed. Prof. J. K. Ingram. 15s. 1893  
 L.XIV. Caxton's Godfrey of Bologne, or Last Siege of Jerusalem, 1481, ed. Dr. Mary N. Colvin. 15s. ,,

## EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY TEXTS PREPARING.

Besides the Texts named as at press on p. 12 of the Cover of the Early English Text Society's last books, the following Texts are also slowly preparing for the Society:—

### ORIGINAL SERIES.

- Thomas Robinson's Life and Death of Mary Magdalene, from the 2 MSS., ab. 1620 A.D. (*Text in type.*)  
 George Ashby's Poems, 1463-75, ed. from unique Cambridge MSS. by Miss Mary Bateson. (*At Press.*)  
 Vices and Virtues, from the unique MS. ab. 1200 A.D., ed. Dr. F. Holthausen, Part II. (*At Press.*)  
 Anglo-Saxon Poems, from the Vercelli MS., re-edited by I. Gollancz, M.A.  
 Anglo-Saxon Glosses to Latin Prayers and Hymns, edited by Dr. F. Holthausen.  
 An Anglo-Saxon Martyrology, edited from the 4 MSS. by Dr. G. Herzfeld.  
 Aelfric's Metrical Lives of Saints, MS. Cott. Jul. E 7, Part IV, ed. Prof. Skeat, Litt.D., LL.D.  
 All the Anglo-Saxon Homilies and Lives of Saints not accessible in English editions, including those of the Vercelli MS. &c., edited by Prof. Napier, M.A., Ph.D.  
 The Anglo-Saxon Psalms; all the MSS. in Parallel Texts, ed. Dr. H. Logeman and F. Harsley, B.A.  
 Beowulf, a critical Text, &c., ed. Prof. Zupitza, Ph.D.  
 Byrhtferth's Handbooc, edited by Prof. G. Hempf.  
 Early English Homilies, 13th century, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris.  
 The Rule of St. Benet: 5 Texts, Anglo-Saxon, Early English, Caxton, &c., ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris.  
 The Seven Sages, in the Northern Dialect, from a Cotton MS., ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris.  
 The Master of the Game, a Book of Huntynge for Hen. V. when Prince of Wales, ed. Mr. T. Austin.  
 Ailred's Rule of Nuns, &c., edited from the Vernon MS., by the Rev. Canon H. R. Bramley, M.A.  
 Lonelich's Merlin (verse), from the unique MS., ed. by Miss Mary Bateson and Prof. E. Kölbing, Ph.D.  
 Merlin (prose), Part IV., containing Preface, Index, and Glossary. Edited by Prof. W. E. Mead, Ph.D.  
 Early English Verse Lives of Saints, Standard Collection, from the Harl. MS., ed. Dr. C. Horstmann.  
 Early English Confessionals, edited by Dr. R. von Fleischhacker.  
 A Lapidary, from Lord Tollemache's MS., &c., edited by Dr. R. von Fleischhacker.  
 Early English Deeds and Documents, from unique MSS., ed. Dr. Lorenz Morsbach.  
 Gilbert Banastre's Poems, and other Boccaccio englishings, edited by Prof. J. Zupitza, Ph.D.  
 Lydgate's Life of St. Edmund, edited from the MSS. by Dr. Axel Erdmann.  
 William of Nassington's Mirror of Life, from Jn. of Waldby. (*Editor Wanted.*)  
 A Chronicle of England to 1327 A.D., Northern verse (42,000 lines), ab. 1400 A.D., ed. M. L. Perrin, P.A.  
 More Early English Wills from the Probate Registry at Somerset House. (*Editor Wanted.*)  
 Early Lincoln Wills and Documents from the Bishops' Registers, &c., edited by Dr. F. J. Furnivall.  
 Early Canterbury Wills, edited by William Cowper, B.A.  
 Early Norwich Wills, edited by Walter Rye, and F. J. Furnivall.  
 The Cartularies of Oseney Abbey and Godstow Nunnery, english ab. 1450, ed. Rev. A. Clark, M.A.  
 The Three Kings' Sons, edited from the unique Harl. MS. 326, ab. 1500 A.D., by Dr. Leon Kellner.  
 The Macro Moralities, edited from Mr. Gurney's unique MS., by Alfred W. Pollard, M.A.  
 A Troy-Book, edited from the unique Laud MS. 595, by Dr. E. Wulffing.  
 Alliterative Prophecies, edited from the MSS. by Prof. Brandl, Ph. D.  
 Miscellaneous Alliterative Poems, edited from the MSS. by Dr. L. Morsbach.  
 Bird and Beast Poems, a collection from MSS., edited by Dr. K. D. Buelbring.  
 Scire Mori, &c., from the Lichfield MS. 16, ed. Miss Rosa Elverson, LL.A., and Miss Florence Gilbert.  
 Nicholas Trivet's French Chronicle, from Sir A. Acland-Hood's unique MS., ed. by Miss Mary Bateson.  
 De Guilleville's Pilgrimage of the Sowle, edited by G. N. Currie, M.A.  
 Stories for Sermons, edited from the Addit. MS. 25,719 by Dr. Wieck of Coblenz.  
 A 15th Century Treatise on Arithmetic, edited by Robert Steele, B.A.  
 The Finding of the Holy Rood, from a 13th-century MS., ed. Prof. Napier, Ph.D.

## EXTRA SERIES.

- Vicary's *Anatomie*, 1548, ed. 1577, edited by F. J. & Percy Furnivall. Part II. [*At Press*.]  
 Bp. Fisher's *English Works*, Pt. II., with his *Life and Letters*, ed. Rev. Ronald Bayne, B.A. [*At Press*.]  
 A Parallel-text of the 6 MSS. of the *Ancren Riwe*, ed. Prof. Dr. E. K lbing.  
 Trevisa's *Bartholom us de Proprietatibus Rerum*, re-edited by Dr. R. von Fleischhacker.  
 Bullein's *Dialogue against the Feuer Pestilence*, 1564, 1573, 1578. Ed. A. H. and M. Bullen. Pt. II.  
 The *Romance of Boetius and Sidrac*, edited from the MSS. by Dr. K. D. Buelbring.  
 The *Romance of Clariodus*, re-edited by Dr. K. D. Buelbring.  
 Sir *Amadas*, re-edited from the MSS. by Dr. K. D. Buelbring.  
 Sir *Degrevant*, edited from the MSS. by Dr. K. Luick.  
 Robert of Brunne's *Chronicle of England*, from the Inner Temple MS., ed. by Prof. W. E. Mead, Ph.D.  
 Maundeville's *Voiage and Travaille*, re-edited from the Cotton MS. Titus C. 16, &c., by Miss M. Bateson.  
*Arthur and Merlin*, re-edited from the unique MS. by Dr. K. D. Buelbring.  
*Guy of Warwick*, Copland's version, edited by Prof. Zupitza, Ph.D.  
 The *Sege of Jerusalem*, Text A, edited from the MSS. by Dr. F. Kopka.  
*Liber Fundacionis Ecclesie Sancti Bartholomei Londoniarum*: the 15th century englishing in the Cotton MS. Vespasian B ix, ed. Norman Moore, M.D.  
 Awdelay's *Poems*, re-edited from the unique MS. Douce 302, by Dr. E. Wulfinf.  
 William of Shoreham's *Works*, re-edited by Professor Konrath, Ph.D.  
 The *Wyse Chylde* and other early Treatises on Education, ed. G. Collar. B.A.  
 Caxton's *Dictes and Sayengis of Philosophirs*, 1477, with Lord Tollemache's MS. version, ed. S. I. Butler. Esq.  
 Caxton's *Book of the Ordre of Chyualry*, collated with Loutfut's Scotch copy of it, ed. F. S. Ellis, Esq.  
*Lydgate's Court of Sapience*, edited by Dr. Borsdorf.  
*Lydgate's Reason and Sensuality*, edited by Dr. J. Schick.  
 Jn. Hart's *Orthographie*, MS. 1551; black and fonetic letters, 1569, ed. Dr. F. J. Furnivall.

---

The Society is anxious to hear of more early Dialect MSS. Misyn's englishings, in the Lincoln dialect, 1434-5, of two of Hampole's Tracts, are in type. Orders have been given for the copying of John Lacy's copy, in the Newcastle-on-Tyne dialect, 1434, of some theological tracts in a MS. of St. John's College, Oxford. Prof. Napier will reprint his copy of a bit of a Hymn in the Chester dialect late in the 13th century. More Hampoles in the Yorkshire dialect will follow. The Lincoln and Norfolk Wills, already copied by or for Dr. Furnivall, unluckily show but little traces of dialect.

More members (to bring money) and Editors (to bring brains) are wanted by the Society.









THE UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN

DATE DUE

~~DEC 11 1996~~  
JAN 09 1997

104



3 9015 00407 1083

**BOUND**

**AUG 16 1946**

**UNIV OF MICH**

---

**DO NOT REMOVE  
OR  
MUTILATE CARD**